A proposed method for launching future payloads into space is the use of *rail guns*, in which projectiles are accelerated by means of magnetic forces. This photo shows the firing of a projectile at a speed of over 3 km/s from an experimental rail gun at Sandia National Research Laboratories, Albuquerque, New Mexico. (Defense Threat Reduction Agency [DTRA])

30 Sources of the Magnetic Field

In Chapter 29, we discussed the magnetic force exerted on a charged particle moving in a magnetic field. To complete the description of the magnetic interaction, this chapter explores the origin of the magnetic field, moving charges. We begin by showing how to use the law of Biot and Savart to calculate the magnetic field produced at some point in space by a small current element. This formalism is then used to calculate the total magnetic field due to various current distributions. Next, we show how to determine the force between two current-carrying conductors, leading to the definition of the ampere. We also introduce Ampère's law, which is useful in calculating the magnetic field of a highly symmetric configuration carrying a steady current.

This chapter is also concerned with the complex processes that occur in magnetic materials. All magnetic effects in matter can be explained on the basis of atomic magnetic moments, which arise both from the orbital motion of electrons and from an intrinsic property of electrons known as spin.

30.1 The Biot–Savart Law

Shortly after Oersted's discovery in 1819 that a compass needle is deflected by a current-carrying conductor, Jean-Baptiste Biot (1774–1862) and Félix Savart

PITFALL PREVENTION 30.1

The Biot–Savart Law

The magnetic field described by the Biot–Savart law is the field *due to* a given current-carrying conductor. Do not confuse this field with any *external* field that may be applied to the conductor from some other source.

(1791–1841) performed quantitative experiments on the force exerted by an electric current on a nearby magnet. From their experimental results, Biot and Savart arrived at a mathematical expression that gives the magnetic field at some point in space in terms of the current that produces the field. That expression is based on the following experimental observations for the magnetic field $d\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ at a point P associated with a length element $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ of a wire carrying a steady current I (Fig. 30.1):

- The vector $d\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is perpendicular both to $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ (which points in the direction of the current) and to the unit vector $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ directed from $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ toward P.
- The magnitude of $d\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is inversely proportional to r^2, where r is the distance from $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ to P.
- The magnitude of $d\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is proportional to the current and to the magnitude ds of the length element $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$.
- The magnitude of $d\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is proportional to $\sin\theta$, where θ is the angle between the vectors $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ and $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$.

These observations are summarized in the mathematical expression known today as the **Biot–Savart law:**

Biot–Savart law ▶

$$d\vec{\mathbf{B}} = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi}\frac{I\,d\vec{\mathbf{s}} \times \hat{\mathbf{r}}}{r^2} \quad \textbf{(30.1)}$$

where μ_0 is a constant called the **permeability of free space:**

Permeability of free space ▶

$$\mu_0 = 4\pi \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{T \cdot m/A} \quad \textbf{(30.2)}$$

Notice that the field $d\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ in Equation 30.1 is the field created at a point by the current in only a small length element $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ of the conductor. To find the *total* magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ created at some point by a current of finite size, we must sum up contributions from all current elements $I\,d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ that make up the current. That is, we must evaluate $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ by integrating Equation 30.1:

$$\vec{\mathbf{B}} = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi}\int \frac{d\vec{\mathbf{s}} \times \hat{\mathbf{r}}}{r^2} \quad \textbf{(30.3)}$$

where the integral is taken over the entire current distribution. This expression must be handled with special care because the integrand is a cross product and therefore a vector quantity. We shall see one case of such an integration in Example 30.1.

Although the Biot–Savart law was discussed for a current-carrying wire, it is also valid for a current consisting of charges flowing through space such as the electron beam in a television picture tube. In that case, $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ represents the length of a small segment of space in which the charges flow.

Interesting similarities exist between Equation 30.1 for the magnetic field due to a current element and Equation 23.9 for the electric field due to a point charge. The magnitude of the magnetic field varies as the inverse square of the distance from the source, as does the electric field due to a point charge. The directions of the two fields are quite different, however. The electric field created by a point charge is radial, but the magnetic field created by a current element is perpendicular to both the length element $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ and the unit vector $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ as described by the cross product in Equation 30.1. Hence, if the conductor lies in the plane of the page as shown in Figure 30.1, $d\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ points out of the page at P and into the page at P'.

Another difference between electric and magnetic fields is related to the source of the field. An electric field is established by an isolated electric charge. The Biot–Savart law gives the magnetic field of an isolated current element at some point, but such an isolated current element cannot exist the way an isolated electric charge can. A current element *must* be part of an extended current distribution because a complete circuit is needed for charges to flow. Therefore, the Biot–Savart law (Eq. 30.1) is only the first step in a calculation of a magnetic field; it must be followed by an integration over the current distribution as in Equation 30.3.

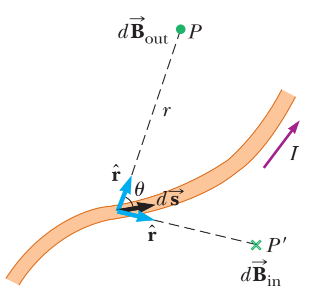


Figure 30.1 The magnetic field $d\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ at a point due to the current I through a length element $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ is given by the Biot–Savart law. The direction of the field is out of the page at P and into the page at P'.

Quick Quiz 30.1 Consider the magnetic field due to the current in the length of wire shown in Figure 30.2. Rank the points A, B, and C in terms of magnitude of the magnetic field that is due to the current in just the length element $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ shown from greatest to least.

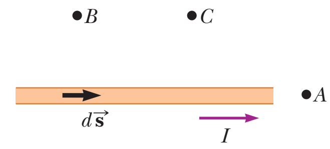


Figure 30.2 (Quick Quiz 30.1) Where is the magnetic field the greatest?

EXAMPLE 30.1 Magnetic Field Surrounding a Thin, Straight Conductor

Consider a thin, straight wire carrying a constant current I and placed along the x axis as shown in Figure 30.3. Determine the magnitude and direction of the magnetic field at point P due to this current.

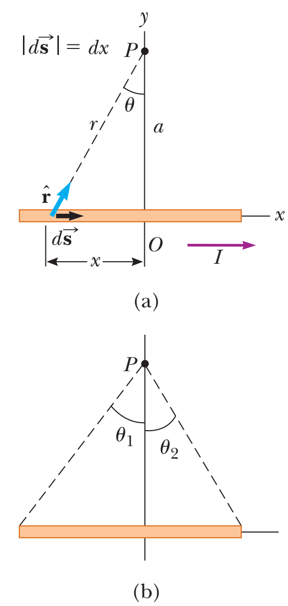


Figure 30.3 (Example 30.1) (a) A thin, straight wire carrying a current I. The magnetic field at point P due to the current in each element $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ of the wire is out of the page, so the net field at point P is also out of the page. (b) The angles θ_1 and θ_2 used for determining the net field.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize From the Biot–Savart law, we expect that the magnitude of the field is proportional to the current in the wire and decreases as the distance a from the wire to point P increases.

Categorize We are asked to find the magnetic field due to a simple current distribution, so this example is a typical problem for which the Biot–Savart law is appropriate.

Analyze Let's start by considering a length element $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ located a distance r from P. The direction of the magnetic field at point P due to the current in this element is out of the page because $d\vec{\mathbf{s}} \times \hat{\mathbf{r}}$ is out of the page. In fact, because *all* the current elements $I\,d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ lie in the plane of the page, they all produce a magnetic field directed out of the page at point P. Therefore, the direction of the magnetic field at point P is out of the page and we need only find the magnitude of the field. We place the origin at O and let point P be along the positive y axis, with $\hat{\mathbf{k}}$ being a unit vector pointing out of the page.

Evaluate the cross product in the Biot–Savart law:

$$d\vec{\mathbf{s}} \times \hat{\mathbf{r}} = |d\vec{\mathbf{s}} \times \hat{\mathbf{r}}|\hat{\mathbf{k}} = \left[dx \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right)\right]\hat{\mathbf{k}} = (dx\cos\theta)\hat{\mathbf{k}}$$

Substitute into Equation 30.1:

$$(1)\quad d\vec{\mathbf{B}} = (dB)\hat{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi}\frac{dx\cos\theta}{r^2}\hat{\mathbf{k}}$$

From the geometry in Figure 30.3a, express r in terms of θ:

$$(2)\quad r = \frac{a}{\cos\theta}$$

Notice that $\tan\theta = -x/a$ from the right triangle in Figure 30.3a (the negative sign is necessary because $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ is located at a negative value of x) and solve for x:

$$x = -a\tan\theta$$

Find the differential dx:

$$(3)\quad dx = -a\sec^2\theta\, d\theta = -\frac{a\,d\theta}{\cos^2\theta}$$

Substitute Equations (2) and (3) into the magnitude of the field from Equation (1):

$$(4)\quad dB = -\frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi}\frac{(a\,d\theta)\cos\theta\cos^2\theta}{a^2\cos^2\theta} = -\frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi a}\cos\theta\, d\theta$$

Integrate Equation (4) over all length elements on the wire, where the subtending angles range from θ_1 to θ_2 as defined in Figure 30.3b:

$$B = -\frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi a}\int_{\theta_1}^{\theta_2} \cos\theta\, d\theta = \boxed{\frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi a}(\sin\theta_1 - \sin\theta_2)} \quad \textbf{(30.4)}$$

Finalize We can use this result to find the magnetic field of *any* straight current-carrying wire if we know the geometry and hence the angles θ_1 and θ_2. Consider the special case of an infinitely long, straight wire. If the wire in Figure 30.3b becomes infinitely long, we see that $\theta_1 = \pi/2$ and $\theta_2 = -\pi/2$ for length elements ranging between positions $x = -\infty$ and $x = +\infty$. Because $(\sin\theta_1 - \sin\theta_2) = (\sin\pi/2 - \sin(-\pi/2)) = 2$, Equation 30.4 becomes

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi a} \quad \textbf{(30.5)}$$

Equations 30.4 and 30.5 both show that the magnitude of the magnetic field is proportional to the current and decreases with increasing distance from the wire, as expected. Equation 30.5 has the same mathematical form as the expression for the magnitude of the electric field due to a long charged wire (see Eq. 24.7).

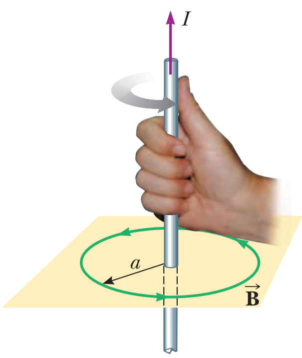


Figure 30.4 The right-hand rule for determining the direction of the magnetic field surrounding a long, straight wire carrying a current. Notice that the magnetic field lines form circles around the wire.

The result of Example 30.1 is important because a current in the form of a long, straight wire occurs often. Figure 30.4 is a perspective view of the magnetic field surrounding a long, straight, current-carrying wire. Because of the wire's symmetry, the magnetic field lines are circles concentric with the wire and lie in planes perpendicular to the wire. The magnitude of $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is constant on any circle of radius a and is given by Equation 30.5. A convenient rule for determining the direction of $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is to grasp the wire with the right hand, positioning the thumb along the direction of the current. The four fingers wrap in the direction of the magnetic field.

Figure 30.4 also shows that the magnetic field line has no beginning and no end. Rather, it forms a closed loop. That is a major difference between magnetic field lines and electric field lines, which begin on positive charges and end on negative charges. We will explore this feature of magnetic field lines further in Section 30.5.

EXAMPLE 30.2 Magnetic Field Due to a Curved Wire Segment

Calculate the magnetic field at point O for the current-carrying wire segment shown in Figure 30.5. The wire consists of two straight portions and a circular arc of radius a, which subtends an angle θ.

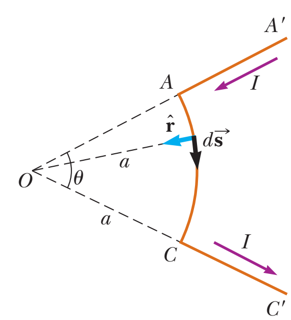


Figure 30.5 (Example 30.2) The magnetic field at O due to the current in the curved segment AC is into the page. The contribution to the field at O due to the current in the two straight segments is zero. The length of the curved segment AC is s.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The magnetic field at O due to the current in the straight segments AA' and CC' is zero because $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ is parallel to $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ along these paths, which means that $d\vec{\mathbf{s}} \times \hat{\mathbf{r}} = 0$ for these paths.

Categorize Because we can ignore segments AA' and CC', this example is categorized as an application of the Biot–Savart law to the curved wire segment AC.

Analyze Each length element $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ along path AC is at the same distance a from O, and the current in each contributes a field element $d\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ directed into the page at O. Furthermore, at every point on AC, $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ is perpendicular to $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$; hence, $|d\vec{\mathbf{s}} \times \hat{\mathbf{r}}| = ds$.

From Equation 30.1, find the magnitude of the field at O due to the current in an element of length ds:

$$dB = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi}\frac{I\,ds}{a^2}$$

Integrate this expression over the curved path AC, noting that I and a are constants:

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi a^2} \int ds = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi a^2} s$$

From the geometry, note that $s = a\theta$ and substitute:

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi a^2} (a\theta) = \boxed{\frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi a} \theta} \tag{30.6}$$

Finalize Equation 30.6 gives the magnitude of the magnetic field at O. The direction of $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is into the page at O because $d\vec{\mathbf{s}} \times \hat{\mathbf{r}}$ is into the page for every length element.

What If? What if you were asked to find the magnetic field at the center of a circular wire loop of radius R that carries a current I? Can this question be answered at this point in our understanding of the source of magnetic fields?

Answer Yes, it can. The straight wires in Figure 30.5 do not contribute to the magnetic field. The only contribution is from the curved segment. As the angle θ increases, the curved segment becomes a full circle when $\theta = 2\pi$. Therefore, you can find the magnetic field at the center of a wire loop by letting $\theta = 2\pi$ in Equation 30.6:

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi a} 2\pi = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2a}$$

This result is a limiting case of a more general result discussed in Example 30.3.

EXAMPLE 30.3 Magnetic Field on the Axis of a Circular Current Loop

Consider a circular wire loop of radius a located in the yz plane and carrying a steady current I as in Figure 30.6. Calculate the magnetic field at an axial point P a distance x from the center of the loop.

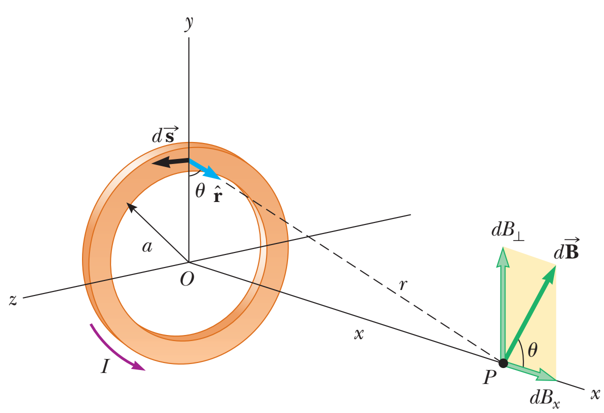


Figure 30.6 (Example 30.3) Geometry for calculating the magnetic field at a point P lying on the axis of a current loop. By symmetry, the total field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is along this axis.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Figure 30.6 shows the magnetic field contribution $d\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ at P due to a single current element at the top of the ring. This field vector can be resolved into components dB_x parallel to the axis of the ring and $dB_\perp$ perpendicular to the axis. Think about the magnetic field contributions from a current element at the bottom of the loop. Because of the symmetry of the situation, the perpendicular components of the field due to elements at the top and bottom of the ring cancel. This cancellation occurs for all pairs of segments around the ring, so we can ignore the perpendicular component of the field and focus solely on the parallel components, which simply add.

Categorize We are asked to find the magnetic field due to a simple current distribution, so this example is a typical problem for which the Biot–Savart law is appropriate.

Analyze In this situation, every length element $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ is perpendicular to the vector $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ at the location of the element. Therefore, for any element, $|d\vec{\mathbf{s}} \times \hat{\mathbf{r}}| = (ds)(1) \sin 90° = ds$. Furthermore, all length elements around the loop are at the same distance r from P, where $r^2 = a^2 + x^2$.

Use Equation 30.1 to find the magnitude of $d\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ due to the current in any length element $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$:

$$dB = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi} \frac{|d\vec{\mathbf{s}} \times \hat{\mathbf{r}}|}{r^2} = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi} \frac{ds}{(a^2 + x^2)}$$

Find the x component of the field element:

$$dB_x = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi} \frac{ds}{(a^2 + x^2)} \cos\theta$$

Integrate over the entire loop:
$$B_x = \oint dB_x = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi} \oint \frac{ds \cos\theta}{a^2 + x^2}$$

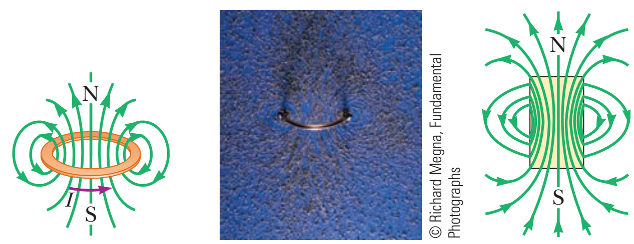
From the geometry, evaluate $\cos\theta$:
$$\cos\theta = \frac{a}{(a^2 + x^2)^{1/2}}$$

Substitute this expression for $\cos\theta$ into the integral and note that x, a, and θ are all constant:
$$B_x = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi} \oint \frac{ds}{a^2 + x^2} \frac{a}{(a^2 + x^2)^{1/2}} = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi} \frac{a}{(a^2 + x^2)^{3/2}} \oint ds$$

Integrate around the loop:
$$B_x = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi} \frac{a}{(a^2 + x^2)^{3/2}} (2\pi a) = \boxed{\frac{\mu_0 I a^2}{2(a^2 + x^2)^{3/2}}} \quad \textbf{(30.7)}$$

Finalize To find the magnetic field at the center of the loop, set $x = 0$ in Equation 30.7. At this special point,
$$B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2a} \quad (\text{at } x = 0) \quad \textbf{(30.8)}$$
which is consistent with the result of the **What If?** feature of Example 30.2.

The pattern of magnetic field lines for a circular current loop is shown in Figure 30.7a. For clarity, the lines are drawn for only the plane that contains the axis of the loop. The field-line pattern is axially symmetric and looks like the pattern around a bar magnet, which is shown in Figure 30.7c.



(a) (b) (c)

Figure 30.7 (Example 30.3) (a) Magnetic field lines surrounding a current loop. (b) Magnetic field lines surrounding a current loop, displayed with iron filings. (c) Magnetic field lines surrounding a bar magnet. Notice the similarity between this line pattern and that of a current loop.

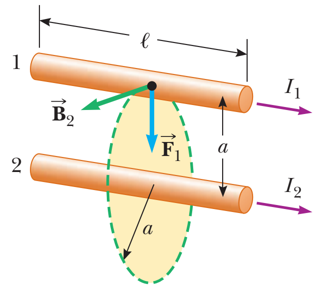
What If? What if we consider points on the x axis very far from the loop? How does the magnetic field behave at these distant points?

Answer In this case, in which $x \gg a$, we can neglect the term a^2 in the denominator of Equation 30.7 and obtain
$$B \approx \frac{\mu_0 I a^2}{2x^3} \quad (\text{for } x \gg a) \quad \textbf{(30.9)}$$
The magnitude of the magnetic moment μ of the loop is defined as the product of current and loop area (see Eq. 29.15): $\mu = I(\pi a^2)$ for our circular loop. We can express Equation 30.9 as
$$B \approx \frac{\mu_0}{2\pi} \frac{\mu}{x^3} \quad \textbf{(30.10)}$$
This result is similar in form to the expression for the electric field due to an electric dipole, $E = k_e(p/y^3)$ (see Example 23.5), where $p = 2qa$ is the electric dipole moment as defined in Equation 26.16.

30.2 The Magnetic Force Between Two Parallel Conductors

In Chapter 29, we described the magnetic force that acts on a current-carrying conductor placed in an external magnetic field. Because a current in a conductor sets up its own magnetic field, it is easy to understand that two current-carrying conductors exert magnetic forces on each other. Such forces can be used as the basis for defining the ampere and the coulomb.

Consider two long, straight, parallel wires separated by a distance a and carrying currents I_1 and I_2 in the same direction as in Active Figure 30.8. Let's determine the force exerted on one wire due to the magnetic field set up by the other



ACTIVE FIGURE 30.8

Two parallel wires that each carry a steady current exert a magnetic force on each other. The field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}_2$ due to the current in wire 2 exerts a magnetic force of magnitude $F_1 = I_1 \ell B_2$ on wire 1. The force is attractive if the currents are parallel (as shown) and repulsive if the currents are antiparallel.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the currents in the wires and the distance between them to see the effect on the force.

wire. Wire 2, which carries a current I_2 and is identified arbitrarily as the source wire, creates a magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}_2$ at the location of wire 1, the test wire. The direction of $\vec{\mathbf{B}}_2$ is perpendicular to wire 1 as shown in Active Figure 30.8. According to Equation 29.10, the magnetic force on a length ℓ of wire 1 is $\vec{\mathbf{F}}_1 = I_1 \vec{\ell} \times \vec{\mathbf{B}}_2$. Because $\vec{\ell}$ is perpendicular to $\vec{\mathbf{B}}_2$ in this situation, the magnitude of $\vec{\mathbf{F}}_1$ is $F_1 = I_1 \ell B_2$. Because the magnitude of $\vec{\mathbf{B}}_2$ is given by Equation 30.5,

$$F_1 = I_1 \ell B_2 = I_1 \ell \left(\frac{\mu_0 I_2}{2\pi a} \right) = \frac{\mu_0 I_1 I_2}{2\pi a} \ell \qquad \textbf{(30.11)}$$

The direction of $\vec{\mathbf{F}}_1$ is toward wire 2 because $\vec{\ell} \times \vec{\mathbf{B}}_2$ is in that direction. When the field set up at wire 2 by wire 1 is calculated, the force $\vec{\mathbf{F}}_2$ acting on wire 2 is found to be equal in magnitude and opposite in direction to $\vec{\mathbf{F}}_1$, which is what we expect because Newton's third law must be obeyed. When the currents are in opposite directions (that is, when one of the currents is reversed in Active Fig. 30.8), the forces are reversed and the wires repel each other. Hence, **parallel conductors carrying currents in the same direction attract each other, and parallel conductors carrying currents in opposite directions repel each other**.

Because the magnitudes of the forces are the same on both wires, we denote the magnitude of the magnetic force between the wires as simply F_B. We can rewrite this magnitude in terms of the force per unit length:

$$\frac{F_B}{\ell} = \frac{\mu_0 I_1 I_2}{2\pi a} \qquad \textbf{(30.12)}$$

The force between two parallel wires is used to define the **ampere** as follows:

When the magnitude of the force per unit length between two long, parallel wires that carry identical currents and are separated by 1 m is 2×10^{-7} N/m, the current in each wire is defined to be 1 A.

◀ Definition of the ampere

The value 2×10^{-7} N/m is obtained from Equation 30.12 with $I_1 = I_2 = 1$ A and $a = 1$ m. Because this definition is based on a force, a mechanical measurement can be used to standardize the ampere. For instance, the National Institute of Standards and Technology uses an instrument called a *current balance* for primary current measurements. The results are then used to standardize other, more conventional instruments such as ammeters.

The SI unit of charge, the **coulomb**, is defined in terms of the ampere: When a conductor carries a steady current of 1 A, the quantity of charge that flows through a cross section of the conductor in 1 s is 1 C.

In deriving Equations 30.11 and 30.12, we assumed that both wires are long compared with their separation distance. In fact, only one wire needs to be long. The equations accurately describe the forces exerted on each other by a long wire and a straight, parallel wire of limited length ℓ.

Quick Quiz 30.2 A loose spiral spring carrying no current is hung from a ceiling. When a switch is thrown so that a current exists in the spring, do the coils (a) move closer together, (b) move farther apart, or (c) not move at all?

EXAMPLE 30.4 Suspending a Wire

Two infinitely long, parallel wires are lying on the ground 1.00 cm apart as shown in Figure 30.9a. A third wire, of length 10.0 m and mass 400 g, carries a current of $I_1 = 100$ A and is levitated above the first two wires, at a horizontal position midway between them. The infinitely long wires carry equal currents I_2 in the same direction, but in the direction opposite to that in the levitated wire. What current must the infinitely long wires carry so that the three wires form an equilateral triangle?

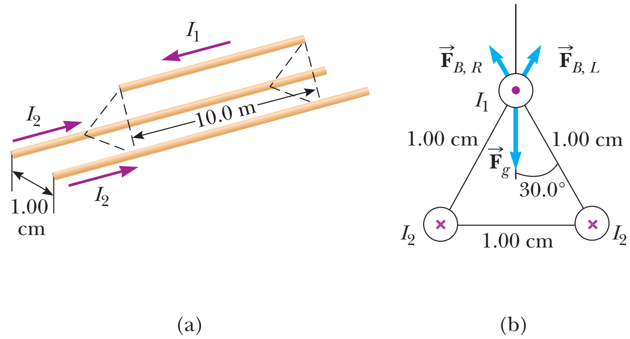


Figure 30.9 (Example 30.4) (a) Two current-carrying wires lie on the ground and suspend a third wire in the air by magnetic forces. (b) End view. In the situation described in the example, the three wires form an equilateral triangle. The two magnetic forces on the levitated wire are $\vec{\mathbf{F}}_{B,L}$, the force due to the left-hand wire on the ground, and $\vec{\mathbf{F}}_{B,R}$, the force due to the right-hand wire. The gravitational force $\vec{\mathbf{F}}_g$ on the levitated wire is also shown.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Because the current in the short wire is opposite those in the long wires, the short wire is repelled from both of the others. Imagine the currents in the long wires are increased. The repulsive force becomes stronger, and the levitated wire rises to the point at which the weight of the wire is once again levitated in equilibrium. Figure 30.9b shows the desired situation with the three wires forming an equilateral triangle.

Categorize We model the levitated wire as a particle in equilibrium.

Analyze The horizontal components of the magnetic forces on the levitated wire cancel. The vertical components are both positive and add together.

Find the total magnetic force in the upward direction on the levitated wire:

$$\vec{\mathbf{F}}_B = 2\left(\frac{\mu_0 I_1 I_2}{2\pi a}\,\ell\right)\cos 30.0°\,\hat{\mathbf{k}} = 0.866\,\frac{\mu_0 I_1 I_2}{\pi a}\,\ell\,\hat{\mathbf{k}}$$

Find the gravitational force on the levitated wire:

$$\vec{\mathbf{F}}_g = -mg\hat{\mathbf{k}}$$

Apply the particle in equilibrium model by adding the forces and setting the net force equal to zero:

$$\sum \vec{\mathbf{F}} = \vec{\mathbf{F}}_B + \vec{\mathbf{F}}_g = 0.866\,\frac{\mu_0 I_1 I_2}{\pi a}\,\ell\,\hat{\mathbf{k}} - mg\hat{\mathbf{k}} = 0$$

Solve for the current in the wires on the ground:

$$I_2 = \frac{mg\pi a}{0.866\mu_0 I_1 \ell}$$

Substitute numerical values:

$$I_2 = \frac{(0.400\text{ kg})(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)\pi(0.010\,0\text{ m})}{0.866(4\pi \times 10^{-7}\text{ T}\cdot\text{m/A})(100\text{ A})(10.0\text{ m})}$$

$$= \boxed{113\text{ A}}$$

Finalize The currents in all wires are on the order of 10^2 A. Such large currents would require specialized equipment. Therefore, this situation would be difficult to establish in practice.

30.3 Ampère's Law

Oersted's 1819 discovery about deflected compass needles demonstrates that a current-carrying conductor produces a magnetic field. Active Figure 30.10a shows how this effect can be demonstrated in the classroom. Several compass needles are placed in a horizontal plane near a long, vertical wire. When no current is present in the wire, all the needles point in the same direction (that of the Earth's magnetic field) as expected. When the wire carries a strong, steady current, the needles all deflect in a direction tangent to the circle as in Active Figure 30.10b. These observations demonstrate that the direction of the magnetic field produced by the current in the wire is consistent with the right-hand rule described in Figure 30.4. When the current is reversed, the needles in Active Figure 30.10b also reverse.

Because the compass needles point in the direction of $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$, we conclude that the lines of $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ form circles around the wire as discussed in Section 30.1. By symmetry, the magnitude of $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is the same everywhere on a circular path centered on the wire and lying in a plane perpendicular to the wire. By varying the current and distance from the wire, we find that B is proportional to the current and inversely proportional to the distance from the wire as described by Equation 30.5.

Now let's evaluate the product $\vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ for a small length element $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ on the circular path defined by the compass needles and sum the products for all elements over the closed circular path.[1] Along this path, the vectors $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ and $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ are parallel at each point (see Active Fig. 30.10b), so $\vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = B\,ds$. Furthermore, the magnitude of $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is constant on this circle and is given by Equation 30.5. Therefore, the sum of the products $B\,ds$ over the closed path, which is equivalent to the line integral of $\vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$, is

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = B \oint ds = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi r}(2\pi r) = \mu_0 I$$

where $\oint ds = 2\pi r$ is the circumference of the circular path. Although this result was calculated for the special case of a circular path surrounding a wire, it holds for a closed path of *any* shape (an *amperian loop*) surrounding a current that exists in an unbroken circuit. The general case, known as **Ampère's law**, can be stated as follows:

Leonard de Selva/CORBIS

ANDRE-MARIE AMPÈRE

French Physicist (1775–1836)

Ampère is credited with the discovery of electromagnetism, which is the relationship between electric currents and magnetic fields. Ampère's genius, particularly in mathematics, became evident by the time he was 12 years old; his personal life, however, was filled with tragedy. His father, a wealthy city official, was guillotined during the French Revolution, and his wife died young, in 1803. Ampère died at the age of 61 of pneumonia. His judgment of his life is clear from the epitaph he chose for his gravestone: *Tandem Felix* (Happy at Last).

The line integral of $\vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ around any closed path equals $\mu_0 I$, where I is the total steady current passing through any surface bounded by the closed path:

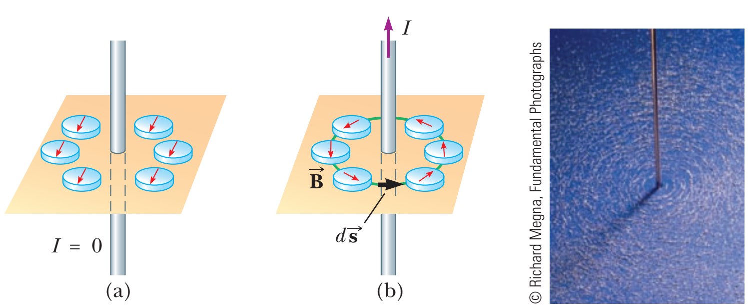
$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = \mu_0 I \qquad \textbf{(30.13)}$$

◀ Ampère's law

PITFALL PREVENTION 30.2

Avoiding Problems with Signs

When using Ampère's law, apply the following right-hand rule. Point your thumb in the direction of the current through the amperian loop. Your curled fingers then point in the direction that you should integrate when traversing the loop to avoid having to define the current as negative.



ACTIVE FIGURE 30.10

(a) When no current is present in the wire, all compass needles point in the same direction (toward the Earth's north pole). (b) When the wire carries a strong current, the compass needles deflect in a direction tangent to the circle, which is the direction of the magnetic field created by the current. (c) Circular magnetic field lines surrounding a current-carrying conductor, displayed with iron filings.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to change the value of the current and see the effect on the compasses.

[1] You may wonder why we would choose to evaluate this scalar product. The origin of Ampère's law is in 19th-century science, in which a "magnetic charge" (the supposed analog to an isolated electric charge) was imagined to be moved around a circular field line. The work done on the charge was related to $\vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$, just as the work done moving an electric charge in an electric field is related to $\vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$. Therefore, Ampère's law, a valid and useful principle, arose from an erroneous and abandoned work calculation!

Ampère's law describes the creation of magnetic fields by all continuous current configurations, but at our mathematical level it is useful only for calculating the magnetic field of current configurations having a high degree of symmetry. Its use is similar to that of Gauss's law in calculating electric fields for highly symmetric charge distributions.

Quick Quiz 30.3 Rank the magnitudes of $\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ for the closed paths *a* through *d* in Figure 30.11 from least to greatest.

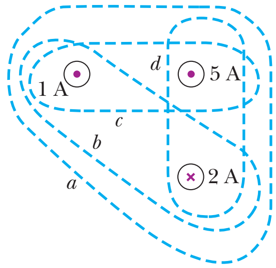


Figure 30.11 (Quick Quiz 30.3) Four closed paths around three current-carrying wires.

Quick Quiz 30.4 Rank the magnitudes of $\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ for the closed paths *a* through *d* in Figure 30.12 from least to greatest.

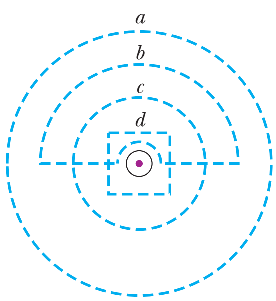


Figure 30.12 (Quick Quiz 30.4) Several closed paths near a single current-carrying wire.

EXAMPLE 30.5 The Magnetic Field Created by a Long Current-Carrying Wire

A long, straight wire of radius R carries a steady current I that is uniformly distributed through the cross section of the wire (Fig. 30.13). Calculate the magnetic field a distance r from the center of the wire in the regions $r \geq R$ and $r < R$.

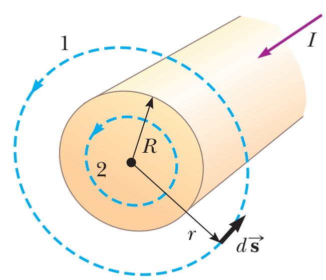


Figure 30.13 (Example 30.5) A long, straight wire of radius R carrying a steady current I uniformly distributed across the cross section of the wire. The magnetic field at any point can be calculated from Ampère's law using a circular path of radius r, concentric with the wire.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Study Figure 30.13 to understand the structure of the wire and the current in the wire. The current creates magnetic fields everywhere, both inside and outside the wire.

Categorize Because the wire has a high degree of symmetry, we categorize this example as an Ampère's law problem. For the $r \geq R$ case, we should arrive at the same result as was obtained in Example 30.1, where we applied the Biot–Savart law to the same situation.

Analyze For the magnetic field exterior to the wire, let us choose for our path of integration circle 1 in Figure 30.13. From symmetry, $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ must be constant in magnitude and parallel to $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ at every point on this circle.

Note that the total current passing through the plane of the circle is I and apply Ampère's law:

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = B \oint ds = B(2\pi r) = \mu_0 I$$

Solve for B:

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi r} \quad (\text{for } r \geq R) \tag{30.14}$$

Now consider the interior of the wire, where $r < R$. Here the current I' passing through the plane of circle 2 is less than the total current I.

Set the ratio of the current I' enclosed by circle 2 to the entire current I equal to the ratio of the area πr^2 enclosed by circle 2 to the cross-sectional area πR^2 of the wire:

$$\frac{I'}{I} = \frac{\pi r^2}{\pi R^2}$$

Solve for I':

$$I' = \frac{r^2}{R^2} I$$

Apply Ampère's law to circle 2:

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = B(2\pi r) = \mu_0 I' = \mu_0 \left(\frac{r^2}{R^2} I\right)$$

Solve for B:

$$B = \left(\frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi R^2}\right) r \quad (\text{for } r < R) \tag{30.15}$$

Finalize The magnetic field exterior to the wire is identical in form to Equation 30.5. As is often the case in highly symmetric situations, it is much easier to use Ampère's law than the Biot–Savart law (Example 30.1). The magnetic field interior to the wire is similar in form to the expression for the electric field inside a uniformly charged sphere (see Example 24.3). The magnitude of the magnetic field versus r for this configuration is plotted in Figure 30.14. Inside the wire, $B \rightarrow 0$ as $r \rightarrow 0$. Furthermore, Equations 30.14 and 30.15 give the same value of the magnetic field at $r = R$, demonstrating that the magnetic field is continuous at the surface of the wire.

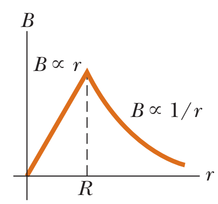


Figure 30.14 (Example 30.5) Magnitude of the magnetic field versus r for the wire shown in Figure 30.13. The field is proportional to r inside the wire and varies as $1/r$ outside the wire.

EXAMPLE 30.6 The Magnetic Field Created by a Toroid

A device called a *toroid* (Fig. 30.15) is often used to create an almost uniform magnetic field in some enclosed area. The device consists of a conducting wire wrapped around a ring (a *torus*) made of a nonconducting material. For a toroid having N closely spaced turns of wire, calculate the magnetic field in the region occupied by the torus, a distance r from the center.

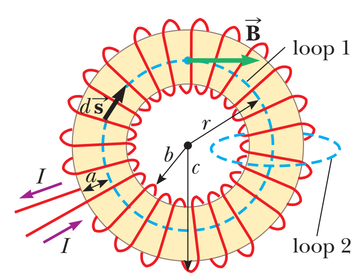


Figure 30.15 (Example 30.6) A toroid consisting of many turns of wire. If the turns are closely spaced, the magnetic field in the interior of the torus (the gold-shaded region) is tangent to the dashed circle (loop 1) and varies as $1/r$. The dimension a is the cross-sectional radius of the torus. The field outside the toroid is very small and can be described by using the amperian loop (loop 2) at the right side, perpendicular to the page.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Study Figure 30.15 carefully to understand how the wire is wrapped around the torus. The torus could be a solid material or it could be air, with a stiff wire wrapped into the shape shown in Figure 30.15 to form an empty toroid.

Categorize Because the toroid has a high degree of symmetry, we categorize this example as an Ampère's law problem.

Analyze Consider the circular amperian loop (loop 1) of radius r in the plane of Figure 30.15. By symmetry, the magnitude of the field is constant on this circle and tangent to it, so $\vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = B\,ds$. Furthermore, the wire passes through the loop N times, so the total current through the loop is NI.

Apply Ampère's law to loop 1:

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = B \oint ds = B(2\pi r) = \mu_0 NI$$

Solve for B:

$$B = \boxed{\frac{\mu_0 NI}{2\pi r}} \qquad (30.16)$$

Finalize This result shows that B varies as $1/r$ and hence is *nonuniform* in the region occupied by the torus. If, however, r is very large compared with the cross-sectional radius a of the torus, the field is approximately uniform inside the torus.

For an ideal toroid, in which the turns are closely spaced, the external magnetic field is close to zero, but it is not exactly zero. In Figure 30.15, imagine the radius r of the amperian loop to be either smaller than b or larger than c. In either case, the loop encloses zero net current, so $\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = 0$. You might think that this result proves that $\vec{\mathbf{B}} = 0$, but it does not. Consider the amperian loop (loop 2) on the right side of the toroid in Figure 30.15. The plane of this loop is perpendicular to the page, and the toroid passes through the loop. As charges enter the toroid as indicated by the current directions in Figure 30.15, they work their way counterclockwise around the toroid. Therefore, a current passes through the perpendicular amperian loop! This current is small, but not zero. As a result, the toroid acts as a current loop and produces a weak external field of the form shown in Figure 30.7. The reason $\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = 0$ for the amperian loops of radius $r < b$ and $r > c$ in the plane of the page is that the field lines are perpendicular to $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$, *not* because $\vec{\mathbf{B}} = 0$.

30.4 The Magnetic Field of a Solenoid

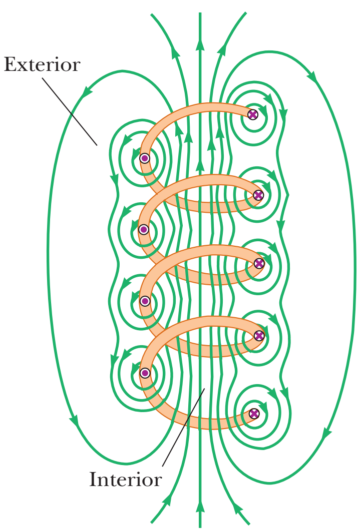


Figure 30.16 The magnetic field lines for a loosely wound solenoid.

A **solenoid** is a long wire wound in the form of a helix. With this configuration, a reasonably uniform magnetic field can be produced in the space surrounded by the turns of wire—which we shall call the *interior* of the solenoid—when the solenoid carries a current. When the turns are closely spaced, each can be approximated as a circular loop; the net magnetic field is the vector sum of the fields resulting from all the turns.

Figure 30.16 shows the magnetic field lines surrounding a loosely wound solenoid. The field lines in the interior are nearly parallel to one another, are uniformly distributed, and are close together, indicating that the field in this space is strong and almost uniform.

If the turns are closely spaced and the solenoid is of finite length, the magnetic field lines are as shown in Figure 30.17a. This field line distribution is similar to that surrounding a bar magnet (Fig. 30.17b). Hence, one end of the solenoid behaves like the north pole of a magnet and the opposite end behaves like the south pole. As the length of the solenoid increases, the interior field becomes more uniform and the exterior field becomes weaker. An *ideal solenoid* is

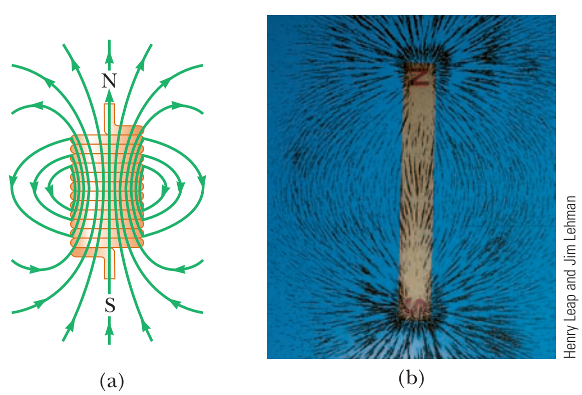


Figure 30.17 (a) Magnetic field lines for a tightly wound solenoid of finite length, carrying a steady current. The field in the interior space is strong and nearly uniform. Notice that the field lines resemble those of a bar magnet, meaning that the solenoid effectively has north and south poles. (b) The magnetic field pattern of a bar magnet, displayed with small iron filings on a sheet of paper.

approached when the turns are closely spaced and the length is much greater than the radius of the turns. Figure 30.18 shows a longitudinal cross section of part of such a solenoid carrying a current I. In this case, the external field is close to zero and the interior field is uniform over a great volume.

Consider the amperian loop (loop 1) perpendicular to the page in Figure 30.18, surrounding the ideal solenoid. This loop encloses a small current as the charges in the wire move coil by coil along the length of the solenoid. Therefore, there is a nonzero magnetic field outside the solenoid. It is a weak field, with circular field lines, like those due to a line of current as in Figure 30.4. For an ideal solenoid, this weak field is the only field external to the solenoid. We could eliminate this field in Figure 30.18 by adding a second layer of turns of wire outside the first layer, with the current carried along the axis of the solenoid in the opposite direction compared with the first layer. Then the net current along the axis is zero.

We can use Ampère's law to obtain a quantitative expression for the interior magnetic field in an ideal solenoid. Because the solenoid is ideal, $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ in the interior space is uniform and parallel to the axis and the magnetic field lines in the exterior space form circles around the solenoid. The planes of these circles are perpendicular to the page. Consider the rectangular path (loop 2) of length ℓ and width w shown in Figure 30.18. Let's apply Ampère's law to this path by evaluating the integral of $\vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ over each side of the rectangle. The contribution along side 3 is zero because the magnetic field lines are perpendicular to the path in this region. The contributions from sides 2 and 4 are both zero, again because $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is perpendicular to $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ along these paths, both inside and outside the solenoid. Side 1 gives a contribution to the integral because along this path $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is uniform and parallel to $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$. The integral over the closed rectangular path is therefore

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = \int_{\text{path 1}} \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = B \int_{\text{path 1}} ds = B\ell$$

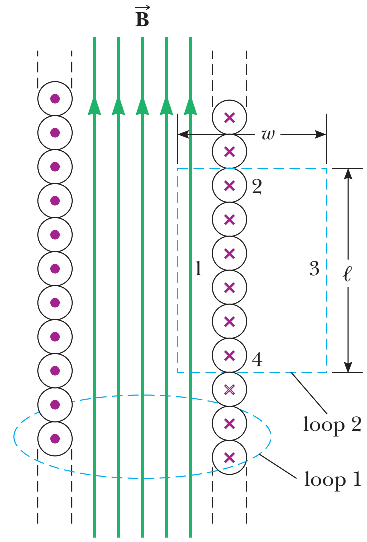


Figure 30.18 Cross-sectional view of an ideal solenoid, where the interior magnetic field is uniform and the exterior field is close to zero. Ampère's law applied to the circular path near the bottom whose plane is perpendicular to the page can be used to show that there is a weak field outside the solenoid. Ampère's law applied to the rectangular dashed path in the plane of the page can be used to calculate the magnitude of the interior field.

The right side of Ampère's law involves the total current I through the area bounded by the path of integration. In this case, the total current through the rectangular path equals the current through each turn multiplied by the number of turns. If N is the number of turns in the length ℓ, the total current through the rectangle is NI. Therefore, Ampère's law applied to this path gives

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = B\ell = \mu_0 NI$$

$$\boxed{B = \mu_0 \frac{N}{\ell} I = \mu_0 nI} \qquad \textbf{(30.17)}$$

◀ Magnetic field inside a solenoid

where $n = N/\ell$ is the number of turns per unit length.

We also could obtain this result by reconsidering the magnetic field of a toroid (see Example 30.6). If the radius r of the torus in Figure 30.15 containing N turns is much greater than the toroid's cross-sectional radius a, a short section of the toroid approximates a solenoid for which $n = N/2\pi r$. In this limit, Equation 30.16 agrees with Equation 30.17.

Equation 30.17 is valid only for points near the center (that is, far from the ends) of a very long solenoid. As you might expect, the field near each end is smaller than the value given by Equation 30.17. At the very end of a long solenoid, the magnitude of the field is half the magnitude at the center (see Problem 36).

Quick Quiz 30.5 Consider a solenoid that is very long compared with its radius. Of the following choices, what is the most effective way to increase the magnetic field in the interior of the solenoid? (a) double its length, keeping the number of turns per unit length constant (b) reduce its radius by half, keeping the number of turns per unit length constant (c) overwrap the entire solenoid with an additional layer of current-carrying wire

30.5 Gauss's Law in Magnetism

The flux associated with a magnetic field is defined in a manner similar to that used to define electric flux (see Eq. 24.3). Consider an element of area dA on an arbitrarily shaped surface as shown in Figure 30.19. If the magnetic field at this element is $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$, the magnetic flux through the element is $\vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{A}}$, where $d\vec{\mathbf{A}}$ is a vector that is perpendicular to the surface and has a magnitude equal to the area dA. Therefore, the total magnetic flux Φ_B through the surface is

Definition of magnetic flux ▶

$$\Phi_B \equiv \int \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{A}} \tag{30.18}$$

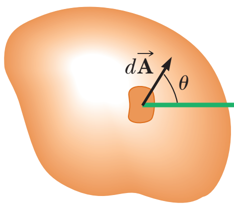


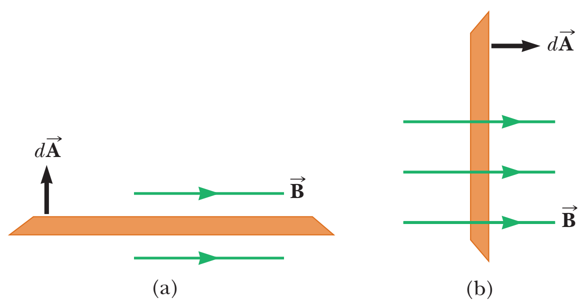
Figure 30.19 The magnetic flux through an area element dA is $\vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{A}} = B\,dA\cos\theta$, where $d\vec{\mathbf{A}}$ is a vector perpendicular to the surface.

Consider the special case of a plane of area A in a uniform field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ that makes an angle θ with $d\vec{\mathbf{A}}$. The magnetic flux through the plane in this case is

$$\Phi_B = BA\cos\theta \tag{30.19}$$

If the magnetic field is parallel to the plane as in Active Figure 30.20a, then $\theta = 90°$ and the flux through the plane is zero. If the field is perpendicular to the plane as in Active Figure 30.20b, then $\theta = 0$ and the flux through the plane is BA (the maximum value).

The unit of magnetic flux is $\text{T} \cdot \text{m}^2$, which is defined as a *weber* (Wb); $1\ \text{Wb} = 1\ \text{T} \cdot \text{m}^2$.



ACTIVE FIGURE 30.20

Magnetic flux through a plane lying in a magnetic field. (a) The flux through the plane is zero when the magnetic field is parallel to the plane surface. (b) The flux through the plane is a maximum when the magnetic field is perpendicular to the plane.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to rotate the plane and change the value of the field to see the effect on the flux.

EXAMPLE 30.7 Magnetic Flux Through a Rectangular Loop

A rectangular loop of width a and length b is located near a long wire carrying a current I (Fig. 30.21). The distance between the wire and the closest side of the loop is c. The wire is parallel to the long side of the loop. Find the total magnetic flux through the loop due to the current in the wire.

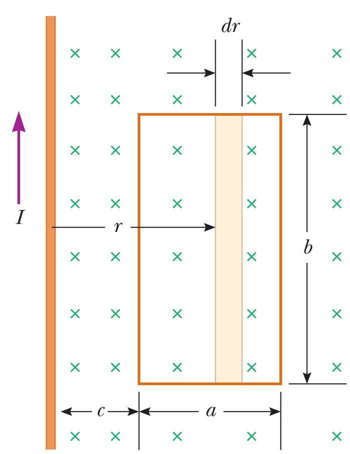


Figure 30.21 (Example 30.7) The magnetic field due to the wire carrying a current I is not uniform over the rectangular loop.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize We know that the magnetic field is a function of distance r from a long wire. Therefore, the magnetic field varies over the area of the rectangular loop.

Categorize Because the magnetic field varies over the area of the loop, we must integrate over this area to find the total flux.

Analyze Noting that $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is parallel to $d\vec{\mathbf{A}}$ at any point within the loop, find the magnetic flux through the rectangular area using Equation 30.18 and incorporate Equation 30.14 for the magnetic field:

$$\Phi_B = \int \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{A}} = \int B\,dA = \int \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi r}\,dA$$

Express the area element (the tan strip in Fig. 30.21) as $dA = b\,dr$ and substitute:

$$\Phi_B = \int \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi r}\,b\,dr = \frac{\mu_0 I b}{2\pi} \int \frac{dr}{r}$$

Integrate from $r = c$ to $r = a + c$:

$$\Phi_B = \frac{\mu_0 I b}{2\pi} \int_c^{a+c} \frac{dr}{r} = \frac{\mu_0 I b}{2\pi} \ln r \Big|_c^{a+c}$$

$$= \frac{\mu_0 I b}{2\pi} \ln\left(\frac{a+c}{c}\right) = \boxed{\frac{\mu_0 I b}{2\pi} \ln\left(1 + \frac{a}{c}\right)}$$

Finalize Notice how the flux depends on the size of the loop. Increasing either a or b increases the flux as expected. If c becomes large such that the loop is very far from the wire, the flux approaches zero, also as expected. If c goes to zero, the flux becomes infinite. In principle, this infinite value occurs because the field becomes infinite at $r = 0$ (assuming an infinitesimally thin wire). That will not happen in reality because the thickness of the wire prevents the left edge of the loop from reaching $r = 0$.

In Chapter 24, we found that the electric flux through a closed surface surrounding a net charge is proportional to that charge (Gauss's law). In other words, the number of electric field lines leaving the surface depends only on the net charge within it. This behavior exists because electric field lines originate and terminate on electric charges.

The situation is quite different for magnetic fields, which are continuous and form closed loops. In other words, as illustrated by the magnetic field lines of a current in Figure 30.4 and of a bar magnet in Figure 30.22, magnetic field lines do not begin or end at any point. For any closed surface such as the one outlined by the dashed line in Figure 30.22, the number of lines entering the surface equals the number leaving the surface; therefore, the net magnetic flux is zero. In contrast, for a closed surface surrounding one charge of an electric dipole (Fig. 30.23), the net electric flux is not zero.

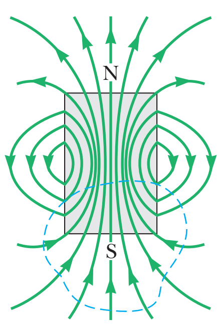


Figure 30.22 The magnetic field lines of a bar magnet form closed loops. Notice that the net magnetic flux through a closed surface surrounding one of the poles (or any other closed surface) is zero. (The dashed line represents the intersection of the surface with the page.)

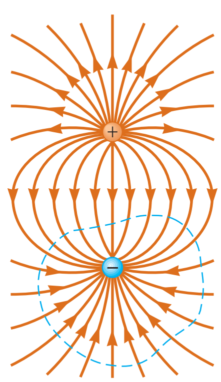


Figure 30.23 The electric field lines surrounding an electric dipole begin on the positive charge and terminate on the negative charge. The electric flux through a closed surface surrounding one of the charges is not zero.

Gauss's law in magnetism states that

Gauss's law in magnetism ►

the net magnetic flux through any closed surface is always zero:

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{A}} = 0 \tag{30.20}$$

This statement represents that isolated magnetic poles (monopoles) have never been detected and perhaps do not exist. Nonetheless, scientists continue the search because certain theories that are otherwise successful in explaining fundamental physical behavior suggest the possible existence of magnetic monopoles.

30.6 Magnetism in Matter

The magnetic field produced by a current in a coil of wire gives us a hint as to what causes certain materials to exhibit strong magnetic properties. Earlier we found that a coil like the one shown in Figure 30.17a has a north pole and a south pole. In general, *any* current loop has a magnetic field and therefore has a magnetic dipole moment, including the atomic-level current loops described in some models of the atom.

The Magnetic Moments of Atoms

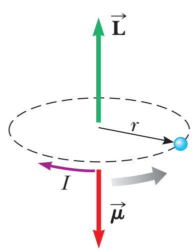


Figure 30.24 An electron moving in the direction of the gray arrow in a circular orbit of radius r has an angular momentum $\vec{\mathbf{L}}$ in one direction and a magnetic moment $\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}$ in the opposite direction. Because the electron carries a negative charge, the direction of the current due to its motion about the nucleus is opposite the direction of that motion.

Let's begin our discussion with a classical model of the atom in which electrons move in circular orbits around the much more massive nucleus. In this model, an orbiting electron constitutes a tiny current loop (because it is a moving charge) and the magnetic moment of the electron is associated with this orbital motion. Although this model has many deficiencies, some of its predictions are in good agreement with the correct theory, which is expressed in terms of quantum physics.

In our classical model, we assume an electron moves with constant speed v in a circular orbit of radius r about the nucleus as in Figure 30.24. The current I associated with this orbiting electron is its charge e divided by its period T. Using $T = 2\pi/\omega$ and $\omega = v/r$ gives

$$I = \frac{e}{T} = \frac{e\omega}{2\pi} = \frac{ev}{2\pi r}$$

The magnitude of the magnetic moment associated with this current loop is given by $\mu = IA$, where $A = \pi r^2$ is the area enclosed by the orbit. Therefore,

$$\mu = IA = \left(\frac{ev}{2\pi r}\right)\pi r^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}evr \tag{30.21}$$

Because the magnitude of the orbital angular momentum of the electron is given by $L = m_e vr$ (Eq. 11.12 with $\phi = 90°$), the magnetic moment can be written as

Orbital magnetic moment ►

$$\mu = \left(\frac{e}{2m_e}\right)L \tag{30.22}$$

This result demonstrates that **the magnetic moment of the electron is proportional to its orbital angular momentum**. Because the electron is negatively charged, the vectors $\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}$ and $\vec{\mathbf{L}}$ point in *opposite* directions. Both vectors are perpendicular to the plane of the orbit as indicated in Figure 30.24.

A fundamental outcome of quantum physics is that orbital angular momentum is quantized and is equal to multiples of $\hbar = h/2\pi = 1.05 \times 10^{-34}$ J·s, where h is

Planck's constant (see Chapter 40). The smallest nonzero value of the electron's magnetic moment resulting from its orbital motion is

$$\mu = \sqrt{2}\,\frac{e}{2m_e}\,\hbar \tag{30.23}$$

We shall see in Chapter 42 how expressions such as Equation 30.23 arise.

Because all substances contain electrons, you may wonder why most substances are not magnetic. The main reason is that, in most substances, the magnetic moment of one electron in an atom is canceled by that of another electron orbiting in the opposite direction. The net result is that, for most materials, **the magnetic effect produced by the orbital motion of the electrons is either zero or very small**.

In addition to its orbital magnetic moment, an electron (as well as protons, neutrons, and other particles) has an intrinsic property called **spin** that also contributes to its magnetic moment. Classically, the electron might be viewed as spinning about its axis as shown in Figure 30.25, but you should be very careful with the classical interpretation. The magnitude of the angular momentum $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$ associated with spin is on the same order of magnitude as the magnitude of the angular momentum $\vec{\mathbf{L}}$ due to the orbital motion. The magnitude of the spin angular momentum of an electron predicted by quantum theory is

$$S = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\,\hbar$$

The magnetic moment characteristically associated with the spin of an electron has the value

$$\mu_{\text{spin}} = \frac{e\hbar}{2m_e} \tag{30.24}$$

This combination of constants is called the **Bohr magneton μ_{B}**:

$$\mu_{\text{B}} = \frac{e\hbar}{2m_e} = 9.27 \times 10^{-24}\ \text{J/T} \tag{30.25}$$

Therefore, atomic magnetic moments can be expressed as multiples of the Bohr magneton. (Note that $1\ \text{J/T} = 1\ \text{A}\cdot\text{m}^2$.)

In atoms containing many electrons, the electrons usually pair up with their spins opposite each other; therefore, the spin magnetic moments cancel. Atoms containing an odd number of electrons, however, must have at least one unpaired electron and therefore some spin magnetic moment. The total magnetic moment of an atom is the vector sum of the orbital and spin magnetic moments, and a few examples are given in Table 30.1. Notice that helium and neon have zero moments because their individual spin and orbital moments cancel.

The nucleus of an atom also has a magnetic moment associated with its constituent protons and neutrons. The magnetic moment of a proton or neutron, however, is much smaller than that of an electron and can usually be neglected. We can understand this smaller value by inspecting Equation 30.25 and replacing the mass of the electron with the mass of a proton or a neutron. Because the masses of the proton and neutron are much greater than that of the electron, their magnetic moments are on the order of 10^3 times smaller than that of the electron.

Ferromagnetism

A small number of crystalline substances exhibit strong magnetic effects called **ferromagnetism**. Some examples of ferromagnetic substances are iron, cobalt, nickel, gadolinium, and dysprosium. These substances contain permanent atomic magnetic moments that tend to align parallel to each other even in a weak external magnetic field. Once the moments are aligned, the substance remains magnetized

PITFALL PREVENTION 30.3

The Electron Does Not Spin

The electron is *not* physically spinning. It has an intrinsic angular momentum *as if it were spinning*, but the notion of rotation for a point particle is meaningless. Rotation applies only to a *rigid object*, with an extent in space, as in Chapter 10. Spin angular momentum is actually a relativistic effect.

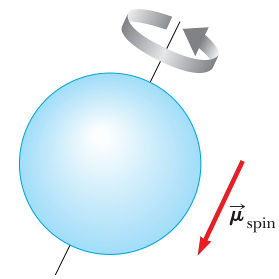


Figure 30.25 Classical model of a spinning electron. We can adopt this model to remind ourselves that electrons have an intrinsic angular momentum. The model should not be pushed too far, however; it gives an incorrect magnitude for the magnetic moment, incorrect quantum numbers, and too many degrees of freedom.

TABLE 30.1

Magnetic Moments of Some Atoms and Ions

Atom or Ion	Magnetic Moment (10^{-24} J/T)
H	9.27
He	0
Ne	0
Ce^{3+}	19.8
Yb^{3+}	37.1

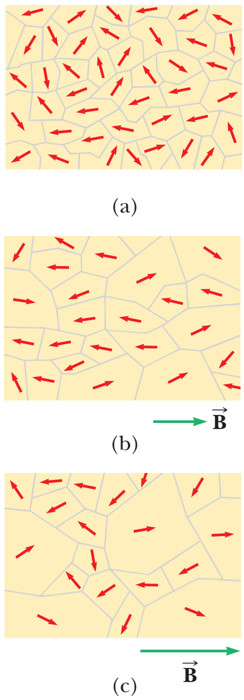


Figure 30.26 (a) Random orientation of atomic magnetic dipoles in the domains of an unmagnetized substance. (b) When an external field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is applied, the domains with components of magnetic moment in the same direction as $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ grow larger, giving the sample a net magnetization. (c) As the field is made even stronger, the domains with magnetic moment vectors not aligned with the external field become very small.

after the external field is removed. This permanent alignment is due to a strong coupling between neighboring moments, a coupling that can be understood only in quantum-mechanical terms.

All ferromagnetic materials are made up of microscopic regions called **domains**, regions within which all magnetic moments are aligned. These domains have volumes of about 10^{-12} to 10^{-8} m^3 and contain 10^{17} to 10^{21} atoms. The boundaries between the various domains having different orientations are called **domain walls**. In an unmagnetized sample, the magnetic moments in the domains are randomly oriented so that the net magnetic moment is zero as in Figure 30.26a. When the sample is placed in an external magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$, the size of those domains with magnetic moments aligned with the field grows, which results in a magnetized sample as in Figure 30.26b. As the external field becomes very strong as in Figure 30.26c, the domains in which the magnetic moments are not aligned with the field become very small. When the external field is removed, the sample may retain a net magnetization in the direction of the original field. At ordinary temperatures, thermal agitation is not sufficient to disrupt this preferred orientation of magnetic moments.

Magnetic computer disks store information by alternating the direction of $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ for portions of a thin layer of ferromagnetic material. Floppy disks have the layer on a circular sheet of plastic. Hard disks have several rigid platters with magnetic coatings on each side. Audio tapes and videotapes work the same way as floppy disks except that the ferromagnetic material is on a very long strip of plastic. Tiny coils of wire in a recording head are placed close to the magnetic material (which is moving rapidly past the head). Varying the current in the coils creates a magnetic field that magnetizes the recording material. To retrieve the information, the magnetized material is moved past a playback coil. The changing magnetism of the material induces a current in the coil as discussed in Chapter 31. This current is then amplified by audio or video equipment, or it is processed by computer circuitry.

When the temperature of a ferromagnetic substance reaches or exceeds a critical temperature called the **Curie temperature**, the substance loses its residual magnetization. Below the Curie temperature, the magnetic moments are aligned and the substance is ferromagnetic. Above the Curie temperature, the thermal agitation is great enough to cause a random orientation of the moments and the substance becomes paramagnetic. Curie temperatures for several ferromagnetic substances are given in Table 30.2.

TABLE 30.2
Curie Temperatures for Several Ferromagnetic Substances

Substance	T_{Curie} (K)
Iron	1 043
Cobalt	1 394
Nickel	631
Gadolinium	317
Fe_2O_3	893

Paramagnetism

Paramagnetic substances have a small but positive magnetism resulting from the presence of atoms (or ions) that have permanent magnetic moments. These moments interact only weakly with one another and are randomly oriented in the absence of an external magnetic field. When a paramagnetic substance is placed in an external magnetic field, its atomic moments tend to line up with the field. This alignment process, however, must compete with thermal motion, which tends to randomize the magnetic moment orientations.

Diamagnetism

When an external magnetic field is applied to a diamagnetic substance, a weak magnetic moment is induced in the direction opposite the applied field, causing diamagnetic substances to be weakly repelled by a magnet. Although diamagnetism is present in all matter, its effects are much smaller than those of paramagnetism or ferromagnetism and are evident only when those other effects do not exist.

We can attain some understanding of diamagnetism by considering a classical model of two atomic electrons orbiting the nucleus in opposite directions but with the same speed. The electrons remain in their circular orbits because of the attractive electrostatic force exerted by the positively charged nucleus. Because the magnetic moments of the two electrons are equal in magnitude and opposite in direc-

Leon Lewandowski

High Field Magnet Laboratory, University of Nijmegen, The Netherlands

(*Left*) Paramagnetism: liquid oxygen, a paramagnetic material, is attracted to the poles of a magnet. (*Right*) Diamagnetism: a frog is levitated in a 16-T magnetic field at the Nijmegen High Field Magnet Laboratory in the Netherlands. The levitation force is exerted on the diamagnetic water molecules in the frog's body. The frog suffered no ill effects from the levitation experience.

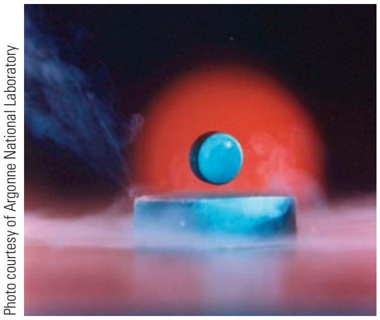


Photo courtesy of Argonne National Laboratory

Figure 30.27 An illustration of the Meissner effect, shown by this magnet suspended above a cooled ceramic superconductor disk, has become our most visual image of high-temperature superconductivity. Superconductivity is the loss of all resistance to electrical current and is a key to more-efficient energy use. In the Meissner effect, the magnet induces superconducting currents in the disk, which is cooled to $-321°F$ (77 K). The currents create a magnetic force that repels and levitates the disk.

tion, they cancel each other and the magnetic moment of the atom is zero. When an external magnetic field is applied, the electrons experience an additional magnetic force $q\vec{\mathbf{v}} \times \vec{\mathbf{B}}$. This added magnetic force combines with the electrostatic force to increase the orbital speed of the electron whose magnetic moment is antiparallel to the field and to decrease the speed of the electron whose magnetic moment is parallel to the field. As a result, the two magnetic moments of the electrons no longer cancel and the substance acquires a net magnetic moment that is opposite the applied field.

As you recall from Chapter 27, a superconductor is a substance in which the electrical resistance is zero below some critical temperature. Certain types of superconductors also exhibit perfect diamagnetism in the superconducting state. As a result, an applied magnetic field is expelled by the superconductor so that the field is zero in its interior. This phenomenon is known as the **Meissner effect**. If a permanent magnet is brought near a superconductor, the two objects repel each other. This repulsion is illustrated in Figure 30.27, which shows a small permanent magnet levitated above a superconductor maintained at 77 K.

30.7 The Magnetic Field of the Earth

When we speak of a compass magnet having a north pole and a south pole, it is more proper to say that it has a "north-seeking" pole and a "south-seeking" pole. This wording means that one pole of the magnet seeks, or points to, the north geographic pole of the Earth. Because the north pole of a magnet is attracted toward the north geographic pole of the Earth, **the Earth's south magnetic pole is located near the north geographic pole and the Earth's north magnetic pole is located near the south geographic pole**. In fact, the configuration of the Earth's magnetic field, pictured in Figure 30.28 (page 856), is very much like the one that would be achieved by burying a gigantic bar magnet deep in the interior of the Earth.

If a compass needle is suspended in bearings that allow it to rotate in the vertical plane as well as in the horizontal plane, the needle is horizontal with respect to the Earth's surface only near the equator. As the compass is moved northward, the needle rotates so that it points more and more toward the surface of the Earth. Finally, at a point near Hudson Bay in Canada, the north pole of the needle points directly downward. This site, first found in 1832, is considered to be the location of the south magnetic pole of the Earth. It is approximately 1 300 mi from the Earth's geographic North Pole, and its exact position varies slowly with time. Similarly, the north magnetic pole of the Earth is about 1 200 mi away from the Earth's geographic South Pole.

Because of this distance between the north geographic and south magnetic poles, it is only approximately correct to say that a compass needle points north.

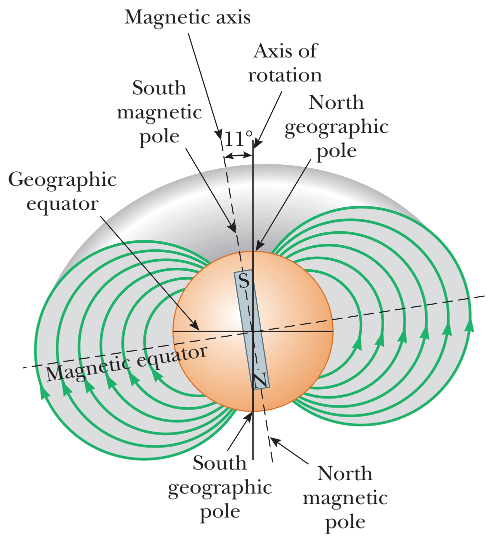


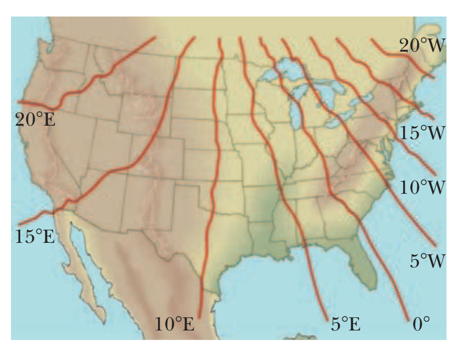
Figure 30.28 The Earth's magnetic field lines. Notice that a south magnetic pole is near the north geographic pole and a north magnetic pole is near the south geographic pole.

The difference between true north, defined as the geographic North Pole, and north indicated by a compass varies from point to point on the Earth. This difference is referred to as *magnetic declination.* For example, along a line through Florida and the Great Lakes, a compass indicates true north, whereas in the state of Washington, it aligns 25° east of true north. Figure 30.29 shows some representative values of the magnetic declination for the contiguous United States.

Although the Earth's magnetic field pattern is similar to the one that would be set up by a bar magnet deep within the Earth, it is easy to understand why the source of this magnetic field cannot be large masses of permanently magnetized material. The Earth does have large deposits of iron ore deep beneath its surface, but the high temperatures in the Earth's core prevent the iron from retaining any permanent magnetization. Scientists consider it more likely that the source of the Earth's magnetic field is convection currents in the Earth's core. Charged ions or electrons circulating in the liquid interior could produce a magnetic field just as a current loop does. There is also strong evidence that the magnitude of a planet's magnetic field is related to the planet's rate of rotation. For example, Jupiter rotates faster than the Earth, and space probes indicate that Jupiter's magnetic field is stronger than the Earth's. Venus, on the other hand, rotates more slowly than the Earth, and its magnetic field is found to be weaker. Investigation into the cause of the Earth's magnetism is ongoing.

It is interesting to point out that that the direction of the Earth's magnetic field has reversed several times during the last million years. Evidence for this reversal is provided by basalt, a type of rock that contains iron and that forms from material spewed forth by volcanic activity on the ocean floor. As the lava cools, it solidifies and retains a picture of the Earth's magnetic field direction. The rocks are dated by other means to provide a timeline for these periodic reversals of the magnetic field.

Figure 30.29 A map of the contiguous United States showing several lines of constant magnetic declination.



Summary

ThomsonNOW™ Sign in at **www.thomsonedu.com** and go to ThomsonNOW to take a practice test for this chapter.

DEFINITION

The **magnetic flux** Φ_B through a surface is defined by the surface integral

$$\Phi_B \equiv \int \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{A}} \qquad \textbf{(30.18)}$$

CONCEPTS AND PRINCIPLES

The **Biot–Savart law** says that the magnetic field $d\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ at a point P due to a length element $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ that carries a steady current I is

$$d\vec{\mathbf{B}} = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \frac{I\, d\vec{\mathbf{s}} \times \hat{\mathbf{r}}}{r^2} \qquad \textbf{(30.1)}$$

where μ_0 is the **permeability of free space**, r is the distance from the element to the point P, and $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ is a unit vector pointing from $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ toward point P. We find the total field at P by integrating this expression over the entire current distribution.

The magnetic force per unit length between two parallel wires separated by a distance a and carrying currents I_1 and I_2 has a magnitude

$$\frac{F_B}{\ell} = \frac{\mu_0 I_1 I_2}{2\pi a} \qquad \textbf{(30.12)}$$

The force is attractive if the currents are in the same direction and repulsive if they are in opposite directions.

Ampère's law says that the line integral of $\vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ around any closed path equals $\mu_0 I$, where I is the total steady current through any surface bounded by the closed path:

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = \mu_0 I \qquad \textbf{(30.13)}$$

The magnitude of the magnetic field at a distance r from a long, straight wire carrying an electric current I is

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi r} \qquad \textbf{(30.14)}$$

The field lines are circles concentric with the wire.

The magnitudes of the fields inside a toroid and solenoid are

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 N I}{2\pi r} \quad \text{(toroid)} \qquad \textbf{(30.16)}$$

$$B = \mu_0 \frac{N}{\ell} I = \mu_0 n I \quad \text{(solenoid)} \qquad \textbf{(30.17)}$$

where N is the total number of turns.

Gauss's law of magnetism states that the net magnetic flux through any closed surface is zero.

Substances can be classified into one of three categories that describe their magnetic behavior. **Diamagnetic** substances are those in which the magnetic moment is weak and opposite the applied magnetic field. **Paramagnetic** substances are those in which the magnetic moment is weak and in the same direction as the applied magnetic field. In **ferromagnetic** substances, interactions between atoms cause magnetic moments to align and create a strong magnetization that remains after the external field is removed.

Questions

☐ denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide;* **O** denotes objective question

1. O What creates a magnetic field? Choose every correct answer. (a) a stationary object with electric charge (b) a moving object with electric charge (c) a stationary conductor carrying electric current (d) a difference in electric potential (e) an electric resistor. *Note:* In Chapter 34, we will see that a changing electric field also creates a magnetic field.

2. O A long, vertical, metallic wire carries downward electric current. **(i)** What is the direction of the magnetic field it creates at a point 2 cm horizontally east of the center of the wire? (a) north (b) south (c) east (d) west (e) up (f) down **(ii)** What would be the direction of the field if the current consisted of positive charges moving downward, instead of electrons moving upward? Choose from the same possibilities.

3. O Suppose you are facing a tall makeup mirror on a vertical wall. Fluorescent tubes framing the mirror carry a clockwise electric current. **(i)** What is the direction of the magnetic field created by that current at a point slightly to the right of the center of the mirror? (a) up (b) down (c) left (d) right (e) horizontally toward you (f) away from you **(ii)** What is the direction of the field the current creates at a point on the wall outside the frame to the right? Choose from the same possibilities.

☐4. Explain why two parallel wires carrying currents in opposite directions repel each other.

5. O In Active Figure 30.8, assume $I_1 = 2$ A and $I_2 = 6$ A. What is the relationship between the magnitude F_1 of the force exerted on wire 1 and the magnitude F_2 of the force exerted on wire 2? (a) $F_1 = 6F_2$ (b) $F_1 = 3F_2$ (c) $F_1 = F_2$ (d) $F_1 = F_2/3$ (e) $F_1 = F_2/6$

6. O Answer each question yes or no. (a) Is it possible for each of three stationary charged particles to exert a force of attraction on the other two? (b) Is it possible for each of three stationary charged particles to repel both of the other particles? (c) Is it possible for each of three current-carrying metal wires to attract the other two? (d) Is it possible for each of three current-carrying metal wires to repel both of the other wires? André-Marie Ampère's experiments on electromagnetism are models of logical precision and included observation of the phenomena referred to in this question.

7. Is Ampère's law valid for all closed paths surrounding a conductor? Why is it not useful for calculating $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ for all such paths?

8. Compare Ampère's law with the Biot–Savart law. Which is more generally useful for calculating $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ for a current-carrying conductor?

☐9. A hollow copper tube carries a current along its length. Why is $\vec{\mathbf{B}} = 0$ inside the tube? Is $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ nonzero outside the tube?

10. O (i) What happens to the magnitude of the magnetic field inside a long solenoid if the current is doubled? (a) It becomes 4 times larger. (b) It becomes twice as large. (c) It is unchanged. (d) It becomes one-half as large. (e) It becomes one-fourth as large. **(ii)** What happens to the field if instead the length of the solenoid is doubled, with the number of turns remaining the same? Choose from the same possibilities. **(iii)** What happens to the field if the number of turns is doubled, with the length remaining the same? Choose from the same possibilities. **(iv)** What happens to the field if the radius is doubled? Choose from the same possibilities.

11. O A long solenoid with closely spaced turns carries electric current. Does each turn of wire exert (a) an attractive force on the next adjacent turn, (b) a repulsive force on the next adjacent turn, (c) zero force on the next adjacent turn, or (d) either an attractive or a repulsive force on the next turn, depending on the direction of current in the solenoid?

12. O A uniform magnetic field is directed along the x axis. For what orientation of a flat, rectangular coil is the flux through the rectangle a maximum? (a) It is a maximum in the xy plane. (b) It is a maximum in the xz plane. (c) It is a maximum in the yz plane. (d) The flux has the same nonzero value for all these orientations. (e) The flux is zero in all cases.

13. The quantity $\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ in Ampère's law is called *magnetic circulation.* Active Figure 30.10 and Figure 30.13 show paths around which the magnetic circulation was evaluated. Each of these paths encloses an area. What is the magnetic flux through each area? Explain your answer.

14. O (a) Two stationary charged particles exert forces of attraction on each other. One of the particles has negative charge. Is the other positive or negative? (b) Is the net electric field at a point halfway between the particles larger, smaller, or the same in magnitude as the field due to one charge by itself? (c) Two straight, vertical, current-carrying wires exert forces of attraction on each other. One of them carries downward current. Does the other wire carry upward or downward current? (d) Is the net magnetic field at a point halfway between the wires larger, smaller, or the same in magnitude as the field due to one wire by itself?

15. O Rank the magnitudes of the following magnetic fields from the largest to the smallest, noting any cases of equality. (a) the field 2 cm away from a long, straight wire carrying a current of 3 A (b) the field at the center of a flat, compact, circular coil, 2 cm in radius, with 10 turns, carrying a current of 0.3 A (c) the field at the center of a solenoid 2 cm in radius and 200 cm long, with 1 000 turns, carrying a current of 0.3 A (d) the field at the center of a long, straight metal bar, 2 cm in radius, carrying a current of 300 A (e) a field of 1 mT

16. One pole of a magnet attracts a nail. Will the other pole of the magnet attract the nail? Explain. Explain how a magnet sticks to a refrigerator door.

17. A magnet attracts a piece of iron. The iron can then attract another piece of iron. On the basis of domain alignment, explain what happens in each piece of iron.

18. Why does hitting a magnet with a hammer cause the magnetism to be reduced?

19. Which way would a compass point if you were at the north magnetic pole of the Earth?

20. Figure Q30.20 shows four permanent magnets, each having a hole through its center. Notice that the blue and yellow magnets are levitated above the red ones. (a) How does this levitation occur? (b) What purpose do the rods serve? (c) What can you say about the poles of the magnets from this observation? (d) If the upper magnet were inverted, what do you suppose would happen?

© Thomson Learning/Charles D. Winters

Figure Q30.20

Problems

WebAssign The Problems from this chapter may be assigned online in WebAssign.

ThomsonNOW™ Sign in at **www.thomsonedu.com** and go to ThomsonNOW to assess your understanding of this chapter's topics with additional quizzing and conceptual questions.

1, 2, 3 denotes straightforward, intermediate, challenging; ☐ denotes full solution available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide;* ▲ denotes coached solution with hints available at **www.thomsonedu.com;** ▭ denotes developing symbolic reasoning; ● denotes asking for qualitative reasoning; 🖥 denotes computer useful in solving problem

Section 30.1 The Biot–Savart Law

1. In Niels Bohr's 1913 model of the hydrogen atom, an electron circles the proton at a distance of 5.29×10^{-11} m with a speed of 2.19×10^6 m/s. Compute the magnitude of the magnetic field this motion produces at the location of the proton.

2. Calculate the magnitude of the magnetic field at a point 100 cm from a long, thin conductor carrying a current of 1.00 A.

3. (a) A conductor in the shape of a square loop of edge length $\ell = 0.400$ m carries a current $I = 10.0$ A as shown in Figure P30.3. Calculate the magnitude and direction of the magnetic field at the center of the square. (b) **What If?** If this conductor is formed into a single circular turn and carries the same current, what is the value of the magnetic field at the center?

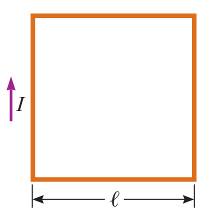


Figure P30.3

4. A conductor consists of a circular loop of radius R and two straight, long sections as shown in Figure P30.4. The wire lies in the plane of the paper and carries a current I. Find an expression for the vector magnetic field at the center of the loop.

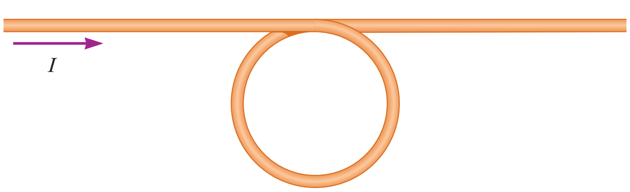


Figure P30.4

5. ▲ Determine the magnetic field at a point P located a distance x from the corner of an infinitely long wire bent at a right angle as shown in Figure P30.5. The wire carries a steady current I.

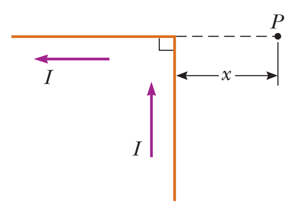


Figure P30.5

6. 🖥 Consider a flat, circular current loop of radius R carrying current I. Choose the x axis to be along the axis of the loop, with the origin at the center of the loop. Plot a graph of the ratio of the magnitude of the magnetic field at coordinate x to that at the origin, for $x = 0$ to $x = 5R$. It may be useful to use a programmable calculator or a computer to solve this problem.

7. Two long, straight, parallel wires carry currents that are directed perpendicular to the page as shown in Figure P30.7. Wire 1 carries a current I_1 into the page (in the $-z$ direction) and passes through the x axis at $x = +a$. Wire 2 passes through the x axis at $x = -2a$ and carries an unknown current I_2. The total magnetic field at the origin due to the current-carrying wires has the magnitude $2\mu_0 I_1/(2\pi a)$. The current I_2 can have either of two possible values. (a) Find the value of I_2 with the smaller magnitude, stating it in terms of I_1 and giving its direction. (b) Find the other possible value of I_2.

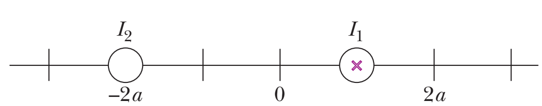


Figure P30.7

8. A long, straight wire carries current I. A right-angle bend is made in the middle of the wire. The bend forms an arc of a circle of radius r as shown in Figure P30.8. Determine the magnetic field at the center of the arc.

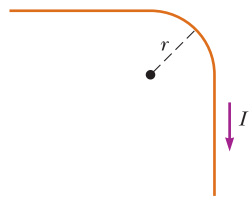


Figure P30.8

9. One long wire carries current 30.0 A to the left along the x axis. A second long wire carries current 50.0 A to the right along the line (y = 0.280 m, z = 0). (a) Where in the plane of the two wires is the total magnetic field equal to zero? (b) A particle with a charge of $-2.00\ \mu$C is moving with a velocity of $150\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ Mm/s along the line (y = 0.100 m, z = 0). Calculate the vector magnetic force acting on the particle. (c) **What If?** A uniform electric field is applied to allow this particle to pass through this region undeflected. Calculate the required vector electric field.

10. A current path shaped as shown in Figure P30.10 produces a magnetic field at P, the center of the arc. If the arc subtends an angle of 30.0° and the radius of the arc is 0.600 m, what are the magnitude and direction of the field produced at P if the current is 3.00 A?

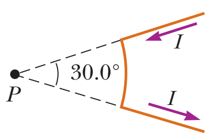


Figure P30.10

11. Three long, parallel conductors carry currents of I = 2.00 A. Figure P30.11 is an end view of the conductors, with each current coming out of the page. Taking a = 1.00 cm, determine the magnitude and direction of the magnetic field at points A, B, and C.

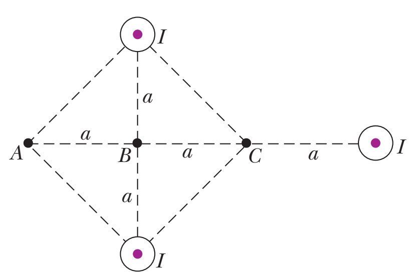


Figure P30.11

12. ● In a long, straight, vertical lightning stroke, electrons move downward and positive ions move upward, to constitute a current of magnitude 20.0 kA. At a location 50.0 m east of the middle of the stroke, a free electron drifts through the air toward the west with a speed of 300 m/s. (a) Find the vector force the lightning stroke exerts on the electron. Make a sketch showing the various vectors involved. Ignore the effect of the Earth's magnetic field. (b) Find the radius of the electron's path. Is it a good approximation to model the electron as moving in a uniform field? Explain your answer. (c) If it does not collide with any obstacles, how many revolutions will the electron complete during the 60.0-μs duration of the lightning stroke?

13. ● A wire carrying a current I is bent into the shape of an equilateral triangle of side L. (a) Find the magnitude of the magnetic field at the center of the triangle. (b) At a point halfway between the center and any vertex, is the field stronger or weaker than at the center? Give a qualitative argument for your answer.

14. Determine the magnetic field (in terms of I, a, and d) at the origin due to the current loop in Figure P30.14.

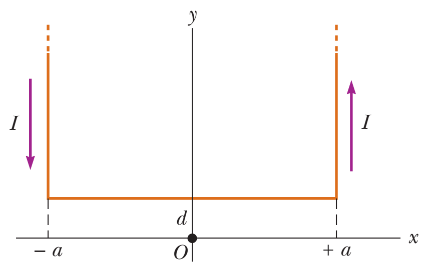


Figure P30.14

15. Two long, parallel conductors carry currents I_1 = 3.00 A and I_2 = 3.00 A, both directed into the page in Figure P30.15. Determine the magnitude and direction of the resultant magnetic field at P.

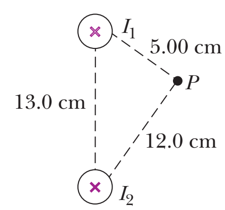


Figure P30.15

16. The idea that a magnetic field can have therapeutic value has been around for centuries. A rare-earth magnet sold to relieve joint pain is a disk 1.20 mm thick and 3.50 mm in diameter. Its circular flat faces are its north and south poles. Assume it is accurately modeled as a magnetic dipole. Also assume Equation 30.10 describes the magnetic field it produces at all points along its axis. The field is strongest, with the value 40.0 mT, at the center of each flat face. At what distance from the surface is the magnitude of the magnetic field like that of the Earth, with a value of 50.0 μT?

Section 30.2 The Magnetic Force Between Two Parallel Conductors

17. In Figure P30.17, the current in the long, straight wire is I_1 = 5.00 A and the wire lies in the plane of the rectangular loop, which carries the current I_2 = 10.0 A. The dimensions are c = 0.100 m, a = 0.150 m, and ℓ = 0.450 m. Find the magnitude and direction of the net force exerted on the loop by the magnetic field created by the wire.

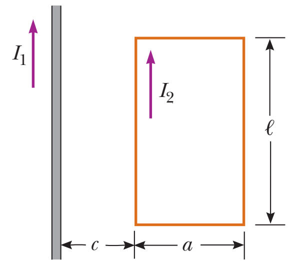


Figure P30.17

18. Two long, parallel conductors, separated by 10.0 cm, carry currents in the same direction. The first wire carries current $I_1 = 5.00$ A, and the second carries $I_2 = 8.00$ A. (a) What is the magnitude of the magnetic field created by I_1 at the location of I_2? (b) What is the force per unit length exerted by I_1 on I_2? (c) What is the magnitude of the magnetic field created by I_2 at the location of I_1? (d) What is the force per length exerted by I_2 on I_1?

19. Two long, parallel wires are attracted to each other by a force per unit length of 320 μN/m when they are separated by a vertical distance of 0.500 m. The current in the upper wire is 20.0 A to the right. Determine the location of the line in the plane of the two wires along which the total magnetic field is zero.

20. ● Three long wires (wire 1, wire 2, and wire 3) hang vertically. The distance between wire 1 and wire 2 is 20.0 cm. On the left, wire 1 carries an upward current of 1.50 A. To the right, wire 2 carries a downward current of 4.00 A. Wire 3 is to be located such that when it carries a certain current, each wire experiences no net force. (a) Is this situation possible? Is it possible in more than one way? Describe (b) the position of wire 3 and (c) the magnitude and direction of the current in wire 3.

21. ● The unit of magnetic flux is named for Wilhelm Weber. A practical-size unit of magnetic field is named for Johann Karl Friedrich Gauss. Both were scientists at Göttingen, Germany. Along with their individual accomplishments, together they built a telegraph in 1833. It consisted of a battery and switch, at one end of a transmission line 3 km long, operating an electromagnet at the other end. (André Ampère suggested electrical signaling in 1821; Samuel Morse built a telegraph line between Baltimore and Washington, D.C., in 1844.) Suppose Weber and Gauss's transmission line was as diagrammed in Figure P30.21. Two long, parallel wires, each having a mass per unit length of 40.0 g/m, are supported in a horizontal plane by strings 6.00 cm long. When both wires carry the same current I, the wires repel each other so that the angle θ between the supporting strings is 16.0°. (a) Are the currents in the same direction or in opposite directions? (b) Find the magnitude of the current. (c) If this apparatus were taken to Mars, would the current required to separate the wires by 16° be larger or smaller than on Earth? Why?

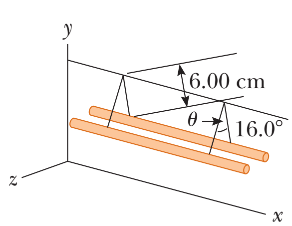


Figure P30.21

22. ● Two parallel copper conductors are each 0.500 m long. They carry 10.0-A currents in opposite directions. (a) What center-to-center separation must the conductors have if they are to repel each other with a force of 1.00 N? (b) Is this situation physically possible? Explain.

Section 30.3 Ampère's Law

23. ▲ Four long, parallel conductors carry equal currents of $I = 5.00$ A. Figure P30.23 is an end view of the conductors. The current direction is into the page at points A and B (indicated by the crosses) and out of the page at C and D (indicated by the dots). Calculate the magnitude and direction of the magnetic field at point P, located at the center of the square of edge length 0.200 m.

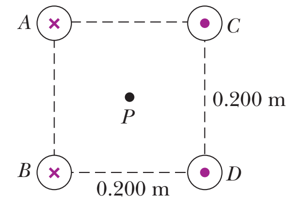


Figure P30.23

24. A long, straight wire lies on a horizontal table and carries a current of 1.20 μA. In a vacuum, a proton moves parallel to the wire (opposite the current) with a constant speed of 2.30×10^4 m/s at a distance d above the wire. Determine the value of d. You may ignore the magnetic field due to the Earth.

25. Figure P30.25 is a cross-sectional view of a coaxial cable. The center conductor is surrounded by a rubber layer, which is surrounded by an outer conductor, which is surrounded by another rubber layer. In a particular application, the current in the inner conductor is 1.00 A out of the page and the current in the outer conductor is 3.00 A into the page. Determine the magnitude and direction of the magnetic field at points a and b.

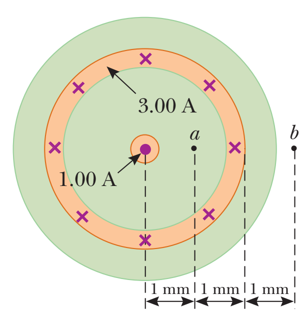


Figure P30.25

26. The magnetic field 40.0 cm away from a long,straight wire carrying current 2.00 A is 1.00 μT. (a) At what distance is it 0.100 μT? (b) **What If?** At one instant, the two conductors in a long household extension cord carry equal 2.00-A currents in opposite directions. The two wires are 3.00 mm apart. Find the magnetic field 40.0 cm away

from the middle of the straight cord, in the plane of the two wires. (c) At what distance is it one-tenth as large? (d) The center wire in a coaxial cable carries current 2.00 A in one direction, and the sheath around it carries current 2.00 A in the opposite direction. What magnetic field does the cable create at points outside?

27. ● ▲ A packed bundle of 100 long, straight, insulated wires forms a cylinder of radius $R = 0.500$ cm. (a) If each wire carries 2.00 A, what are the magnitude and direction of the magnetic force per unit length acting on a wire located 0.200 cm from the center of the bundle? (b) **What If?** Would a wire on the outer edge of the bundle experience a force greater or smaller than the value calculated in part (a)? Give a qualitative argument for your answer.

28. The magnetic coils of a tokamak fusion reactor are in the shape of a toroid having an inner radius of 0.700 m and an outer radius of 1.30 m. The toroid has 900 turns of large-diameter wire, each of which carries a current of 14.0 kA. Find the magnitude of the magnetic field inside the toroid along (a) the inner radius and (b) the outer radius.

29. Consider a column of electric current passing through plasma (ionized gas). Filaments of current within the column are magnetically attracted to one another. They can crowd together to yield a very great current density and a very strong magnetic field in a small region. Sometimes the current can be cut off momentarily by this *pinch effect*. (In a metallic wire, a pinch effect is not important because the current-carrying electrons repel one another with electric forces.) The pinch effect can be demonstrated by making an empty aluminum can carry a large current parallel to its axis. Let R represent the radius of the can and I the upward current, uniformly distributed over its curved wall. Determine the magnetic field (a) just inside the wall and (b) just outside. (c) Determine the pressure on the wall.

30. Niobium metal becomes a superconductor when cooled below 9 K. Its superconductivity is destroyed when the surface magnetic field exceeds 0.100 T. Determine the maximum current a 2.00-mm-diameter niobium wire can carry and remain superconducting, in the absence of any external magnetic field.

31. A long, cylindrical conductor of radius R carries a current I as shown in Figure P30.31. The current density J, however, is not uniform over the cross section of the conductor but is a function of the radius according to $J = br$, where b is a constant. Find an expression for the magnetic field magnitude B (a) at a distance $r_1 < R$ and (b) at a distance $r_2 > R$, measured from the axis.

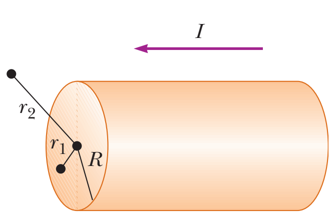


Figure P30.31

32. In Figure P30.32, both currents in the infinitely long wires are 8.00 A in the negative x direction. The wires are separated by the distance $2a = 6.00$ cm. (a) Sketch the magnetic field pattern in the yz plane. (b) What is the value of the magnetic field at the origin? At ($y = 0$, $z \to \infty$)? (c) Find the magnetic field at points along the z axis as a function of z. (d) At what distance d along the positive z axis is the magnetic field a maximum? (e) What is this maximum value?

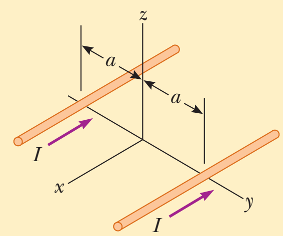


Figure P30.32

33. An infinite sheet of current lying in the yz plane carries a surface current of linear density J_s. The current is in the y direction, and J_s represents the current per unit length measured along the z axis. Figure P30.33 is an edge view of the sheet. Prove that the magnetic field near the sheet is parallel to the sheet and perpendicular to the current direction, with magnitude $\mu_0 J_s/2$. *Suggestion:* Use Ampère's law and evaluate the line integral for a rectangular path around the sheet, represented by the dashed line in Figure P30.33.

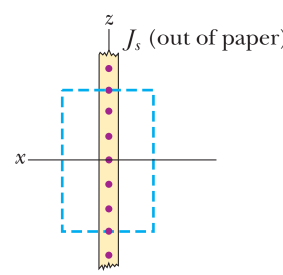


Figure P30.33

Section 30.4 The Magnetic Field of a Solenoid

34. ● You are given a certain volume of copper from which you can make copper wire. To insulate the wire, you can have as much enamel as you like. You will use the wire to make a tightly wound solenoid 20 cm long having the greatest possible magnetic field at the center and using a power supply that can deliver a current of 5 A. The solenoid can be wrapped with wire in one or more layers. (a) Should you make the wire long and thin or shorter and thick? Explain. (b) Should you make the solenoid radius small or large? Explain.

35. ▲ What current is required in the windings of a long solenoid that has 1 000 turns uniformly distributed over a length of 0.400 m to produce at the center of the solenoid a magnetic field of magnitude 1.00×10^{-4} T?

36. Consider a solenoid of length ℓ and radius R, containing N closely spaced turns and carrying a steady current I. (a) In terms of these parameters, find the magnetic field at a point along the axis as a function of distance a from the end of the solenoid. (b) Show that as ℓ becomes very long, B approaches $\mu_0 NI/2\ell$ at each end of the solenoid.

2 = intermediate; 3 = challenging; ☐ = SSM/SG; ▲ = ThomsonNOW; ▭ = symbolic reasoning; ● = qualitative reasoning

37. A single-turn square loop of wire, 2.00 cm on each edge, carries a clockwise current of 0.200 A. The loop is inside a solenoid, with the plane of the loop perpendicular to the magnetic field of the solenoid. The solenoid has 30 turns/cm and carries a clockwise current of 15.0 A. Find the force on each side of the loop and the torque acting on the loop.

38. A solenoid 10.0 cm in diameter and 75.0 cm long is made from copper wire of diameter 0.100 cm, with very thin insulation. The wire is wound onto a cardboard tube in a single layer, with adjacent turns touching each other. What power must be delivered to the solenoid if it is to produce a field of 8.00 mT at its center?

Section 30.5 Gauss's Law in Magnetism

39. A cube of edge length $\ell = 2.50$ cm is positioned as shown in Figure P30.39. A uniform magnetic field given by $\vec{\mathbf{B}} = (5\hat{\mathbf{i}} + 4\hat{\mathbf{j}} + 3\hat{\mathbf{k}})$ T exists throughout the region. (a) Calculate the magnetic flux through the shaded face. (b) What is the total flux through the six faces?

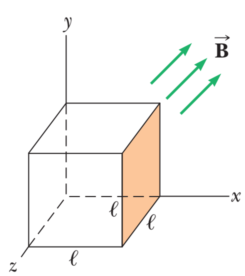


Figure P30.39

40. Consider the hemispherical closed surface in Figure P30.40. The hemisphere is in a uniform magnetic field that makes an angle θ with the vertical. Calculate the magnetic flux through (a) the flat surface S_1 and (b) the hemispherical surface S_2.

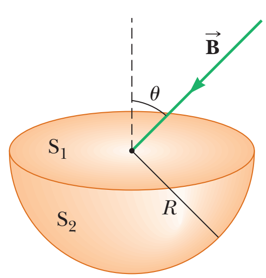


Figure P30.40

41. A solenoid 2.50 cm in diameter and 30.0 cm long has 300 turns and carries 12.0 A. (a) Calculate the flux through the surface of a disk of radius 5.00 cm that is positioned perpendicular to and centered on the axis of the solenoid, as shown in Figure P30.41a. (b) Figure P30.41b shows an enlarged end view of the same solenoid. Calculate the flux through the blue area, which is an annulus with an inner radius of 0.400 cm and an outer radius of 0.800 cm.

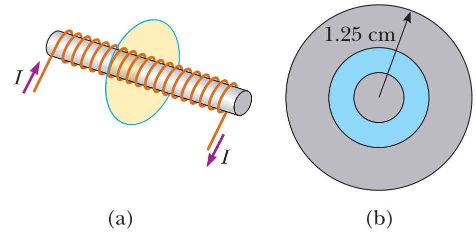


Figure P30.41

42. *Compare this problem with Problem 65 in Chapter 24.* Consider a magnetic field that is uniform in direction throughout a certain volume. Can it be uniform in magnitude? Must it be uniform in magnitude? Give evidence for your answers.

Section 30.6 Magnetism in Matter

43. At *saturation,* when nearly all the atoms have their magnetic moments aligned, the magnetic field in a sample of iron can be 2.00 T. If each electron contributes a magnetic moment of 9.27×10^{-24} A · m^2 (one Bohr magneton), how many electrons per atom contribute to the saturated field of iron? The number density of atoms in iron is approximately 8.50×10^{28} atoms/m^3.

Section 30.7 The Magnetic Field of the Earth

44. A circular coil of 5 turns and a diameter of 30.0 cm is oriented in a vertical plane with its axis perpendicular to the horizontal component of the Earth's magnetic field. A horizontal compass placed at the center of the coil is made to deflect 45.0° from magnetic north by a current of 0.600 A in the coil. (a) What is the horizontal component of the Earth's magnetic field? (b) The current in the coil is switched off. A "dip needle" is a magnetic compass mounted so that it can rotate in a vertical north–south plane. At this location, a dip needle makes an angle of 13.0° from the vertical. What is the total magnitude of the Earth's magnetic field at this location?

45. The magnetic moment of the Earth is approximately 8.00×10^{22} A · m^2. (a) Imagine that the planetary magnetic field were caused by the complete magnetization of a huge iron deposit. How many unpaired electrons would participate? (b) At two unpaired electrons per iron atom, how many kilograms of iron would compose the deposit? Iron has a density of 7 900 kg/m^3 and approximately 8.50×10^{28} iron atoms/m^3.

46. ● A particular location on the Earth's surface is characterized by a value of gravitational field, a value of magnetic field, and a value of atmospheric pressure. (a) Which of these quantities are vectors and which are scalars? (b) Determine a value for each quantity at your current location. Include the direction of each vector quantity. State your sources. (c) Which of the quantities have separate causes from which of the others?

Additional Problems

47. A very long, thin strip of metal of width w carries a current I along its length as shown in Figure P30.47. Find the magnetic field at the point P in the diagram. The point P is in the plane of the strip at distance b away from it.

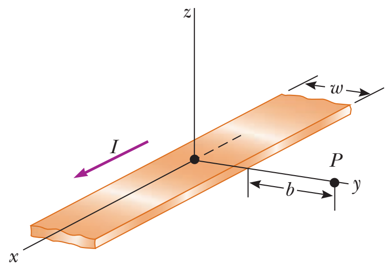


Figure P30.47

48. The magnitude of the Earth's magnetic field at either pole is approximately 7.00×10^{-5} T. Suppose the field fades away, before its next reversal. Scouts, sailors, and conservative politicians around the world join together in a program to replace the field. One plan is to use a current loop around the equator, without relying on magnetization of any materials inside the Earth. Determine the current that would generate such a field if this plan were carried out. Take the radius of the Earth as $R_E = 6.37 \times 10^6$ m.

49. A thin copper bar of length $\ell = 10.0$ cm is supported horizontally by two (nonmagnetic) contacts. The bar carries current $I_1 = 100$ A in the $-x$ direction as shown in Figure P30.49. At a distance $h = 0.500$ cm below one end of the bar, a long, straight wire carries a current $I_2 = 200$ A in the z direction. Determine the magnetic force exerted on the bar.

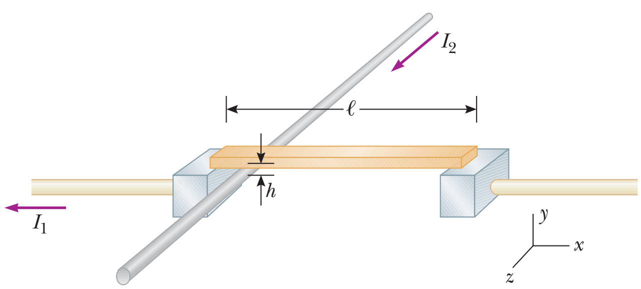


Figure P30.49

50. Suppose you install a compass on the center of the dashboard of a car. Compute an order-of-magnitude estimate for the magnetic field at this location produced by the current when you switch on the headlights. How does this estimate compare with the Earth's magnetic field? You may suppose the dashboard is made mostly of plastic.

51. ▲ A nonconducting ring of radius 10.0 cm is uniformly charged with a total positive charge 10.0 μC. The ring rotates at a constant angular speed 20.0 rad/s about an axis through its center, perpendicular to the plane of the ring. What is the magnitude of the magnetic field on the axis of the ring 5.00 cm from its center?

52. A nonconducting ring of radius R is uniformly charged with a total positive charge q. The ring rotates at a constant angular speed ω about an axis through its center, perpendicular to the plane of the ring. What is the magnitude of the magnetic field on the axis of the ring a distance $R/2$ from its center?

53. Two circular coils of radius R, each with N turns, are perpendicular to a common axis. The coil centers are a distance R apart. Each coil carries a steady current I in the same direction as shown in Figure P30.53. (a) Show that the magnetic field on the axis at a distance x from the center of one coil is

$$B = \frac{N\mu_0 I R^2}{2}\left[\frac{1}{(R^2 + x^2)^{3/2}} + \frac{1}{(2R^2 + x^2 - 2Rx)^{3/2}}\right]$$

(b) Show that dB/dx and d^2B/dx^2 are both zero at the point midway between the coils. We may then conclude that the magnetic field in the region midway between the coils is uniform. Coils in this configuration are called *Helmholtz coils.*

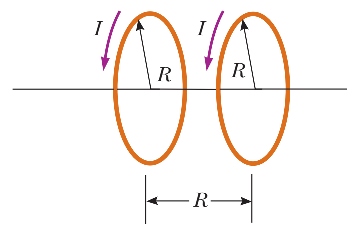
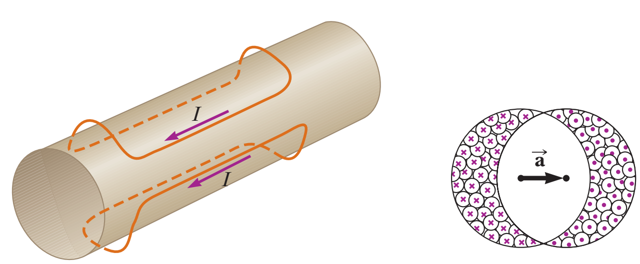


Figure P30.53 Problems 53 and 54.

54. Two identical, flat, circular coils of wire each have 100 turns and a radius of 0.500 m. The coils are arranged as a set of Helmholtz coils (see Fig. P30.53), parallel and with separation 0.500 m. Each coil carries a current of 10.0 A. Determine the magnitude of the magnetic field at a point on the common axis of the coils and halfway between them.

55. We have seen that a long solenoid produces a uniform magnetic field directed along the axis of a cylindrical region. To produce a uniform magnetic field directed parallel to a *diameter* of a cylindrical region, however, one can use the *saddle coils* illustrated in Figure P30.55. The loops are wrapped over a somewhat flattened tube. Assume the straight sections of wire are very long. The end view of the tube shows how the windings are applied. The overall current distribution is the superposition of two overlapping, circular cylinders of uniformly distributed current, one toward you and one away from you. The current density J is the same for each cylinder. The position of the axis of one cylinder is described by a position vector $\vec{\mathbf{a}}$ relative to the other cylinder. Prove that the magnetic field inside the hollow tube is $\mu_0 Ja/2$ downward. *Suggestion:* The use of vector methods simplifies the calculation.



(a) (b)

Figure P30.55

56. *You may use the result of Problem 33 in solving this problem.* A very large parallel-plate capacitor carries charge with uniform charge per unit area $+\sigma$ on the upper plate and $-\sigma$ on the lower plate. The plates are horizontal and both move horizontally with speed v to the right. (a) What is the magnetic field between the plates? (b) What is the magnetic field close to the plates but outside of the capacitor? (c) What is the magnitude and direction of the magnetic force per unit area on the upper plate? (d) At what extrapolated speed v will the magnetic force on a plate balance the electric force on the plate? Calculate this speed numerically.

57. Two circular loops are parallel, coaxial, and almost in contact, 1.00 mm apart (Fig. P30.57). Each loop is 10.0 cm in radius. The top loop carries a clockwise current of 140 A. The bottom loop carries a counterclockwise current of 140 A. (a) Calculate the magnetic force exerted by the bottom loop on the top loop. (b) Suppose a student thinks the first step in solving part (a) is to use Equation 30.7 to find the magnetic field created by one of the loops. How would you argue for or against this idea? *Suggestion:* Think about how one loop looks to a bug perched on the other loop. (c) The upper loop has a mass of 0.021 0 kg. Calculate its acceleration, assuming the only forces acting on it are the force in part (a) and the gravitational force.

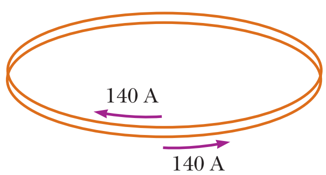


Figure P30.57

58. What objects experience a force in an electric field? Chapter 23 gives the answer: any object with electric charge, stationary or moving, other than the charged object that created the field. What creates an electric field? Any object with electric charge, stationary or moving, as you studied in Chapter 23. What objects experience a force in a magnetic field? An electric current or a moving electric charge, other than the current or charge that created the field, as discussed in Chapter 29. What creates a magnetic field? An electric current, as you studied in Section 30.1, or a moving electric charge, as shown in this problem. (a) To understand how a moving charge creates a magnetic field, consider a particle with charge q moving with velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$. Define the position vector $\vec{\mathbf{r}} = r\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ leading from the particle to some location. Show that the magnetic field at that location is

$$\vec{\mathbf{B}} = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi}\,\frac{q\vec{\mathbf{v}} \times \hat{\mathbf{r}}}{r^2}$$

(b) Find the magnitude of the magnetic field 1.00 mm to the side of a proton moving at 2.00×10^7 m/s. (c) Find the magnetic force on a second proton at this point, moving with the same speed in the opposite direction. (d) Find the electric force on the second proton.

59. The chapter-opening photograph shows a rail gun. Rail guns have been suggested for launching projectiles into space without chemical rockets and for ground-to-air antimissile weapons of war. A tabletop model rail gun (Fig. P30.59) consists of two long, parallel, horizontal rails 3.50 cm apart, bridged by a bar BD of mass 3.00 g. The bar is originally at rest at the midpoint of the rails and is free to slide without friction. When the switch is closed, electric current is quickly established in the circuit $ABCDEA$. The rails and bar have low electric resistance, and the current is limited to a constant 24.0 A by the power supply. (a) Find the magnitude of the magnetic field 1.75 cm from a single very long, straight wire carrying current 24.0 A. (b) Find the magnitude and direction of the magnetic field at point C in the diagram, the midpoint of the bar, immediately after the switch is closed. *Suggestion:* Consider what conclusions you can draw from the Biot–Savart law. (c) At other points along the bar BD, the field is in the same direction as at point C, but is larger in magnitude. Assume the average effective magnetic field along BD is five times larger than the field at C. With this assumption, find the magnitude and direction of the force on the bar. (d) Find the acceleration of the bar when it is in motion. (e) Does the bar move with constant acceleration? (f) Find the velocity of the bar after it has traveled 130 cm to the end of the rails.

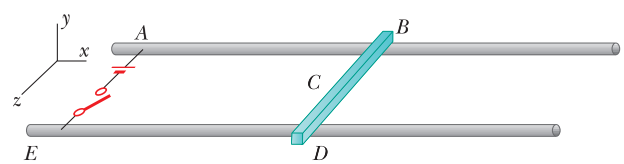


Figure P30.59

60. Fifty turns of insulated wire 0.100 cm in diameter are tightly wound to form a flat spiral. The spiral fills a disk surrounding a circle of radius 5.00 cm and extending to a radius 10.00 cm at the outer edge. Assume the wire carries current I at the center of its cross section. Approximate each turn of wire as a circle. Then a loop of current exists at radius 5.05 cm, another at 5.15 cm, and so on. Numerically calculate the magnetic field at the center of the coil.

61. An infinitely long, straight wire carrying a current I_1 is partially surrounded by a loop as shown in Figure P30.61. The loop has a length L and radius R, and it carries a current I_2. The axis of the loop coincides with the wire. Calculate the force exerted on the loop.

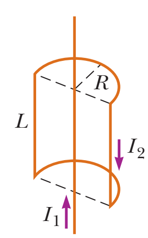


Figure P30.61

62. The magnitude of the force on a magnetic dipole $\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}$ aligned with a nonuniform magnetic field in the x direction is $F_x = |\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}|\, dB/dx$. Suppose two flat loops of wire each have radius R and carry current I. (a) The loops are arranged coaxially and separated by a variable distance x, large compared with R. Show that the magnetic force between them varies as $1/x^4$. (b) Evaluate the magnitude of this force, taking $I = 10.0$ A, $R = 0.500$ cm, and $x = 5.00$ cm.

63. A wire is formed into the shape of a square of edge length L (Fig. P30.63). Show that when the current in the loop is I, the magnetic field at point P, a distance x from the center of the square along its axis is

$$B = \frac{\mu_0 I L^2}{2\pi(x^2 + L^2/4)\sqrt{x^2 + L^2/2}}$$

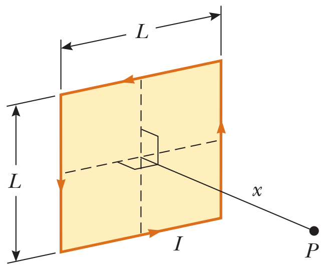


Figure P30.63

64. A wire carrying a current I is bent into the shape of an exponential spiral, $r = e^{\theta}$, from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = 2\pi$ as suggested in Figure P30.64. To complete a loop, the ends of the spiral are connected by a straight wire along the x axis. Find the magnitude and direction of $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ at the origin. *Suggestions:* Use the Biot–Savart law. The angle β between a radial line and its tangent line at any point on the curve $r = f(\theta)$ is related to the function as follows:

$$\tan \beta = \frac{r}{dr/d\theta}$$

Therefore, in this case $r = e^{\theta}$, $\tan \beta = 1$, and $\beta = \pi/4$, and the angle between $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ and $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ is $\pi - \beta = 3\pi/4$. Also,

$$ds = \frac{dr}{\sin(\pi/4)} = \sqrt{2}\, dr$$

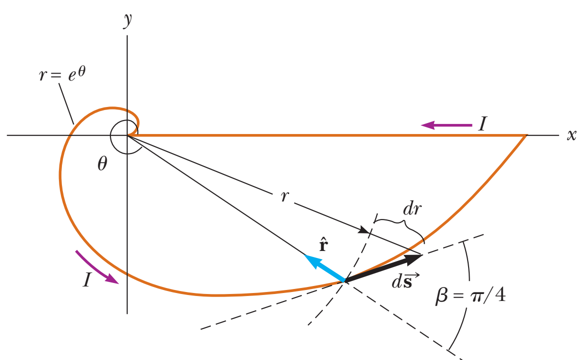


Figure P30.64

65. A sphere of radius R has a uniform volume charge density ρ. Determine the magnetic field at the center of the sphere when it rotates as a rigid object with angular speed ω about an axis through its center (Fig. P30.65).

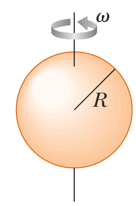


Figure P30.65 Problems 65 and 66.

66. A sphere of radius R has a uniform volume charge density ρ. Determine the magnetic dipole moment of the sphere when it rotates as a rigid body with angular speed ω about an axis through its center (Fig. P30.65).

67. A long, cylindrical conductor of radius a has two cylindrical cavities of diameter a through its entire length as shown in Figure P30.67. A current I is directed out of the page and is uniform through a cross section of the conductor. Find the magnitude and direction of the magnetic field in terms of μ_0, I, r, and a at (a) point P_1 and (b) point P_2.

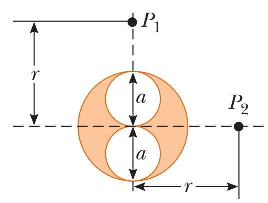


Figure P30.67

Answers to Quick Quizzes

30.1 *B*, *C*, *A*. Point *B* is closest to the current element. Point *C* is farther away, and the field is further reduced by the $\sin\theta$ factor in the cross product $d\vec{\mathbf{s}} \times \hat{\mathbf{r}}$. The field at *A* is zero because $\theta = 0$.

30.2 (a). The coils act like wires carrying parallel currents in the same direction and hence attract one another.

30.3 *b*, *d*, *a*, *c*. Equation 30.13 indicates that the value of the line integral depends only on the net current through each closed path. Path *b* encloses 1 A, path *d* encloses 3 A, path *a* encloses 4 A, and path *c* encloses 6 A.

30.4 *b*, then $a = c = d$. Paths *a*, *c*, and *d* all give the same nonzero value $\mu_0 I$ because the size and shape of the paths do not matter. Path *b* does not enclose the current; hence, its line integral is zero.

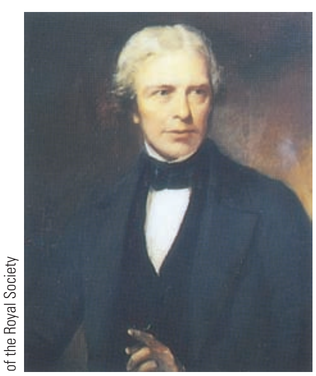
30.5 (c). The magnetic field in a very long solenoid is independent of its length or radius. Overwrapping with an additional layer of wire increases the number of turns per unit length.

In a commercial electric power plant, large generators transform energy that is then transferred out of the plant by electrical transmission. These generators use magnetic induction to generate a potential difference when coils of wire in the generator are rotated in a magnetic field. The source of energy to rotate the coils might be falling water, burning fossil fuels, or a nuclear reaction. (Michael Melford/Getty Images)

31 Faraday's Law

So far, our studies in electricity and magnetism have focused on the electric fields produced by stationary charges and the magnetic fields produced by moving charges. This chapter explores the effects produced by magnetic fields that vary in time.

Experiments conducted by Michael Faraday in England in 1831 and independently by Joseph Henry in the United States that same year showed that an emf can be induced in a circuit by a changing magnetic field. The results of these experiments led to a very basic and important law of electromagnetism known as *Faraday's law of induction.* An emf (and therefore a current as well) can be induced in various processes that involve a change in a magnetic flux.



By kind permission of the President and Council of the Royal Society

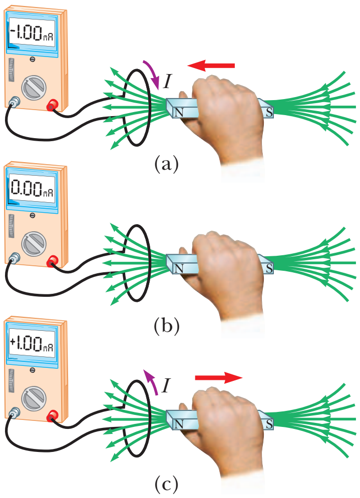
MICHAEL FARADAY

British Physicist and Chemist (1791–1867)

Faraday is often regarded as the greatest experimental scientist of the 1800s. His many contributions to the study of electricity include the invention of the electric motor, electric generator, and transformer as well as the discovery of electromagnetic induction and the laws of electrolysis. Greatly influenced by religion, he refused to work on the development of poison gas for the British military.

31.1 Faraday's Law of Induction

To see how an emf can be induced by a changing magnetic field, consider the experimental results obtained when a loop of wire is connected to a sensitive ammeter as illustrated in Active Figure 31.1 (page 868). When a magnet is moved toward the loop, the reading on the ammeter changes from zero in one direction, arbitrarily shown as negative in Active Figure 31.1a. When the magnet is brought to rest and held stationary relative to the loop (Active Fig. 31.1b), a reading of



ACTIVE FIGURE 31.1

(a) When a magnet is moved toward a loop of wire connected to a sensitive ammeter, the ammeter reading changes from zero, indicating that a current is induced in the loop. (b) When the magnet is held stationary, there is no induced current in the loop, even when the magnet is inside the loop. (c) When the magnet is moved away from the loop, the ammeter reading changes in the opposite direction, indicating that the induced current is opposite that shown in (a). Changing the direction of the magnet's motion changes the direction of the current induced by that motion.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to move the magnet and observe the current in the ammeter.

PITFALL PREVENTION 31.1

Induced emf Requires a Change

The *existence* of a magnetic flux through an area is not sufficient to create an induced emf. The magnetic flux must *change* to induce an emf.

zero is observed. When the magnet is moved away from the loop, the reading on the ammeter changes in the opposite direction as shown in Active Figure 31.1c. Finally, when the magnet is held stationary and the loop is moved either toward or away from it, the reading changes from zero. From these observations, we conclude that the loop detects that the magnet is moving relative to it and we relate this detection to a change in magnetic field. Therefore, it seems that a relationship exists between current and changing magnetic field.

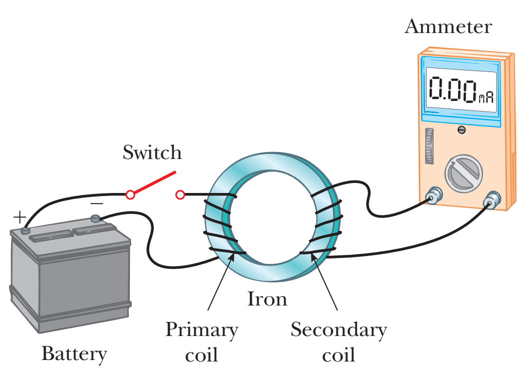
These results are quite remarkable because **a current is set up even though no batteries are present in the circuit!** We call such a current an *induced current* and say that it is produced by an *induced emf.*

Now let's describe an experiment conducted by Faraday and illustrated in Active Figure 31.2. A primary coil is wrapped around an iron ring and connected to a switch and a battery. A current in the coil produces a magnetic field when the switch is closed. A secondary coil also is wrapped around the ring and is connected to a sensitive ammeter. No battery is present in the secondary circuit, and the secondary coil is not electrically connected to the primary coil. Any current detected in the secondary circuit must be induced by some external agent.

Initially, you might guess that no current is ever detected in the secondary circuit. Something quite amazing happens when the switch in the primary circuit is either opened or thrown closed, however. At the instant the switch is closed, the ammeter reading changes from zero in one direction and then returns to zero. At the instant the switch is opened, the ammeter changes in the opposite direction and again returns to zero. Finally, the ammeter reads zero when there is either a steady current or no current in the primary circuit. To understand what happens in this experiment, note that when the switch is closed, the current in the primary circuit produces a magnetic field that penetrates the secondary circuit. Furthermore, when the switch is closed, the magnetic field produced by the current in the primary circuit changes from zero to some value over some finite time, and this changing field induces a current in the secondary circuit.

As a result of these observations, Faraday concluded that **an electric current can be induced in a loop by a changing magnetic field.** The induced current exists only while the magnetic field through the loop is changing. Once the magnetic field reaches a steady value, the current in the loop disappears. In effect, the loop behaves as though a source of emf were connected to it for a short time. It is customary to say that **an induced emf is produced in the loop by the changing magnetic field.**

The experiments shown in Active Figures 31.1 and 31.2 have one thing in common: in each case, an emf is induced in a loop when the magnetic flux through the loop changes with time. In general, this emf is directly proportional to the



ACTIVE FIGURE 31.2

Faraday's experiment. When the switch in the primary circuit is closed, the ammeter reading in the secondary circuit changes momentarily. The emf induced in the secondary circuit is caused by the changing magnetic field through the secondary coil.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to open and close the switch and observe the current in the ammeter.

time rate of change of the magnetic flux through the loop. This statement can be written mathematically as **Faraday's law of induction:**

$$\boxed{\mathcal{E} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt}} \qquad \textbf{(31.1)}$$

◀ Faraday's law

where $\Phi_B = \oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{A}}$ is the magnetic flux through the loop. (See Section 30.5.)

If a coil consists of N loops with the same area and Φ_B is the magnetic flux through one loop, an emf is induced in every loop. The loops are in series, so their emfs add; therefore, the total induced emf in the coil is given by

$$\mathcal{E} = -N\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} \qquad \textbf{(31.2)}$$

The negative sign in Equations 31.1 and 31.2 is of important physical significance as discussed in Section 31.3.

Suppose a loop enclosing an area A lies in a uniform magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ as in Figure 31.3. The magnetic flux through the loop is equal to $BA\cos\theta$; hence, the induced emf can be expressed as

$$\mathcal{E} = -\frac{d}{dt}(BA\cos\theta) \qquad \textbf{(31.3)}$$

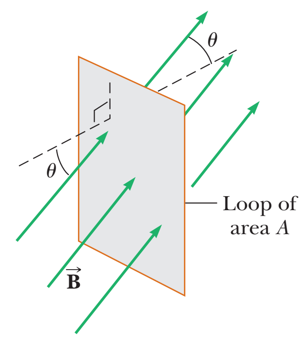


Figure 31.3 A conducting loop that encloses an area A in the presence of a uniform magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$. The angle between $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ and the normal to the loop is θ.

From this expression, we see that an emf can be induced in the circuit in several ways:

- The magnitude of $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ can change with time.
- The area enclosed by the loop can change with time.
- The angle θ between $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ and the normal to the loop can change with time.
- Any combination of the above can occur.

Quick Quiz 31.1 A circular loop of wire is held in a uniform magnetic field, with the plane of the loop perpendicular to the field lines. Which of the following will *not* cause a current to be induced in the loop? (a) crushing the loop (b) rotating the loop about an axis perpendicular to the field lines (c) keeping the orientation of the loop fixed and moving it along the field lines (d) pulling the loop out of the field

---

Some Applications of Faraday's Law

The ground fault interrupter (GFI) is an interesting safety device that protects users of electrical appliances against electric shock. Its operation makes use of Faraday's law. In the GFI shown in Figure 31.4, wire 1 leads from the wall outlet to the appliance to be protected and wire 2 leads from the appliance back to the wall outlet. An iron ring surrounds the two wires, and a sensing coil is wrapped around part of the ring. Because the currents in the wires are in opposite directions and of equal magnitude, there is no magnetic field surrounding the wires and the net magnetic flux through the sensing coil is zero. If the return current in wire 2 changes so that the two currents are not equal, however, circular magnetic field lines exist around the pair of wires. (This can happen if, for example, the appliance becomes wet, enabling current to leak to ground.) Therefore, the net magnetic flux through the sensing coil is no longer zero. Because household current is alternating (meaning that its direction keeps reversing), the magnetic flux through the sensing coil changes with time, inducing an emf in the coil. This induced emf is used to trigger a circuit breaker, which stops the current before it is able to reach a harmful level.

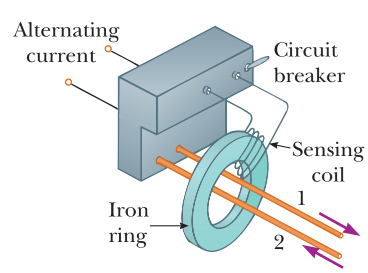


Figure 31.4 Essential components of a ground fault interrupter.

Another interesting application of Faraday's law is the production of sound in an electric guitar. The coil in this case, called the *pickup coil*, is placed near the

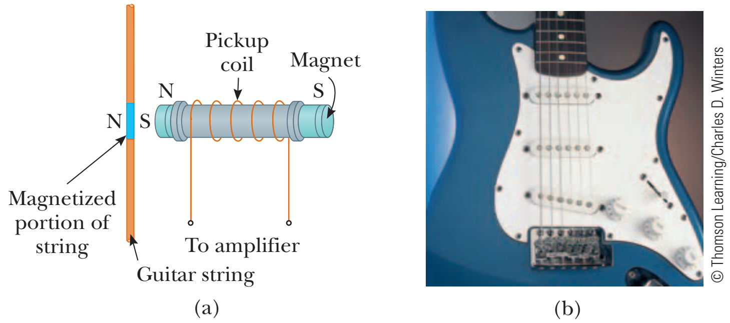


Figure 31.5 (a) In an electric guitar, a vibrating magnetized string induces an emf in a pickup coil. (b) The pickups (the circles beneath the metallic strings) of this electric guitar detect the vibrations of the strings and send this information through an amplifier and into speakers. (A switch on the guitar allows the musician to select which set of six pickups is used.)

vibrating guitar string, which is made of a metal that can be magnetized. A permanent magnet inside the coil magnetizes the portion of the string nearest the coil (Fig. 31.5a). When the string vibrates at some frequency, its magnetized segment produces a changing magnetic flux through the coil. The changing flux induces an emf in the coil that is fed to an amplifier. The output of the amplifier is sent to the loudspeakers, which produce the sound waves we hear.

EXAMPLE 31.1 Inducing an emf in a Coil

A coil consists of 200 turns of wire. Each turn is a square of side d = 18 cm, and a uniform magnetic field directed perpendicular to the plane of the coil is turned on. If the field changes linearly from 0 to 0.50 T in 0.80 s, what is the magnitude of the induced emf in the coil while the field is changing?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize From the description in the problem, imagine magnetic field lines passing through the coil. Because the magnetic field is changing in magnitude, an emf is induced in the coil.

Categorize We will evaluate the emf using Faraday's law from this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Evaluate Equation 31.2 for the situation described here, noting that the magnetic field changes linearly with time:

$$|\mathcal{E}| = N\frac{\Delta\Phi_B}{\Delta t} = N\frac{\Delta(BA)}{\Delta t} = NA\frac{\Delta B}{\Delta t} = Nd^2\frac{B_f - B_i}{\Delta t}$$

Substitute numerical values:

$$|\mathcal{E}| = (200)(0.18\text{ m})^2\frac{(0.50\text{ T} - 0)}{0.80\text{ s}} = \boxed{4.0\text{ V}}$$

What If? What if you were asked to find the magnitude of the induced current in the coil while the field is changing? Can you answer that question?

Answer If the ends of the coil are not connected to a circuit, the answer to this question is easy: the current is zero! (Charges move within the wire of the coil, but they cannot move into or out of the ends of the coil.) For a steady current to exist, the ends of the coil must be connected to an external circuit. Let's assume the coil is connected to a circuit and the total resistance of the coil and the circuit is 2.0 Ω. Then, the current in the coil is

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{R} = \frac{4.0\text{ V}}{2.0\ \Omega} = 2.0\text{ A}$$

EXAMPLE 31.2 **An Exponentially Decaying B Field**

A loop of wire enclosing an area A is placed in a region where the magnetic field is perpendicular to the plane of the loop. The magnitude of $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ varies in time according to the expression $B = B_{\max} e^{-at}$, where a is some constant. That is, at $t = 0$, the field is $B_{\max}$, and for $t > 0$, the field decreases exponentially (Fig. 31.6). Find the induced emf in the loop as a function of time.

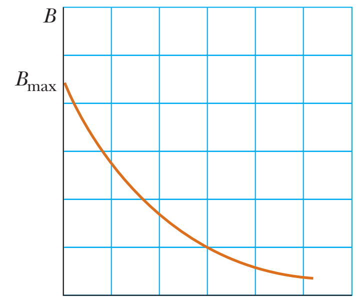


Figure 31.6 (Example 31.2) Exponential decrease in the magnitude of the magnetic field with time. The induced emf and induced current vary with time in the same way.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The physical situation is similar to that in Example 31.1 except for two things: there is only one loop, and the field varies exponentially with time rather than linearly.

Categorize We will evaluate the emf using Faraday's law from this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Evaluate Equation 31.1 for the situation described here:

$$\mathcal{E} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} = -\frac{d}{dt}\left(AB_{\max} e^{-at}\right) = -AB_{\max}\frac{d}{dt}e^{-at} = aAB_{\max}e^{-at}$$

This expression indicates that the induced emf decays exponentially in time. The maximum emf occurs at $t = 0$, where $\mathcal{E}_{\max} = aAB_{\max}$. The plot of $\mathcal{E}$ versus t is similar to the B-versus-t curve shown in Figure 31.6.

31.2 Motional emf

In Examples 31.1 and 31.2, we considered cases in which an emf is induced in a stationary circuit placed in a magnetic field when the field changes with time. In this section, we describe **motional emf,** the emf induced in a conductor moving through a constant magnetic field.

The straight conductor of length ℓ shown in Figure 31.7 is moving through a uniform magnetic field directed into the page. For simplicity, let's assume the conductor is moving in a direction perpendicular to the field with constant velocity under the influence of some external agent. The electrons in the conductor experience a force $\vec{\mathbf{F}}_B = q\vec{\mathbf{v}} \times \vec{\mathbf{B}}$ that is directed along the length ℓ, perpendicular to both $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$ and $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ (Eq. 29.1). Under the influence of this force, the electrons move to the lower end of the conductor and accumulate there, leaving a net positive charge at the upper end. As a result of this charge separation, an electric field $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ is produced inside the conductor. The charges accumulate at both ends until the downward magnetic force qvB on charges remaining in the conductor is balanced by the upward electric force qE. The condition for equilibrium requires that the forces on the electrons balance:

$$qE = qvB \quad \text{or} \quad E = vB$$

The electric field produced in the conductor is related to the potential difference across the ends of the conductor according to the relationship $\Delta V = E\ell$ (Eq. 25.6). Therefore, for the equilibrium condition,

$$\Delta V = E\ell = B\ell v \tag{31.4}$$

where the upper end of the conductor in Figure 31.7 is at a higher electric potential than the lower end. Therefore, **a potential difference is maintained between the ends of the conductor as long as the conductor continues to move through the uniform magnetic field.** If the direction of the motion is reversed, the polarity of the potential difference is also reversed.

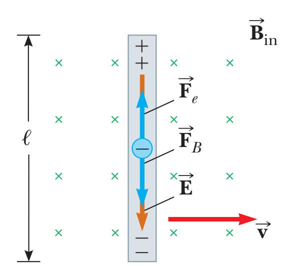
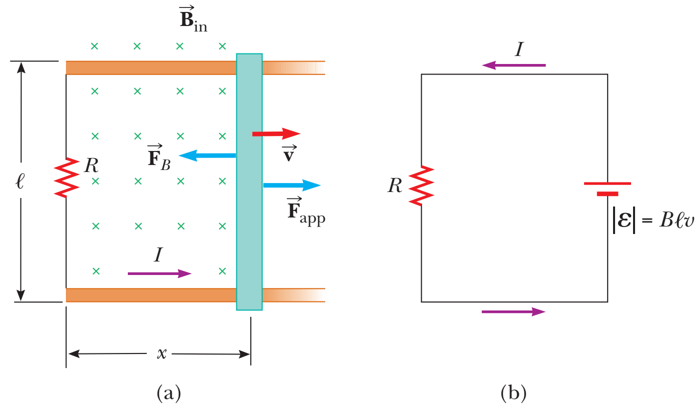


Figure 31.7 A straight electrical conductor of length ℓ moving with a velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$ through a uniform magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ directed perpendicular to $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$. Due to the magnetic force on electrons, the ends of the conductor become oppositely charged, which establishes an electric field in the conductor. In steady state, the electric and magnetic forces on an electron in the wire are balanced.

A more interesting situation occurs when the moving conductor is part of a closed conducting path. This situation is particularly useful for illustrating how a



ACTIVE FIGURE 31.8

(a) A conducting bar sliding with a velocity $\vec{v}$ along two conducting rails under the action of an applied force $\vec{F}_{app}$. The magnetic force $\vec{F}_B$ opposes the motion, and a counterclockwise current I is induced in the loop. (b) The equivalent circuit diagram for the setup shown in (a).

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the applied force, the magnetic field, and the resistance to see the effects on the motion of the bar.

changing magnetic flux causes an induced current in a closed circuit. Consider a circuit consisting of a conducting bar of length ℓ sliding along two fixed parallel conducting rails as shown in Active Figure 31.8a. For simplicity, let's assume the bar has zero resistance and the stationary part of the circuit has a resistance R. A uniform and constant magnetic field $\vec{B}$ is applied perpendicular to the plane of the circuit. As the bar is pulled to the right with a velocity $\vec{v}$ under the influence of an applied force $\vec{F}_{app}$, free charges in the bar experience a magnetic force directed along the length of the bar. This force sets up an induced current because the charges are free to move in the closed conducting path. In this case, the rate of change of magnetic flux through the circuit and the corresponding induced motional emf across the moving bar are proportional to the change in area of the circuit.

Because the area enclosed by the circuit at any instant is ℓx, where x is the position of the bar, the magnetic flux through that area is

$$\Phi_B = B\ell x$$

Using Faraday's law and noting that x changes with time at a rate $dx/dt = v$, we find that the induced motional emf is

$$\mathcal{E} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} = -\frac{d}{dt}(B\ell x) = -B\ell\frac{dx}{dt}$$

Motional emf ►

$$\mathcal{E} = -B\ell v \tag{31.5}$$

Because the resistance of the circuit is R, the magnitude of the induced current is

$$I = \frac{|\mathcal{E}|}{R} = \frac{B\ell v}{R} \tag{31.6}$$

The equivalent circuit diagram for this example is shown in Active Figure 31.8b.

Let's examine the system using energy considerations. Because no battery is in the circuit, you might wonder about the origin of the induced current and the energy delivered to the resistor. We can understand the source of this current and energy by noting that the applied force does work on the conducting bar. Therefore, we model the circuit as a nonisolated system. The movement of the bar through the field causes charges to move along the bar with some average drift velocity; hence, a current is established. The change in energy in the system during some time interval must be equal to the transfer of energy into the system by work, consistent with the general principle of conservation of energy described by Equation 8.2.

Let's verify this mathematically. As the bar moves through the uniform magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$, it experiences a magnetic force $\vec{\mathbf{F}}_B$ of magnitude $I\ell B$ (see Section 29.4). Because the bar moves with constant velocity, it is modeled as a particle in equilibrium and the magnetic force must be equal in magnitude and opposite in direction to the applied force, or to the left in Active Figure 31.8a. (If $\vec{\mathbf{F}}_B$ acted in the direction of motion, it would cause the bar to accelerate, violating the principle of conservation of energy.) Using Equation 31.6 and $F_{\text{app}} = F_B = I\ell B$, the power delivered by the applied force is

$$\mathcal{P} = F_{\text{app}}v = (I\ell B)v = \frac{B^2\ell^2v^2}{R} = \frac{\mathcal{E}^2}{R} \quad \textbf{(31.7)}$$

From Equation 27.21, we see that this power input is equal to the rate at which energy is delivered to the resistor.

Quick Quiz 31.2 In Active Figure 31.8a, a given applied force of magnitude F_{app} results in a constant speed v and a power input $\mathcal{P}$. Imagine that the force is increased so that the constant speed of the bar is doubled to $2v$. Under these conditions, what are the new force and the new power input? (a) $2F$ and $2\mathcal{P}$ (b) $4F$ and $2\mathcal{P}$ (c) $2F$ and $4\mathcal{P}$ (d) $4F$ and $4\mathcal{P}$

EXAMPLE 31.3 Magnetic Force Acting on a Sliding Bar

The conducting bar illustrated in Figure 31.9 moves on two frictionless, parallel rails in the presence of a uniform magnetic field directed into the page. The bar has mass m, and its length is ℓ. The bar is given an initial velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}}_i$ to the right and is released at $t = 0$.

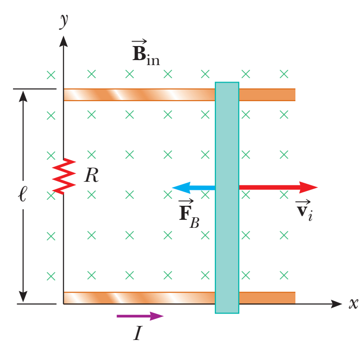


Figure 31.9 (Example 31.3) A conducting bar of length ℓ on two fixed conducting rails is given an initial velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}}_i$ to the right.

(A) Using Newton's laws, find the velocity of the bar as a function of time.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize As the bar slides to the right in Figure 31.9, a counterclockwise current is established in the circuit consisting of the bar, the rails, and the resistor. The upward current in the bar results in a magnetic force to the left on the bar as shown in the figure. Therefore, the bar must slow down, so our mathematical solution should demonstrate that.

Categorize The text already categorizes this problem as one that uses Newton's laws. We model the bar as a particle under a net force.

Analyze From Equation 29.10, the magnetic force is $F_B = -I\ell B$, where the negative sign indicates that the force is to the left. The magnetic force is the *only* horizontal force acting on the bar.

Apply Newton's second law to the bar in the horizontal direction:

$$F_x = ma = m\frac{dv}{dt} = -I\ell B$$

Substitute $I = B\ell v/R$ from Equation 31.6:

$$m\frac{dv}{dt} = -\frac{B^2\ell^2}{R}v$$

Rearrange the equation so that all occurrences of the variable v are on the left and those of t are on the right:

$$\frac{dv}{v} = -\left(\frac{B^2\ell^2}{mR}\right)dt$$

Integrate this equation using the initial condition that $v = v_i$ at $t = 0$ and noting that $(B^2\ell^2/mR)$ is a constant:

$$\int_{v_i}^{v}\frac{dv}{v} = -\frac{B^2\ell^2}{mR}\int_0^t dt$$

$$\ln\left(\frac{v}{v_i}\right) = -\left(\frac{B^2\ell^2}{mR}\right)t$$

Define the constant $\tau = mR/B^2\ell^2$ and solve for the velocity:

$$(1) \quad v = \boxed{v_i e^{-t/\tau}}$$

Finalize This expression for v indicates that the velocity of the bar decreases with time under the action of the magnetic force as expected from our conceptualization of the problem.

(B) Show that the same result is found by using an energy approach.

SOLUTION

Categorize The text of this part of the problem tells us to use an energy approach for the same situation. We model the entire circuit in Figure 31.9 as an isolated system.

Finalize Consider the sliding bar as one system component possessing kinetic energy, which decreases because energy is transferring *out* of the bar by electrical transmission through the rails. The resistor is another system component possessing internal energy, which rises because energy is transferring *into* the resistor. Because energy is not leaving the system, the rate of energy transfer out of the bar equals the rate of energy transfer into the resistor.

Equate the power entering the resistor to that leaving the bar:

$$\mathcal{P}_{\text{resistor}} = -\mathcal{P}_{\text{bar}}$$

Substitute for the electrical power delivered to the resistor and the time rate of change of kinetic energy for the bar:

$$I^2R = -\frac{d}{dt}\left(\tfrac{1}{2}mv^2\right)$$

Use Equation 31.6 for the current and carry out the derivative:

$$\frac{B^2\ell^2v^2}{R} = -mv\frac{dv}{dt}$$

Rearrange terms:

$$\frac{dv}{v} = -\left(\frac{B^2\ell^2}{mR}\right)dt$$

Finalize This result is the same expression found in part (A).

What If? Suppose you wished to increase the distance through which the bar moves between the time it is initially projected and the time it essentially comes to rest. You can do so by changing one of three variables: v_i, R, or B by a factor of 2 or $\frac{1}{2}$. Which variable should you change to maximize the distance, and would you double it or halve it?

Answer Increasing v_i would make the bar move farther. Increasing R would decrease the current and therefore the magnetic force, making the bar move farther. Decreasing B would decrease the magnetic force and make the bar move farther. Which method is most effective, though?

Use Equation (1) to find the distance the bar moves by integration:

$$v = \frac{dx}{dt} = v_i e^{-t/\tau}$$

$$x = \int_0^\infty v_i e^{-t/\tau}\,dt = -v_i\tau e^{-t/\tau}\Big|_0^\infty$$

$$= -v_i\tau(0-1) = v_i\tau = v_i\left(\frac{mR}{B^2\ell^2}\right)$$

This expression shows that doubling v_i or R will double the distance. Changing B by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$, however, causes the distance to be four times as great!

EXAMPLE 31.4 Motional emf Induced in a Rotating Bar

A conducting bar of length ℓ rotates with a constant angular speed ω about a pivot at one end. A uniform magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is directed perpendicular to the plane of rotation as shown in Figure 31.10. Find the motional emf induced between the ends of the bar.

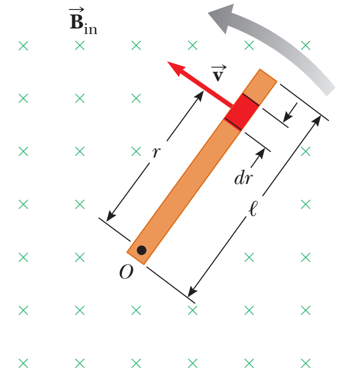


Figure 31.10 (Example 31.4) A conducting bar rotating around a pivot at one end in a uniform magnetic field that is perpendicular to the plane of rotation. A motional emf is induced across the ends of the bar.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The rotating bar is different in nature than the sliding bar in Active Figure 31.8. Consider a small segment of the bar, however. It is a short length of conductor moving in a magnetic field and has an emf generated in it. By thinking of each small segment as a source of emf, we see that all segments are in series and the emfs add.

Categorize Based on the conceptualization of the problem, we approach this example as we did Example 31.3, with the added feature that the short segments of the bar are traveling in circular paths.

Analyze Evaluate the magnitude of the emf induced in a segment of the bar of length dr having a velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$ from Equation 31.5:

$$d\mathcal{E} = Bv\,dr$$

Find the total emf between the ends of the bar by adding the emfs induced across all segments:

$$\mathcal{E} = \int Bv\,dr$$

The tangential speed v of an element is related to the angular speed ω through the relationship $v = r\omega$ (Eq. 10.10); use that fact and integrate:

$$\mathcal{E} = B\int v\,dr = B\omega\int_0^\ell r\,dr = \boxed{\tfrac{1}{2}B\omega\ell^2}$$

Finalize In Equation 31.5 for a sliding bar, we can increase $\mathcal{E}$ by increasing B, ℓ, or v. Increasing any one of these variables by a given factor increases $\mathcal{E}$ by the same factor. Therefore, you would choose whichever of these three variables is most convenient to increase. For the rotating rod, however, there is an advantage to increasing the length of the rod to raise the emf because ℓ is squared. Doubling the length gives four times the emf, whereas doubling the angular speed only doubles the emf.

What If? Suppose, after reading through this example, you come up with a brilliant idea. A Ferris wheel has radial metallic spokes between the hub and the circular rim. These spokes move in the magnetic field of the Earth, so each spoke acts like the bar in Figure 31.10. You plan to use the emf generated by the rotation of the Ferris wheel to power the lightbulbs on the wheel. Will this idea work?

Answer Let's estimate the emf that is generated in this situation. We know the magnitude of the magnetic field of the Earth from Table 29.1: $B = 0.5 \times 10^{-4}$ T. A typical spoke on a Ferris wheel might have a length on the order of 10 m. Suppose the period of rotation is on the order of 10 s.

Determine the angular speed of the spoke:

$$\omega = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{2\pi}{10\text{ s}} = 0.63\text{ s}^{-1} \sim 1\text{ s}^{-1}$$

Assume the magnetic field lines of the Earth are horizontal at the location of the Ferris wheel and perpendicular to the spokes. Find the emf generated:

$$\mathcal{E} = \tfrac{1}{2}B\omega\ell^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(0.5 \times 10^{-4}\text{ T})(1\text{ s}^{-1})(10\text{ m})^2$$
$$= 2.5 \times 10^{-3}\text{ V} \sim 1\text{ mV}$$

This value is a tiny emf, far smaller than that required to operate lightbulbs.

An additional difficulty is related to energy. Even assuming you could find lightbulbs that operate using a potential difference on the order of millivolts, a spoke must be part of a circuit to provide a voltage to the lightbulbs. Consequently, the spoke must carry a current. Because this current-carrying spoke is in a magnetic field, a magnetic force is exerted on the spoke in the direction opposite its direction of motion. As a result, the motor of the Ferris wheel must supply more energy to perform work against this magnetic drag force. The motor must ultimately provide the energy that is operating the lightbulbs, and you have not gained anything for free!

31.3 Lenz's Law

Faraday's law (Eq. 31.1) indicates that the induced emf and the change in flux have opposite algebraic signs. This feature has a very real physical interpretation that has come to be known as **Lenz's law:**[1]

Lenz's law ▶

> The induced current in a loop is in the direction that creates a magnetic field that opposes the change in magnetic flux through the area enclosed by the loop.

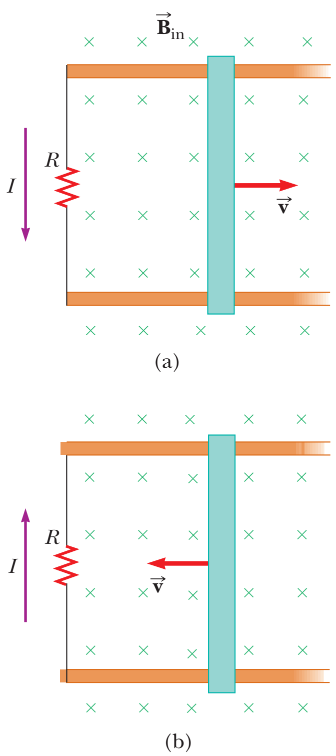


Figure 31.11 (a) As the conducting bar slides on the two fixed conducting rails, the magnetic flux due to the external magnetic field into the page through the area enclosed by the loop increases in time. By Lenz's law, the induced current must be counterclockwise to produce a counteracting magnetic field directed out of the page. (b) When the bar moves to the left, the induced current must be clockwise. Why?

That is, the induced current tends to keep the original magnetic flux through the loop from changing. We shall show that this law is a consequence of the law of conservation of energy.

To understand Lenz's law, let's return to the example of a bar moving to the right on two parallel rails in the presence of a uniform magnetic field (the *external* magnetic field; Fig. 31.11a.) As the bar moves to the right, the magnetic flux through the area enclosed by the circuit increases with time because the area increases. Lenz's law states that the induced current must be directed so that the magnetic field it produces opposes the change in the external magnetic flux. Because the magnetic flux due to an external field directed into the page is increasing, the induced current—if it is to oppose this change—must produce a field directed out of the page. Hence, the induced current must be directed counterclockwise when the bar moves to the right. (Use the right-hand rule to verify this direction.) If the bar is moving to the left as in Figure 31.11b, the external magnetic flux through the area enclosed by the loop decreases with time. Because the field is directed into the page, the direction of the induced current must be clockwise if it is to produce a field that also is directed into the page. In either case, the induced current attempts to maintain the original flux through the area enclosed by the current loop.

Let's examine this situation using energy considerations. Suppose the bar is given a slight push to the right. In the preceding analysis, we found that this motion sets up a counterclockwise current in the loop. What happens if we assume the current is clockwise such that the direction of the magnetic force exerted on the bar is to the right? This force would accelerate the rod and increase its velocity, which in turn would cause the area enclosed by the loop to increase more rapidly. The result would be an increase in the induced current, which would cause an increase in the force, which would produce an increase in the current, and so on. In effect, the system would acquire energy with no input of energy. This behavior is clearly inconsistent with all experience and violates the law of conservation of energy. Therefore, the current must be counterclockwise.

Quick Quiz 31.3 Figure 31.12 shows a circular loop of wire falling toward a wire carrying a current to the left. What is the direction of the induced current in the loop of wire? (a) clockwise (b) counterclockwise (c) zero (d) impossible to determine

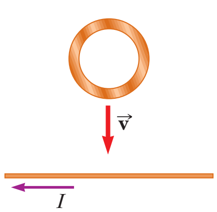


Figure 31.12 (Quick Quiz 31.3)

[1] Developed by German physicist Heinrich Lenz (1804–1865).

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 31.5 Application of Lenz's Law

A magnet is placed near a metal loop as shown in Figure 31.13a.

(A) Find the direction of the induced current in the loop when the magnet is pushed toward the loop.

SOLUTION

As the magnet moves to the right toward the loop, the external magnetic flux through the loop increases with time. To counteract this increase in flux due to a field toward the right, the induced current produces its own magnetic field to the left as illustrated in Figure 31.13b; hence, the induced current is in the direction shown. Knowing that like magnetic poles repel each other, we conclude that the left face of the current loop acts like a north pole and the right face acts like a south pole.

(B) Find the direction of the induced current in the loop when the magnet is pulled away from the loop.

SOLUTION

If the magnet moves to the left as in Figure 31.13c, its flux through the area enclosed by the loop decreases in time. Now the induced current in the loop is in the direction shown in Figure 31.13d because this current direction produces a magnetic field in the same direction as the external field. In this case, the left face of the loop is a south pole and the right face is a north pole.

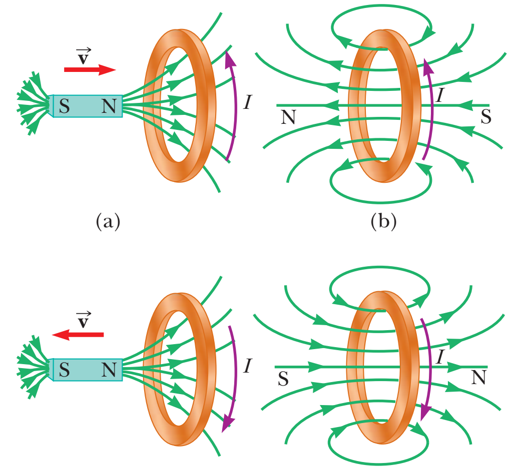


Figure 31.13 (Conceptual Example 31.5) (a) When the magnet is moved toward the stationary conducting loop, a current is induced in the direction shown. The magnetic field lines shown are those due to the bar magnet. (b) This induced current produces its own magnetic field directed to the left that counteracts the increasing external flux. The magnetic field lines shown are those due to the induced current in the ring. (c) When the magnet is moved away from the stationary conducting loop, a current is induced in the direction shown. The magnetic field lines shown are those due to the bar magnet. (d) This induced current produces a magnetic field directed to the right and so counteracts the decreasing external flux. The magnetic field lines shown are those due to the induced current in the ring.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 31.6 A Loop Moving Through a Magnetic Field

A rectangular metallic loop of dimensions ℓ and w and resistance R moves with constant speed v to the right, as in Figure 31.14a. The loop passes through a uniform magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ directed into the page and extending a distance $3w$ along the x axis. Define x as the position of the right side of the loop along the x axis.

(A) Plot as a function of x the magnetic flux through the area enclosed by the loop.

SOLUTION

Figure 31.14b shows the flux through the area enclosed by the loop as a function of x. Before the loop enters the field, the flux through the loop is zero. As the loop enters the field, the flux increases linearly with position until the left edge of the loop is just inside the field. Finally, the flux through the loop decreases linearly to zero as the loop leaves the field.

(B) Plot as a function of x the induced motional emf in the loop.

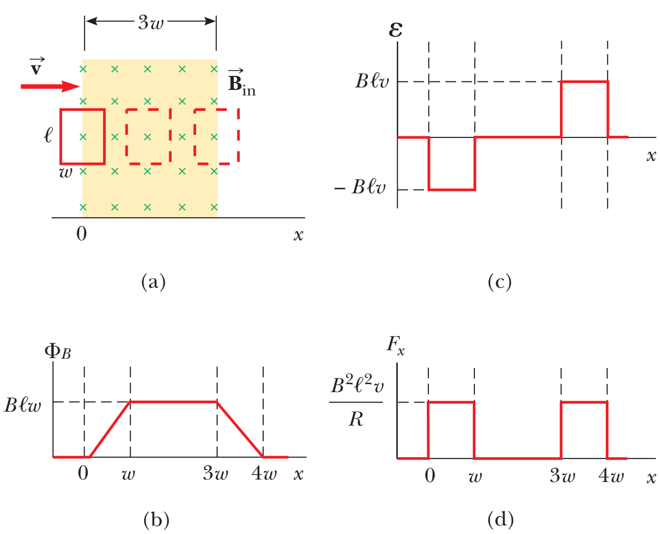


Figure 31.14 (Conceptual Example 31.6) (a) A conducting rectangular loop of width w and length ℓ moving with a velocity $\vec{v}$ through a uniform magnetic field extending a distance $3w$. (b) Magnetic flux through the area enclosed by the loop as a function of loop position. (c) Induced emf as a function of loop position. (d) Applied force required for constant velocity as a function of loop position.

SOLUTION

Before the loop enters the field, no motional emf is induced in it because no field is present (Fig. 31.14c). As the right side of the loop enters the field, the magnetic flux directed into the page increases. Hence, according to Lenz's law, the induced current is counterclockwise because it must produce its own magnetic field directed out of the page. The motional emf $-B\ell v$ (from Eq. 31.5) arises from the magnetic force experienced by charges in the right side of the loop. When the loop is entirely in the field, the change in magnetic flux through the loop is zero; hence, the motional emf vanishes. That happens because once the left side of the loop enters the field, the motional emf induced in it cancels the motional emf present in the right side of the loop. As the right side of the loop leaves the field, the flux through the loop begins to decrease, a clockwise current is induced, and the induced emf is $B\ell v$. As soon as the left side leaves the field, the emf decreases to zero.

(C) Plot as a function of x the external applied force necessary to counter the magnetic force and keep v constant.

SOLUTION

The external force that must be applied to the loop to maintain this motion is plotted in Figure 31.14d. Before the loop enters the field, no magnetic force acts on it; hence, the applied force must be zero if v is constant. When the right side of the loop enters the field, the applied force necessary to maintain constant speed must be equal in magnitude and opposite in direction to the magnetic force exerted on that side. When the loop is entirely in the field, the flux through the loop is not changing with time. Hence, the net emf induced in the loop is zero and the current also is zero. Therefore, no external force is needed to maintain the motion. Finally, as the right side leaves the field, the applied force must be equal in magnitude and opposite in direction to the magnetic force acting on the left side of the loop.

From this analysis, we conclude that power is supplied only when the loop is either entering or leaving the field. Furthermore, this example shows that the motional emf induced in the loop can be zero even when there is motion through the field! A motional emf is induced *only* when the magnetic flux through the loop *changes in time.*

31.4 Induced emf and Electric Fields

We have seen that a changing magnetic flux induces an emf and a current in a conducting loop. In our study of electricity, we related a current to an electric field that applies electric forces on charged particles. In the same way, we can relate an induced current in a conducting loop to an electric field by claiming that **an electric field is created in the conductor as a result of the changing magnetic flux.**

We also noted in our study of electricity that the existence of an electric field is independent of the presence of any test charges. This independence suggests that even in the absence of a conducting loop, a changing magnetic field generates an electric field in empty space.

This induced electric field is *nonconservative,* unlike the electrostatic field produced by stationary charges. To illustrate this point, consider a conducting loop of radius r situated in a uniform magnetic field that is perpendicular to the plane of the loop as in Figure 31.15. If the magnetic field changes with time, an emf $\mathcal{E} = -d\Phi_B/dt$ is, according to Faraday's law (Eq. 31.1), induced in the loop. The induction of a current in the loop implies the presence of an induced electric field $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$, which must be tangent to the loop because that is the direction in which the charges in the wire move in response to the electric force. The work done by the electric field in moving a test charge q once around the loop is equal to $q\mathcal{E}$. Because the electric force acting on the charge is $q\vec{\mathbf{E}}$, the work done by the electric field in moving the charge once around the loop is $qE(2\pi r)$, where $2\pi r$ is the circumference of the loop. These two expressions for the work done must be equal; therefore,

$$q\mathcal{E} = qE(2\pi r)$$

$$E = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{2\pi r}$$

Using this result along with Equation 31.1 and that $\Phi_B = BA = B\pi r^2$ for a circular loop, the induced electric field can be expressed as

$$E = -\frac{1}{2\pi r}\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} = -\frac{r}{2}\frac{dB}{dt} \quad \textbf{(31.8)}$$

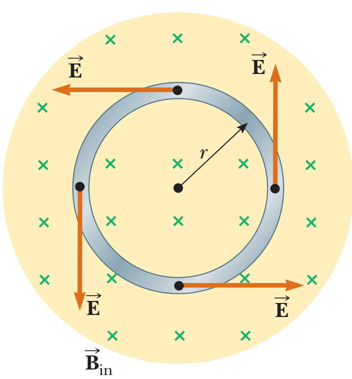


Figure 31.15 A conducting loop of radius r in a uniform magnetic field perpendicular to the plane of the loop. If $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ changes in time, an electric field is induced in a direction tangent to the circumference of the loop.

PITFALL PREVENTION 31.2

Induced Electric Fields

The changing magnetic field does *not* need to exist at the location of the induced electric field. In Figure 31.15, even a loop outside the region of magnetic field experiences an induced electric field.

If the time variation of the magnetic field is specified, the induced electric field can be calculated from Equation 31.8.

The emf for any closed path can be expressed as the line integral of $\vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ over that path: $\mathcal{E} = \oint \vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$. In more general cases, E may not be constant and the path may not be a circle. Hence, Faraday's law of induction, $\mathcal{E} = -d\Phi_B/dt$, can be written in the general form

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} \quad (31.9)$$

◀ Faraday's law in general form

The induced electric field $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ in Equation 31.9 is a nonconservative field that is generated by a changing magnetic field. The field $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ that satisfies Equation 31.9 cannot possibly be an electrostatic field because were the field electrostatic and hence conservative, the line integral of $\vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ over a closed loop would be zero (Section 25.1), which would be in contradiction to Equation 31.9.

EXAMPLE 31.7 Electric Field Induced by a Changing Magnetic Field in a Solenoid

A long solenoid of radius R has n turns of wire per unit length and carries a time-varying current that varies sinusoidally as $I = I_{max} \cos \omega t$, where I_{max} is the maximum current and ω is the angular frequency of the alternating current source (Fig. 31.16).

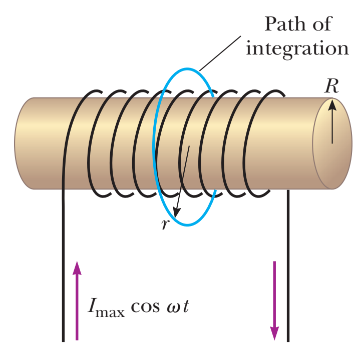


Figure 31.16 (Example 31.7) A long solenoid carrying a time-varying current given by $I = I_{max} \cos \omega t$. An electric field is induced both inside and outside the solenoid.

(A) Determine the magnitude of the induced electric field outside the solenoid at a distance $r > R$ from its long central axis.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Figure 31.16 shows the physical situation. As the current in the coil changes, imagine a changing magnetic field at all points in space as well as an induced electric field.

Categorize Because the current varies in time, the magnetic field is changing, leading to an induced electric field as opposed to the electrostatic electric fields due to stationary electric charges.

Analyze First consider an external point and take the path for the line integral to be a circle of radius r centered on the solenoid as illustrated in Figure 31.16.

Evaluate the right side of Equation 31.9, noting that $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is perpendicular to the circle bounded by the path of integration and that this magnetic field exists only inside the solenoid:

$$(1) \quad -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} = -\frac{d}{dt}(B\pi R^2) = -\pi R^2 \frac{dB}{dt}$$

Evaluate the magnetic field in the solenoid from Equation 30.17:

$$(2) \quad B = \mu_0 n I = \mu_0 n I_{max} \cos \omega t$$

Substitute Equation (2) into Equation (1):

$$(3) \quad -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} = -\pi R^2 \mu_0 n I_{max} \frac{d}{dt}(\cos \omega t) = \pi R^2 \mu_0 n I_{max} \omega \sin \omega t$$

Evaluate the left side of Equation 31.9, noting that the magnitude of $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ is constant on the path of integration and $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ is tangent to it:

$$(4) \quad \oint \vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = E(2\pi r)$$

Substitute Equations (3) and (4) into Equation 31.9:

$$E(2\pi r) = \pi R^2 \mu_0 n I_{max} \omega \sin \omega t$$

Solve for the magnitude of the electric field: $$E = \boxed{\frac{\mu_0 n I_{max} \omega R^2}{2r} \sin \omega t} \quad (\text{for } r > R)$$

Finalize This result shows that the amplitude of the electric field outside the solenoid falls off as $1/r$ and varies sinusoidally with time. As we will learn in Chapter 34, the time-varying electric field creates an additional contribution to the magnetic field. The magnetic field can be somewhat stronger than we first stated, both inside and outside the solenoid. The correction to the magnetic field is small if the angular frequency ω is small. At high frequencies, however, a new phenomenon can dominate: The electric and magnetic fields, each re-creating the other, constitute an electromagnetic wave radiated by the solenoid as we will study in Chapter 34.

(B) What is the magnitude of the induced electric field inside the solenoid, a distance r from its axis?

SOLUTION

Analyze For an interior point ($r < R$), the magnetic flux through an integration loop is given by $\Phi_B = B\pi r^2$.

Evaluate the right side of Equation 31.9: $$(5) \quad -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} = -\frac{d}{dt}(B\pi r^2) = -\pi r^2 \frac{dB}{dt}$$

Substitute Equation (2) into Equation (5): $$(6) \quad -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} = -\pi r^2 \mu_0 n I_{max} \frac{d}{dt}(\cos \omega t) = \pi r^2 \mu_0 n I_{max} \omega \sin \omega t$$

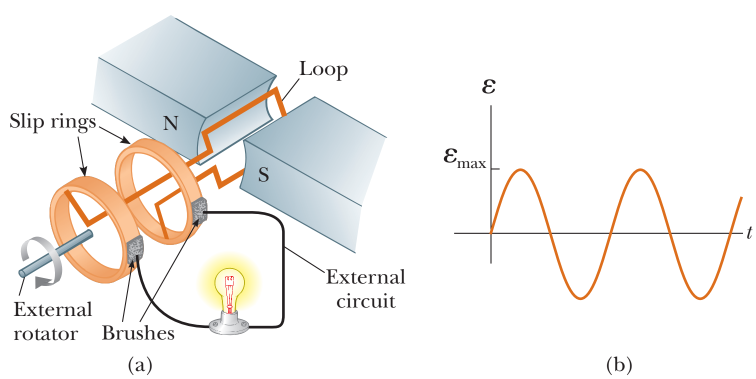
Substitute Equations (4) and (6) into Equation 31.9: $$E(2\pi r) = \pi r^2 \mu_0 n I_{max} \omega \sin \omega t$$

Solve for the magnitude of the electric field: $$E = \boxed{\frac{\mu_0 n I_{max} \omega}{2} r \sin \omega t} \quad (\text{for } r < R)$$

Finalize This result shows that the amplitude of the electric field induced inside the solenoid by the changing magnetic flux through the solenoid increases linearly with r and varies sinusoidally with time.

31.5 Generators and Motors

Electric generators take in energy by work and transfer it out by electrical transmission. To understand how they operate, let us consider the **alternating-current (AC) generator.** In its simplest form, it consists of a loop of wire rotated by some external means in a magnetic field (Active Fig. 31.17a).



ACTIVE FIGURE 31.17

(a) Schematic diagram of an AC generator. An emf is induced in a loop that rotates in a magnetic field. (b) The alternating emf induced in the loop plotted as a function of time.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the speed of rotation and the strength of the field to see the effects on the emf generated.

In commercial power plants, the energy required to rotate the loop can be derived from a variety of sources. For example, in a hydroelectric plant, falling water directed against the blades of a turbine produces the rotary motion; in a coal-fired plant, the energy released by burning coal is used to convert water to steam, and this steam is directed against the turbine blades.

As a loop rotates in a magnetic field, the magnetic flux through the area enclosed by the loop changes with time, and this change induces an emf and a current in the loop according to Faraday's law. The ends of the loop are connected to slip rings that rotate with the loop. Connections from these slip rings, which act as output terminals of the generator, to the external circuit are made by stationary metallic brushes in contact with the slip rings.

Instead of a single turn, suppose a coil with N turns (a more practical situation), with the same area A, rotates in a magnetic field with a constant angular speed ω. If θ is the angle between the magnetic field and the normal to the plane of the coil as in Figure 31.18, the magnetic flux through the coil at any time t is

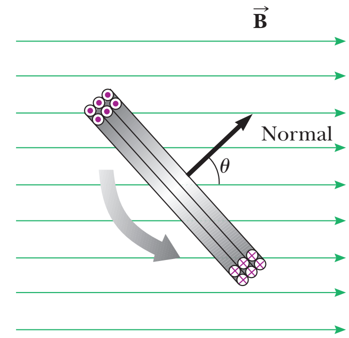


Figure 31.18 A loop enclosing an area A and containing N turns, rotating with constant angular speed ω in a magnetic field. The emf induced in the loop varies sinusoidally in time.

$$\Phi_B = BA\cos\theta = BA\cos\omega t$$

where we have used the relationship $\theta = \omega t$ between angular position and angular speed (see Eq. 10.3). (We have set the clock so that $t = 0$ when $\theta = 0$.) Hence, the induced emf in the coil is

$$\mathcal{E} = -N\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} = -NAB\frac{d}{dt}(\cos\omega t) = NAB\omega\sin\omega t \qquad \textbf{(31.10)}$$

This result shows that the emf varies sinusoidally with time as plotted in Active Figure 31.17b. Equation 31.10 shows that the maximum emf has the value

$$\mathcal{E}_{\text{max}} = NAB\omega \qquad \textbf{(31.11)}$$

which occurs when $\omega t = 90°$ or $270°$. In other words, $\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_{\text{max}}$ when the magnetic field is in the plane of the coil and the time rate of change of flux is a maximum. Furthermore, the emf is zero when $\omega t = 0$ or $180°$, that is, when $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is perpendicular to the plane of the coil and the time rate of change of flux is zero.

The frequency for commercial generators in the United States and Canada is 60 Hz, whereas in some European countries it is 50 Hz. (Recall that $\omega = 2\pi f$, where f is the frequency in hertz.)

Quick Quiz 31.4 In an AC generator, a coil with N turns of wire spins in a magnetic field. Of the following choices, which does *not* cause an increase in the emf generated in the coil? (a) replacing the coil wire with one of lower resistance (b) spinning the coil faster (c) increasing the magnetic field (d) increasing the number of turns of wire on the coil

EXAMPLE 31.8 emf Induced in a Generator

The coil in an AC generator consists of 8 turns of wire, each of area $A = 0.090\,0\ \text{m}^2$, and the total resistance of the wire is $12.0\ \Omega$. The coil rotates in a 0.500-T magnetic field at a constant frequency of 60.0 Hz.

(A) Find the maximum induced emf in the coil.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Study Active Figure 31.17 to make sure you understand the operation of an AC generator.

Categorize We evaluate parameters using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Use Equation 31.11 to find the maximum induced emf: $\mathcal{E}_{\text{max}} = NAB\omega = NAB(2\pi f)$

Substitute numerical values: $\mathcal{E}_{\max} = 8(0.090\,0 \text{ m}^2)(0.500 \text{ T})(2\pi)(60.0 \text{ Hz}) = \boxed{136 \text{ V}}$

(B) What is the maximum induced current in the coil when the output terminals are connected to a low-resistance conductor?

SOLUTION

Use Equation 27.7 and the result to part (A): $I_{\max} = \dfrac{\mathcal{E}_{\max}}{R} = \dfrac{136 \text{ V}}{12.0\ \Omega} = \boxed{11.3 \text{ A}}$

The **direct-current (DC) generator** is illustrated in Active Figure 31.19a. Such generators are used, for instance, in older cars to charge the storage batteries. The components are essentially the same as those of the AC generator except that the contacts to the rotating coil are made using a split ring called a *commutator.*

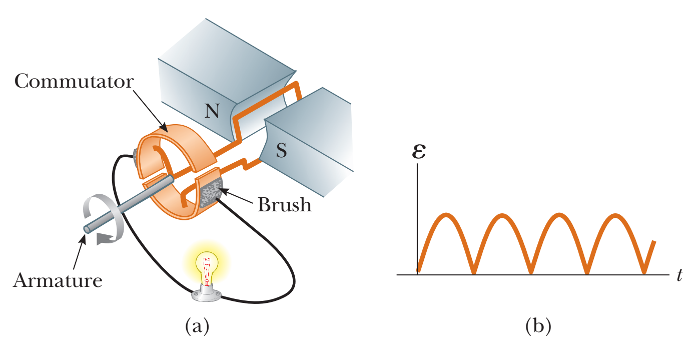
In this configuration, the output voltage always has the same polarity and pulsates with time as shown in Active Figure 31.19b. We can understand why by noting that the contacts to the split ring reverse their roles every half cycle. At the same time, the polarity of the induced emf reverses; hence, the polarity of the split ring (which is the same as the polarity of the output voltage) remains the same.

A pulsating DC current is not suitable for most applications. To obtain a steadier DC current, commercial DC generators use many coils and commutators distributed so that the sinusoidal pulses from the various coils are out of phase. When these pulses are superimposed, the DC output is almost free of fluctuations.

A **motor** is a device into which energy is transferred by electrical transmission while energy is transferred out by work. A motor is essentially a generator operating in reverse. Instead of generating a current by rotating a coil, a current is supplied to the coil by a battery and the torque acting on the current-carrying coil (Section 29.5) causes it to rotate.

Useful mechanical work can be done by attaching the rotating coil to some external device. As the coil rotates in a magnetic field, however, the changing magnetic flux induces an emf in the coil; this induced emf always acts to reduce the current in the coil. If that were not the case, Lenz's law would be violated. The back emf increases in magnitude as the rotational speed of the coil increases. (The phrase *back emf* is used to indicate an emf that tends to reduce the supplied current.) Because the voltage available to supply current equals the difference between the supply voltage and the back emf, the current in the rotating coil is limited by the back emf.

When a motor is turned on, there is initially no back emf, and the current is very large because it is limited only by the resistance of the coil. As the coil begins



ACTIVE FIGURE 31.19

(a) Schematic diagram of a DC generator. (b) The magnitude of the emf varies in time, but the polarity never changes.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the speed of rotation and the strength of the field to see the effects on the emf generated.

to rotate, the induced back emf opposes the applied voltage and the current in the coil decreases. If the mechanical load increases, the motor slows down, which causes the back emf to decrease. This reduction in the back emf increases the current in the coil and therefore also increases the power needed from the external voltage source. For this reason, the power requirements for running a motor are greater for heavy loads than for light ones. If the motor is allowed to run under no mechanical load, the back emf reduces the current to a value just large enough to overcome energy losses due to internal energy and friction. If a very heavy load jams the motor so that it cannot rotate, the lack of a back emf can lead to dangerously high current in the motor's wire. This dangerous situation is explored in the **What If?** section of Example 31.9.

A modern application of motors in automobiles is seen in the development of *hybrid drive systems.* In these automobiles, a gasoline engine and an electric motor are combined to increase the fuel economy of the vehicle and reduce its emissions. Figure 31.20 shows the engine compartment of a Toyota Prius, one of a small number of hybrids available in the United States. In this automobile, power to the wheels can come from either the gasoline engine or the electric motor. In normal driving, the electric motor accelerates the vehicle from rest until it is moving at a speed of about 15 mi/h (24 km/h). During this acceleration period, the engine is not running, so gasoline is not used and there is no emission. At higher speeds, the motor and engine work together so that the engine always operates at or near its most efficient speed. The result is a significantly higher gasoline mileage than that obtained by a traditional gasoline-powered automobile. When a hybrid vehicle brakes, the motor acts as a generator and returns some of the vehicle's kinetic energy back to the battery as stored energy. In a normal vehicle, this kinetic energy is simply lost as it is transformed to internal energy in the brakes and roadway.

John W. Jewett, Jr.

Figure 31.20 The engine compartment of the Toyota Prius, a hybrid vehicle.

EXAMPLE 31.9 The Induced Current in a Motor

A motor contains a coil with a total resistance of 10 Ω and is supplied by a voltage of 120 V. When the motor is running at its maximum speed, the back emf is 70 V.

(A) Find the current in the coil at the instant the motor is turned on.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Think about the motor just after it is turned on. It has not yet moved, so there is no back emf generated. As a result, the current in the motor is high. After the motor begins to turn, a back emf is generated and the current decreases.

Categorize We need to combine our new understanding about motors with the relationship between current, voltage, and resistance.

Analyze Evaluate the current in the coil from Equation 27.7 with no back emf generated:

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{R} = \frac{120\text{ V}}{10\ \Omega} = \boxed{12\text{ A}}$$

(B) Find the current in the coil when the motor has reached maximum speed.

SOLUTION

Evaluate the current in the coil with the maximum back emf generated:

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{E} - \mathcal{E}_{\text{back}}}{R} = \frac{120\text{ V} - 70\text{ V}}{10\ \Omega} = \frac{50\text{ V}}{10\ \Omega} = \boxed{5.0\text{ A}}$$

Finalize The current drawn by the motor when operating at its maximum speed is significantly less than that drawn before it begins to turn.

What If? Suppose this motor is in a circular saw. When you are operating the saw, the blade becomes jammed in a piece of wood and the motor cannot turn. By what percentage does the power input to the motor increase when it is jammed?

Answer You may have everyday experiences with motors becoming warm when they are prevented from turning. That is due to the increased power input to the motor. The higher rate of energy transfer results in an increase in the internal energy of the coil, an undesirable effect.

Set up the ratio of power input to the motor when jammed, which is that calculated in part (A), to that when it is not jammed, part (B):

$$\frac{\mathcal{P}_{\text{jammed}}}{\mathcal{P}_{\text{not jammed}}} = \frac{I_A{}^2 R}{I_B{}^2 R} = \frac{I_A{}^2}{I_B{}^2}$$

Substituting numerical values gives

$$\frac{\mathcal{P}_{\text{jammed}}}{\mathcal{P}_{\text{not jammed}}} = \frac{(12\text{ A})^2}{(5.0\text{ A})^2} = 5.76$$

which represents a 476% increase in the input power! Such a high power input can cause the coil to become so hot that it is damaged.

31.6 Eddy Currents

As we have seen, an emf and a current are induced in a circuit by a changing magnetic flux. In the same manner, circulating currents called **eddy currents** are induced in bulk pieces of metal moving through a magnetic field. This phenomenon can be demonstrated by allowing a flat copper or aluminum plate attached at the end of a rigid bar to swing back and forth through a magnetic field (Fig. 31.21). As the plate enters the field, the changing magnetic flux induces an emf in the plate, which in turn causes the free electrons in the plate to move, producing the swirling eddy currents. According to Lenz's law, the direction of the eddy currents is such that they create magnetic fields that oppose the change that causes the currents. For this reason, the eddy currents must produce effective magnetic poles on the plate, which are repelled by the poles of the magnet; this situation gives rise to a repulsive force that opposes the motion of the plate. (If the opposite were true, the plate would accelerate and its energy would increase after each swing, in violation of the law of conservation of energy.)

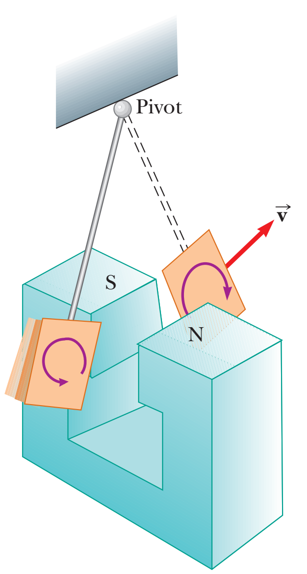
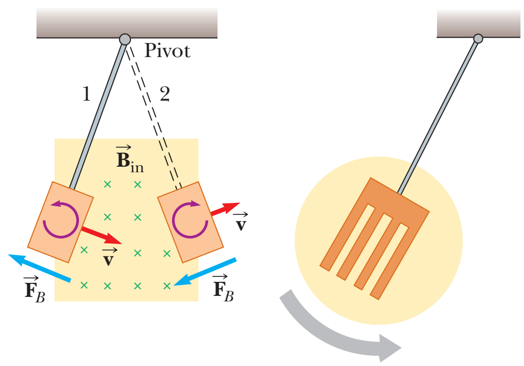


Figure 31.21 Formation of eddy currents in a conducting plate moving through a magnetic field. As the plate enters or leaves the field, the changing magnetic flux induces an emf, which causes eddy currents in the plate.

As indicated in Active Figure 31.22a, with $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ directed into the page, the induced eddy current is counterclockwise as the swinging plate enters the field at position 1 because the flux due to the external magnetic field into the page through the plate is increasing. Hence, by Lenz's law, the induced current must provide its own magnetic field out of the page. The opposite is true as the plate leaves the field at position 2, where the current is clockwise. Because the induced eddy current always produces a magnetic retarding force $\vec{\mathbf{F}}_B$ when the plate enters or leaves the field, the swinging plate eventually comes to rest.

If slots are cut in the plate as shown in Active Figure 31.22b, the eddy currents and the corresponding retarding force are greatly reduced. We can understand this reduction in force by realizing that the cuts in the plate prevent the formation of any large current loops.

The braking systems on many subway and rapid-transit cars make use of electromagnetic induction and eddy currents. An electromagnet attached to the train is positioned near the steel rails. (An electromagnet is essentially a solenoid with an iron core.) The braking action occurs when a large current is passed through the electromagnet. The relative motion of the magnet and rails induces eddy currents in the rails, and the direction of these currents produces a drag force on the moving train. Because the eddy currents decrease steadily in magnitude as the train slows



(a) (b)

ACTIVE FIGURE 31.22

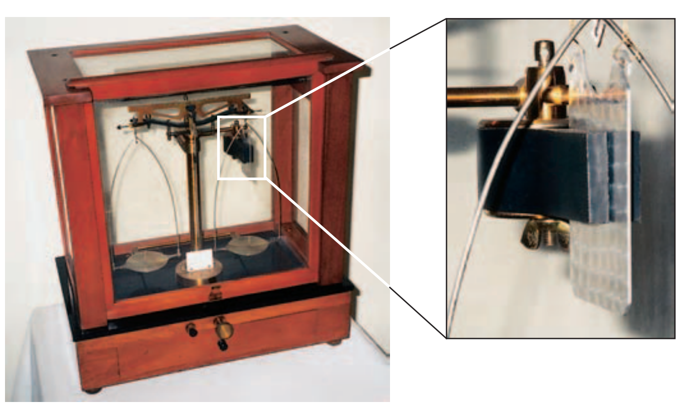
(a) As the conducting plate enters the field (position 1), the eddy currents are counterclockwise. As the plate leaves the field (position 2), the currents are clockwise. In either case, the force on the plate is opposite the velocity and eventually the plate comes to rest. (b) When slots are cut in the conducting plate, the eddy currents are reduced and the plate swings more freely through the magnetic field.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to choose to let a solid or a slotted plate swing through the magnetic field and observe the effect.

down, the braking effect is quite smooth. As a safety measure, some power tools use eddy currents to stop rapidly spinning blades once the device is turned off.

Eddy currents are often undesirable because they represent a transformation of mechanical energy to internal energy. To reduce this energy loss, conducting parts are often laminated; that is, they are built up in thin layers separated by a nonconducting material such as lacquer or a metal oxide. This layered structure prevents large current loops and effectively confines the currents to small loops in individual layers. Such a laminated structure is used in transformer cores (see Section 33.8) and motors to minimize eddy currents and thereby increase the efficiency of these devices.

Quick Quiz 31.5 In an equal-arm balance from the early 20th century (Fig. 31.23), an aluminum sheet hangs from one of the arms and passes between the poles of a magnet, causing the oscillations of the balance to decay rapidly. In the absence of such magnetic braking, the oscillation might continue for a long time, and the experimenter would have to wait to take a reading. Why do the oscillations decay? (a) because the aluminum sheet is attracted to the magnet (b) because currents in the aluminum sheet set up a magnetic field that opposes the oscillations (c) because aluminum is paramagnetic.



John W. Jewett, Jr.

Figure 31.23 (Quick Quiz 31.5) In an old-fashioned equal-arm balance, an aluminum sheet hangs between the poles of a magnet.

Summary

ThomsonNOW™ Sign in at **www.thomsonedu.com** and go to ThomsonNOW to take a practice test for this chapter.

CONCEPTS AND PRINCIPLES

Faraday's law of induction states that the emf induced in a loop is directly proportional to the time rate of change of magnetic flux through the loop, or

$$\mathcal{E} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} \qquad \textbf{(31.1)}$$

where $\Phi_B = \oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{A}}$ is the magnetic flux through the loop.

When a conducting bar of length ℓ moves at a velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$ through a magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$, where $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is perpendicular to the bar and to $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$, the **motional emf** induced in the bar is

$$\mathcal{E} = -B\ell v \qquad \textbf{(31.5)}$$

Lenz's law states that the induced current and induced emf in a conductor are in such a direction as to set up a magnetic field that opposes the change that produced them.

A general form of **Faraday's law of induction** is

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} \qquad \textbf{(31.9)}$$

where $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ is the nonconservative electric field that is produced by the changing magnetic flux.

Questions

☐ denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide;* **O** denotes objective question

1. What is the difference between magnetic flux and magnetic field?

2. **O** Figure Q31.2 is a graph of the magnetic flux through a certain coil of wire as a function of time, during an interval while the radius of the coil is increased, the coil is rotated through 1.5 revolutions, and the external source of the magnetic field is turned off, in that order. Rank the electromotive force induced in the coil at the instants marked A through F from the largest positive value to the largest-magnitude negative value. In your ranking, note any cases of equality and also any instants when the emf is zero.

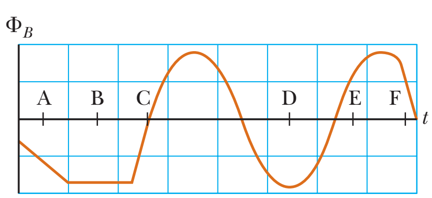


Figure Q31.2

3. **O** A flat coil of wire is placed in a uniform magnetic field that is in the y direction. **(i)** The magnetic flux through the coil is a maximum if the coil is (a) in the xy plane (b) in either the xy or the yz plane (c) in the xz plane (d) in any orientation, because it is a constant **(ii)** For what orientation is the flux zero? Choose the best answer from the same possibilities.

4. **O** A square, flat coil of wire is pulled at constant velocity through a region of uniform magnetic field directed perpendicular to the plane of the coil as shown in Figure Q31.4. **(i)** Is current induced in the coil? (a) yes, clockwise (b) yes, counterclockwise (c) no **(ii)** Does charge separation occur in the coil? (a) yes, with the top positive (b) yes, with the top negative (c) no

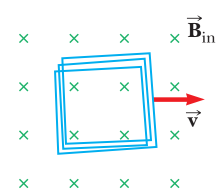


Figure Q31.4 Questions 4 and 6.

☐**5.** The bar in Figure Q31.5 moves on rails to the right with a velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$, and the uniform, constant magnetic field is directed out of the page. Why is the induced current clockwise? If the bar were moving to the left, what would be the direction of the induced current?

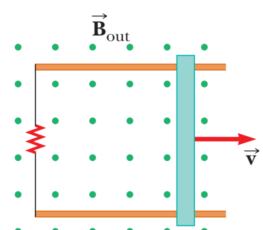


Figure Q31.5 Questions 5 and 6.

6. **O** **(i)** As the square coil of wire in Figure Q31.4 moves perpendicular to the field, is an external force required to keep it moving with constant speed? **(ii)** Answer the same question for the bar in Figure Q31.5. **(iii)** Answer the same question for the bar in Figure Q31.6.

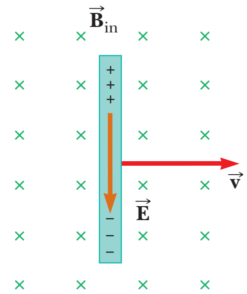


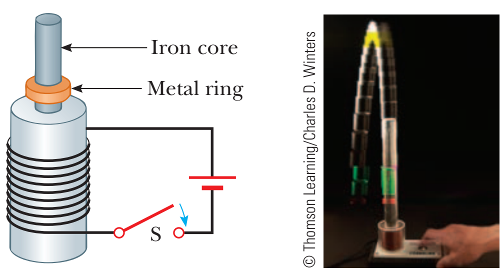
Figure Q31.6

7. In a hydroelectric dam, how is energy produced that is then transferred out by electrical transmission? That is, how is the energy of motion of the water converted to energy that is transmitted by AC electricity?

8. A piece of aluminum is dropped vertically downward between the poles of an electromagnet. Does the magnetic field affect the velocity of the aluminum?

9. **O** What happens to the amplitude of the induced emf when the rate of rotation of a generator coil is doubled? (a) It becomes 4 times larger. (b) It becomes 2 times larger. (c) It is unchanged. (d) It becomes $\frac{1}{2}$ as large. (e) It becomes $\frac{1}{4}$ as large.

10. When the switch in Figure Q31.10a is closed, a current is set up in the coil and the metal ring springs upward (Fig. Q31.10b). Explain this behavior.



(a) (b)

Figure Q31.10 Questions 10 and 11.

11. Assume the battery in Figure Q31.10a is replaced by an AC source and the switch is held closed. If held down, the metal ring on top of the solenoid becomes hot. Why?

12. **O** A bar magnet is held in a vertical orientation above a loop of wire that lies in a horizontal plane as shown in Figure Q31.12. The south pole of the magnet is on the bottom end, closest to the loop of wire. The magnet is dropped toward the loop. **(i)** While the magnet is falling toward the loop, what is the direction of current in the resistor? (a) to the left (b) to the right (c) there is no current (d) both to the left and to the right (e) downward **(ii)** After the magnet has passed through the loop and moves away from it, what is the direction of current in the resistor? Choose from the same possibilities. **(iii)** Now assume the magnet, producing a symmetrical field, is held in a horizontal orientation and then dropped. While it is approaching the loop, what is the direction of current in the resistor? Choose from the same possibilities.

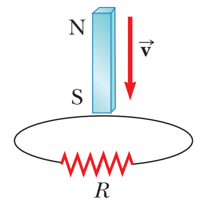


Figure Q31.12

13. **O** What is the direction of the current in the resistor in Figure Q31.13 **(i)** at an instant immediately after the switch is thrown closed, **(ii)** after the switch has been closed for several seconds, and **(iii)** at an instant after the switch has then been thrown open? Choose each answer from these possibilities: (a) left (b) right (c) both left and right (d) The current is zero.

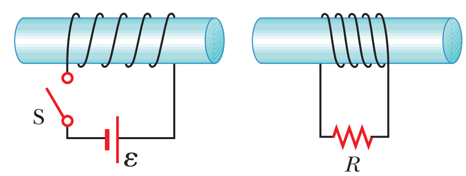


Figure Q31.13

14. In Section 7.7, we defined conservative and nonconservative forces. In Chapter 23, we stated that an electric charge creates an electric field that produces a conservative force. Argue now that induction creates an electric field that produces a nonconservative force.

Problems

WebAssign The Problems from this chapter may be assigned online in WebAssign.

ThomsonNOW™ Sign in at **www.thomsonedu.com** and go to ThomsonNOW to assess your understanding of this chapter's topics with additional quizzing and conceptual questions.

1, 2, 3 denotes straightforward, intermediate, challenging; ☐ denotes full solution available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide;* ▲ denotes coached solution with hints available at **www.thomsonedu.com;** ▭ denotes developing symbolic reasoning; ● denotes asking for qualitative reasoning; ▪ denotes computer useful in solving problem

Section 31.1 Faraday's Law of Induction

Section 31.3 Lenz's Law

1. *Transcranial magnetic stimulation* is a noninvasive technique used to stimulate regions of the human brain. A small coil is placed on the scalp, and a brief burst of current in the coil produces a rapidly changing magnetic field inside the brain. The induced emf can stimulate neuronal activity. (a) One such device generates an upward magnetic field

within the brain that rises from zero to 1.50 T in 120 ms. Determine the induced emf around a horizontal circle of tissue of radius 1.60 mm. (b) **What If?** The field next changes to 0.500 T downward in 80.0 ms. How does the emf induced in this process compare with that in part (a)?

2. A flat loop of wire consisting of a single turn of cross-sectional area 8.00 cm^2 is perpendicular to a magnetic field that increases uniformly in magnitude from 0.500 T to 2.50 T in 1.00 s. What is the resulting induced current if the loop has a resistance of 2.00 Ω?

3. A 25-turn circular coil of wire has diameter 1.00 m. It is placed with its axis along the direction of the Earth's magnetic field of 50.0 μT and then in 0.200 s is flipped 180°. An average emf of what magnitude is generated in the coil?

4. ● Your physics teacher asks you to help her set up a demonstration of Faraday's law for the class. As shown in Figure P31.4, the apparatus consists of a strong, permanent magnet producing a field of 110 mT between its poles, a 12-turn coil of radius 2.10 cm cemented onto a wood frame with a handle, some flexible connecting wires, and an ammeter. The idea is to pull the coil out of the center of the magnetic field as quickly as you can and read the average current registered on the meter. The equivalent resistance of the coil, leads, and meter is 2.30 Ω. You can flip the coil out of the field in about 180 ms. The ammeter has a full-scale sensitivity of 1 000 μA. (a) Is this meter sensitive enough to show the induced current clearly? Explain your reasoning. (b) Does the meter in the diagram register a positive or a negative current? Explain your reasoning.

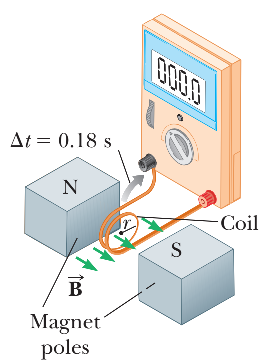


Figure P31.4

5. A rectangular loop of area A is placed in a region where the magnetic field is perpendicular to the plane of the loop. The magnitude of the field is allowed to vary in time according to $B = B_{max}e^{-t/\tau}$, where B_{max} and τ are constants. The field has the constant value B_{max} for $t < 0$. (a) Use Faraday's law to show that the emf induced in the loop is given by

$$\mathcal{E} = \frac{AB_{max}}{\tau}e^{-t/\tau}$$

(b) Obtain a numerical value for $\mathcal{E}$ at $t = 4.00$ s when $A = 0.160$ m^2, $B_{max} = 0.350$ T, and $\tau = 2.00$ s. (c) For the values of A, B_{max}, and τ given in part (b), what is the maximum value of $\mathcal{E}$?

6. To monitor the breathing of a hospital patient, a thin belt is girded around the patient's chest. The belt is a 200-turn coil. When the patient inhales, the area encircled by the coil increases by 39.0 cm^2. The magnitude of the Earth's magnetic field is 50.0 μT and makes an angle of 28.0° with the plane of the coil. Assuming a patient takes 1.80 s to inhale, find the average induced emf in the coil during this time interval.

7. ▲ A strong electromagnet produces a uniform magnetic field of 1.60 T over a cross-sectional area of 0.200 m^2. A coil having 200 turns and a total resistance of 20.0 Ω is placed around the electromagnet. The current in the electromagnet is then smoothly reduced until it reaches zero in 20.0 ms. What is the current induced in the coil?

8. A loop of wire in the shape of a rectangle of width w and length L and a long, straight wire carrying a current I lie on a tabletop as shown in Figure P31.8. (a) Determine the magnetic flux through the loop due to the current I. (b) Suppose the current is changing with time according to $I = a + bt$, where a and b are constants. Determine the emf that is induced in the loop if $b = 10.0$ A/s, $h = 1.00$ cm, $w = 10.0$ cm, and $L = 100$ cm. What is the direction of the induced current in the rectangle?

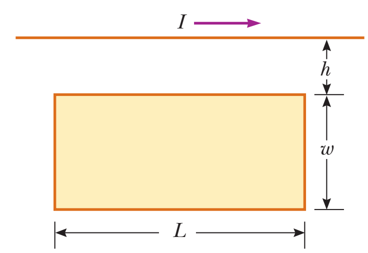


Figure P31.8 Problems 8 and 67.

9. ▲ An aluminum ring of radius 5.00 cm and resistance 3.00×10^{-4} Ω is placed around one end of a long air-core solenoid with 1 000 turns per meter and radius 3.00 cm as shown in Figure P31.9. Assume the axial component of the field produced by the solenoid is one-half as strong over the area of the end of the solenoid as at the center of the solenoid. Also assume the solenoid produces negligible field outside its cross-sectional area. The current in the solenoid is increasing at a rate of 270 A/s. (a) What is the induced current in the ring? At the center of the ring, what are (b) the magnitude and (c) the direction of the magnetic field produced by the induced current in the ring?

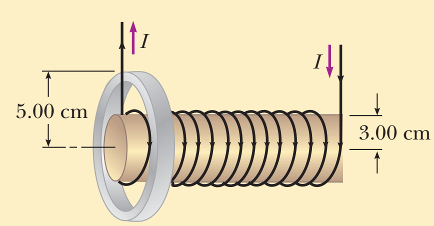


Figure P31.9 Problems 9 and 10.

10. An aluminum ring of radius r_1 and resistance R is placed around one end of a long air-core solenoid with n turns per meter and smaller radius r_2 as shown in Figure P31.9. Assume the axial component of the field produced by the solenoid over the area of the end of the solenoid is one-half as strong as at the center of the solenoid. Also assume the solenoid produces negligible field outside its cross-sectional area. The current in the solenoid is increasing at a rate of $\Delta I/\Delta t$. (a) What is the induced current in the ring? (b) At the center of the ring, what is the magnetic field produced by the induced current in the ring? (c) What is the direction of this field?

11. A coil of 15 turns and radius 10.0 cm surrounds a long solenoid of radius 2.00 cm and 1.00×10^3 turns/meter (Fig. P31.11). The current in the solenoid changes as $I = (5.00\text{ A})\sin(120t)$. Find the induced emf in the 15-turn coil as a function of time.

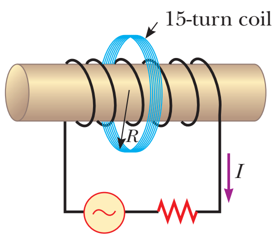


Figure P31.11

12. Two circular coils lie in the same plane. The following equation describes the emf induced in the smaller coil by a changing current in the larger coil. (a) Calculate this emf. (b) Write the statement of a problem, including data, for which the equation gives the solution.

$$\mathcal{E} = -20\,\frac{d}{dt}\left[\frac{130\left(4\pi \times 10^{-7}\,\dfrac{\text{T}\cdot\text{m}}{\text{A}}\right)\left(3\text{ A} - \dfrac{(6\text{ A})t}{13 \times 10^{-6}\text{ s}}\right)}{2(0.40\text{ m})}\,\pi(0.03\text{ m})^2\cos 0°\right]$$

13. Find the current through section PQ of length $a = 65.0$ cm in Figure P31.13. The circuit is located in a magnetic field whose magnitude varies with time according to the expression $B = (1.00 \times 10^{-3}\text{ T/s})t$. Assume the resistance per length of the wire is 0.100 Ω/m.

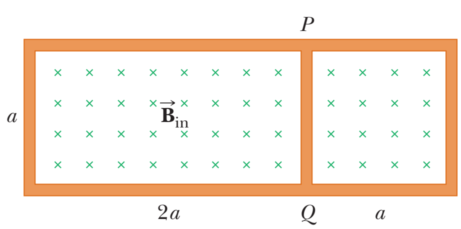


Figure P31.13

14. A 30-turn circular coil of radius 4.00 cm and resistance 1.00 Ω is placed in a magnetic field directed perpendicular to the plane of the coil. The magnitude of the magnetic field varies in time according to the expression $B = 0.010\,0t + 0.040\,0t^2$, where t is in seconds and B is in teslas. Calculate the induced emf in the coil at $t = 5.00$ s.

15. A long solenoid has $n = 400$ turns per meter and carries a current given by $I = (30.0\text{ A})(1 - e^{-1.60t})$. Inside the solenoid and coaxial with it is a coil that has a radius of 6.00 cm and consists of a total of $N = 250$ turns of fine wire (Fig. P31.15). What emf is induced in the coil by the changing current?

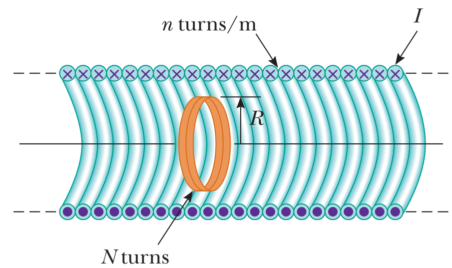


Figure P31.15

16. ● When a wire carries an AC current with a known frequency, you can use a *Rogowski coil* to determine the amplitude I_{max} of the current without disconnecting the wire to shunt the current though a meter. The Rogowski coil, shown in Figure P31.16, simply clips around the wire. It consists of a toroidal conductor wrapped around a circular return cord. Let n represent the number of turns in the toroid per unit distance along it. Let A represent the cross-sectional area of the toroid. Let $I(t) = I_{max}\sin\omega t$ represent the current to be measured. (a) Show that the amplitude of the emf induced in the Rogowski coil is $\mathcal{E}_{max} = \mu_0 n A\omega I_{max}$. (b) Explain why the wire carrying the unknown current need not be at the center of the Rogowski coil and why the coil will not respond to nearby currents that it does not enclose.

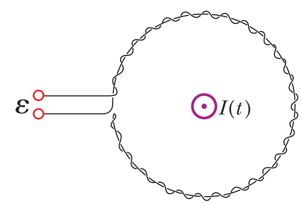


Figure P31.16

17. A coil formed by wrapping 50 turns of wire in the shape of a square is positioned in a magnetic field so that the normal to the plane of the coil makes an angle of 30.0° with the direction of the field. When the magnetic field is increased uniformly from 200 μT to 600 μT in 0.400 s, an emf of magnitude 80.0 mV is induced in the coil. What is the total length of the wire?

18. A toroid having a rectangular cross section ($a = 2.00$ cm by $b = 3.00$ cm) and inner radius $R = 4.00$ cm consists of 500 turns of wire that carries a sinusoidal current $I = I_{max}\sin\omega t$, with $I_{max} = 50.0$ A and a frequency $f = \omega/2\pi = 60.0$ Hz. A coil that consists of 20 turns of wire links with the toroid as shown in Figure P31.18. Determine the emf induced in the coil as a function of time.

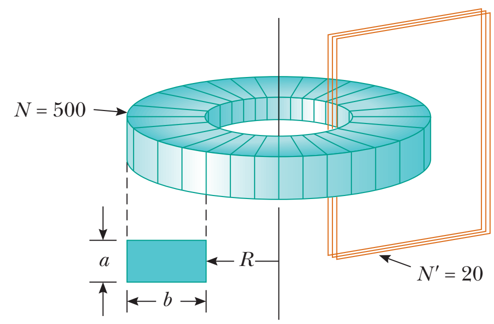


Figure P31.18

19. A piece of insulated wire is shaped into a figure 8 as shown in Figure P31.19. The radius of the upper circle is 5.00 cm and that of the lower circle is 9.00 cm. The wire has a uniform resistance per unit length of 3.00 Ω/m. A uniform magnetic field is applied perpendicular to the plane of the two circles, in the direction shown. The magnetic field is increasing at a constant rate of 2.00 T/s. Find the magnitude and direction of the induced current in the wire.

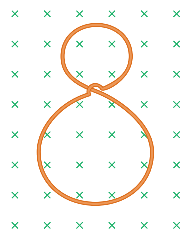


Figure P31.19

Section 31.2 Motional emf

Section 31.3 Lenz's Law

Problem 61 in Chapter 29 can be assigned with this section.

20. An automobile has a vertical radio antenna 1.20 m long. The automobile travels at 65.0 km/h on a horizontal road where the Earth's magnetic field is 50.0 μT directed toward the north and downward at an angle of 65.0° below the horizontal. (a) Specify the direction the automobile should move so as to generate the maximum motional emf in the antenna, with the top of the antenna positive relative to the bottom. (b) Calculate the magnitude of this induced emf.

21. ● A small airplane with a wingspan of 14.0 m is flying due north at a speed of 70.0 m/s over a region where the vertical component of the Earth's magnetic field is 1.20 μT downward. (a) What potential difference is developed between the wingtips? Which wingtip is at higher potential? (b) **What If?** How would the answer change if the plane turned to fly due east? (c) Can this emf be used to power a light in the passenger compartment? Explain your answer.

22. Consider the arrangement shown in Figure P31.22. Assume $R = 6.00\ \Omega$, $\ell = 1.20$ m, and a uniform 2.50-T magnetic field is directed into the page. At what speed should the bar be moved to produce a current of 0.500 A in the resistor?

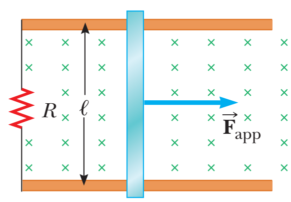


Figure P31.22 Problems 22, 23, and 24.

23. Figure P31.22 shows a top view of a bar that can slide without friction. The resistor is 6.00 Ω, and a 2.50-T magnetic field is directed perpendicularly downward, into the paper. Let $\ell = 1.20$ m. (a) Calculate the applied force required to move the bar to the right at a constant speed of 2.00 m/s. (b) At what rate is energy delivered to the resistor?

24. ● A conducting rod of length ℓ moves on two horizontal, frictionless rails as shown in Figure P31.22. If a constant force of 1.00 N moves the bar at 2.00 m/s through a magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ that is directed into the page, (a) what is the current in the 8.00-Ω resistor R? (b) What is the rate at which energy is delivered to the resistor? (c) What is the mechanical power delivered by the force $\vec{\mathbf{F}}_{app}$? (d) Explain the relationship between the quantities computed in parts (b) and (c).

25. The *homopolar generator*, also called the *Faraday disk*, is a low-voltage, high-current electric generator. It consists of a rotating conducting disk with one stationary brush (a sliding electrical contact) at its axle and another at a point on its circumference as shown in Figure P31.25. A magnetic field is applied perpendicular to the plane of the disk. Assume the field is 0.900 T, the angular speed is 3 200 rev/min, and the radius of the disk is 0.400 m. Find the emf generated between the brushes. When superconducting coils are used to produce a large magnetic field, a homopolar generator can have a power output of several megawatts. Such a generator is useful, for example, in purifying metals by electrolysis. If a voltage is applied to the output terminals of the generator, it runs in reverse as a *homopolar motor* capable of providing great torque, useful in ship propulsion.

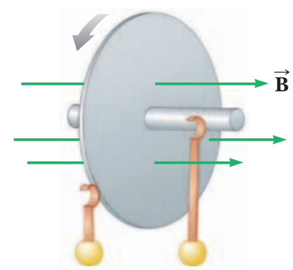


Figure P31.25

26. **Review problem.** As he starts to restring his acoustic guitar, a student attaches a single string, with linear density 3.00×10^{-3} kg/m, between two fixed points 64.0 cm apart, applies tension 267 N, and is distracted by a video game. His roommate attaches voltmeter leads to the ends of the metallic string and places a magnet across the string as shown in Figure P31.26. The magnet does not touch the string, but produces a uniform field of 4.50 mT

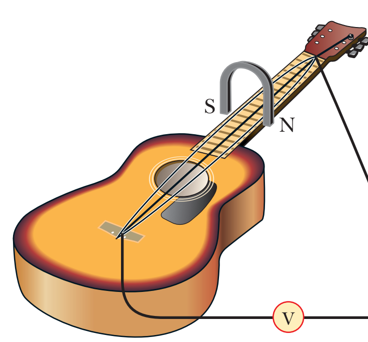


Figure P31.26

over a 2.00-cm length at the center of the string and negligible field elsewhere. Strumming the string sets it vibrating at its fundamental (lowest) frequency. The section of the string in the magnetic field moves perpendicular to the field with a uniform amplitude of 1.50 cm. Find (a) the frequency and (b) the amplitude of the electromotive force induced between the ends of the string.

27. A helicopter has blades of length 3.00 m, extending out from a central hub and rotating at 2.00 rev/s. If the vertical component of the Earth's magnetic field is 50.0 μT, what is the emf induced between the blade tip and the center hub?

28. Use Lenz's law to answer the following questions concerning the direction of induced currents. (a) What is the direction of the induced current in resistor R in Figure P31.28a when the bar magnet is moved to the left? (b) What is the direction of the current induced in the resistor R immediately after the switch S in Figure P31.28b is closed? (c) What is the direction of the induced current in R when the current I in Figure P31.28c decreases rapidly to zero? (d) A copper bar is moved to the right while its axis is maintained in a direction perpendicular to a magnetic field as shown in Figure P31.28d. If the top of the bar becomes positive relative to the bottom, what is the direction of the magnetic field?

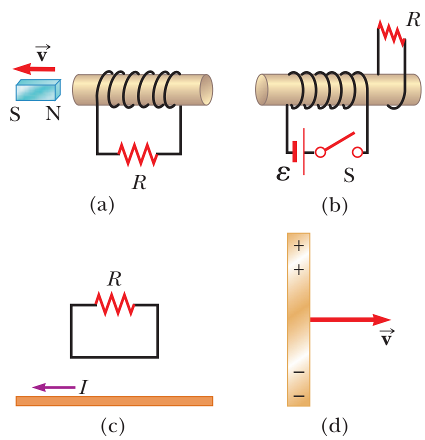


Figure P31.28

29. A rectangular coil with resistance R has N turns, each of length ℓ and width w as shown in Figure P31.29. The coil moves into a uniform magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ with constant velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$. What are the magnitude and direction of the total magnetic force on the coil (a) as it enters the magnetic field, (b) as it moves within the field, and (c) as it leaves the field?

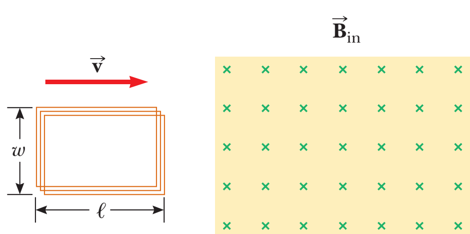


Figure P31.29

30. In Figure P31.30, the bar magnet is moved toward the loop. Is $V_a - V_b$ positive, negative, or zero? Explain your reasoning.

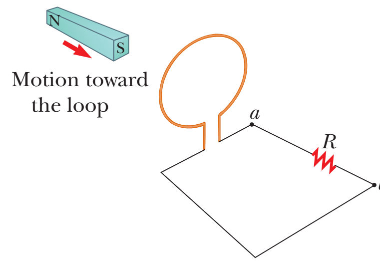


Figure P31.30

31. Two parallel rails with negligible resistance are 10.0 cm apart and are connected by a 5.00-Ω resistor. The circuit also contains two metal rods having resistances of 10.0 Ω and 15.0 Ω sliding along the rails (Fig. P31.31). The rods are pulled away from the resistor at constant speeds of 4.00 m/s and 2.00 m/s, respectively. A uniform magnetic field of magnitude 0.010 0 T is applied perpendicular to the plane of the rails. Determine the current in the 5.00-Ω resistor.

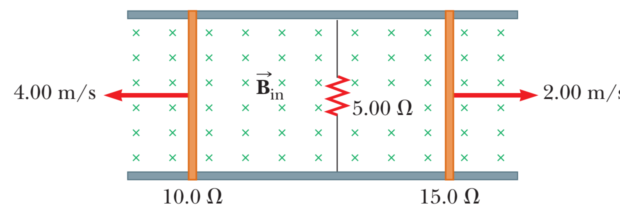


Figure P31.31

Section 31.4 Induced emf and Electric Fields

32. For the situation shown in Figure P31.32, the magnetic field changes with time according to the expression $B = (2.00t^3 - 4.00t^2 + 0.800)$ T, and $r_2 = 2R = 5.00$ cm. (a) Calculate the magnitude and direction of the force exerted on an electron located at point P_2 when $t = 2.00$ s. (b) At what instant is this force equal to zero?

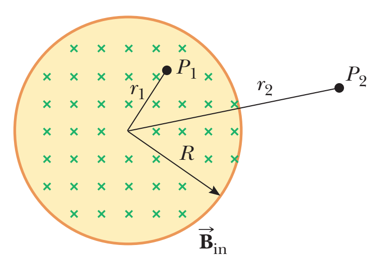


Figure P31.32 Problems 32 and 33.

33. A magnetic field directed into the page changes with time according to $B = (0.030\,0t^2 + 1.40)$ T, where t is in seconds. The field has a circular cross section of radius $R = 2.50$ cm (Fig. P31.32). What are the magnitude and direction of the electric field at point P_1 when $t = 3.00$ s and $r_1 = 0.020\,0$ m?

34. A long solenoid with 1 000 turns per meter and radius 2.00 cm carries an oscillating current given by $I = (5.00\text{ A}) \sin(100\pi t)$. What is the electric field induced at a radius $r = 1.00$ cm from the axis of the solenoid? What is the direction of this electric field when the current is increasing counterclockwise in the coil?

Section 31.5 Generators and Motors

Problems 40 and 54 in Chapter 29 can be assigned with this section.

35. ▲ A coil of area 0.100 m^2 is rotating at 60.0 rev/s with the axis of rotation perpendicular to a 0.200-T magnetic field. (a) If the coil has 1 000 turns, what is the maximum emf generated in it? (b) What is the orientation of the coil with respect to the magnetic field when the maximum induced emf occurs?

36. In a 250-turn automobile alternator, the magnetic flux in each turn is $\Phi_B = (2.50 \times 10^{-4}\text{ Wb}) \cos \omega t$, where ω is the angular speed of the alternator. The alternator is geared to rotate three times for each engine revolution. When the engine is running at an angular speed of 1 000 rev/min, determine (a) the induced emf in the alternator as a function of time and (b) the maximum emf in the alternator.

37. A long solenoid, with its axis along the x axis, consists of 200 turns per meter of wire that carries a steady current of 15.0 A. A coil is formed by wrapping 30 turns of thin wire around a circular frame that has a radius of 8.00 cm. The coil is placed inside the solenoid and mounted on an axis that is a diameter of the coil and coincides with the y axis. The coil is then rotated with an angular speed of 4.00π rad/s. The plane of the coil is in the yz plane at $t = 0$. Determine the emf generated in the coil as a function of time.

38. A bar magnet is spun at constant angular speed ω around an axis as shown in Figure P31.38. A stationary, flat, rectangular conducting loop surrounds the magnet, and at $t = 0$, the magnet is oriented as shown. Make a qualitative graph of the induced current in the loop as a function of time, plotting counterclockwise currents as positive and clockwise currents as negative.

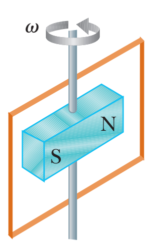


Figure P31.38

39. A motor in normal operation carries a direct current of 0.850 A when connected to a 120-V power supply. The resistance of the motor windings is 11.8 Ω. While in normal operation, (a) what is the back emf generated by the motor? (b) At what rate is internal energy produced in the windings? (c) **What If?** Suppose a malfunction stops the motor shaft from rotating. At what rate will internal energy be produced in the windings in this case? (Most motors have a thermal switch that will turn off the motor to prevent overheating when this stalling occurs.)

40. The rotating loop in an AC generator is a square 10.0 cm on each side. It is rotated at 60.0 Hz in a uniform field of 0.800 T. Calculate (a) the flux through the loop as a function of time, (b) the emf induced in the loop, (c) the current induced in the loop for a loop resistance of 1.00 Ω, (d) the power delivered to the loop, and (e) the torque that must be exerted to rotate the loop.

Section 31.6 Eddy Currents

41. ● Figure P31.41 represents an electromagnetic brake that uses eddy currents. An electromagnet hangs from a railroad car near one rail. To stop the car, a large current is sent through the coils of the electromagnet. The moving electromagnet induces eddy currents in the rails, whose fields oppose the change in the electromagnet's field. The magnetic fields of the eddy currents exert force on the current in the electromagnet, thereby slowing the car. The direction of the car's motion and the direction of the current in the electromagnet are shown correctly in the picture. Determine which of the eddy currents shown on the rails is correct. Explain your answer.

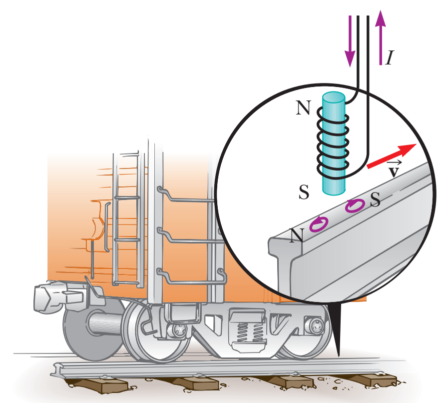


Figure P31.41

42. An *induction furnace* uses electromagnetic induction to produce eddy currents in a conductor, thereby raising the conductor's temperature. Commercial units operate at frequencies ranging from 60 Hz to about 1 MHz and deliver powers from a few watts to several megawatts. Induction heating can be used for warming a metal pan on a kitchen stove. It can be used to avoid oxidation and contamination of the metal when welding in a vacuum enclosure. At high frequencies, induced currents occur only near the surface of the conductor, in a phenomenon called the "skin effect." By creating an induced current for a short time interval at an appropriately high frequency, one can heat a sample down to a controlled depth. For example, the surface of a farm tiller can be tempered to make it hard and brittle for effective cutting while keeping the interior metal soft and ductile to resist breakage.

To explore induction heating, consider a flat conducting disk of radius R, thickness b, and resistivity ρ. A sinusoidal magnetic field $B_{max} \cos \omega t$ is applied perpendicular to the disk. Assume the field is uniform in space and the frequency is so low that the skin effect is not important. Also assume the eddy currents occur in circles concentric with the disk. (a) Calculate the average power delivered to the disk. (b) **What If?** By what factor does the power change when the amplitude of the field doubles? (c) When the frequency doubles? (d) When the radius of the disk doubles?

43. ▲ ● A conducting rectangular loop of mass M, resistance R, and dimensions w by ℓ falls from rest into a magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ as shown in Figure P31.43. During the time interval before the top edge of the loop reaches the field, the loop approaches a terminal speed v_T. (a) Show that

$$v_T = \frac{MgR}{B^2 w^2}$$

(b) Why is v_T proportional to R? (c) Why is it inversely proportional to B^2?

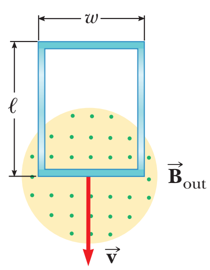


Figure P31.43

Additional Problems

44. ● Consider the apparatus shown in Figure P31.44 in which a conducting bar can be moved along two rails connected to a lightbulb. The whole system is immersed in a magnetic field of 0.400 T perpendicularly into the page. The vertical distance between the horizontal rails is 0.800 m. The resistance of the lightbulb is 48.0 Ω, assumed to be constant. The bar and rails have negligible resistance. The bar is moved toward the right by a constant force of magnitude 0.600 N. (a) What is the direction of the induced current in the circuit? (b) If the speed of the bar is 15.0 m/s at a particular instant, what is the value of the induced current? (c) Argue that the constant force causes the speed of the bar to increase and approach a certain terminal speed. Find the value of this maximum speed. (d) What power is delivered to the lightbulb when the bar is moving at its terminal speed? (e) We have assumed the resistance of the lightbulb is constant. In reality, as the power delivered to the lightbulb increases, the filament temperature increases and the resistance increases. Explain conceptually (not algebraically) whether the terminal speed found in part (c) changes if the resistance increases. If the terminal speed changes, does it increase or decrease? (f) With the assumption that the resistance of the lightbulb increases as the current increases, explain mathematically whether the power found in part (d) changes because of the increasing resistance. If it changes, is the actual power larger or smaller than the value previously found?

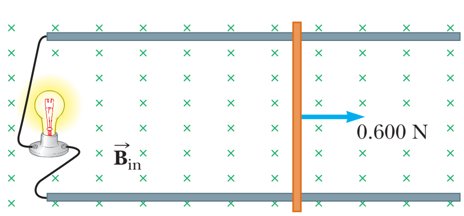


Figure P31.44

45. A guitar's steel string vibrates (Fig. 31.5a). The component of magnetic field perpendicular to the area of a pickup coil nearby is given by

$$B = 50.0\ \text{mT} + (3.20\ \text{mT})\sin(1\,046\pi t)$$

The circular pickup coil has 30 turns and radius 2.70 mm. Find the emf induced in the coil as a function of time.

46. Strong magnetic fields are used in such medical procedures as magnetic resonance imaging, or MRI. A technician wearing a brass bracelet enclosing area 0.005 00 m² places her hand in a solenoid whose magnetic field is 5.00 T directed perpendicular to the plane of the bracelet. The electrical resistance around the bracelet's circumference is 0.020 0 Ω. An unexpected power failure causes the field to drop to 1.50 T in a time interval of 20.0 ms. Find (a) the current induced in the bracelet and (b) the power delivered to the bracelet. *Note:* As this problem implies, you should not wear any metal objects when working in regions of strong magnetic fields.

47. Figure P31.47 is a graph of the induced emf versus time for a coil of N turns rotating with angular speed ω in a uniform magnetic field directed perpendicular to the coil's axis of rotation. **What If?** Copy this sketch (on a larger scale) and on the same set of axes show the graph of emf versus t (a) if the number of turns in the coil is doubled, (b) if instead the angular speed is doubled, and (c) if the angular speed is doubled while the number of turns in the coil is halved.

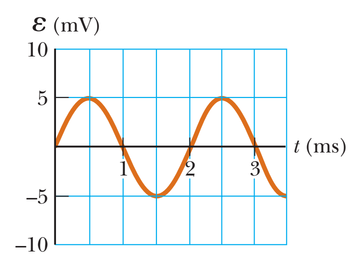


Figure P31.47

48. Two infinitely long solenoids (seen in cross section) pass through a circuit as shown in Figure P31.48. The magnitude of $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ inside each is the same and is increasing at the rate of 100 T/s. What is the current in each resistor?

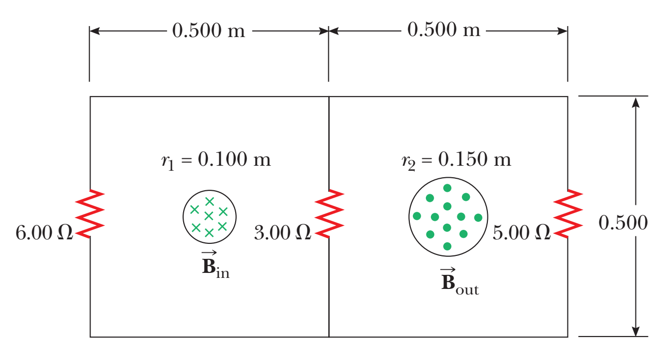


Figure P31.48

49. A conducting rod of length $\ell = 35.0$ cm is free to slide on two parallel conducting bars as shown in Figure P31.49. Two resistors $R_1 = 2.00\ \Omega$ and $R_2 = 5.00\ \Omega$ are connected across the ends of the bars to form a loop. A constant magnetic field $B = 2.50$ T is directed perpendicularly into the page. An external agent pulls the rod to the left with a constant speed of $v = 8.00$ m/s. Find (a) the currents in both resistors, (b) the total power delivered to the resistance of the circuit, and (c) the magnitude of the applied force that is needed to move the rod with this constant velocity.

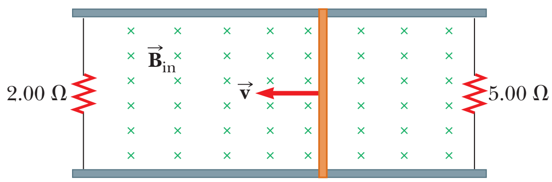


Figure P31.49

50. A bar of mass m, length d, and resistance R slides without friction in a horizontal plane, moving on parallel rails as shown in Figure P31.50. A battery that maintains a constant emf $\mathcal{E}$ is connected between the rails, and a constant magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is directed perpendicularly to the plane of the page. Assuming the bar starts from rest, show that at time t it moves with a speed

$$v = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{Bd}\left(1 - e^{-B^2 d^2 t/mR}\right)$$

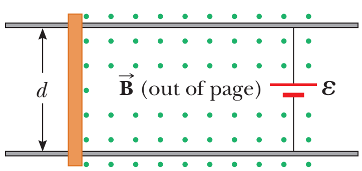


Figure P31.50

51. Suppose you wrap wire onto the core from a roll of cellophane tape to make a coil. How can you use a bar magnet to produce an induced voltage in the coil? What is the order of magnitude of the emf you generate? State the quantities you take as data and their values.

52. Magnetic field values are often determined by using a device known as a *search coil.* This technique depends on the measurement of the total charge passing through a coil in a time interval during which the magnetic flux linking the windings changes either because of the coil's motion or because of a change in the value of B. (a) Show that as the flux through the coil changes from Φ_1 to Φ_2, the charge transferred through the coil is given by $Q = N(\Phi_2 - \Phi_1)/R$, where R is the resistance of the coil and a sensitive ammeter connected across it and N is the number of turns. (b) As a specific example, calculate B when a 100-turn coil of resistance 200 Ω and cross-sectional area 40.0 cm² produces the following results. A total charge of 5.00×10^{-4} C passes through the coil when it is rotated in a uniform field from a position where the plane of the coil is perpendicular to the field to a position where the coil's plane is parallel to the field.

53. The plane of a square loop of wire with edge length $a = 0.200$ m is perpendicular to the Earth's magnetic field at a point where $B = 15.0\ \mu$T as shown in Figure P31.53. The total resistance of the loop and the wires connecting it to a sensitive ammeter is 0.500 Ω. If the loop is suddenly collapsed by horizontal forces as shown, what total charge passes through the ammeter?

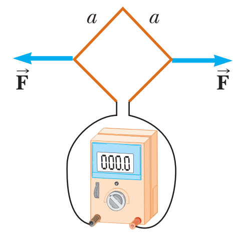


Figure P31.53

54. Review problem. A particle with a mass of 2.00×10^{-16} kg and a charge of 30.0 nC starts from rest, is accelerated by a strong electric field, and is fired from a small source inside a region of uniform constant magnetic field 0.600 T. The velocity of the particle is perpendicular to the field. The circular orbit of the particle encloses a magnetic flux of 15.0 μWb. (a) Calculate the speed of the particle. (b) Calculate the potential difference through which the particle accelerated inside the source.

55. ● In Figure P31.55, the rolling axle, 1.50 m long, is pushed along horizontal rails at a constant speed $v = 3.00$ m/s. A resistor $R = 0.400\ \Omega$ is connected to the rails at points a and b, directly opposite each other. The wheels make good electrical contact with the rails, so the axle, rails, and R form a closed-loop circuit. The only significant resistance in the circuit is R. A uniform magnetic field $B = 0.080\ 0$ T is vertically downward. (a) Find the induced current I in the resistor. (b) What horizontal force F is required to keep the axle rolling at constant speed? (c) Which end of the resistor, a or b, is at the higher electric potential? (d) **What If?** After the axle rolls past the resistor, does the current in R reverse direction? Explain your answer.

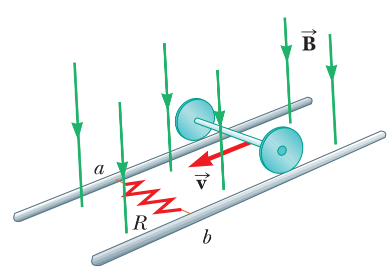


Figure P31.55

56. A conducting rod moves with a constant velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$ in a direction perpendicular to a long, straight wire carrying a current I as shown in Figure P31.56. Show that the magnitude of the emf generated between the ends of the rod is

$$|\mathcal{E}| = \frac{\mu_0 v I \ell}{2\pi r}$$

In this case, note that the emf decreases with increasing r as you might expect.

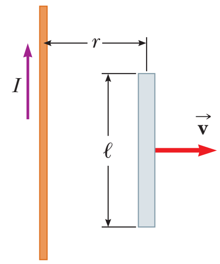


Figure P31.56

57. In Figure P31.57, a uniform magnetic field decreases at a constant rate $dB/dt = -K$, where K is a positive constant. A circular loop of wire of radius a containing a resistance R and a capacitance C is placed with its plane normal to the field. (a) Find the charge Q on the capacitor when it is fully charged. (b) Which plate is at the higher potential? (c) Discuss the force that causes the separation of charges.

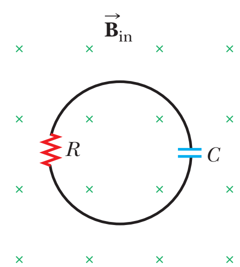


Figure P31.57

58. Figure P31.58 shows a compact, circular coil with 220 turns and radius 12.0 cm immersed in a uniform magnetic field parallel to the axis of the coil. The rate of change of the field has the constant magnitude 20.0 mT/s. (a) The following question cannot be answered with the information given. *Is the coil carrying clockwise or counterclockwise current?* What additional information is necessary to answer that question? (b) The coil overheats if more than 160 W of power is delivered to it. What resistance would the coil have at this critical point? To run cooler, should it have lower or higher resistance?

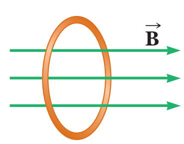


Figure P31.58

59. A rectangular coil of 60 turns, dimensions 0.100 m by 0.200 m and total resistance 10.0 Ω, rotates with angular speed 30.0 rad/s about the y axis in a region where a 1.00-T magnetic field is directed along the x axis. The rotation is initiated so that the plane of the coil is perpendicular to the direction of $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ at $t = 0$. Calculate (a) the maximum induced emf in the coil, (b) the maximum rate of change of magnetic flux through the coil, (c) the induced emf at $t = 0.050\,0$ s, and (d) the torque exerted by the magnetic field on the coil at the instant when the emf is a maximum.

60. A small, circular washer of radius 0.500 cm is held directly below a long, straight wire carrying a current of 10.0 A. The washer is located 0.500 m above the top of a table (Fig. P31.60). (a) If the washer is dropped from rest, what is the magnitude of the average induced emf in the washer over the time interval between its release and the moment it hits the tabletop? Assume the magnetic field is nearly constant over the area of the washer and equal to the magnetic field at the center of the washer. (b) What is the direction of the induced current in the washer?

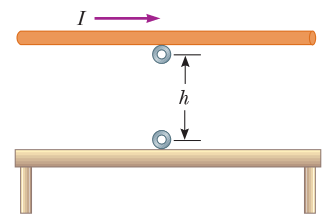


Figure P31.60

61. A conducting rod of length ℓ moves with velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$ parallel to a long wire carrying a steady current I. The axis of the rod is maintained perpendicular to the wire with the near end a distance r away as shown in Figure P31.61. Show that the magnitude of the emf induced in the rod is

$$|\mathcal{E}| = \frac{\mu_0 I v}{2\pi} \ln\left(1 + \frac{\ell}{r}\right)$$

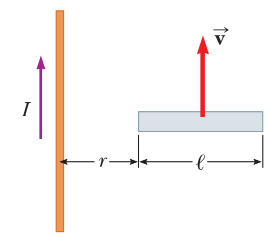


Figure P31.61

62. A rectangular loop of dimensions ℓ and w moves with a constant velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$ away from a long wire that carries a current I in the plane of the loop (Fig. P31.62). The total resistance of the loop is R. Derive an expression that gives the current in the loop at the instant the near side is a distance r from the wire.

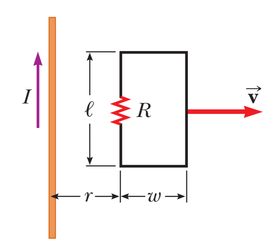


Figure P31.62

63. The magnetic flux through a metal ring varies with time t according to $\Phi_B = 3(at^3 - bt^2)$ T · m², with $a = 2.00$ s^{-3} and $b = 6.00$ s^{-2}. The resistance of the ring is 3.00 Ω. Determine the maximum current induced in the ring during the interval from $t = 0$ to $t = 2.00$ s.

64. **Review problem.** The bar of mass m in Figure P31.64 is pulled horizontally across parallel, frictionless rails by a massless string that passes over a light, frictionless pulley and is attached to a suspended object of mass M. The uniform magnetic field has a magnitude B, and the distance between the rails is ℓ. The only significant electrical resistance is the load resistor R shown connecting the rails at one end. Derive an expression that gives the horizontal speed of the bar as a function of time, assuming the suspended object is released with the bar at rest at $t = 0$.

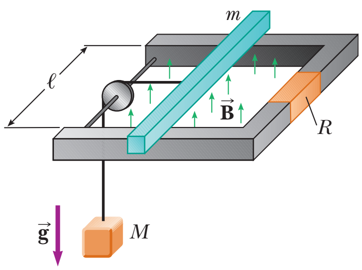


Figure P31.64

65. A *betatron* is a device that accelerates electrons to energies in the MeV range by means of electromagnetic induction. Electrons in a vacuum chamber are held in a circular orbit by a magnetic field perpendicular to the orbital plane. The magnetic field is gradually increased to induce an electric field around the orbit. (a) Show that the electric field is in the correct direction to make the electrons speed up. (b) Assume the radius of the orbit remains constant. Show that the average magnetic field over the area enclosed by the orbit must be twice as large as the magnetic field at the circle's circumference.

66. A thin wire 30.0 cm long is held parallel to and 80.0 cm above a long, thin wire carrying 200 A and resting on the horizontal floor (Fig. P31.66). The 30.0-cm wire is released at the instant $t = 0$ and falls, remaining parallel to the current-carrying wire as it falls. Assume the falling wire accelerates at 9.80 m/s^2. (a) Derive an equation for the emf induced in it as a function of time. (b) What is the minimum value of the emf? (c) What is the maximum value? (d) What is the induced emf 0.300 s after the wire is released?

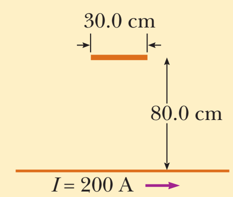


Figure P31.66

67. ▲ A long, straight wire carries a current that is given by $I = I_{max} \sin(\omega t + \phi)$. The wire lies in the plane of a rectangular coil of N turns of wire, as shown in Figure P31.8. The quantities I_{max}, ω, and ϕ are all constants. Determine the emf induced in the coil by the magnetic field created by the current in the straight wire. Assume $I_{max} = 50.0$ A, $\omega = 200\pi$ s^{-1}, $N = 100$, $h = w = 5.00$ cm, and $L = 20.0$ cm.

Answers to Quick Quizzes

31.1 (c). In all cases except this one, there is a change in the magnetic flux through the loop.

31.2 (c). The force on the wire is of magnitude $F_{app} = F_B = I\ell B$, with I given by Equation 31.6. Therefore, the force is proportional to the speed and the force doubles. Because $\mathcal{P} = F_{app}v$, the doubling of the force *and* the speed results in the power being four times as large.

31.3 (b). At the position of the loop, the magnetic field lines due to the wire point into the page. The loop is entering a region of stronger magnetic field as it drops toward the wire, so the flux is increasing. The induced current must set up a magnetic field that opposes this increase. To do so, it creates a magnetic field directed out of the page. By the right-hand rule for current loops, a counterclockwise current in the loop is required.

31.4 (a). Although reducing the resistance may increase the current the generator provides to a load, it does not alter the emf. Equation 31.11 shows that the emf depends on ω, B, and N, so all other choices increase the emf.

31.5 (b). When the aluminum sheet moves between the poles of the magnet, eddy currents are established in the aluminum. According to Lenz's law, these currents are in a direction so as to oppose the original change, which is the movement of the aluminum sheet in the magnetic field. The same principle is used in common laboratory triple-beam balances. See if you can find the magnet and the aluminum sheet the next time you use a triple-beam balance.

A treasure hunter uses a metal detector to search for buried objects at a beach. At the end of the metal detector is a coil of wire that is part of a circuit. When the coil comes near a metal object, the inductance of the coil is affected and the current in the circuit changes. This change triggers a signal in the earphones worn by the treasure hunter. We investigate inductance in this chapter. (Stone/Getty Images)

32 Inductance

In Chapter 31, we saw that an emf and a current are induced in a loop of wire when the magnetic flux through the area enclosed by the loop changes with time. This phenomenon of electromagnetic induction has some practical consequences. In this chapter, we first describe an effect known as *self-induction,* in which a time-varying current in a circuit produces an induced emf opposing the emf that initially set up the time-varying current. Self-induction is the basis of the *inductor,* an electrical circuit element. We discuss the energy stored in the magnetic field of an inductor and the energy density associated with the magnetic field.

Next, we study how an emf is induced in a coil as a result of a changing magnetic flux produced by a second coil, which is the basic principle of *mutual induction.* Finally, we examine the characteristics of circuits that contain inductors, resistors, and capacitors in various combinations.

32.1 Self-Induction and Inductance

In this chapter, we need to distinguish carefully between emfs and currents that are caused by physical sources such as batteries and those that are induced by changing magnetic fields. When we use a term (such as *emf* or *current*) without an adjective, we are describing the parameters associated with a physical source. We

JOSEPH HENRY
American Physicist (1797–1878)
Henry became the first director of the Smithsonian Institution and first president of the Academy of Natural Science. He improved the design of the electromagnet and constructed one of the first motors. He also discovered the phenomenon of self-induction, but he failed to publish his findings. The unit of inductance, the henry, is named in his honor.

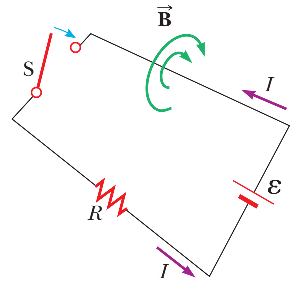


Figure 32.1 After the switch is closed, the current produces a magnetic flux through the area enclosed by the loop. As the current increases toward its equilibrium value, this magnetic flux changes in time and induces an emf in the loop.

use the adjective *induced* to describe those emfs and currents caused by a changing magnetic field.

Consider a circuit consisting of a switch, a resistor, and a source of emf as shown in Figure 32.1. The circuit diagram is represented in perspective to show the orientations of some of the magnetic field lines due to the current in the circuit. When the switch is thrown to its closed position, the current does not immediately jump from zero to its maximum value $\mathcal{E}/R$. Faraday's law of electromagnetic induction (Eq. 31.1) can be used to describe this effect as follows. As the current increases with time, the magnetic flux through the circuit loop due to this current also increases with time. This increasing flux creates an induced emf in the circuit. The direction of the induced emf is such that it would cause an induced current in the loop (if the loop did not already carry a current), which would establish a magnetic field opposing the change in the original magnetic field. Therefore, the direction of the induced emf is opposite the direction of the emf of the battery, which results in a gradual rather than instantaneous increase in the current to its final equilibrium value. Because of the direction of the induced emf, it is also called a *back emf*, similar to that in a motor as discussed in Chapter 31. This effect is called **self-induction** because the changing flux through the circuit and the resultant induced emf arise from the circuit itself. The emf $\mathcal{E}_L$ set up in this case is called a **self-induced emf.**

To obtain a quantitative description of self-induction, recall from Faraday's law that the induced emf is equal to the negative of the time rate of change of the magnetic flux. The magnetic flux is proportional to the magnetic field, which in turn is proportional to the current in the circuit. Therefore, **a self-induced emf is always proportional to the time rate of change of the current.** For any loop of wire, we can write this proportionality as

$$\mathcal{E}_L = -L\frac{dI}{dt} \tag{32.1}$$

where L is a proportionality constant—called the **inductance** of the loop—that depends on the geometry of the loop and other physical characteristics. If we consider a closely spaced coil of N turns (a toroid or an ideal solenoid) carrying a current I and containing N turns, Faraday's law tells us that $\mathcal{E}_L = -N\,d\Phi_B/dt$. Combining this expression with Equation 32.1 gives

Inductance of an N-turn coil ►

$$L = \frac{N\Phi_B}{I} \tag{32.2}$$

where it is assumed the same magnetic flux passes through each turn and L is the inductance of the entire coil.

From Equation 32.1, we can also write the inductance as the ratio

Inductance ►

$$L = -\frac{\mathcal{E}_L}{dI/dt} \tag{32.3}$$

Recall that resistance is a measure of the opposition to current ($R = \Delta V/I$); in comparison, Equation 32.3 shows us that inductance is a measure of the opposition to a *change* in current.

The SI unit of inductance is the **henry** (H), which as we can see from Equation 32.3 is 1 volt-second per ampere: $1\ \mathrm{H} = 1\ \mathrm{V \cdot s/A}$.

As shown in Example 32.1, the inductance of a coil depends on its geometry. This dependence is analogous to the capacitance of a capacitor depending on the geometry of its plates as we found in Chapter 26. Inductance calculations can be quite difficult to perform for complicated geometries, but the examples below involve simple situations for which inductances are easily evaluated.

Quick Quiz 32.1 A coil with zero resistance has its ends labeled *a* and *b*. The potential at *a* is higher than at *b*. Which of the following could be consistent with this situation? (a) The current is constant and is directed from *a* to *b*. (b) The current is constant and is directed from *b* to *a*. (c) The current is increasing and is directed from *a* to *b*. (d) The current is decreasing and is directed from *a* to *b*. (e) The current is increasing and is directed from *b* to *a*. (f) The current is decreasing and is directed from *b* to *a*.

EXAMPLE 32.1 Inductance of a Solenoid

Consider a uniformly wound solenoid having N turns and length ℓ. Assume ℓ is much longer than the radius of the windings and the core of the solenoid is air.

(A) Find the inductance of the solenoid.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The magnetic field lines from each turn of the solenoid pass through all the turns, so an induced emf in each coil opposes changes in the current.

Categorize Because the solenoid is long, we can use the results for an ideal solenoid obtained in Chapter 30.

Analyze Find the magnetic flux through each turn of area A in the solenoid, using the expression for the magnetic field from Equation 30.17:

$$\Phi_B = BA = \mu_0 nIA = \mu_0 \frac{N}{\ell} IA$$

Substitute this expression into Equation 32.2:

$$L = \frac{N\Phi_B}{I} = \boxed{\mu_0 \frac{N^2}{\ell} A} \qquad \textbf{(32.4)}$$

(B) Calculate the inductance of the solenoid if it contains 300 turns, its length is 25.0 cm, and its cross-sectional area is 4.00 cm^2.

SOLUTION

Substitute numerical values into Equation 32.4:

$$L = (4\pi \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{T \cdot m/A}) \frac{(300)^2}{25.0 \times 10^{-2}\ \mathrm{m}} (4.00 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{m^2})$$

$$= 1.81 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{T \cdot m^2/A} = \boxed{0.181\ \mathrm{mH}}$$

(C) Calculate the self-induced emf in the solenoid if the current it carries decreases at the rate of 50.0 A/s.

SOLUTION

Substitute $dI/dt = -50.0$ A/s into Equation 32.1:

$$\mathcal{E}_L = -L\frac{dI}{dt} = -(1.81 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{H})(-50.0\ \mathrm{A/s})$$

$$= \boxed{9.05\ \mathrm{mV}}$$

Finalize The result for part (A) shows that L depends on geometry and is proportional to the square of the number of turns. Because $N = n\ell$, we can also express the result in the form

$$L = \mu_0 \frac{(n\ell)^2}{\ell} A = \mu_0 n^2 A\ell = \mu_0 n^2 V \tag{32.5}$$

where $V = A\ell$ is the interior volume of the solenoid.

32.2 *RL* Circuits

If a circuit contains a coil such as a solenoid, the inductance of the coil prevents the current in the circuit from increasing or decreasing instantaneously. A circuit element that has a large inductance is called an **inductor** and has the circuit symbol . We always assume the inductance of the remainder of a circuit is negligible compared with that of the inductor. Keep in mind, however, that even a circuit without a coil has some inductance that can affect the circuit's behavior.

Because the inductance of an inductor results in a back emf, **an inductor in a circuit opposes changes in the current in that circuit.** The inductor attempts to keep the current the same as it was before the change occurred. If the battery voltage in the circuit is increased so that the current rises, the inductor opposes this change and the rise is not instantaneous. If the battery voltage is decreased, the inductor causes a slow drop in the current rather than an immediate drop. Therefore, the inductor causes the circuit to be "sluggish" as it reacts to changes in the voltage.

Consider the circuit shown in Active Figure 32.2, which contains a battery of negligible internal resistance. This circuit is an ***RL* circuit** because the elements connected to the battery are a resistor and an inductor. The curved lines on switch S_2 suggest this switch can never be open; it is always set to either a or b. (If the switch is connected to neither a nor b, any current in the circuit suddenly stops.) Suppose S_2 is set to a and switch S_1 is open for $t < 0$ and then thrown closed at $t = 0$. The current in the circuit begins to increase, and a back emf (Eq. 32.1) that opposes the increasing current is induced in the inductor.

With this point in mind, let's apply Kirchhoff's loop rule to this circuit, traversing the circuit in the clockwise direction:

$$\boldsymbol{\mathcal{E}} - IR - L\frac{dI}{dt} = 0 \tag{32.6}$$

where IR is the voltage drop across the resistor. (Kirchhoff's rules were developed for circuits with steady currents, but they can also be applied to a circuit in which the current is changing if we imagine them to represent the circuit at one *instant* of time.) Now let's find a solution to this differential equation, which is similar to that for the RC circuit (see Section 28.4).

A mathematical solution of Equation 32.6 represents the current in the circuit as a function of time. To find this solution, we change variables for convenience, letting $x = (\boldsymbol{\mathcal{E}}/R) - I$, so $dx = -dI$. With these substitutions, Equation 32.6 becomes

$$x + \frac{L}{R}\frac{dx}{dt} = 0$$

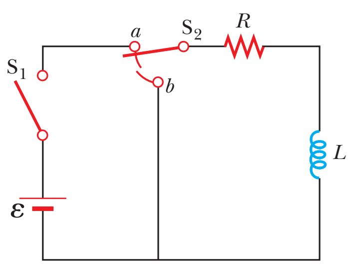
Rearranging and integrating this last expression gives

$$\int_{x_0}^{x} \frac{dx}{x} = -\frac{R}{L}\int_0^t dt$$

$$\ln\frac{x}{x_0} = -\frac{R}{L}t$$

where x_0 is the value of x at time $t = 0$. Taking the antilogarithm of this result gives

$$x = x_0 e^{-Rt/L}$$



ACTIVE FIGURE 32.2

An RL circuit. When switch S_2 is in position a, the battery is in the circuit. When switch S_1 is thrown closed, the current increases and an emf that opposes the increasing current is induced in the inductor. When the switch is thrown to position b, the battery is no longer part of the circuit and the current decreases. The switch is designed so that it is never open, which would cause the current to stop.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the values of R and L and see the effect on the current. A graphical display as in Active Figure 32.3 is available.

Because $I = 0$ at $t = 0$, note from the definition of x that $x_0 = \mathcal{E}/R$. Hence, this last expression is equivalent to

$$\frac{\mathcal{E}}{R} - I = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{R}e^{-Rt/L}$$

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{R}(1 - e^{-Rt/L})$$

This expression shows how the inductor affects the current. The current does not increase instantly to its final equilibrium value when the switch is closed, but instead increases according to an exponential function. If the inductance is removed from the circuit, which corresponds to letting L approach zero, the exponential term becomes zero and there is no time dependence of the current in this case; the current increases instantaneously to its final equilibrium value in the absence of the inductance.

We can also write this expression as

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{R}(1 - e^{-t/\tau}) \tag{32.7}$$

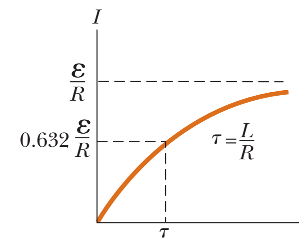
where the constant τ is the **time constant** of the *RL* circuit:

$$\tau = \frac{L}{R} \tag{32.8}$$

◀ Time constant of an *RL* circuit

Physically, τ is the time interval required for the current in the circuit to reach $(1 - e^{-1}) = 0.632 = 63.2\%$ of its final value $\mathcal{E}/R$. The time constant is a useful parameter for comparing the time responses of various circuits.

Active Figure 32.3 shows a graph of the current versus time in the *RL* circuit. Notice that the equilibrium value of the current, which occurs as t approaches infinity, is $\mathcal{E}/R$. That can be seen by setting dI/dt equal to zero in Equation 32.6 and solving for the current I. (At equilibrium, the change in the current is zero.) Therefore, the current initially increases very rapidly and then gradually approaches the equilibrium value $\mathcal{E}/R$ as t approaches infinity.



ACTIVE FIGURE 32.3

Plot of the current versus time for the *RL* circuit shown in Active Figure 32.2. When switch S_1 is thrown closed at $t = 0$, the current increases toward its maximum value $\mathcal{E}/R$. The time constant τ is the time interval required for I to reach 63.2% of its maximum value.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to observe this graph develop after switch S_1 in Active Figure 32.2 is thrown closed.

Let's also investigate the time rate of change of the current. Taking the first time derivative of Equation 32.7 gives

$$\frac{dI}{dt} = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{L}e^{-t/\tau} \tag{32.9}$$

This result shows that the time rate of change of the current is a maximum (equal to $\mathcal{E}/L$) at $t = 0$ and falls off exponentially to zero as t approaches infinity (Fig. 32.4).

Now consider the *RL* circuit in Active Figure 32.2 again. Suppose switch S_2 has been set at position a long enough (and switch S_1 remains closed) to allow the current to reach its equilibrium value $\mathcal{E}/R$. In this situation, the circuit is described by the outer loop in Active Figure 32.2. If S_2 is thrown from a to b, the circuit is now described by only the right-hand loop in Active Figure 32.2. Therefore, the battery has been eliminated from the circuit. Setting $\mathcal{E} = 0$ in Equation 32.6 gives

$$IR + L\frac{dI}{dt} = 0$$

It is left as a problem (Problem 10) to show that the solution of this differential equation is

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{R}e^{-t/\tau} = I_i e^{-t/\tau} \tag{32.10}$$

where $\mathcal{E}$ is the emf of the battery and $I_i = \mathcal{E}/R$ is the initial current at the instant the switch is thrown to b.

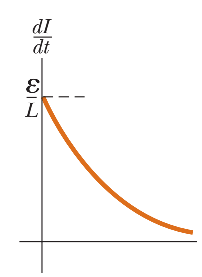


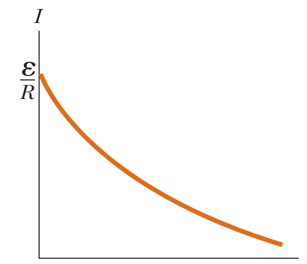
Figure 32.4 Plot of dI/dt versus time for the *RL* circuit shown in Active Figure 32.2. The time rate of change of current is a maximum at $t = 0$, which is the instant at which switch S_1 is thrown closed. The rate decreases exponentially with time as I increases toward its maximum value.

If the circuit did not contain an inductor, the current would immediately decrease to zero when the battery is removed. When the inductor is present, it

ACTIVE FIGURE 32.5

Current versus time for the right-hand loop of the circuit shown in Active Figure 32.2. For $t < 0$, switch S_2 is at position *a*. At $t = 0$, the switch is thrown to position *b* and the current has its maximum value $\mathcal{E}/R$.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to observe this graph develop after the switch in Active Figure 32.2 is thrown to position *b*.



opposes the decrease in the current and causes the current to decrease exponentially. A graph of the current in the circuit versus time (Active Fig. 32.5) shows that the current is continuously decreasing with time.

Quick Quiz 32.2 Consider the circuit in Active Figure 32.2 with S_1 open and S_2 at position *a*. Switch S_1 is now thrown closed. **(i)** At the instant it is closed, across which circuit element is the voltage equal to the emf of the battery? (a) the resistor (b) the inductor (c) both the inductor and resistor **(ii)** After a very long time, across which circuit element is the voltage equal to the emf of the battery? Choose from among the same answers.

EXAMPLE 32.2 Time Constant of an *RL* Circuit

Consider the circuit in Active Figure 32.2 again. Suppose the circuit elements have the following values: $\mathcal{E} = 12.0$ V, $R = 6.00\ \Omega$, and $L = 30.0$ mH.

(A) Find the time constant of the circuit.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize You should understand the behavior of this circuit from the discussion in this section.

Categorize We evaluate the results using equations developed in this section, so this example is a substitution problem.

Evaluate the time constant from Equation 32.8:

$$\tau = \frac{L}{R} = \frac{30.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{H}}{6.00\ \Omega} = \boxed{5.00\ \text{ms}}$$

(B) Switch S_2 is at position *a*, and switch S_1 is thrown closed at $t = 0$. Calculate the current in the circuit at $t = 2.00$ ms.

SOLUTION

Evaluate the current at $t = 2.00$ ms from Equation 32.7:

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{R}(1 - e^{-t/\tau}) = \frac{12.0\ \text{V}}{6.00\ \Omega}(1 - e^{-2.00\ \text{ms}/5.00\ \text{ms}}) = 2.00\ \text{A}\ (1 - e^{-0.400})$$

$$= \boxed{0.659\ \text{A}}$$

(C) Compare the potential difference across the resistor with that across the inductor.

SOLUTION

At the instant the switch is closed, there is no current and therefore no potential difference across the resistor. At this instant, the battery voltage appears entirely across the inductor in the form of a back emf of 12.0 V as the inductor tries to maintain the zero-current condition. (The top end of the inductor in Active Fig. 32.2 is at a higher electric potential than the bottom end.) As time passes, the emf across the inductor decreases and the current in the resistor (and hence the voltage across it) increases as shown in Figure 32.6. The sum of the two voltages at all times is 12.0 V.

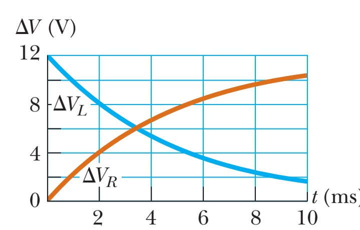


Figure 32.6 (Example 32.2) The time behavior of the voltages across the resistor and inductor in Active Figure 32.2 given the values provided in this example.

What If? In Figure 32.6, the voltages across the resistor and inductor are equal at 3.4 ms. What if you wanted to delay the condition in which the voltages are equal to some later instant, such as $t = 10.0$ ms? Which parameter, L or R, would require the least adjustment, in terms of a percentage change, to achieve that?

Answer Figure 32.6 shows that the voltages are equal when the voltage across the inductor has fallen to half its original value. Therefore, the time interval required for the voltages to become equal is the *half-life* $t_{1/2}$ of the decay. We introduced the half-life in the **What If?** section of Example 28.10 to describe the exponential decay in RC circuits, where $t_{1/2} = 0.693\tau$.

From the desired half-life of 10.0 ms, use the result from Example 28.10 to find the time constant of the circuit:

$$\tau = \frac{t_{1/2}}{0.693} = \frac{10.0 \text{ ms}}{0.693} = 14.4 \text{ ms}$$

Hold L fixed and find the value of R that gives this time constant:

$$\tau = \frac{L}{R} \rightarrow R = \frac{L}{\tau} = \frac{30.0 \times 10^{-3} \text{ H}}{14.4 \text{ ms}} = 2.08\ \Omega$$

Now hold R fixed and find the appropriate value of L:

$$\tau = \frac{L}{R} \rightarrow L = \tau R = (14.4 \text{ ms})(6.00\ \Omega) = 86.4 \times 10^{-3} \text{ H}$$

The change in R corresponds to a 65% decrease compared with the initial resistance. The change in L represents a 188% increase in inductance! Therefore, a much smaller percentage adjustment in R can achieve the desired effect than would an adjustment in L.

32.3 Energy in a Magnetic Field

A battery in a circuit containing an inductor must provide more energy than in a circuit without the inductor. Part of the energy supplied by the battery appears as internal energy in the resistance in the circuit, and the remaining energy is stored in the magnetic field of the inductor. Multiplying each term in Equation 32.6 by I and rearranging the expression gives

$$I\mathcal{E} = I^2R + LI\frac{dI}{dt} \tag{32.11}$$

Recognizing $I\mathcal{E}$ as the rate at which energy is supplied by the battery and I^2R as the rate at which energy is delivered to the resistor, we see that $LI(dI/dt)$ must represent the rate at which energy is being stored in the inductor. If U is the energy stored in the inductor at any time, we can write the rate dU/dt at which energy is stored as

$$\frac{dU}{dt} = LI\frac{dI}{dt}$$

To find the total energy stored in the inductor at any instant, let's rewrite this expression as $dU = LI\,dI$ and integrate:

$$U = \int dU = \int_0^I LI\,dI = L\int_0^I I\,dI$$

$$U = \tfrac{1}{2}LI^2 \tag{32.12}$$

◀ Energy stored in an inductor

where L is constant and has been removed from the integral. Equation 32.12 represents the energy stored in the magnetic field of the inductor when the current is I. It is similar in form to Equation 26.11 for the energy stored in the electric field of a capacitor, $U = \frac{1}{2}C(\Delta V)^2$. In either case, energy is required to establish a field.

PITFALL PREVENTION 32.1

Capacitors, Resistors, and Inductors Store Energy Differently

Different energy-storage mechanisms are at work in capacitors, inductors, and resistors. A charged capacitor stores energy as electrical potential energy. An inductor stores energy as what we could call magnetic potential energy when it carries current. Energy delivered to a resistor is transformed to internal energy.

We can also determine the energy density of a magnetic field. For simplicity, consider a solenoid whose inductance is given by Equation 32.5:

$$L = \mu_0 n^2 V$$

The magnetic field of a solenoid is given by Equation 30.17:

$$B = \mu_0 n I$$

Substituting the expression for L and $I = B/\mu_0 n$ into Equation 32.12 gives

$$U = \tfrac{1}{2}LI^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu_0 n^2 V\left(\frac{B}{\mu_0 n}\right)^2 = \frac{B^2}{2\mu_0}V \quad \textbf{(32.13)}$$

The magnetic energy density, or the energy stored per unit volume in the magnetic field of the inductor, is

Magnetic energy density ▶

$$u_B = \frac{U}{V} = \frac{B^2}{2\mu_0} \quad \textbf{(32.14)}$$

Although this expression was derived for the special case of a solenoid, it is valid for any region of space in which a magnetic field exists. Equation 32.14 is similar in form to Equation 26.13 for the energy per unit volume stored in an electric field, $u_E = \frac{1}{2}\epsilon_0 E^2$. In both cases, the energy density is proportional to the square of the field magnitude.

Quick Quiz 32.3 You are performing an experiment that requires the highest-possible magnetic energy density in the interior of a very long current-carrying solenoid. Which of the following adjustments increases the energy density? (More than one choice may be correct.) (a) increasing the number of turns per unit length on the solenoid (b) increasing the cross-sectional area of the solenoid (c) increasing only the length of the solenoid while keeping the number of turns per unit length fixed (d) increasing the current in the solenoid

---

EXAMPLE 32.3 What Happens to the Energy in the Inductor?

Consider once again the *RL* circuit shown in Active Figure 32.2, with switch S_2 at position *a* and the current having reached its steady-state value. When S_2 is thrown to position *b*, the current in the right-hand loop decays exponentially with time according to the expression $I = I_i e^{-t/\tau}$, where $I_i = \mathcal{E}/R$ is the initial current in the circuit and $\tau = L/R$ is the time constant. Show that all the energy initially stored in the magnetic field of the inductor appears as internal energy in the resistor as the current decays to zero.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Before S_2 is thrown to *b*, energy is being delivered at a constant rate to the resistor from the battery and energy is stored in the magnetic field of the inductor. After $t = 0$, when S_2 is thrown to *b*, the battery can no longer provide energy and energy is delivered to the resistor only from the inductor.

Categorize We model the right-hand loop of the circuit as an isolated system so that energy is transferred between components of the system but does not leave the system.

Analyze The energy in the magnetic field of the inductor at any time is U. The rate dU/dt at which energy leaves the inductor and is delivered to the resistor is equal to I^2R, where I is the instantaneous current.

Substitute the current given by Equation 32.10 into $dU/dt = I^2R$:

$$\frac{dU}{dt} = I^2R = (I_i e^{-Rt/L})^2 R = I_i^2 R e^{-2Rt/L}$$

Solve for dU and integrate this expression over the limits $t = 0$ to $t \to \infty$:

$$U = \int_0^\infty I_i^2 R e^{-2Rt/L}\,dt = I_i^2 R \int_0^\infty e^{-2Rt/L}\,dt$$

The value of the definite integral can be shown to be $L/2R$ (see Problem 26). Use this result to evaluate U:

$$U = I_i^2 R\left(\frac{L}{2R}\right) = \boxed{\tfrac{1}{2}LI_i^2}$$

Finalize This result is equal to the initial energy stored in the magnetic field of the inductor, given by Equation 32.12, as we set out to prove.

EXAMPLE 32.4 The Coaxial Cable

Coaxial cables are often used to connect electrical devices, such as your stereo system, and in receiving signals in television cable systems. Model a long coaxial cable as two thin, concentric, cylindrical conducting shells of radii a and b and length ℓ as in Figure 32.7. The conducting shells carry the same current I in opposite directions. Calculate the inductance L of this cable.

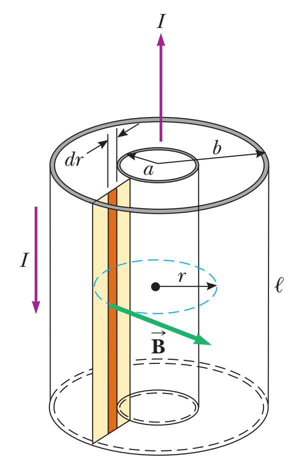


Figure 32.7 (Example 32.4) Section of a long coaxial cable. The inner and outer conductors carry equal currents in opposite directions.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Consider Figure 32.7. Although we do not have a visible coil in this geometry, imagine a thin, radial slice of the coaxial cable such as the light gold rectangle in Figure 32.7. If the inner and outer conductors are connected at the ends of the cable (above and below the figure), this slice represents one large conducting loop. The current in the loop sets up a magnetic field between the inner and outer conductors that passes through this loop. If the current changes, the magnetic field changes and the induced emf opposes the original change in the current in the conductors.

Categorize We categorize this situation as one in which we must return to the fundamental definition of inductance, Equation 32.2.

Analyze We must find the magnetic flux through the light gold rectangle in Figure 32.7. Ampère's law (see Section 30.3) tells us that the magnetic field in the region between the shells is due to the inner conductor and that its magnitude is $B = \mu_0 I/2\pi r$, where r is measured from the common center of the shells. The magnetic field is zero outside the outer shell ($r > b$) because the net current passing through the area enclosed by a circular path surrounding the cable is zero; hence, from Ampère's law, $\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = 0$. The magnetic field is zero inside the inner shell because the shell is hollow and no current is present within a radius $r < a$.

The magnetic field is perpendicular to the light gold rectangle of length ℓ and width $b - a$, the cross section of interest. Because the magnetic field varies with radial position across this rectangle, we must use calculus to find the total magnetic flux.

Divide the light gold rectangle into strips of width dr such as the darker strip in Figure 32.7. Evaluate the magnetic flux through such a strip:

$$\Phi_B = \int B\,dA = \int B\ell\,dr$$

Substitute for the magnetic field and integrate over the entire light gold rectangle:

$$\Phi_B = \int_a^b \frac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi r}\ell\,dr = \frac{\mu_0 I\ell}{2\pi}\int_a^b \frac{dr}{r} = \frac{\mu_0 I\ell}{2\pi}\ln\left(\frac{b}{a}\right)$$

Use Equation 32.2 to find the inductance of the cable:

$$L = \frac{\Phi_B}{I} = \boxed{\frac{\mu_0 \ell}{2\pi}\ln\left(\frac{b}{a}\right)}$$

Finalize The inductance increases if ℓ increases, if b increases, or if a decreases. This result is consistent with our conceptualization: any of these changes increases the size of the loop represented by our radial slice and through which the magnetic field passes, increasing the inductance.

32.4 Mutual Inductance

Very often, the magnetic flux through the area enclosed by a circuit varies with time because of time-varying currents in nearby circuits. This condition induces an emf through a process known as *mutual induction,* so named because it depends on the interaction of two circuits.

Consider the two closely wound coils of wire shown in cross-sectional view in Figure 32.8. The current I_1 in coil 1, which has N_1 turns, creates a magnetic field. Some of the magnetic field lines pass through coil 2, which has N_2 turns. The magnetic flux caused by the current in coil 1 and passing through coil 2 is represented by Φ_{12}. In analogy to Equation 32.2, we can identify the **mutual inductance** M_{12} of coil 2 with respect to coil 1:

Definition of mutual inductance ▶

$$M_{12} = \frac{N_2 \Phi_{12}}{I_1} \tag{32.15}$$

Mutual inductance depends on the geometry of both circuits and on their orientation with respect to each other. As the circuit separation distance increases, the mutual inductance decreases because the flux linking the circuits decreases.

If the current I_1 varies with time, we see from Faraday's law and Equation 32.15 that the emf induced by coil 1 in coil 2 is

$$\mathcal{E}_2 = -N_2 \frac{d\Phi_{12}}{dt} = -N_2 \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{M_{12} I_1}{N_2}\right) = -M_{12}\frac{dI_1}{dt} \tag{32.16}$$

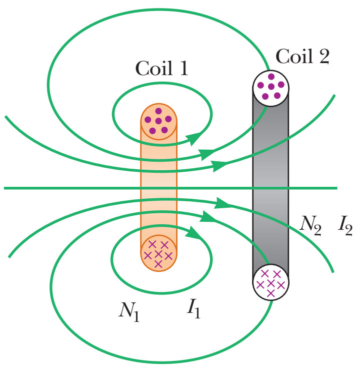


Figure 32.8 A cross-sectional view of two adjacent coils. A current in coil 1 sets up a magnetic field, and some of the magnetic field lines pass through coil 2.

In the preceding discussion, it was assumed the current is in coil 1. Let's also imagine a current I_2 in coil 2. The preceding discussion can be repeated to show that there is a mutual inductance M_{21}. If the current I_2 varies with time, the emf induced by coil 2 in coil 1 is

$$\mathcal{E}_1 = -M_{21}\frac{dI_2}{dt} \tag{32.17}$$

In mutual induction, the emf induced in one coil is always proportional to the rate at which the current in the other coil is changing. Although the proportionality constants M_{12} and M_{21} have been treated separately, it can be shown that they are equal. Therefore, with $M_{12} = M_{21} = M$, Equations 32.16 and 32.17 become

$$\mathcal{E}_2 = -M\frac{dI_1}{dt} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{E}_1 = -M\frac{dI_2}{dt}$$

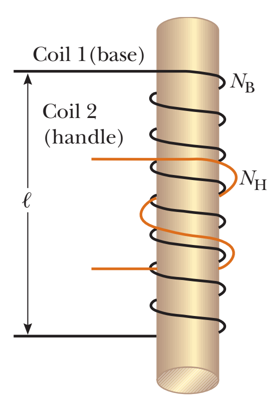
These two equations are similar in form to Equation 32.1 for the self-induced emf $\mathcal{E} = -L\,(dI/dt)$. The unit of mutual inductance is the henry.

Quick Quiz 32.4 In Figure 32.8, coil 1 is moved closer to coil 2, with the orientation of both coils remaining fixed. Because of this movement, the mutual induction of the two coils (a) increases, (b) decreases, or (c) is unaffected.

EXAMPLE 32.5 "Wireless" Battery Charger

An electric toothbrush has a base designed to hold the toothbrush handle when not in use. As shown in Figure 32.9a, the handle has a cylindrical hole that fits loosely over a matching cylinder on the base. When the handle is placed on the base, a changing current in a solenoid inside the base cylinder induces a current in a coil inside the handle. This induced current charges the battery in the handle.

(a)



(b)

Figure 32.9 (Example 32.5) (a) This electric toothbrush uses the mutual induction of solenoids as part of its battery-charging system. (b) A coil of N_H turns wrapped around the center of a solenoid of N_B turns.

We can model the base as a solenoid of length ℓ with N_B turns (Fig. 32.9b), carrying a current I, and having a cross-sectional area A. The handle coil contains N_H turns and completely surrounds the base coil. Find the mutual inductance of the system.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Be sure you can identify the two coils in the situation and understand that a changing current in one coil induces a current in the second coil.

Categorize We will evaluate the result using concepts discussed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Use Equation 30.17 to express the magnetic field in the interior of the base solenoid:

$$B = \mu_0 \frac{N_B}{\ell} I$$

Find the mutual inductance, noting that the magnetic flux Φ_{BH} through the handle's coil caused by the magnetic field of the base coil is BA:

$$M = \frac{N_H \Phi_{BH}}{I} = \frac{N_H BA}{I} = \boxed{\mu_0 \frac{N_B N_H}{\ell} A}$$

Wireless charging is used in a number of other "cordless" devices. One significant example is the inductive charging used by some manufacturers of electric cars that avoids direct metal-to-metal contact between the car and the charging apparatus.

32.5 Oscillations in an *LC* Circuit

When a capacitor is connected to an inductor as illustrated in Figure 32.10, the combination is an ***LC* circuit.** If the capacitor is initially charged and the switch is then closed, both the current in the circuit and the charge on the capacitor oscillate between maximum positive and negative values. If the resistance of the circuit is zero, no energy is transformed to internal energy. In the following analysis, the resistance in the circuit is neglected. We also assume an idealized situation in which energy is not radiated away from the circuit. This radiation mechanism is discussed in Chapter 34.

Assume the capacitor has an initial charge Q_{max} (the maximum charge) and the switch is open for $t < 0$ and then closed at $t = 0$. Let's investigate what happens from an energy viewpoint.

When the capacitor is fully charged, the energy U in the circuit is stored in the capacitor's electric field and is equal to $Q_{max}^2/2C$ (Eq. 26.11). At this time, the current in the circuit is zero; therefore, no energy is stored in the inductor. After the switch is closed, the rate at which charges leave or enter the capacitor plates (which is also the rate at which the charge on the capacitor changes) is equal to the current in the circuit. After the switch is closed and the capacitor begins to discharge, the energy stored in its electric field decreases. The capacitor's discharge represents a current in the circuit, and some energy is now stored in the magnetic field of the inductor. Therefore, energy is transferred from the electric field of the capacitor to the magnetic field of the inductor. When the capacitor is fully discharged, it stores no energy. At this time, the current reaches its maximum value and all the energy in the circuit is stored in the inductor. The current continues in the same direction, decreasing in magnitude, with the capacitor eventually becoming fully charged again but with the polarity of its plates now opposite the initial polarity. This process is followed by another discharge until the circuit returns to its original state of maximum charge Q_{max} and the plate polarity shown in Figure 32.10. The energy continues to oscillate between inductor and capacitor.

The oscillations of the *LC* circuit are an electromagnetic analog to the mechanical oscillations of the block–spring system studied in Chapter 15. Much of what

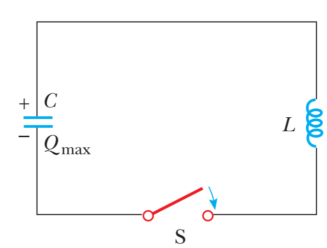
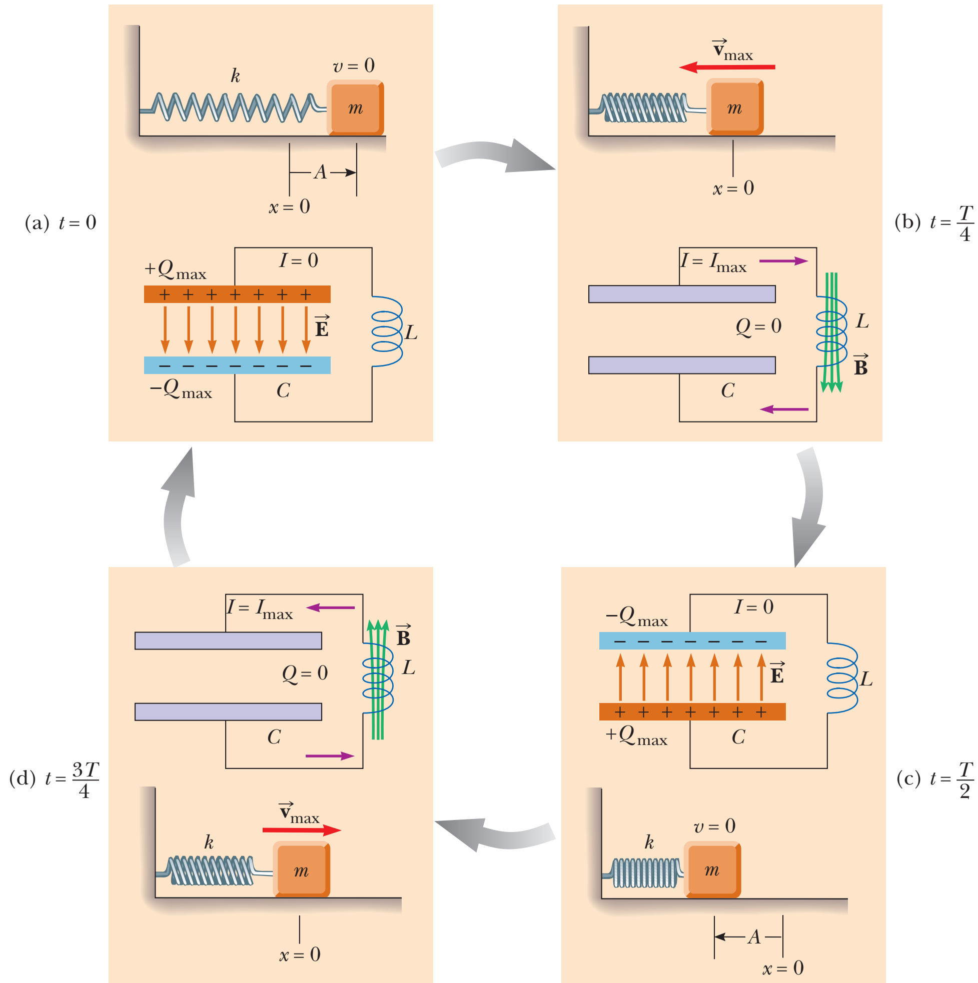


Figure 32.10 A simple *LC* circuit. The capacitor has an initial charge Q_{max}, and the switch is open for $t < 0$ and then closed at $t = 0$.



ACTIVE FIGURE 32.11

Energy transfer in a resistanceless, nonradiating *LC* circuit. The capacitor has a charge Q_{max} at $t = 0$, the instant at which the switch is closed. The mechanical analog of this circuit is a block–spring system.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the values of *C* and *L* and see the effect on the oscillating current. The block on the spring oscillates in a mechanical analog of the electrical oscillations. A graphical display as in Active Figure 32.12 is available, as is an energy bar graph.

was discussed there is applicable to *LC* oscillations. For example, we investigated the effect of driving a mechanical oscillator with an external force, which leads to the phenomenon of *resonance*. The same phenomenon is observed in the *LC* circuit. (See Section 33.7.)

A representation of the energy transfer in an *LC* circuit is shown in Active Figure 32.11. As mentioned, the behavior of the circuit is analogous to that of the oscillating block–spring system studied in Chapter 15. The potential energy $\frac{1}{2}kx^2$ stored in a stretched spring is analogous to the potential energy $Q_{max}^2/2C$ stored in the capacitor. The kinetic energy $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$ of the moving block is analogous to the magnetic energy $\frac{1}{2}LI^2$ stored in the inductor, which requires the presence of moving charges. In Active Figure 32.11a, all the energy is stored as electric potential energy in the capacitor at $t = 0$ (because $I = 0$), just as all the energy in a block–spring system is initially stored as potential energy in the spring if it is stretched and released at $t = 0$. In Active Figure 32.11b, all the energy is stored as magnetic energy $\frac{1}{2}LI_{max}^2$ in the inductor, where I_{max} is the maximum current. Active Figures 32.11c and 32.11d show subsequent quarter-cycle situations in which the energy is all electric or all magnetic. At intermediate points, part of the energy is electric and part is magnetic.

Consider some arbitrary time t after the switch is closed so that the capacitor has a charge $Q < Q_{max}$ and the current is $I < I_{max}$. At this time, both circuit elements store energy, but the sum of the two energies must equal the total initial energy U stored in the fully charged capacitor at $t = 0$:

Total energy stored in an *LC* circuit ▶

$$U = U_C + U_L = \frac{Q^2}{2C} + \tfrac{1}{2}LI^2 \qquad (32.18)$$

Because we have assumed the circuit resistance to be zero and we ignore electromagnetic radiation, no energy is transformed to internal energy and none is transferred out of the system of the circuit. Therefore, *the total energy of the system must remain constant in time.* We describe the constant energy of the system mathematically by setting $dU/dt = 0$. Therefore, by differentiating Equation 32.18 with respect to time while noting that Q and I vary with time gives

$$\frac{dU}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{Q^2}{2C} + \tfrac{1}{2}LI^2\right) = \frac{Q}{C}\frac{dQ}{dt} + LI\frac{dI}{dt} = 0 \qquad \textbf{(32.19)}$$

We can reduce this result to a differential equation in one variable by remembering that the current in the circuit is equal to the rate at which the charge on the capacitor changes: $I = dQ/dt$. It then follows that $dI/dt = d^2Q/dt^2$. Substitution of these relationships into Equation 32.19 gives

$$\frac{Q}{C} + L\frac{d^2Q}{dt^2} = 0$$

$$\frac{d^2Q}{dt^2} = -\frac{1}{LC}Q \qquad \textbf{(32.20)}$$

Let's solve for Q by noting that this expression is of the same form as the analogous Equations 15.3 and 15.5 for a block–spring system:

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = -\frac{k}{m}x = -\omega^2 x$$

where k is the spring constant, m is the mass of the block, and $\omega = \sqrt{k/m}$. The solution of this mechanical equation has the general form (Eq. 15.6):

$$x = A\cos(\omega t + \phi)$$

where A is the amplitude of the simple harmonic motion (the maximum value of x), ω is the angular frequency of this motion, and ϕ is the phase constant; the values of A and ϕ depend on the initial conditions. Because Equation 32.20 is of the same mathematical form as the differential equation of the simple harmonic oscillator, it has the solution

$$Q = Q_{\max}\cos(\omega t + \phi) \qquad \textbf{(32.21)}$$

◀ Charge as a function of time for an ideal LC circuit

where $Q_{\max}$ is the maximum charge of the capacitor and the angular frequency ω is

$$\omega = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}} \qquad \textbf{(32.22)}$$

◀ Angular frequency of oscillation in an LC circuit

Note that the angular frequency of the oscillations depends solely on the inductance and capacitance of the circuit. Equation 32.22 gives the *natural frequency* of oscillation of the LC circuit.

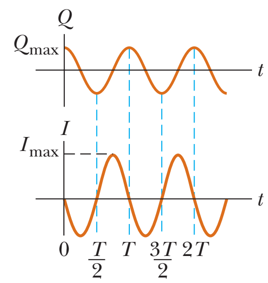
Because Q varies sinusoidally with time, the current in the circuit also varies sinusoidally. We can show that by differentiating Equation 32.21 with respect to time:

$$I = \frac{dQ}{dt} = -\omega Q_{\max}\sin(\omega t + \phi) \qquad \textbf{(32.23)}$$

◀ Current as a function of time for an ideal LC current

To determine the value of the phase angle ϕ, let's examine the initial conditions, which in our situation require that at $t = 0$, $I = 0$, and $Q = Q_{\max}$. Setting $I = 0$ at $t = 0$ in Equation 32.23 gives

$$0 = -\omega Q_{\max}\sin\phi$$



ACTIVE FIGURE 32.12

Graphs of charge versus time and current versus time for a resistanceless, nonradiating LC circuit. Notice that Q and I are 90° out of phase with each other.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to observe this graph develop for the LC circuit in Active Figure 32.11.

which shows that $\phi = 0$. This value for ϕ also is consistent with Equation 32.21 and the condition that $Q = Q_{max}$ at $t = 0$. Therefore, in our case, the expressions for Q and I are

$$Q = Q_{max} \cos \omega t \qquad \textbf{(32.24)}$$

$$I = -\omega Q_{max} \sin \omega t = -I_{max} \sin \omega t \qquad \textbf{(32.25)}$$

Graphs of Q versus t and I versus t are shown in Active Figure 32.12. The charge on the capacitor oscillates between the extreme values Q_{max} and $-Q_{max}$, and the current oscillates between I_{max} and $-I_{max}$. Furthermore, the current is 90° out of phase with the charge. That is, when the charge is a maximum, the current is zero, and when the charge is zero, the current has its maximum value.

Let's return to the energy discussion of the LC circuit. Substituting Equations 32.24 and 32.25 in Equation 32.18, we find that the total energy is

$$U = U_C + U_L = \frac{Q_{max}^2}{2C} \cos^2 \omega t + \tfrac{1}{2} L I_{max}^2 \sin^2 \omega t \qquad \textbf{(32.26)}$$

This expression contains all the features described qualitatively at the beginning of this section. It shows that the energy of the LC circuit continuously oscillates between energy stored in the capacitor's electric field and energy stored in the inductor's magnetic field. When the energy stored in the capacitor has its maximum value $Q_{max}^2/2C$, the energy stored in the inductor is zero. When the energy stored in the inductor has its maximum value $\frac{1}{2}LI_{max}^2$, the energy stored in the capacitor is zero.

Plots of the time variations of U_C and U_L are shown in Figure 32.13. The sum $U_C + U_L$ is a constant and is equal to the total energy $Q_{max}^2/2C$, or $\frac{1}{2}LI_{max}^2$. Analytical verification is straightforward. The amplitudes of the two graphs in Figure 32.13 must be equal because the maximum energy stored in the capacitor (when $I = 0$) must equal the maximum energy stored in the inductor (when $Q = 0$). This equality is expressed mathematically as

$$\frac{Q_{max}^2}{2C} = \frac{LI_{max}^2}{2}$$

Using this expression in Equation 32.26 for the total energy gives

$$U = \frac{Q_{max}^2}{2C}(\cos^2 \omega t + \sin^2 \omega t) = \frac{Q_{max}^2}{2C} \qquad \textbf{(32.27)}$$

because $\cos^2 \omega t + \sin^2 \omega t = 1$.

In our idealized situation, the oscillations in the circuit persist indefinitely; the total energy U of the circuit, however, remains constant only if energy transfers and transformations are neglected. In actual circuits, there is always some resistance and some energy is therefore transformed to internal energy. We mentioned at the beginning of this section that we are also ignoring radiation from the circuit. In reality, radiation is inevitable in this type of circuit, and the total energy in the circuit continuously decreases as a result of this process.

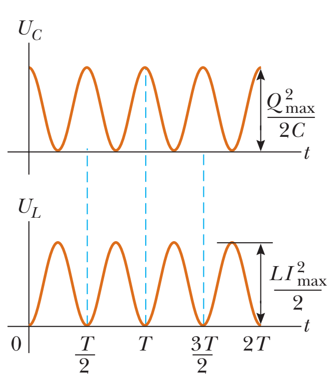


Figure 32.13 Plots of U_C versus t and U_L versus t for a resistanceless, nonradiating LC circuit. The sum of the two curves is a constant and is equal to the total energy stored in the circuit.

Quick Quiz 32.5 **(i)** At an instant of time during the oscillations of an LC circuit, the current is at its maximum value. At this instant, what happens to the voltage across the capacitor? (a) It is different from that across the inductor. (b) It is zero. (c) It has its maximum value. (d) It is impossible to determine. **(ii)** At an instant of time during the oscillations of an LC circuit, the current is momentarily zero. From the same choices, describe the voltage across the capacitor at this instant.

EXAMPLE 32.6 Oscillations in an *LC* Circuit

In Figure 32.14, the battery has an emf of 12.0 V, the inductance is 2.81 mH, and the capacitance is 9.00 pF. The switch has been set to position *a* for a long time so that the capacitor is charged. The switch is then thrown to position *b*, removing the battery from the circuit and connecting the capacitor directly across the inductor.

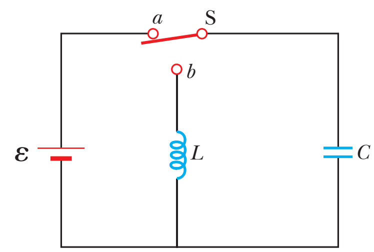


Figure 32.14 (Example 32.6) First the capacitor is fully charged with the switch set to position *a*. Then, the switch is thrown to position *b* and the battery is no longer in the circuit.

(A) Find the frequency of oscillation of the circuit.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize When the switch is thrown to position *b*, the active part of the circuit is the right-hand loop, which is an *LC* circuit.

Categorize We use equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Use Equation 32.22 to find the frequency:

$$f = \frac{\omega}{2\pi} = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{LC}}$$

Substitute numerical values:

$$f = \frac{1}{2\pi[(2.81 \times 10^{-3}\text{ H})(9.00 \times 10^{-12}\text{ F})]^{1/2}} = \boxed{1.00 \times 10^{6}\text{ Hz}}$$

(B) What are the maximum values of charge on the capacitor and current in the circuit?

SOLUTION

Find the initial charge on the capacitor, which equals the maximum charge:

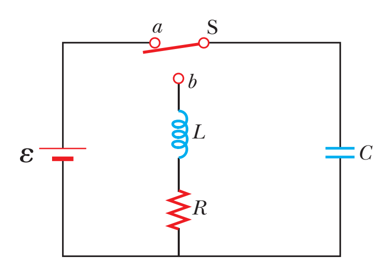
$$Q_{\text{max}} = C\,\Delta V = (9.00 \times 10^{-12}\text{ F})(12.0\text{ V}) = \boxed{1.08 \times 10^{-10}\text{ C}}$$

Use Equation 32.25 to find the maximum current from the maximum charge:

$$I_{\text{max}} = \omega Q_{\text{max}} = 2\pi f Q_{\text{max}} = (2\pi \times 10^{6}\text{ s}^{-1})(1.08 \times 10^{-10}\text{ C})$$
$$= \boxed{6.79 \times 10^{-4}\text{ A}}$$

32.6 The *RLC* Circuit

Let's now turn our attention to a more realistic circuit consisting of a resistor, an inductor, and a capacitor connected in series as shown in Active Figure 32.15. We assume the resistance of the resistor represents all the resistance in the circuit. Suppose the switch is at position *a* so that the capacitor has an initial charge Q_{max}. The switch is now thrown to position *b*. After this instant, the total energy stored in the capacitor and inductor at any time is given by Equation 32.18. This total energy, however, is no longer constant as it was in the *LC* circuit because the resistor causes transformation to internal energy. (We continue to ignore electromagnetic radiation from the circuit in this discussion.) Because the rate of energy transformation to internal energy within a resistor is I^2R,



ACTIVE FIGURE 32.15

A series *RLC* circuit. The switch is set to position *a*, and the capacitor is charged. The switch is then thrown to position *b*.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the values of *R*, *L*, and *C* and see the effect on the decaying charge on the capacitor. A graphical display as in Active Figure 32.16a is available, as is an energy bar graph.

$$\frac{dU}{dt} = -I^2R$$

where the negative sign signifies that the energy *U* of the circuit is decreasing in time. Substituting this result into Equation 32.19 gives

$$LI\frac{dI}{dt} + \frac{Q}{C}\frac{dQ}{dt} = -I^2R \qquad \textbf{(32.28)}$$

To convert this equation into a form that allows us to compare the electrical oscillations with their mechanical analog, we first use $I = dQ/dt$ and move all terms to the left-hand side to obtain

$$LI\frac{d^2Q}{dt^2} + I^2R + \frac{Q}{C}I = 0$$

Now divide through by I:

$$L\frac{d^2Q}{dt^2} + IR + \frac{Q}{C} = 0$$

$$L\frac{d^2Q}{dt^2} + R\frac{dQ}{dt} + \frac{Q}{C} = 0 \qquad \textbf{(32.29)}$$

The *RLC* circuit is analogous to the damped harmonic oscillator discussed in Section 15.6 and illustrated in Figure 15.20. The equation of motion for a damped block–spring system is, from Equation 15.31,

$$m\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} + b\frac{dx}{dt} + kx = 0 \qquad \textbf{(32.30)}$$

Comparing Equations 32.29 and 32.30, we see that Q corresponds to the position x of the block at any instant, L to the mass m of the block, R to the damping coefficient b, and C to $1/k$, where k is the force constant of the spring. These and other relationships are listed in Table 32.1.

TABLE 32.1

Analogies Between Electrical and Mechanical Systems

Electric Circuit		**One-Dimensional Mechanical System**
Charge	$Q \leftrightarrow x$	Position
Current	$I \leftrightarrow v_x$	Velocity
Potential difference	$\Delta V \leftrightarrow F_x$	Force
Resistance	$R \leftrightarrow b$	Viscous damping coefficient
Capacitance	$C \leftrightarrow 1/k$	(k = spring constant)
Inductance	$L \leftrightarrow m$	Mass
Current = time derivative of charge	$I = \frac{dQ}{dt} \leftrightarrow v_x = \frac{dx}{dt}$	Velocity = time derivative of position
Rate of change of current = second time derivative of charge	$\frac{dI}{dt} = \frac{d^2Q}{dt^2} \leftrightarrow a_x = \frac{dv_x}{dt} = \frac{d^2x}{dt^2}$	Acceleration = second time derivative of position
Energy in inductor	$U_L = \frac{1}{2}LI^2 \leftrightarrow K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$	Kinetic energy of moving object
Energy in capacitor	$U_C = \frac{1}{2}\frac{Q^2}{C} \leftrightarrow U = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$	Potential energy stored in a spring
Rate of energy loss due to resistance	$I^2R \leftrightarrow bv^2$	Rate of energy loss due to friction
RLC circuit	$L\frac{d^2Q}{dt^2} + R\frac{dQ}{dt} + \frac{Q}{C} = 0 \leftrightarrow m\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} + b\frac{dx}{dt} + kx = 0$	Damped object on a spring

Because the analytical solution of Equation 32.29 is cumbersome, we give only a qualitative description of the circuit behavior. In the simplest case, when $R = 0$, Equation 32.29 reduces to that of a simple LC circuit as expected, and the charge and the current oscillate sinusoidally in time. This situation is equivalent to removing all damping in the mechanical oscillator.

When R is small, a situation that is analogous to light damping in the mechanical oscillator, the solution of Equation 32.29 is

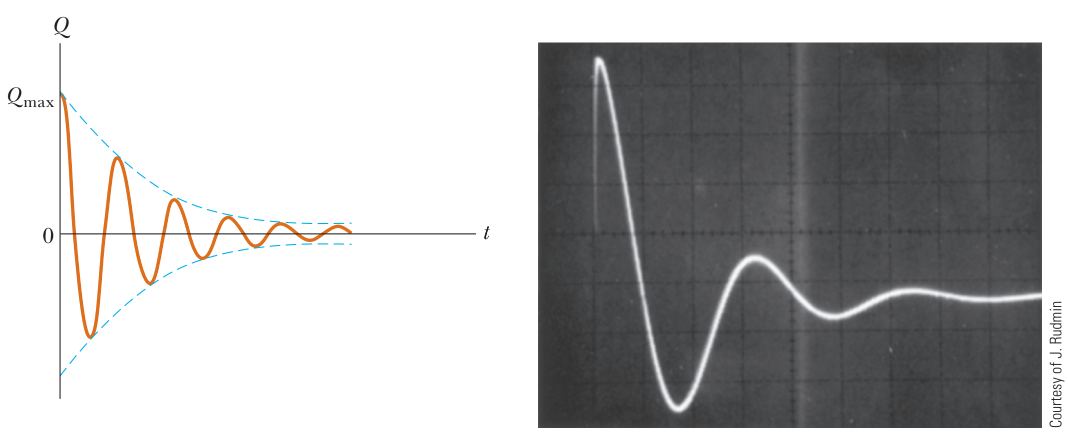
$$Q = Q_{\max} e^{-Rt/2L} \cos \omega_d t \qquad \textbf{(32.31)}$$

where ω_d, the angular frequency at which the circuit oscillates, is given by

$$\omega_d = \left[\frac{1}{LC} - \left(\frac{R}{2L}\right)^2\right]^{1/2} \qquad \textbf{(32.32)}$$

That is, the value of the charge on the capacitor undergoes a damped harmonic oscillation in analogy with a block–spring system moving in a viscous medium. Equation 32.32 shows that when $R \ll \sqrt{4L/C}$ (so that the second term in the brackets is much smaller than the first), the frequency ω_d of the damped oscillator is close to that of the undamped oscillator, $1/\sqrt{LC}$. Because $I = dQ/dt$, it follows that the current also undergoes damped harmonic oscillation. A plot of the charge versus time for the damped oscillator is shown in Active Figure 32.16a and an oscilloscope trace for a real RLC circuit is shown in Active Figure 32.16b. The maximum value of Q decreases after each oscillation, just as the amplitude of a damped block–spring system decreases in time.

For larger values of R, the oscillations damp out more rapidly; in fact, there exists a critical resistance value $R_c = \sqrt{4L/C}$ above which no oscillations occur. A system with $R = R_c$ is said to be *critically damped*. When R exceeds R_c, the system is said to be *overdamped*.



(a) (b)

ACTIVE FIGURE 32.16

(a) Charge versus time for a damped RLC circuit. The charge decays in this way when $R < \sqrt{4L/C}$. The Q-versus-t curve represents a plot of Equation 32.31. (b) Oscilloscope pattern showing the decay in the oscillations of an RLC circuit.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to observe this graph develop for the damped RLC circuit in Active Figure 32.15.

Summary

ThomsonNOW™ Sign in at **www.thomsonedu.com** and go to ThomsonNOW to take a practice test for this chapter.

CONCEPTS AND PRINCIPLES

When the current in a loop of wire changes with time, an emf is induced in the loop according to Faraday's law. The **self-induced emf** is

$$\mathcal{E}_L = -L\frac{dI}{dt} \tag{32.1}$$

where L is the **inductance** of the loop. Inductance is a measure of how much opposition a loop offers to a change in the current in the loop. Inductance has the SI unit of **henry** (H), where $1\ \text{H} = 1\ \text{V}\cdot\text{s/A}$.

The inductance of any coil is

$$L = \frac{N\Phi_B}{I} \tag{32.2}$$

where N is the total number of turns and Φ_B is the magnetic flux through the coil. The inductance of a device depends on its geometry. For example, the inductance of an air-core solenoid is

$$L = \mu_0\frac{N^2}{\ell}A \tag{32.4}$$

where ℓ is the length of the solenoid and A is the cross-sectional area.

If a resistor and inductor are connected in series to a battery of emf $\mathcal{E}$ at time $t = 0$, the current in the circuit varies in time according to the expression

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{R}(1 - e^{-t/\tau}) \tag{32.7}$$

where $\tau = L/R$ is the **time constant** of the RL circuit. If we replace the battery in the circuit by a resistanceless wire, the current decays exponentially with time according to the expression

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{R}e^{-t/\tau} \tag{32.10}$$

where $\mathcal{E}/R$ is the initial current in the circuit.

The energy stored in the magnetic field of an inductor carrying a current I is

$$U = \tfrac{1}{2}LI^2 \tag{32.12}$$

This energy is the magnetic counterpart to the energy stored in the electric field of a charged capacitor.

The energy density at a point where the magnetic field is B is

$$u_B = \frac{B^2}{2\mu_0} \tag{32.14}$$

The **mutual inductance** of a system of two coils is

$$M_{12} = \frac{N_2\Phi_{12}}{I_1} = M_{21} = \frac{N_1\Phi_{21}}{I_2} = M \tag{32.15}$$

This mutual inductance allows us to relate the induced emf in a coil to the changing source current in a nearby coil using the relationships

$$\mathcal{E}_2 = -M_{12}\frac{dI_1}{dt} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{E}_1 = -M_{21}\frac{dI_2}{dt} \tag{32.16, 32.17}$$

In an LC circuit that has zero resistance and does not radiate electromagnetically (an idealization), the values of the charge on the capacitor and the current in the circuit vary sinusoidally in time at an angular frequency given by

$$\omega = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}} \tag{32.22}$$

The energy in an LC circuit continuously transfers between energy stored in the capacitor and energy stored in the inductor.

In an RLC circuit with small resistance, the charge on the capacitor varies with time according to

$$Q = Q_{\max}e^{-Rt/2L}\cos\omega_d t \tag{32.31}$$

where

$$\omega_d = \left[\frac{1}{LC} - \left(\frac{R}{2L}\right)^2\right]^{1/2} \tag{32.32}$$

Questions

☐ denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide;* **O** denotes objective question

1. The current in a circuit containing a coil, a resistor, and a battery has reached a constant value. Does the coil have an inductance? Does the coil affect the value of the current?

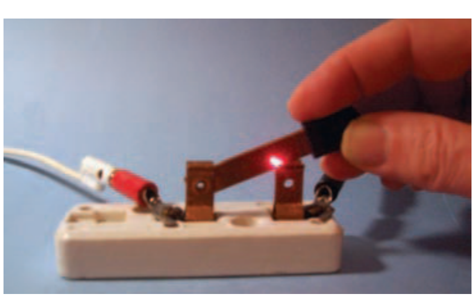
2. What parameters affect the inductance of a coil? Does the inductance of a coil depend on the current in the coil?

3. O Initially, an inductor with no resistance carries a constant current. Then the current is brought to a new constant value twice as large. *After* this change, what has happened to the emf in the inductor? (a) It is larger than before the change by a factor of 4. (b) It is larger by a factor of 2. (c) It has the same nonzero value. (d) It continues to be zero. (e) It has decreased.

4. O A long, fine wire is wound into a coil with inductance 5 mH. The coil is connected across the terminals of a battery, and the current is measured a few seconds after the connection is made. The wire is unwound and wound again into a different coil with L = 10 mH. This second coil is connected across the same battery, and the current is measured in the same way. Compared with the current in the first coil, is the current in the second coil (a) four times as large, (b) twice as large, (c) unchanged, (d) half as large, or (e) one-fourth as large?

5. O Two solenoidal coils, A and B, are wound using equal lengths of the same kind of wire. The length of the axis of each coil is large compared with its diameter. The axial length of coil A is twice as large as that of coil B, and coil A has twice as many turns as coil B. What is the ratio of the inductance of coil A to that of coil B? (a) 8 (b) 4 (c) 2 (d) 1 (e) $\frac{1}{2}$ (f) $\frac{1}{4}$ (g) $\frac{1}{8}$

6. A switch controls the current in a circuit that has a large inductance. Is a spark (Fig. Q32.6) more likely to be produced at the switch when the switch is being closed, when it is being opened, or doesn't it matter? The electric arc can melt and oxidize the contact surfaces, resulting in high resistivity of the contacts and eventual destruction of the switch. Before electronic ignitions were invented, distributor contact points in automobiles had to be replaced regularly. Switches in power distribution networks and switches controlling large motors, generators, and electromagnets can suffer from arcing and can be very dangerous to operate.



Alexandra Héder

Figure Q32.6

7. O In Figure Q32.7, the switch is left in position a for a long time interval and is then quickly thrown to position b. Rank the magnitudes of the voltages across the four circuit elements a short time thereafter from the largest to the smallest.

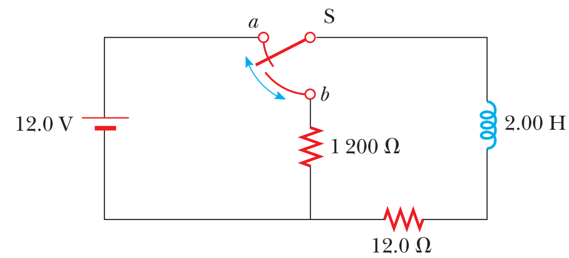


Figure Q32.7

8. Consider the four circuits shown in Figure Q32.8, each consisting of a battery, a switch, a lightbulb, a resistor, and either a capacitor or an inductor. Assume the capacitor has a large capacitance and the inductor has a large inductance but no resistance. The lightbulb has high efficiency, glowing whenever it carries electric current. **(i)** Describe what the lightbulb does in each of circuits (a), (b), (c), and (d) after the switch is thrown closed. **(ii)** Describe what the lightbulb does in each circuit after, having been closed for a long time interval, the switch is thrown open.

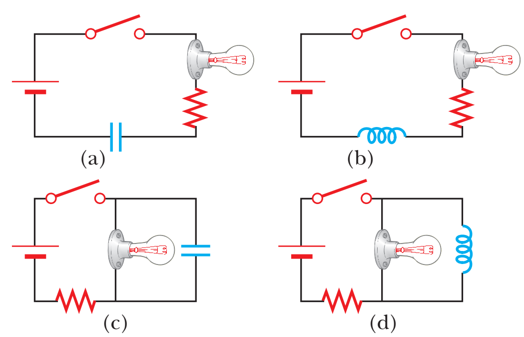


Figure Q32.8

9. O *Don't do this; it's dangerous and illegal.* Suppose a criminal wants to steal energy from the electric company by placing a flat, rectangular coil of wire close to, but not touching, one long, straight, horizontal wire in a transmission line. The long, straight wire carries a sinusoidally varying current. Which of the following statements is true? (a) The method works best if the coil is in a vertical plane surrounding the straight wire. (b) The method works best if the coil is in a vertical plane with the two long sides of the rectangle parallel to the long wire and equally far from it. (c) The method works best if the coil and the long wire are in the same horizontal plane with one long side of the rectangle close to the wire. (d) The method works for any orientation of the coil. (e) The method cannot work without contact between the coil and the long wire.

10. Consider this thesis: "Joseph Henry, America's first professional physicist, caused the most recent basic change in the human view of the Universe when he discovered self-induction during a school vacation at the Albany Academy about 1830. Before that time, one could think of the Universe as composed of only one thing: matter. The energy that temporarily maintains the current after a battery is removed from a coil, on the other hand, is not energy that belongs to any chunk of matter. It is energy in the massless magnetic field surrounding the coil. With Henry's discovery, Nature forced us to admit that the Universe consists of fields as well as matter." Argue for or against the statement. In your view, what makes up the Universe?

11. **O** If the current in an inductor is doubled, by what factor is the stored energy multiplied? (a) 4 (b) 2 (c) 1 (d) $\frac{1}{2}$ (e) $\frac{1}{4}$

12. **O** A solenoidal inductor for a printed circuit board is being redesigned. To save weight, the number of turns is reduced by one-half with the geometric dimensions kept the same. By how much must the current change if the energy stored in the inductor is to remain the same? (a) It must be four times larger (b) It must be two times larger (c) It must be larger by a factor of $\sqrt{2}$. (d) It should be left the same. (e) It should be one-half as large. (f) No change in the current can compensate for the reduction in the number of turns.

13. Discuss the similarities between the energy stored in the electric field of a charged capacitor and the energy stored in the magnetic field of a current-carrying coil.

14. The open switch in Figure Q32.14 is thrown closed at $t = 0$. Before the switch is closed, the capacitor is uncharged and all currents are zero. Determine the currents in L, C, and R and the potential differences across L, C, and R (a) at the instant after the switch is closed and (b) long after it is closed.

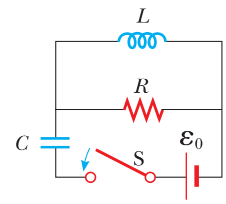


Figure Q32.14

15. **O** The centers of two circular loops are separated by a fixed distance. **(i)** For what relative orientation of the loops is their mutual inductance a maximum? (a) coaxial and lying in parallel planes (b) lying in the same plane (c) lying in perpendicular planes, with the center of one on the axis of the other (d) The orientation makes no difference. **(ii)** For what relative orientation is their mutual inductance a minimum? Choose from the same possibilities.

16. In the LC circuit shown in Figure 32.10, the charge on the capacitor is sometimes zero, but at such instants the current in the circuit is not zero. How is this behavior possible?

17. How can you tell whether an RLC circuit is overdamped or underdamped?

18. Can an object exert a force on itself? When a coil induces an emf in itself, does it exert a force on itself?

Problems

WebAssign The Problems from this chapter may be assigned online in WebAssign.

ThomsonNOW™ Sign in at **www.thomsonedu.com** and go to ThomsonNOW to assess your understanding of this chapter's topics with additional quizzing and conceptual questions.

1, 2, 3 denotes straightforward, intermediate, challenging; ☐ denotes full solution available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide;* ▲ denotes coached solution with hints available at **www.thomsonedu.com;** ▭ denotes developing symbolic reasoning; ● denotes asking for qualitative reasoning; 🖥 denotes computer useful in solving problem

Section 32.1 Self-Induction and Inductance

1. A 2.00-H inductor carries a steady current of 0.500 A. When the switch in the circuit is opened, the current is effectively zero after 10.0 ms. What is the average induced emf in the inductor during this time interval?

2. A coiled telephone cord forms a spiral having 70 turns, a diameter of 1.30 cm and an unstretched length of 60.0 cm. Determine the inductance of one conductor in the unstretched cord.

3. ▲ A 10.0-mH inductor carries a current $I = I_{max} \sin \omega t$, with $I_{max} = 5.00$ A and $\omega/2\pi = 60.0$ Hz. What is the self-induced emf as a function of time?

4. An emf of 24.0 mV is induced in a 500-turn coil at an instant when the current is 4.00 A and is changing at the rate of 10.0 A/s. What is the magnetic flux through each turn of the coil?

5. An inductor in the form of a solenoid contains 420 turns, is 16.0 cm in length, and has a cross-sectional area of 3.00 cm^2. What uniform rate of decrease of current through the inductor induces an emf of 175 μV?

6. The current in a 90.0-mH inductor changes with time as $I = 1.00t^2 - 6.00t$ (in SI units). Find the magnitude of the induced emf at (a) $t = 1.00$ s and (b) $t = 4.00$ s. (c) At what time is the emf zero?

7. ● A 40.0-mA current is carried by a uniformly wound air-core solenoid with 450 turns, a 15.0-mm diameter, and 12.0-cm length. Compute (a) the magnetic field inside the solenoid, (b) the magnetic flux through each turn, and (c) the inductance of the solenoid. (d) **What If?** If the current were different, which of these quantities would change?

8. A toroid has a major radius R and a minor radius r and is tightly wound with N turns of wire as shown in Figure P32.8. If $R >> r$, the magnetic field in the region enclosed by the wire of the torus, of cross-sectional area $A = \pi r^2$, is essentially the same as the magnetic field of a

solenoid that has been bent into a large circle of radius R. Modeling the field as the uniform field of a long solenoid, show that the inductance of such a toroid is approximately

$$L \approx \frac{\mu_0 N^2 A}{2\pi R}$$

(An exact expression of the inductance of a toroid with a rectangular cross section is derived in Problem 57.)

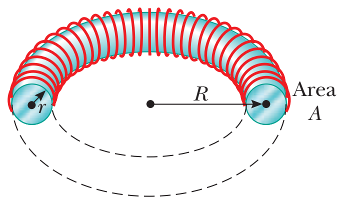


Figure P32.8

9. A self-induced emf in a solenoid of inductance L changes in time as $\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0 e^{-kt}$. Find the total charge that passes through the solenoid, assuming the charge is finite.

Section 32.2 *RL* Circuits

10. Show that $I = I_i e^{-t/\tau}$ is a solution of the differential equation

$$IR + L\frac{dI}{dt} = 0$$

where I_i is the current at $t = 0$ and $\tau = L/R$.

11. A 12.0-V battery is connected into a series circuit containing a 10.0-Ω resistor and a 2.00-H inductor. In what time interval will the current reach (a) 50.0% and (b) 90.0% of its final value?

12. ● In the circuit diagrammed in Figure P32.12, take $\mathcal{E}$ = 12.0 V and R = 24.0 Ω. Assume the switch is open for $t < 0$ and is closed at $t = 0$. On a single set of axes, sketch graphs of the current in the circuit as a function of time for $t \geq 0$, assuming (a) the inductance in the circuit is essentially zero, (b) the inductance has an intermediate value, and (c) the inductance has a very large value. Label the initial and final values of the current.

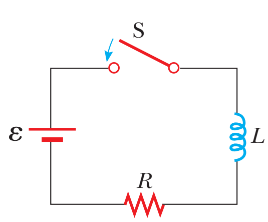


Figure P32.12 Problems 12, 13, 14, and 15.

13. Consider the circuit in Figure P32.12, taking $\mathcal{E}$ = 6.00 V, L = 8.00 mH, and R = 4.00 Ω. (a) What is the inductive time constant of the circuit? (b) Calculate the current in the circuit 250 μs after the switch is closed. (c) What is the value of the final steady-state current? (d) After what time interval does the current reach 80.0% of its maximum value?

14. In the circuit shown in Figure P32.12, let L = 7.00 H, R = 9.00 Ω, and $\mathcal{E}$ = 120 V. What is the self-induced emf 0.200 s after the switch is closed?

15. ▲ For the *RL* circuit shown in Figure P32.12, let the inductance be 3.00 H, the resistance 8.00 Ω, and the battery emf 36.0 V. (a) Calculate the ratio of the potential difference across the resistor to the emf across the inductor when the current is 2.00 A. (b) Calculate the emf across the inductor when the current is 4.50 A.

16. A 12.0-V battery is connected in series with a resistor and an inductor. The circuit has a time constant of 500 μs, and the maximum current is 200 mA. What is the value of the inductance of the inductor?

17. An inductor that has an inductance of 15.0 H and a resistance of 30.0 Ω is connected across a 100-V battery. What is the rate of increase of the current (a) at $t = 0$ and (b) at t = 1.50 s?

18. The switch in Figure P32.18 is open for $t < 0$ and is then thrown closed at time $t = 0$. Find the current in the inductor and the current in the switch as functions of time thereafter.

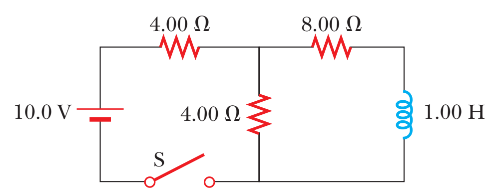


Figure P32.18 Problems 18 and 52.

19. A series *RL* circuit with L = 3.00 H and a series *RC* circuit with C = 3.00 μF have equal time constants. If the two circuits contain the same resistance R, (a) what is the value of R and (b) what is the time constant?

20. A current pulse is fed to the partial circuit shown in Figure P32.20. The current begins at zero, becomes 10.0 A between $t = 0$ and t = 200 μs, and then is zero once again. Determine the current in the inductor as a function of time.

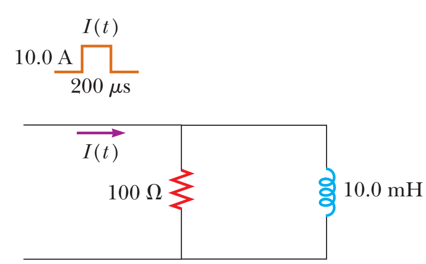


Figure P32.20

21. ▲ A 140-mH inductor and a 4.90-Ω resistor are connected with a switch to a 6.00-V battery as shown in Figure P32.21. (a) After the switch is thrown to a (connecting the battery), what time interval elapses before the current reaches 220 mA? (b) What is the current in the inductor 10.0 s after the switch is closed? (c) Now the switch is

quickly thrown from a to b. What time interval elapses before the current falls to 160 mA?

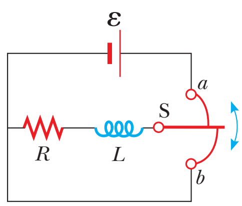


Figure P32.21

22. ● Two ideal inductors, L_1 and L_2, have *zero* internal resistance and are far apart, so their magnetic fields do not influence each other. (a) Assuming these inductors are connected in series, show that they are equivalent to a single ideal inductor having $L_{eq} = L_1 + L_2$. (b) Assuming these same two inductors are connected in parallel, show that they are equivalent to a single ideal inductor having $1/L_{eq} = 1/L_1 + 1/L_2$. (c) **What If?** Now consider two inductors L_1 and L_2 that have *nonzero* internal resistances R_1 and R_2, respectively. Assume they are still far apart so that their mutual inductance is zero. Assuming these inductors are connected in series, show that they are equivalent to a single inductor having $L_{eq} = L_1 + L_2$ and $R_{eq} = R_1 + R_2$. (d) If these same inductors are now connected in parallel, is it necessarily true that they are equivalent to a single ideal inductor having $1/L_{eq} = 1/L_1 + 1/L_2$ and $1/R_{eq} = 1/R_1 + 1/R_2$? Explain your answer.

Section 32.3 Energy in a Magnetic Field

23. An air-core solenoid with 68 turns is 8.00 cm long and has a diameter of 1.20 cm. How much energy is stored in its magnetic field when it carries a current of 0.770 A?

24. The magnetic field inside a superconducting solenoid is 4.50 T. The solenoid has an inner diameter of 6.20 cm and a length of 26.0 cm. Determine (a) the magnetic energy density in the field and (b) the energy stored in the magnetic field within the solenoid.

25. ▲ On a clear day at a certain location, a 100-V/m vertical electric field exists near the Earth's surface. At the same place, the Earth's magnetic field has a magnitude of 0.500×10^{-4} T. Compute the energy densities of the two fields.

26. Complete the calculation in Example 32.3 by proving that

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-2Rt/L}\,dt = \frac{L}{2R}$$

27. ● A flat coil of wire has an inductance of 40.0 mH and a resistance of 5.00 Ω. It is connected to a 22.0-V battery at the instant $t = 0$. Consider the moment when the current is 3.00 A. (a) At what rate is energy being delivered by the battery? (b) What is the power being delivered to the resistor? (c) At what rate is energy being stored in the magnetic field of the coil? (d) What is the relationship among these three power values? Is this relationship true at other instants as well? Explain the relationship at the moment immediately after $t = 0$ and at a moment several seconds later.

28. A 10.0-V battery, a 5.00-Ω resistor, and a 10.0-H inductor are connected in series. After the current in the circuit has reached its maximum value, calculate (a) the power being supplied by the battery, (b) the power being delivered to the resistor, (c) the power being delivered to the inductor, and (d) the energy stored in the magnetic field of the inductor.

29. Assume the magnitude of the magnetic field outside a sphere of radius R is $B = B_0(R/r)^2$, where B_0 is a constant. Determine the total energy stored in the magnetic field outside the sphere and evaluate your result for $B_0 = 5.00 \times 10^{-5}$ T and $R = 6.00 \times 10^6$ m, values appropriate for the Earth's magnetic field.

Section 32.4 Mutual Inductance

30. Two coils are close to each other. The first coil carries a current given by $I(t) = (5.00\text{ A})e^{-0.025\,0t}\sin(377t)$. At $t = 0.800$ s, the emf measured across the second coil is -3.20 V. What is the mutual inductance of the coils?

31. Two coils, held in fixed positions, have a mutual inductance of 100 μH. What is the peak emf in one coil when a sinusoidal current given by $I(t) = (10.0\text{ A})\sin(1\,000t)$ is in the other coil?

32. On a printed circuit board, a relatively long, straight conductor and a conducting rectangular loop lie in the same plane as shown in Figure P31.8 in Chapter 31. Taking $h = 0.400$ mm, $w = 1.30$ mm, and $L = 2.70$ mm, find their mutual inductance.

33. Two solenoids A and B, spaced close to each other and sharing the same cylindrical axis, have 400 and 700 turns, respectively. A current of 3.50 A in coil A produces an average flux of 300 μWb through each turn of A and a flux of 90.0 μWb through each turn of B. (a) Calculate the mutual inductance of the two solenoids. (b) What is the inductance of A? (c) What emf is induced in B when the current in A increases at the rate of 0.500 A/s?

34. ● A solenoid has N_1 turns, radius R_1, and length ℓ. It is so long that its magnetic field is uniform nearly everywhere inside it and is nearly zero outside. A second solenoid has N_2 turns, radius $R_2 < R_1$, and the same length. It lies inside the first solenoid, with their axes parallel. (a) Assume solenoid 1 carries variable current I. Compute the mutual inductance characterizing the emf induced in solenoid 2. (b) Now assume solenoid 2 carries current I. Compute the mutual inductance to which the emf in solenoid 1 is proportional. (c) State how the results of parts (a) and (b) compare with each other.

35. A large coil of radius R_1 and having N_1 turns is coaxial with a small coil of radius R_2 and having N_2 turns. The centers of the coils are separated by a distance x that is much larger than R_2. What is the mutual inductance of the coils? *Suggestion:* John von Neumann proved that the same answer must result from considering the flux through the first coil of the magnetic field produced by the second coil or from considering the flux through the second coil of the magnetic field produced by the first coil. In this problem, it is easy to calculate the flux through the small coil, but it is difficult to calculate the flux through the large coil because to do so, you would have to know the magnetic field away from the axis.

36. Two inductors having inductances L_1 and L_2 are connected in parallel as shown in Figure P32.36a. The mutual inductance between the two inductors is M. Determine the equivalent inductance L_{eq} for the system (Fig. P32.36b).

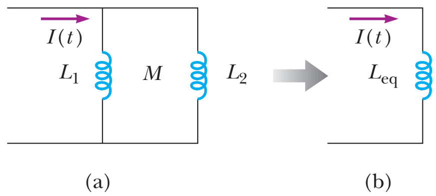


Figure P32.36

Section 32.5 Oscillations in an *LC* Circuit

37. A 1.00-μF capacitor is charged by a 40.0-V power supply. The fully charged capacitor is then discharged through a 10.0-mH inductor. Find the maximum current in the resulting oscillations.

38. An LC circuit consists of a 20.0-mH inductor and a 0.500-μF capacitor. If the maximum instantaneous current is 0.100 A, what is the greatest potential difference across the capacitor?

39. In the circuit of Figure P32.39, the battery emf is 50.0 V, the resistance is 250 Ω, and the capacitance is 0.500 μF. The switch S is closed for a long time interval, and zero potential difference is measured across the capacitor. After the switch is opened, the potential difference across the capacitor reaches a maximum value of 150 V. What is the value of the inductance?

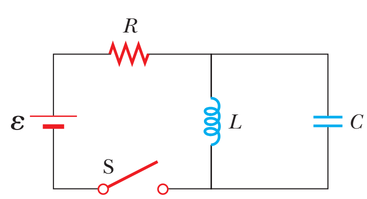


Figure P32.39

40. An LC circuit like the one in Figure 32.10 contains an 82.0-mH inductor and a 17.0-μF capacitor that initially carries a 180-μC charge. The switch is open for $t < 0$ and then thrown closed at $t = 0$. (a) Find the frequency (in hertz) of the resulting oscillations. At $t = 1.00$ ms, find (b) the charge on the capacitor and (c) the current in the circuit.

41. A fixed inductance $L = 1.05$ μH is used in series with a variable capacitor in the tuning section of a radiotelephone on a ship. What capacitance tunes the circuit to the signal from a transmitter broadcasting at 6.30 MHz?

42. The switch in Figure P32.42 is connected to point a for a long time interval. After the switch is thrown to point b, what are (a) the frequency of oscillation of the LC circuit, (b) the maximum charge that appears on the capacitor, (c) the maximum current in the inductor, and (d) the total energy the circuit possesses at $t = 3.00$ s?

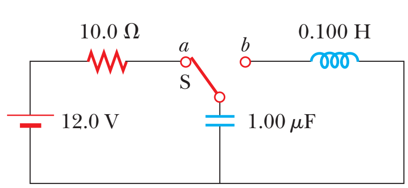


Figure P32.42

43. ▲ An LC circuit like that in Figure 32.10 consists of a 3.30-H inductor and an 840-pF capacitor that initially carries a 105-μC charge. The switch is open for $t < 0$ and then thrown closed at $t = 0$. Compute the following quantities at $t = 2.00$ ms: (a) the energy stored in the capacitor, (b) the energy stored in the inductor, and (c) the total energy in the circuit.

Section 32.6 The *RLC* Circuit

44. In Active Figure 32.15, let $R = 7.60$ Ω, $L = 2.20$ mH, and $C = 1.80$ μF. (a) Calculate the frequency of the damped oscillation of the circuit. (b) What is the critical resistance?

45. Consider an LC circuit in which $L = 500$ mH and $C = 0.100$ μF. (a) What is the resonance frequency ω_0? (b) If a resistance of 1.00 kΩ is introduced into this circuit, what is the frequency of the (damped) oscillations? (c) What is the percent difference between the two frequencies?

46. Show that Equation 32.28 in the text is Kirchhoff's loop rule as applied to the circuit in Active Figure 32.15.

47. Electrical oscillations are initiated in a series circuit containing a capacitance C, inductance L, and resistance R. (a) If $R \ll \sqrt{4L/C}$ (weak damping), what time interval elapses before the amplitude of the current oscillation falls to 50.0% of its initial value? (b) Over what time interval does the energy decrease to 50.0% of its initial value?

Additional Problems

48. **Review problem.** This problem extends the reasoning of Section 26.4, Problem 29 in Chapter 26, Problem 33 in Chapter 30, and Section 32.3. (a) Consider a capacitor with vacuum between its large, closely spaced, oppositely charged parallel plates. Show that the force on one plate can be accounted for by thinking of the electric field between the plates as exerting a "negative pressure" equal to the energy density of the electric field. (b) Consider two infinite plane sheets carrying electric currents in opposite directions with equal linear current densities J_s. Calculate the force per area acting on one sheet due to the magnetic field, of magnitude $\mu_0 J_s/2$, created by the other sheet. (c) Calculate the net magnetic field between the sheets and the field outside of the volume between them. (d) Calculate the energy density in the magnetic field between the sheets. (e) Show that the force on one sheet can be accounted for by thinking of the magnetic field between the sheets as exerting a positive pressure equal to its energy density. This result for magnetic pressure applies to all current configurations, not only to sheets of current.

49. A 1.00-mH inductor and a 1.00-μF capacitor are connected in series. The current in the circuit is described by $I = 20.0t$, where t is in seconds and I is in amperes. The capacitor initially has no charge. Determine (a) the voltage across the inductor as a function of time, (b) the voltage across the capacitor as a function of time, and (c) the time when the energy stored in the capacitor first exceeds that in the inductor.

50. An inductor having inductance L and a capacitor having capacitance C are connected in series. The current in the circuit increases linearly in time as described by $I = Kt$,

2 = intermediate; 3 = challenging; ☐ = SSM/SG; ▲ = ThomsonNOW; ▭ = symbolic reasoning; ● = qualitative reasoning

where K is a constant. The capacitor is initially uncharged. Determine (a) the voltage across the inductor as a function of time, (b) the voltage across the capacitor as a function of time, and (c) the time when the energy stored in the capacitor first exceeds that in the inductor.

51. A capacitor in a series LC circuit has an initial charge Q and is being discharged. Find, in terms of L and C, the flux through each of the N turns in the coil when the charge on the capacitor is $Q/2$.

52. ● In the circuit diagrammed in Figure P32.18, assume that the switch has been closed for a long time interval and is opened at $t = 0$. (a) Before the switch is opened, does the inductor behave as an open circuit, a short circuit, a resistor of some particular resistance, or none of these choices? What current does the inductor carry? (b) How much energy is stored in the inductor for $t < 0$? (c) After the switch is opened, what happens to the energy previously stored in the inductor? (d) Sketch a graph of the current in the inductor for $t \geq 0$. Label the initial and final values and the time constant.

53. ● At the moment $t = 0$, a 24.0-V battery is connected to a 5.00-mH coil and a 6.00-Ω resistor. (a) Immediately thereafter, how does the potential difference across the resistor compare to the emf across the coil? (b) Answer the same question about the circuit several seconds later. (c) Is there an instant at which these two voltages are equal in magnitude? If so, when? Is there more than one such instant? (d) After a 4.00-A current is established in the resistor and coil, the battery is suddenly replaced by a short circuit. Answer questions (a), (b), and (c) again with reference to this new circuit.

54. When the current in the portion of the circuit shown in Figure P32.54 is 2.00 A and increases at a rate of 0.500 A/s, the measured potential difference is $\Delta V_{ab} = 9.00$ V. When the current is 2.00 A and decreases at the rate of 0.500 A/s, the measured potential difference is $\Delta V_{ab} = 5.00$ V. Calculate the values of L and R.

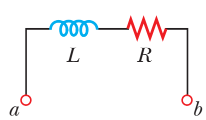


Figure P32.54

55. A time-varying current I is sent through a 50.0-mH inductor as shown in Figure P32.55. Make a graph of the potential at point b relative to the potential at point a.

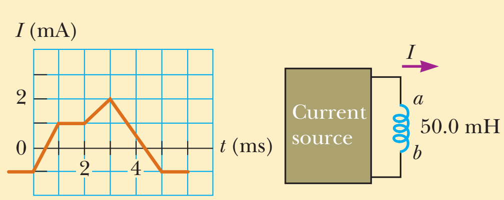


Figure P32.55

56. ● Consider a series circuit consisting of a 500-μF capacitor, a 32.0-mH inductor, and a resistor R. Explain what you can say about the angular frequency of oscillations for (a) $R = 0$, (b) $R = 4.00\ \Omega$, (c) $R = 15.0\ \Omega$, and (d) $R = 17.0\ \Omega$. Relate the mathematical description of the angular frequency to the experimentally measurable angular frequency.

57. ● The toroid in Figure P32.57 consists of N turns and has a rectangular cross section. Its inner and outer radii are a and b, respectively. (a) Show that the inductance of the toroid is

$$L = \frac{\mu_0 N^2 h}{2\pi} \ln \frac{b}{a}$$

(b) Using this result, compute the inductance of a 500-turn toroid for which $a = 10.0$ cm, $b = 12.0$ cm, and $h = 1.00$ cm. (c) **What If?** In Problem 8, an approximate equation for the inductance of a toroid with $R \gg r$ was derived. To get a feel for the accuracy of that result, use the expression in Problem 8 to compute the approximate inductance of the toroid described in part (b). How does that result compare with the answer to part (b)?

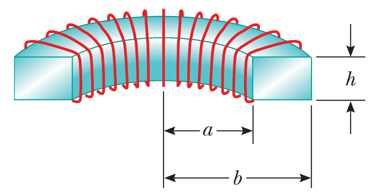


Figure P32.57

58. (a) A flat, circular coil does not actually produce a uniform magnetic field in the area it encloses. Nevertheless, estimate the inductance of a flat, compact, circular coil, with radius R and N turns, by assuming the field at its center is uniform over its area. (b) A circuit on a laboratory table consists of a 1.5-volt battery, a 270-Ω resistor, a switch, and three 30-cm-long patch cords connecting them. Suppose the circuit is arranged to be circular. Think of it as a flat coil with one turn. Compute the order of magnitude of its inductance and (c) of the time constant describing how fast the current increases when you close the switch.

59. At $t = 0$, the open switch in Figure P32.59 is thrown closed. Using Kirchhoff's rules for the instantaneous currents and voltages in this two-loop circuit, show that the current in the inductor at time $t > 0$ is

$$I(t) = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{R_1}\left[1 - e^{-(R'/L)t}\right]$$

where $R' = R_1 R_2/(R_1 + R_2)$.

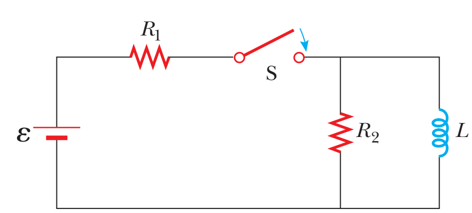


Figure P32.59

60. A wire of nonmagnetic material, with radius R, carries current uniformly distributed over its cross section. The total current carried by the wire is I. Show that the magnetic energy per unit length inside the wire is $\mu_0 I^2/16\pi$.

61. In Figure P32.61, the switch is closed for $t < 0$ and steady-state conditions are established. The switch is opened at $t = 0$. (a) Find the initial emf $\mathcal{E}_0$ across L immediately after $t = 0$. Which end of the coil, a or b, is at the higher voltage? (b) Make freehand graphs of the currents in R_1 and in R_2 as a function of time, treating the steady-state directions as positive. Show values before and after $t = 0$. (c) At what moment after $t = 0$ does the current in R_2 have the value 2.00 mA?

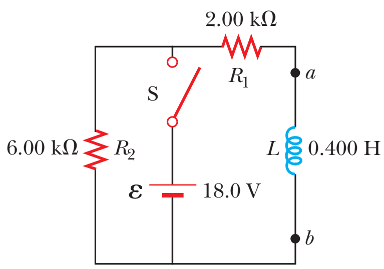


Figure P32.61

62. The lead-in wires from a television antenna are often constructed in the form of two parallel wires (Fig. P32.62). The two wires carry currents of equal magnitude in opposite directions. Assume the wires carry the current uniformly distributed over their surfaces and no magnetic field exists inside the wires. (a) Why does this configuration of conductors have an inductance? (b) What constitutes the flux loop for this configuration? (c) Show that the inductance of a length x of this type of lead-in is

$$L = \frac{\mu_0 x}{\pi} \ln\left(\frac{w - a}{a}\right)$$

where w is the center-to-center separation of the wires and a is their radius.

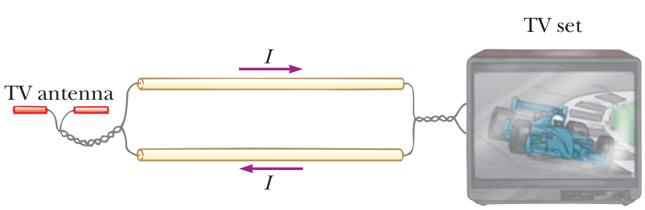


Figure P32.62

63. To prevent damage from arcing in an electric motor, a discharge resistor is sometimes placed in parallel with the armature. If the motor is suddenly unplugged while running, this resistor limits the voltage that appears across the armature coils. Consider a 12.0-V DC motor with an armature that has a resistance of 7.50 Ω and an inductance of 450 mH. Assume the magnitude of the self-induced emf in the armature coils is 10.0 V when the motor is running at normal speed. (The equivalent circuit for the armature is shown in Fig. P32.63.) Calculate the maximum resistance R that limits the voltage across the armature to 80.0 V when the motor is unplugged.

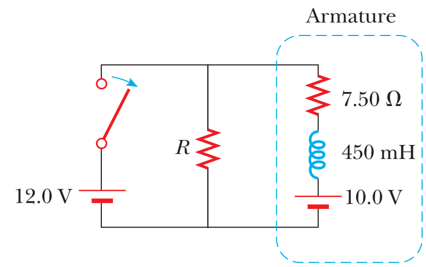


Figure P32.63

Review problems. Problems 64 through 67 apply ideas from this and earlier chapters to some properties of superconductors, which were introduced in Section 27.5.

64. *The resistance of a superconductor.* In an experiment carried out by S. C. Collins between 1955 and 1958, a current was maintained in a superconducting lead ring for 2.50 yr with no observed loss. If the inductance of the ring were 3.14×10^{-8} H and the sensitivity of the experiment were 1 part in 10^9, what was the maximum resistance of the ring? *Suggestion:* Treat the ring as an RL circuit carrying decaying current and recall that $e^{-x} \approx 1 - x$ for small x.

65. A novel method of storing energy has been proposed. A huge underground superconducting coil, 1.00 km in diameter, would be fabricated. It would carry a maximum current of 50.0 kA through each winding of a 150-turn Nb_3Sn solenoid. (a) If the inductance of this huge coil were 50.0 H, what would be the total energy stored? (b) What would be the compressive force per meter length acting between two adjacent windings 0.250 m apart?

66. *Superconducting power transmission.* The use of superconductors has been proposed for power transmission lines. A single coaxial cable (Fig. P32.66) could carry 1.00×10^3 MW (the output of a large power plant) at 200 kV, DC, over a distance of 1 000 km without loss. An inner wire of radius 2.00 cm, made from the superconductor Nb_3Sn, carries the current I in one direction. A surrounding superconducting cylinder of radius 5.00 cm would carry the return current I. In such a system, what is the magnetic field (a) at the surface of the inner conductor and (b) at the inner surface of the outer conductor? (c) How much energy would be stored in the space between the conductors in a 1 000-km superconducting line? (d) What is the pressure exerted on the outer conductor?

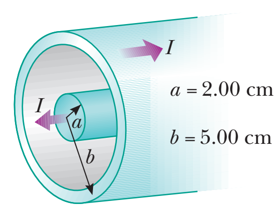


Figure P32.66

67. *The Meissner effect.* Compare this problem with Problem 57 in Chapter 26, pertaining to the force attracting a perfect dielectric into a strong electric field. A fundamental property of a type I superconducting material is *perfect*

diamagnetism, or demonstration of the *Meissner effect,* illustrated in Figure 30.27 in Section 30.6 and described as follows. The superconducting material has $\vec{\mathbf{B}} = 0$ everywhere inside it. If a sample of the material is placed into an externally produced magnetic field or is cooled to become superconducting while it is in a magnetic field, electric currents appear on the surface of the sample. The currents have precisely the strength and orientation required to make the total magnetic field be zero throughout the interior of the sample. This problem will help you to understand the magnetic force that can then act on the superconducting sample.

A vertical solenoid with a length of 120 cm and a diameter of 2.50 cm consists of 1 400 turns of copper wire carrying a counterclockwise current of 2.00 A as shown in Figure P32.67a. (a) Find the magnetic field in the vacuum inside the solenoid. (b) Find the energy density of the magnetic field, noting that the units J/m^3 of energy density are the same as the units N/m^2 of pressure. (c) Now a superconducting bar 2.20 cm in diameter is inserted partway into the solenoid. Its upper end is far outside the solenoid, where the magnetic field is negligible. The lower end of the bar is deep inside the solenoid. Explain how you identify the direction required for the current on the curved surface of the bar so that the total magnetic field is zero within the bar. The field created by the supercurrents is sketched in Figure P32.67b, and the total field is sketched in Figure P32.67c. (d) The field of the solenoid exerts a force on the current in the superconductor. Explain how you determine the direction of the force on the bar. (e) Calculate the magnitude of the force by multiplying the energy density of the solenoid field times the area of the bottom end of the superconducting bar.

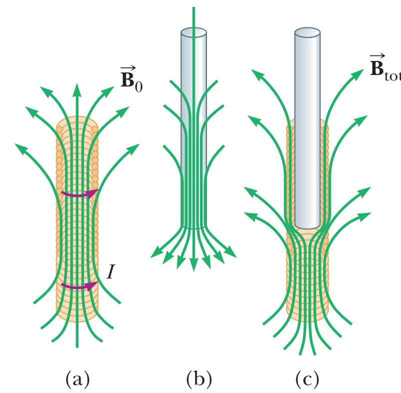


Figure P32.67

Answers to Quick Quizzes

32.1 (c), (f). For the constant current in statements (a) and (b), there is no voltage across the resistanceless inductor. In statement (c), if the current increases, the emf induced in the inductor is in the opposite direction, from b to a, making a higher in potential than b. Similarly, in statement (f), the decreasing current induces an emf in the same direction as the current, from b to a, again making the potential higher at a than at b.

32.2 **(i),** (b). As the switch is closed, there is no current, so there is no voltage across the resistor. **(ii),** (a). After a long time, the current has reached its final value and the inductor has no further effect on the circuit.

32.3 (a), (d). Because the energy density depends on the magnitude of the magnetic field, you must increase the magnetic field to increase the energy density. For a solenoid, $B = \mu_0 nI$, where n is the number of turns per unit length. In choice (a), increasing n increases the magnetic field. In choice (b), the change in cross-sectional area has no effect on the magnetic field. In choice (c), increasing the length but keeping n fixed has no effect on the magnetic field. Increasing the current in choice (d) increases the magnetic field in the solenoid.

32.4 (a). M increases because the magnetic flux through coil 2 increases.

32.5 **(i),** (b). If the current is at its maximum value, the charge on the capacitor is zero. **(ii),** (c). If the current is zero, this moment is the instant at which the capacitor is fully charged and the current is about to reverse direction.

These large transformers are used to increase the voltage at a power plant for distribution of energy by electrical transmission to the power grid. Voltages can be changed relatively easily because power is distributed by alternating current rather than direct current. (Lester Lefkowitz/Getty Images)

33 Alternating Current Circuits

In this chapter, we describe alternating-current (AC) circuits. Every time you turn on a television set, a stereo, or any of a multitude of other electrical appliances in a home, you are calling on alternating currents to provide the power to operate them. We begin our study by investigating the characteristics of simple series circuits that contain resistors, inductors, and capacitors and that are driven by a sinusoidal voltage. The primary aim of this chapter can be summarized as follows: if an AC source applies an alternating voltage to a series circuit containing resistors, inductors, and capacitors, we want to know the amplitude and time characteristics of the alternating current. We conclude this chapter with two sections concerning transformers, power transmission, and electrical filters.

33.1 AC Sources

An AC circuit consists of circuit elements and a power source that provides an alternating voltage Δv. This time-varying voltage from the source is described by

$$\Delta v = \Delta V_{\max} \sin \omega t$$

where $\Delta V_{\max}$ is the maximum output voltage of the source, or the **voltage amplitude.** There are various possibilities for AC sources, including generators as discussed in Section 31.5 and electrical oscillators. In a home, each electrical outlet

PITFALL PREVENTION 33.1

Time-Varying Values

We use lowercase symbols Δv and i to indicate the instantaneous values of time-varying voltages and currents. Capital letters represent fixed values of voltage and current such as $\Delta V_{\max}$ and $I_{\max}$.

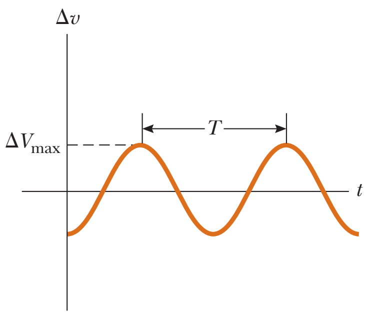


Figure 33.1 The voltage supplied by an AC source is sinusoidal with a period T.

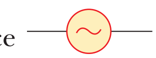
serves as an AC source. Because the output voltage of an AC source varies sinusoidally with time, the voltage is positive during one half of the cycle and negative during the other half as in Figure 33.1. Likewise, the current in any circuit driven by an AC source is an alternating current that also varies sinusoidally with time.

From Equation 15.12, the angular frequency of the AC voltage is

$$\omega = 2\pi f = \frac{2\pi}{T}$$

where f is the frequency of the source and T is the period. The source determines the frequency of the current in any circuit connected to it. Commercial electric-power plants in the United States use a frequency of 60 Hz, which corresponds to an angular frequency of 377 rad/s.

33.2 Resistors in an AC Circuit

Consider a simple AC circuit consisting of a resistor and an AC source  as shown in Active Figure 33.2. At any instant, the algebraic sum of the voltages around a closed loop in a circuit must be zero (Kirchhoff's loop rule). Therefore, $\Delta v + \Delta v_R = 0$ or, using Equation 27.7 for the voltage across the resistor,

$$\Delta v - i_R R = 0$$

If we rearrange this expression and substitute $\Delta V_{\max} \sin \omega t$ for Δv, the instantaneous current in the resistor is

$$i_R = \frac{\Delta v}{R} = \frac{\Delta V_{\max}}{R} \sin \omega t = I_{\max} \sin \omega t \tag{33.1}$$

where $I_{\max}$ is the maximum current:

Maximum current in a resistor ▶

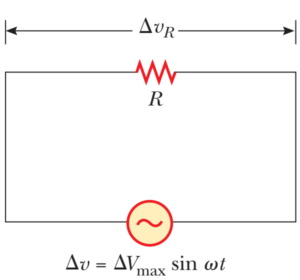
$$I_{\max} = \frac{\Delta V_{\max}}{R} \tag{33.2}$$

Equation 33.1 shows that the instantaneous voltage across the resistor is

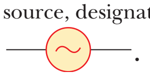
Voltage across a resistor ▶

$$\Delta v_R = i_R R = I_{\max} R \sin \omega t \tag{33.3}$$

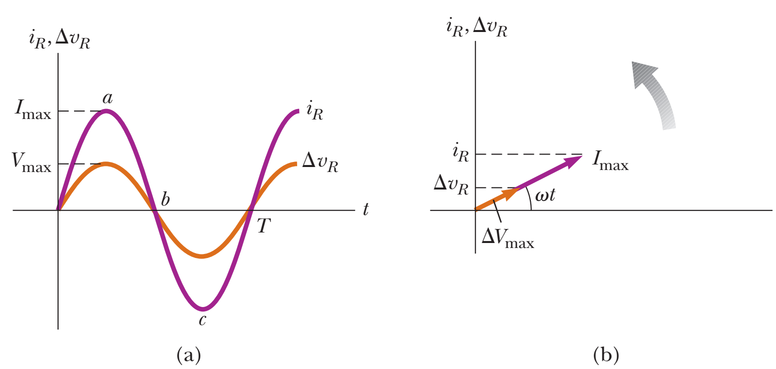
A plot of voltage and current versus time for this circuit is shown in Active Figure 33.3a. At point a, the current has a maximum value in one direction, arbitrarily



ACTIVE FIGURE 33.2

A circuit consisting of a resistor of resistance R connected to an AC source, designated by the symbol .

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the resistance, frequency, and maximum voltage. The results can be studied with the graph and the phasor diagram in Active Figure 33.3.



ACTIVE FIGURE 33.3

(a) Plots of the instantaneous current i_R and instantaneous voltage Δv_R across a resistor as functions of time. The current is in phase with the voltage, which means that the current is zero when the voltage is zero, maximum when the voltage is maximum, and minimum when the voltage is minimum. At time $t = T$, one cycle of the time-varying voltage and current has been completed. (b) Phasor diagram for the resistive circuit showing that the current is in phase with the voltage.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the resistance, frequency, and maximum voltage of the circuit in Active Figure 33.2. The results can be studied with the graph and the phasor diagram in this figure.

called the positive direction. Between points a and b, the current is decreasing in magnitude but is still in the positive direction. At point b, the current is momentarily zero; it then begins to increase in the negative direction between points b and c. At point c, the current has reached its maximum value in the negative direction.

The current and voltage are in step with each other because they vary identically with time. Because i_R and Δv_R both vary as $\sin \omega t$ and reach their maximum values at the same time as shown in Active Figure 33.3a, they are said to be **in phase,** similar to the way that two waves can be in phase as discussed in our study of wave motion in Chapter 18. Therefore, **for a sinusoidal applied voltage, the current in a resistor is always in phase with the voltage across the resistor.** For resistors in AC circuits, there are no new concepts to learn. Resistors behave essentially the same way in both DC and AC circuits. That, however, is not the case for capacitors and inductors.

To simplify our analysis of circuits containing two or more elements, we use a graphical representation called a *phasor diagram.* A **phasor** is a vector whose length is proportional to the maximum value of the variable it represents (ΔV_{max} for voltage and I_{max} for current in this discussion). The phasor rotates counterclockwise at an angular speed equal to the angular frequency associated with the variable. The projection of the phasor onto the vertical axis represents the instantaneous value of the quantity it represents.

Active Figure 33.3b shows voltage and current phasors for the circuit of Active Figure 33.2 at some instant of time. The projections of the phasor arrows onto the vertical axis are determined by a sine function of the angle of the phasor with respect to the horizontal axis. For example, the projection of the current phasor in Active Figure 33.3b is $I_{max} \sin \omega t$. Notice that this expression is the same as Equation 33.1. Therefore, the projections of phasors represent current values that vary sinusoidally in time. We can do the same with time-varying voltages. The advantage of this approach is that the phase relationships among currents and voltages can be represented as vector additions of phasors using the vector addition techniques discussed in Chapter 3.

In the case of the single-loop resistive circuit of Active Figure 33.2, the current and voltage phasors lie along the same line in Active Figure 33.3b because i_R and Δv_R are in phase. The current and voltage in circuits containing capacitors and inductors have different phase relationships.

Quick Quiz 33.1 Consider the voltage phasor in Figure 33.4, shown at three instants of time. **(i)** Choose the part of the figure, (a), (b), or (c), that represents the instant of time at which the instantaneous value of the voltage has the largest magnitude. **(ii)** Choose the part of the figure that represents the instant of time at which the instantaneous value of the voltage has the smallest magnitude.

For the simple resistive circuit in Active Figure 33.2, notice that **the average value of the current over one cycle is zero.** That is, the current is maintained in the positive direction for the same amount of time and at the same magnitude as it is maintained in the negative direction. The direction of the current, however, has no effect on the behavior of the resistor. We can understand this concept by realizing that collisions between electrons and the fixed atoms of the resistor result in an increase in the resistor's temperature. Although this temperature increase depends on the magnitude of the current, it is independent of the current's direction.

We can make this discussion quantitative by recalling that the rate at which energy is delivered to a resistor is the power $\mathcal{P} = i^2R$, where i is the instantaneous current in the resistor. Because this rate is proportional to the square of the current, it makes no difference whether the current is direct or alternating, that is, whether the sign associated with the current is positive or negative. The temperature increase produced by an alternating current having a maximum value I_{max}, however, is not the same as that produced by a direct current equal to I_{max} because the alternating current has this maximum value for only an instant during each cycle (Fig. 33.5a, page 926). What is of importance in an AC circuit is an average

PITFALL PREVENTION 33.2

A Phasor Is Like a Graph

An alternating voltage can be presented in different representations. One graphical representation is shown in Figure 33.1 in which the voltage is drawn in rectangular coordinates, with voltage on the vertical axis and time on the horizontal axis. Active Figure 33.3b shows another graphical representation. The phase space in which the phasor is drawn is similar to polar coordinate graph paper. The radial coordinate represents the amplitude of the voltage. The angular coordinate is the phase angle. The vertical-axis coordinate of the tip of the phasor represents the instantaneous value of the voltage. The horizontal coordinate represents nothing at all. As shown in Active Figure 33.3b, alternating currents can also be represented by phasors.

To help with this discussion of phasors, review Section 15.4, where we represented the simple harmonic motion of a real object by the projection of an imaginary object's uniform circular motion onto a coordinate axis. A phasor is a direct analog to this representation.

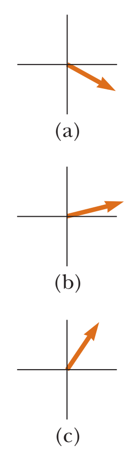


Figure 33.4 (Quick Quiz 33.1) A voltage phasor is shown at three instants of time, (a), (b), and (c).

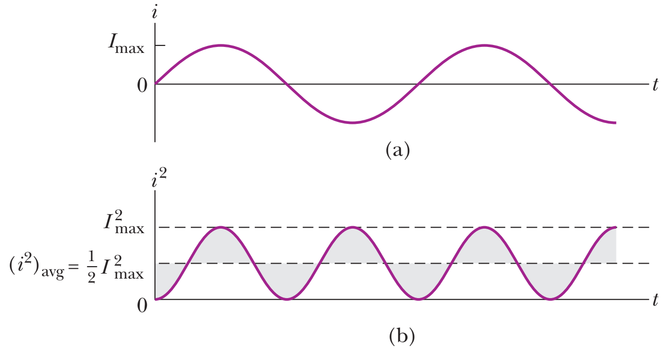


Figure 33.5 (a) Graph of the current in a resistor as a function of time. (b) Graph of the current squared in a resistor as a function of time. Notice that the gray shaded regions *under* the curve and *above* the dashed line for $\frac{1}{2}I^2_{max}$ have the same area as the gray shaded regions *above* the curve and *below* the dashed line for $\frac{1}{2}I^2_{max}$. Therefore, the average value of i^2 is $\frac{1}{2}I^2_{max}$. In general, the average value of $\sin^2 \omega t$ or $\cos^2 \omega t$ over one cycle is $\frac{1}{2}$.

value of current, referred to as the **rms current.** As we learned in Section 21.1, the notation *rms* stands for *root-mean-square,* which in this case means the square root of the mean (average) value of the square of the current: $I_{rms} = \sqrt{(i^2)_{avg}}$. Because i^2 varies as $\sin^2 \omega t$ and because the average value of i^2 is $\frac{1}{2}I^2_{max}$ (see Fig. 33.5b), the rms current is

rms current ▶

$$I_{rms} = \frac{I_{max}}{\sqrt{2}} = 0.707 I_{max} \tag{33.4}$$

This equation states that an alternating current whose maximum value is 2.00 A delivers to a resistor the same power as a direct current that has a value of $(0.707)(2.00 \text{ A}) = 1.41$ A. The average power delivered to a resistor that carries an alternating current is

Average power delivered to a resistor ▶

$$\mathcal{P}_{avg} = I^2_{rms} R$$

Alternating voltage is also best discussed in terms of rms voltage, and the relationship is identical to that for current:

rms voltage ▶

$$\Delta V_{rms} = \frac{\Delta V_{max}}{\sqrt{2}} = 0.707\, \Delta V_{max} \tag{33.5}$$

When we speak of measuring a 120-V alternating voltage from an electrical outlet, we are referring to an rms voltage of 120 V. A calculation using Equation 33.5 shows that such an alternating voltage has a maximum value of about 170 V. One reason rms values are often used when discussing alternating currents and voltages is that AC ammeters and voltmeters are designed to read rms values. Furthermore, with rms values, many of the equations we use have the same form as their direct current counterparts.

EXAMPLE 33.1 What Is the rms Current?

The voltage output of an AC source is given by the expression $\Delta v = (200 \text{ V}) \sin \omega t$. Find the rms current in the circuit when this source is connected to a 100-Ω resistor.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Active Figure 33.2 shows the physical situation for this problem.

Categorize We evaluate the current with an equation developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Comparing this expression for voltage output with the general form $\Delta v = \Delta V_{max} \sin \omega t$ shows that $\Delta V_{max} = 200$ V. Calculate the rms voltage from Equation 33.5:

$$\Delta V_{rms} = \frac{\Delta V_{max}}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{200 \text{ V}}{\sqrt{2}} = 141 \text{ V}$$

Find the rms current:

$$I_{rms} = \frac{\Delta V_{rms}}{R} = \frac{141 \text{ V}}{100\ \Omega} = \boxed{1.41 \text{ A}}$$

33.3 Inductors in an AC Circuit

Now consider an AC circuit consisting only of an inductor connected to the terminals of an AC source as shown in Active Figure 33.6. If $\Delta v_L = \mathcal{E}_L = -L(di_L/dt)$ is the self-induced instantaneous voltage across the inductor (see Eq. 32.1), Kirchhoff's loop rule applied to this circuit gives $\Delta v + \Delta v_L = 0$, or

$$\Delta v - L\frac{di_L}{dt} = 0$$

Substituting $\Delta V_{max} \sin \omega t$ for Δv and rearranging gives

$$\Delta v = L\frac{di_L}{dt} = \Delta V_{max} \sin \omega t \qquad \textbf{(33.6)}$$

Solving this equation for di_L gives

$$di_L = \frac{\Delta V_{max}}{L} \sin \omega t\, dt$$

Integrating this expression[1] gives the instantaneous current i_L in the inductor as a function of time:

$$i_L = \frac{\Delta V_{max}}{L}\int \sin \omega t\, dt = -\frac{\Delta V_{max}}{\omega L} \cos \omega t \qquad \textbf{(33.7)}$$

Using the trigonometric identity $\cos \omega t = -\sin(\omega t - \pi/2)$, we can express Equation 33.7 as

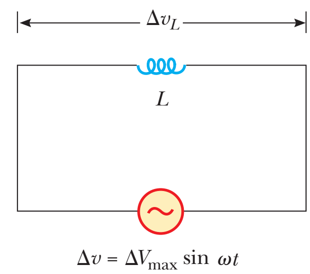
$$i_L = \frac{\Delta V_{max}}{\omega L} \sin\left(\omega t - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) \qquad \textbf{(33.8)}$$

◀ Current in an inductor

Comparing this result with Equation 33.6 shows that the instantaneous current i_L in the inductor and the instantaneous voltage Δv_L across the inductor are *out* of phase by $\pi/2$ rad $= 90°$.

A plot of voltage and current versus time is shown in Active Figure 33.7a (page 928). When the current i_L in the inductor is a maximum (point *b* in Active Fig. 33.7a), it is momentarily not changing, so the voltage across the inductor is zero (point *d*). At points such as *a* and *e*, the current is zero and the rate of change of current is at a maximum. Therefore, the voltage across the inductor is also at a maximum (points *c* and *f*). Notice that the voltage reaches its maximum value one quarter of a period before the current reaches its maximum value. Therefore, **for a sinusoidal applied voltage, the current in an inductor always lags behind the voltage across the inductor by 90° (one-quarter cycle in time).**

As with the relationship between current and voltage for a resistor, we can represent this relationship for an inductor with a phasor diagram as in Active Figure 33.7b. The phasors are at 90° to each other, representing the 90° phase difference between current and voltage.

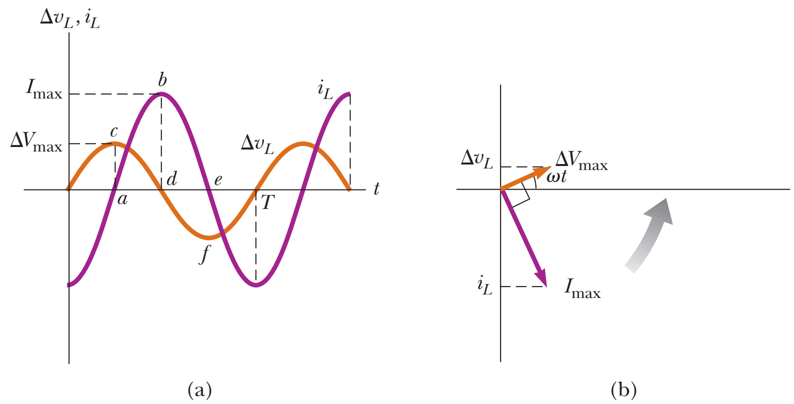


ACTIVE FIGURE 33.6

A circuit consisting of an inductor of inductance L connected to an AC source.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the inductance, frequency, and maximum voltage. The results can be studied with the graph and the phasor diagram in Active Figure 33.7.

[1] We neglect the constant of integration here because it depends on the initial conditions, which are not important for this situation.



ACTIVE FIGURE 33.7

(a) Plots of the instantaneous current i_L and instantaneous voltage Δv_L across an inductor as functions of time. The current lags behind the voltage by 90°. (b) Phasor diagram for the inductive circuit, showing that the current lags behind the voltage by 90°.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the inductance, frequency, and maximum voltage of the circuit in Active Figure 33.6. The results can be studied with the graph and the phasor diagram in this figure.

Equation 33.7 shows that the current in an inductive circuit reaches its maximum value when $\cos \omega t = \pm 1$:

Maximum current in an inductor ▶

$$I_{max} = \frac{\Delta V_{max}}{\omega L} \qquad \textbf{(33.9)}$$

This expression is similar to the relationship between current, voltage, and resistance in a DC circuit, $I = \Delta V/R$ (Eq. 27.7). Because I_{max} has units of amperes and ΔV_{max} has units of volts, ωL must have units of ohms. Therefore, ωL has the same units as resistance and is related to current and voltage in the same way as resistance. It must behave in a manner similar to resistance in the sense that it represents opposition to the flow of charge. Because ωL depends on the applied frequency ω, the inductor *reacts* differently, in terms of offering opposition to current, for different frequencies. For this reason, we define ωL as the **inductive reactance** X_L:

Inductive reactance ▶

$$X_L \equiv \omega L \qquad \textbf{(33.10)}$$

Therefore, we can write Equation 33.9 as

$$I_{max} = \frac{\Delta V_{max}}{X_L} \qquad \textbf{(33.11)}$$

The expression for the rms current in an inductor is similar to Equation 33.9, with I_{max} replaced by I_{rms} and ΔV_{max} replaced by ΔV_{rms}.

Equation 33.10 indicates that, for a given applied voltage, the inductive reactance increases as the frequency increases. This conclusion is consistent with Faraday's law: the greater the rate of change of current in the inductor, the larger the back emf. The larger back emf translates to an increase in the reactance and a decrease in the current.

Using Equations 33.6 and 33.11, we find that the instantaneous voltage across the inductor is

Voltage across an inductor ▶

$$\Delta v_L = -L\frac{di_L}{dt} = -\Delta V_{max} \sin \omega t = -I_{max} X_L \sin \omega t \qquad \textbf{(33.12)}$$

Quick Quiz 33.2 Consider the AC circuit in Figure 33.8. The frequency of the AC source is adjusted while its voltage amplitude is held constant. When does the lightbulb glow the brightest? (a) It glows brightest at high frequencies. (b) It glows brightest at low frequencies. (c) The brightness is the same at all frequencies.

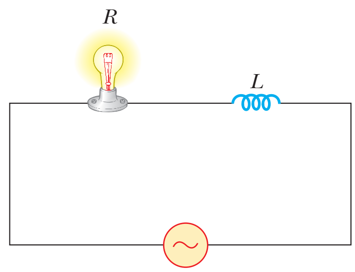


Figure 33.8 (Quick Quiz 33.2) At what frequencies does the lightbulb glow the brightest?

EXAMPLE 33.2 A Purely Inductive AC Circuit

In a purely inductive AC circuit, $L = 25.0$ mH and the rms voltage is 150 V. Calculate the inductive reactance and rms current in the circuit if the frequency is 60.0 Hz.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Active Figure 33.6 shows the physical situation for this problem.

Categorize We evaluate the reactance and the current from equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Use Equation 33.10 to find the inductive reactance:

$$X_L = \omega L = 2\pi f L = 2\pi(60.0\text{ Hz})(25.0 \times 10^{-3}\text{ H})$$
$$= \boxed{9.42\ \Omega}$$

Use an rms version of Equation 33.11 to find the rms current:

$$I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{\Delta V_{\text{rms}}}{X_L} = \frac{150\text{ V}}{9.42\ \Omega} = \boxed{15.9\text{ A}}$$

What If? If the frequency increases to 6.00 kHz, what happens to the rms current in the circuit?

Answer If the frequency increases, the inductive reactance also increases because the current is changing at a higher rate. The increase in inductive reactance results in a lower current.

Let's calculate the new inductive reactance and the new rms current:

$$X_L = 2\pi(6.00 \times 10^3\text{ Hz})(25.0 \times 10^{-3}\text{ H}) = 942\ \Omega$$

$$I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{150\text{ V}}{942\ \Omega} = 0.159\text{ A}$$

33.4 Capacitors in an AC Circuit

Active Figure 33.9 shows an AC circuit consisting of a capacitor connected across the terminals of an AC source. Kirchhoff's loop rule applied to this circuit gives $\Delta v + \Delta v_C = 0$, or

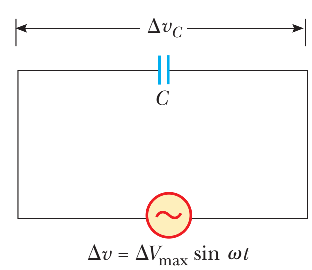
$$\Delta v - \frac{q}{C} = 0 \quad \textbf{(33.13)}$$

Substituting $\Delta V_{\max} \sin \omega t$ for Δv and rearranging gives

$$q = C\,\Delta V_{\max} \sin \omega t \quad \textbf{(33.14)}$$

where q is the instantaneous charge on the capacitor. Differentiating Equation 33.14 with respect to time gives the instantaneous current in the circuit:

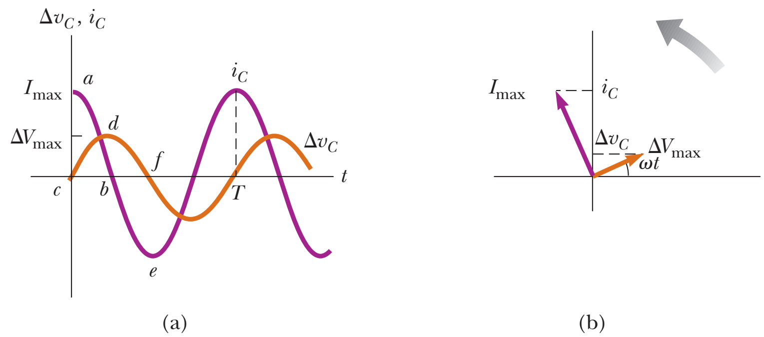
$$i_C = \frac{dq}{dt} = \omega C\,\Delta V_{\max} \cos \omega t \quad \textbf{(33.15)}$$



ACTIVE FIGURE 33.9

A circuit consisting of a capacitor of capacitance C connected to an AC source.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the capacitance, frequency, and maximum voltage. The results can be studied with the graph and the phasor diagram in Active Figure 33.10.



ACTIVE FIGURE 33.10

(a) Plots of the instantaneous current i_C and instantaneous voltage Δv_C across a capacitor as functions of time. The voltage lags behind the current by 90°. (b) Phasor diagram for the capacitive circuit, showing that the current leads the voltage by 90°.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the capacitance, frequency, and maximum voltage of the circuit in Active Figure 33.9. The results can be studied with the graph and the phasor diagram in this figure.

Using the trigonometric identity

$$\cos \omega t = \sin\left(\omega t + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$$

we can express Equation 33.15 in the alternative form

Current in a capacitor ▶

$$i_C = \omega C\, \Delta V_{max} \sin\left(\omega t + \frac{\pi}{2}\right) \qquad \textbf{(33.16)}$$

Comparing this expression with $\Delta v = \Delta V_{max} \sin \omega t$ shows that the current is $\pi/2$ rad $= 90°$ out of phase with the voltage across the capacitor. A plot of current and voltage versus time (Active Fig. 33.10a) shows that the current reaches its maximum value one-quarter of a cycle sooner than the voltage reaches its maximum value.

Consider a point such as *b* where the current is zero at this instant. That occurs when the capacitor reaches its maximum charge so that the voltage across the capacitor is a maximum (point *d*). At points such as *a* and *e*, the current is a maximum, which occurs at those instants when the charge on the capacitor reaches zero and the capacitor begins to recharge with the opposite polarity. When the charge is zero, the voltage across the capacitor is zero (points *c* and *f*). Therefore, the current and voltage are out of phase.

As with inductors, we can represent the current and voltage for a capacitor on a phasor diagram. The phasor diagram in Active Figure 33.10b shows that **for a sinusoidally applied voltage, the current always leads the voltage across a capacitor by 90°.**

Equation 33.15 shows that the current in the circuit reaches its maximum value when $\cos \omega t = \pm 1$:

$$I_{max} = \omega C\, \Delta V_{max} = \frac{\Delta V_{max}}{(1/\omega C)} \qquad \textbf{(33.17)}$$

As in the case with inductors, this looks like Equation 27.7, so the denominator plays the role of resistance, with units of ohms. We give the combination $1/\omega C$ the symbol X_C, and because this function varies with frequency, we define it as the **capacitive reactance:**

Capacitive reactance ▶

$$X_C \equiv \frac{1}{\omega C} \qquad \textbf{(33.18)}$$

We can now write Equation 33.17 as

Maximum current in a capacitor ▶

$$I_{max} = \frac{\Delta V_{max}}{X_C} \qquad \textbf{(33.19)}$$

The rms current is given by an expression similar to Equation 33.19, with I_{max} replaced by I_{rms} and ΔV_{max} replaced by ΔV_{rms}.

Using Equation 33.19, we can express the instantaneous voltage across the capacitor as

$$\Delta v_C = \Delta V_{max} \sin \omega t = I_{max} X_C \sin \omega t \tag{33.20}$$

◀ Voltage across a capacitor

Equations 33.18 and 33.19 indicate that as the frequency of the voltage source increases, the capacitive reactance decreases and the maximum current therefore increases. The frequency of the current is determined by the frequency of the voltage source driving the circuit. As the frequency approaches zero, the capacitive reactance approaches infinity and the current therefore approaches zero. This conclusion makes sense because the circuit approaches direct current conditions as ω approaches zero and the capacitor represents an open circuit.

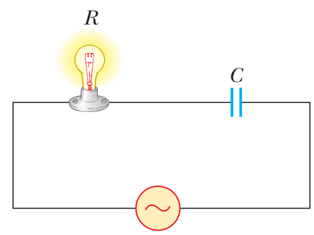


Figure 33.11 (Quick Quiz 33.3)

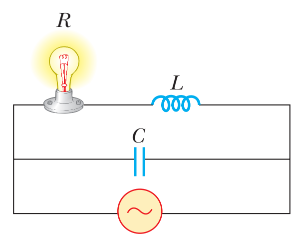


Figure 33.12 (Quick Quiz 33.4)

Quick Quiz 33.3 Consider the AC circuit in Figure 33.11. The frequency of the AC source is adjusted while its voltage amplitude is held constant. When does the lightbulb glow the brightest? (a) It glows brightest at high frequencies. (b) It glows brightest at low frequencies. (c) The brightness is the same at all frequencies.

Quick Quiz 33.4 Consider the AC circuit in Figure 33.12. The frequency of the AC source is adjusted while its voltage amplitude is held constant. When does the lightbulb glow the brightest? (a) It glows brightest at high frequencies. (b) It glows brightest at low frequencies. (c) The brightness is the same at all frequencies.

EXAMPLE 33.3 A Purely Capacitive AC Circuit

An 8.00-μF capacitor is connected to the terminals of a 60.0-Hz AC source whose rms voltage is 150 V. Find the capacitive reactance and the rms current in the circuit.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Active Figure 33.9 shows the physical situation for this problem.

Categorize We evaluate the reactance and the current from equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Use Equation 33.18 to find the capacitive reactance:

$$X_C = \frac{1}{\omega C} = \frac{1}{2\pi f C} = \frac{1}{2\pi(60\text{ Hz})(8.00 \times 10^{-6}\text{ F})} = 332\ \Omega$$

Use an rms version of Equation 33.19 to find the rms current:

$$I_{rms} = \frac{\Delta V_{rms}}{X_C} = \frac{150\text{ V}}{332\ \Omega} = \boxed{0.452\text{ A}}$$

What If? What if the frequency is doubled? What happens to the rms current in the circuit?

Answer If the frequency increases, the capacitive reactance decreases, which is just the opposite from the case of an inductor. The decrease in capacitive reactance results in an increase in the current.

Let's calculate the new capacitive reactance and the new rms current:

$$X_C = \frac{1}{\omega C} = \frac{1}{2\pi(120\text{ Hz})(8.00 \times 10^{-6}\text{ F})} = 166\ \Omega$$

$$I_{rms} = \frac{150\text{ V}}{166\ \Omega} = 0.904\text{ A}$$

33.5 The *RLC* Series Circuit

Active Figure 33.13a shows a circuit that contains a resistor, an inductor, and a capacitor connected in series across an alternating voltage source. If the applied voltage varies sinusoidally with time, the instantaneous applied voltage is

$$\Delta v = \Delta V_{\max} \sin \omega t$$

while the current varies as

$$i = I_{\max} \sin (\omega t - \phi)$$

where ϕ is some **phase angle** between the current and the applied voltage. Based on our discussions of phase in Sections 33.3 and 33.4, we expect that the current will generally not be in phase with the voltage in an *RLC* circuit. Our aim is to determine ϕ and $I_{\max}$. Active Figure 33.13b shows the voltage versus time across each element in the circuit and their phase relationships.

First, because the elements are in series, the current everywhere in the circuit must be the same at any instant. That is, **the current at all points in a series AC circuit has the same amplitude and phase.** Based on the preceding sections, we know that the voltage across each element has a different amplitude and phase. In particular, the voltage across the resistor is in phase with the current, the voltage across the inductor leads the current by 90°, and the voltage across the capacitor lags behind the current by 90°. Using these phase relationships, we can express the instantaneous voltages across the three circuit elements as

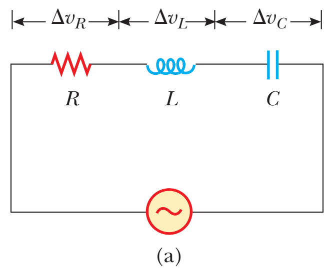
$$\Delta v_R = I_{\max} R \sin \omega t = \Delta V_R \sin \omega t \quad \textbf{(33.21)}$$

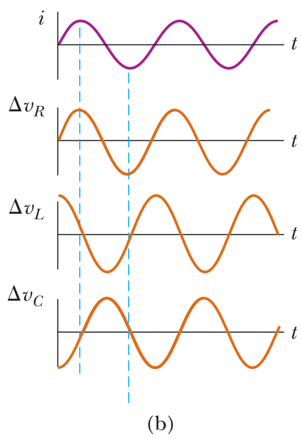
$$\Delta v_L = I_{\max} X_L \sin\left(\omega t + \frac{\pi}{2}\right) = \Delta V_L \cos \omega t \quad \textbf{(33.22)}$$

$$\Delta v_C = I_{\max} X_C \sin\left(\omega t - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) = -\Delta V_C \cos \omega t \quad \textbf{(33.23)}$$

The sum of these three voltages must equal the voltage from the AC source, but it is important to recognize that because the three voltages have different phase relationships with the current, they cannot be added directly. Figure 33.14 represents the phasors at an instant at which the current in all three elements is momentarily zero. The zero current is represented by the current phasor along the horizontal axis in each part of the figure. Next the voltage phasor is drawn at the appropriate phase angle to the current for each element.

Because phasors are rotating vectors, the voltage phasors in Figure 33.14 can be combined using vector addition as in Active Figure 33.15. In Active Figure 33.15a, the voltage phasors in Figure 33.14 are combined on the same coordinate axes. Active Figure 33.15b shows the vector addition of the voltage phasors. The voltage phasors ΔV_L and ΔV_C are in *opposite* directions along the same line, so we can construct the difference phasor $\Delta V_L - \Delta V_C$, which is perpendicular to the phasor ΔV_R. This diagram shows that the vector sum of the voltage amplitudes ΔV_R, ΔV_L, and ΔV_C equals a phasor whose length is the maximum applied voltage $\Delta V_{\max}$ and





ACTIVE FIGURE 33.13

(a) A series circuit consisting of a resistor, an inductor, and a capacitor connected to an AC source. (b) Phase relationships for instantaneous voltages in the series *RLC* circuit.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the resistance, inductance, and capacitance. The results can be studied with the graph in this figure and the phasor diagram in Active Figure 33.15.

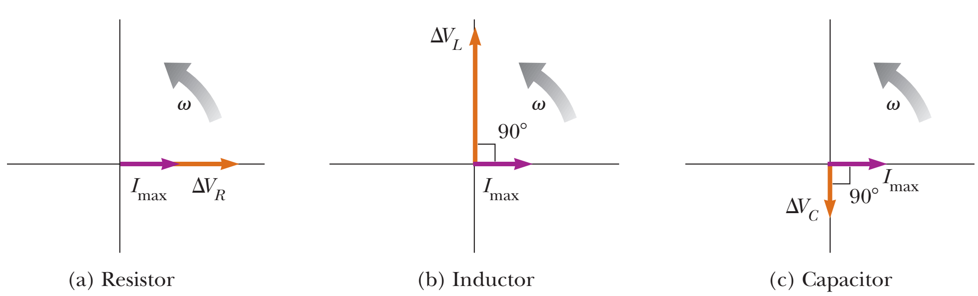
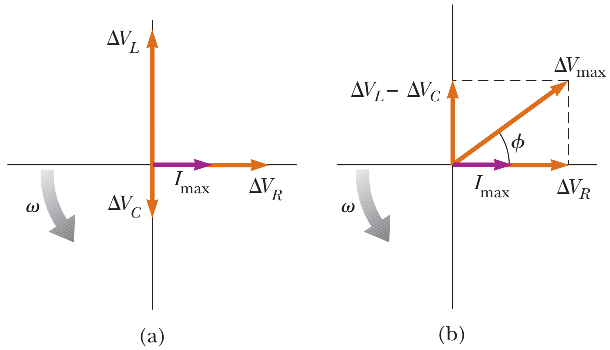


Figure 33.14 Phase relationships between the voltage and current phasors for (a) a resistor, (b) an inductor, and (c) a capacitor connected in series.



ACTIVE FIGURE 33.15

(a) Phasor diagram for the series *RLC* circuit shown in Active Figure 33.13a. The phasor ΔV_R is in phase with the current phasor I_{max}, the phasor ΔV_L leads I_{max} by 90°, and the phasor ΔV_C lags I_{max} by 90°. (b) The inductance and capacitance phasors are added together and then added vectorially to the resistance phasor. The total voltage ΔV_{max} makes an angle ϕ with I_{max}.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the resistance, inductance, and capacitance of the circuit in Active Figure 33.13a. The results can be studied with the graphs in Active Figure 33.13b and the phasor diagram in this figure.

which makes an angle ϕ with the current phasor I_{max}. From the right triangle in Active Figure 33.15b, we see that

$$\Delta V_{max} = \sqrt{\Delta V_R^{\,2} + (\Delta V_L - \Delta V_C)^2} = \sqrt{(I_{max}R)^2 + (I_{max}X_L - I_{max}X_C)^2}$$

$$\Delta V_{max} = I_{max}\sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}$$

Therefore, we can express the maximum current as

$$I_{max} = \frac{\Delta V_{max}}{\sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}} \qquad \textbf{(33.24)}$$

◀ Maximum current in an *RLC* circuit

Once again, this expression has the same mathematical form as Equation 27.7. The denominator of the fraction plays the role of resistance and is called the **impedance** Z of the circuit:

$$Z \equiv \sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2} \qquad \textbf{(33.25)}$$

◀ Impedance

where impedance also has units of ohms. Therefore, Equation 33.24 can be written in the form

$$I_{max} = \frac{\Delta V_{max}}{Z} \qquad \textbf{(33.26)}$$

Equation 33.26 is the AC equivalent of Equation 27.7. Note that the impedance and therefore the current in an AC circuit depend on the resistance, the inductance, the capacitance, and the frequency (because the reactances are frequency dependent).

From the right triangle in the phasor diagram in Active Figure 33.15b, the phase angle ϕ between the current and the voltage is found as follows:

$$\phi = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\Delta V_L - \Delta V_C}{\Delta V_R}\right) = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{I_{max}X_L - I_{max}X_C}{I_{max}R}\right)$$

$$\phi = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{X_L - X_C}{R}\right) \qquad \textbf{(33.27)}$$

◀ Phase angle

When $X_L > X_C$ (which occurs at high frequencies), the phase angle is positive, signifying that the current lags the applied voltage as in Active Figure 33.15b. We describe this situation by saying that the circuit is *more inductive than capacitive.* When $X_L < X_C$, the phase angle is negative, signifying that the current leads the applied voltage, and the circuit is *more capacitive than inductive.* When $X_L = X_C$, the phase angle is zero and the circuit is *purely resistive.*

Quick Quiz 33.5 Label each part of Figure 33.16, (a), (b), and (c), as representing $X_L > X_C$, $X_L = X_C$, or $X_L < X_C$.

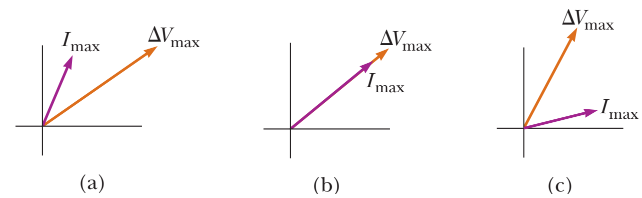


Figure 33.16 (Quick Quiz 33.5) Match the phasor diagrams to the relationships between the reactances.

EXAMPLE 33.4 Analyzing a Series *RLC* Circuit

A series *RLC* circuit has $R = 425\ \Omega$, $L = 1.25$ H, $C = 3.50\ \mu$F. It is connected to an AC source with $f = 60.0$ Hz and $\Delta V_{max} = 150$ V.

(A) Determine the inductive reactance, the capacitive reactance, and the impedance of the circuit.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The circuit of interest in this example is shown in Active Figure 33.13a. The current in the combination of the resistor, inductor, and capacitor oscillates at a particular phase angle with respect to the applied voltage.

Categorize The circuit is a simple series *RLC* circuit, so we can use the approach discussed in this section.

Analyze Find the angular frequency:

$$\omega = 2\pi f = 2\pi(60.0\ \text{Hz}) = 377\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

Use Equation 33.10 to find the inductive reactance:

$$X_L = \omega L = (377\ \text{s}^{-1})(1.25\ \text{H}) = \boxed{471\ \Omega}$$

Use Equation 33.18 to find the capacitive reactance:

$$X_C = \frac{1}{\omega C} = \frac{1}{(377\ \text{s}^{-1})(3.50 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{F})} = \boxed{758\ \Omega}$$

Use Equation 33.25 to find the impedance:

$$Z = \sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}$$
$$= \sqrt{(425\ \Omega)^2 + (471\ \Omega - 758\ \Omega)^2} = \boxed{513\ \Omega}$$

(B) Find the maximum current in the circuit.

SOLUTION

Use Equation 33.26 to find the maximum current:

$$I_{max} = \frac{\Delta V_{max}}{Z} = \frac{150\ \text{V}}{513\ \Omega} = \boxed{0.292\ \text{A}}$$

(C) Find the phase angle between the current and voltage.

SOLUTION

Use Equation 33.27 to calculate the phase angle:

$$\phi = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{X_L - X_C}{R}\right) = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{471\ \Omega - 758\ \Omega}{425\ \Omega}\right) = \boxed{-34.0°}$$

(D) Find the maximum voltage across each element.

SOLUTION

Use Equations 33.2, 33.11, and 33.19 to calculate the maximum voltages:

$$\Delta V_R = I_{max}R = (0.292\ \text{A})(425\ \Omega) = \boxed{124\ \text{V}}$$
$$\Delta V_L = I_{max}X_L = (0.292\ \text{A})(471\ \Omega) = \boxed{138\ \text{V}}$$
$$\Delta V_C = I_{max}X_C = (0.292\ \text{A})(758\ \Omega) = \boxed{221\ \text{V}}$$

(E) What replacement value of L should an engineer analyzing the circuit choose such that the current leads the applied voltage by 30.0°? All other values in the circuit stay the same.

SOLUTION

Solve Equation 33.27 for the inductive reactance:

$$X_L = X_C + R\tan\phi$$

Substitute Equations 33.10 and 33.18 into this expression:

$$\omega L = \frac{1}{\omega C} + R\tan\phi$$

Solve for L:

$$L = \frac{1}{\omega}\left(\frac{1}{\omega C} + R\tan\phi\right)$$

Substitute the given values:

$$L = \frac{1}{(377\ \text{s}^{-1})}\left[\frac{1}{(377\ \text{s}^{-1})(3.50\times10^{-6}\ \text{F})} + (425\ \Omega)\tan(-30.0°)\right]$$

$$L = \boxed{1.36\ \text{H}}$$

Finalize Because the capacitive reactance is larger than the inductive reactance, the circuit is more capacitive than inductive. In this case, the phase angle ϕ is negative, so the current leads the applied voltage.

Using Equations 33.21, 33.22, and 33.23, the instantaneous voltages across the three elements are

$$\Delta v_R = (124\ \text{V})\sin 377t$$

$$\Delta v_L = (138\ \text{V})\cos 377t$$

$$\Delta v_C = (-221\ \text{V})\cos 377t$$

What If? What if you added up the maximum voltages across the three circuit elements? Is that a physically meaningful quantity?

Answer The sum of the maximum voltages across the elements is $\Delta V_R + \Delta V_L + \Delta V_C = 483$ V. This sum is much greater than the maximum voltage of the source, 150 V. The sum of the maximum voltages is a meaningless quantity because when sinusoidally varying quantities are added, *both their amplitudes and their phases* must be taken into account. The maximum voltages across the various elements occur at different times. Therefore, the voltages must be added in a way that takes account of the different phases as shown in Active Figure 33.15.

33.6 Power in an AC Circuit

Now let's take an energy approach to analyzing AC circuits and consider the transfer of energy from the AC source to the circuit. The power delivered by a battery to an external DC circuit is equal to the product of the current and the terminal voltage of the battery. Likewise, the instantaneous power delivered by an AC source to a circuit is the product of the current and the applied voltage. For the *RLC* circuit shown in Active Figure 33.13a, we can express the instantaneous power $\mathcal{P}$ as

$$\mathcal{P} = i\Delta v = I_{\text{max}}\sin(\omega t - \phi)\,\Delta V_{\text{max}}\sin\omega t$$

$$\mathcal{P} = I_{\text{max}}\Delta V_{\text{max}}\sin\omega t\sin(\omega t - \phi) \qquad \textbf{(33.28)}$$

This result is a complicated function of time and is therefore not very useful from a practical viewpoint. What is generally of interest is the average power over one or more cycles. Such an average can be computed by first using the trigonometric identity $\sin(\omega t - \phi) = \sin\omega t\cos\phi - \cos\omega t\sin\phi$. Substituting this identity into Equation 33.28 gives

$$\mathcal{P} = I_{\text{max}}\Delta V_{\text{max}}\sin^2\omega t\cos\phi - I_{\text{max}}\Delta V_{\text{max}}\sin\omega t\cos\omega t\sin\phi \qquad \textbf{(33.29)}$$

Let's now take the time average of $\mathcal{P}$ over one or more cycles, noting that I_{max}, ΔV_{max}, ϕ, and ω are all constants. The time average of the first term on the right of the equal sign in Equation 33.29 involves the average value of $\sin^2 \omega t$, which is $\frac{1}{2}$. The time average of the second term on the right of the equal sign is identically zero because $\sin \omega t \cos \omega t = \frac{1}{2} \sin 2\omega t$, and the average value of $\sin 2\omega t$ is zero. Therefore, we can express the **average power** $\mathcal{P}_{avg}$ as

$$\mathcal{P}_{avg} = \tfrac{1}{2} I_{max} \Delta V_{max} \cos \phi \tag{33.30}$$

It is convenient to express the average power in terms of the rms current and rms voltage defined by Equations 33.4 and 33.5:

Average power delivered to an *RLC* circuit ▶

$$\mathcal{P}_{avg} = I_{rms}\, \Delta V_{rms} \cos \phi \tag{33.31}$$

where the quantity $\cos \phi$ is called the **power factor.** Active Figure 33.15b shows that the maximum voltage across the resistor is given by $\Delta V_R = \Delta V_{max} \cos \phi = I_{max} R$. Using Equation 33.5 and $\cos \phi = I_{max} R / \Delta V_{max}$, we can express $\mathcal{P}_{avg}$ as

$$\mathcal{P}_{avg} = I_{rms} \Delta V_{rms} \cos \phi = I_{rms} \left(\frac{\Delta V_{max}}{\sqrt{2}} \right) \frac{I_{max} R}{\Delta V_{max}} = I_{rms} \frac{I_{max} R}{\sqrt{2}}$$

Substituting $I_{max} = \sqrt{2} I_{rms}$ from Equation 33.4 gives

$$\mathcal{P}_{avg} = I_{rms}^2 R \tag{33.32}$$

In words, **the average power delivered by the source is converted to internal energy in the resistor,** just as in the case of a DC circuit. When the load is purely resistive, $\phi = 0$, $\cos \phi = 1$, and, from Equation 33.31, we see that

$$\mathcal{P}_{avg} = I_{rms} \Delta V_{rms}$$

Note that **no power losses are associated with pure capacitors and pure inductors in an AC circuit.** To see why that is true, let's first analyze the power in an AC circuit containing only a source and a capacitor. When the current begins to increase in one direction in an AC circuit, charge begins to accumulate on the capacitor and a voltage appears across it. When this voltage reaches its maximum value, the energy stored in the capacitor as electric potential energy is $\frac{1}{2} C (\Delta V_{max})^2$. This energy storage, however, is only momentary. The capacitor is charged and discharged twice during each cycle: charge is delivered to the capacitor during two quarters of the cycle and is returned to the voltage source during the remaining two quarters. Therefore, **the average power supplied by the source is zero.** In other words, **no power losses occur in a capacitor in an AC circuit.**

Now consider the case of an inductor. When the current in an inductor reaches its maximum value, the energy stored in the inductor is a maximum and is given by $\frac{1}{2} L I_{max}^2$. When the current begins to decrease in the circuit, this stored energy in the inductor returns to the source as the inductor attempts to maintain the current in the circuit.

Equation 33.31 shows that the power delivered by an AC source to any circuit depends on the phase, a result that has many interesting applications. For example, a factory that uses large motors in machines, generators, or transformers has a large inductive load (because of all the windings). To deliver greater power to such devices in the factory without using excessively high voltages, technicians introduce capacitance in the circuits to shift the phase.

Quick Quiz 33.6 An AC source drives an *RLC* circuit with a fixed voltage amplitude. If the driving frequency is ω_1, the circuit is more capacitive than inductive and the phase angle is $-10°$. If the driving frequency is ω_2, the circuit is more inductive than capacitive and the phase angle is $+10°$. At what frequency is the largest amount of power delivered to the circuit? (a) It is largest at ω_1. (b) It is largest at ω_2. (c) The same amount of power is delivered at both frequencies.

EXAMPLE 33.5 Average Power in an *RLC* Series Circuit

Calculate the average power delivered to the series *RLC* circuit described in Example 33.4.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Consider the circuit in Active Figure 33.13a and imagine energy being delivered to the circuit by the AC source. Review Example 33.4 for other details about this circuit.

Categorize We find the result by using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Use Equation 33.5 and the maximum voltage from Example 33.4 to find the rms voltage from the source:

$$\Delta V_{\text{rms}} = \frac{\Delta V_{\text{max}}}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{150\text{ V}}{\sqrt{2}} = 106\text{ V}$$

Similarly, find the rms current in the circuit:

$$I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{I_{\text{max}}}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{0.292\text{ A}}{\sqrt{2}} = 0.206\text{ A}$$

Use Equation 33.31 to find the power delivered by the source:

$$\mathcal{P}_{\text{avg}} = I_{\text{rms}}\Delta V_{\text{rms}} \cos\phi = (0.206\text{ A})(106\text{ V})\cos(-34.0°)$$

$$= \boxed{18.1\text{ W}}$$

33.7 Resonance in a Series *RLC* Circuit

A series *RLC* circuit is said to be **in resonance** when the driving frequency is such that the rms current has its maximum value. In general, the rms current can be written

$$I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{\Delta V_{\text{rms}}}{Z} \tag{33.33}$$

where Z is the impedance. Substituting the expression for Z from Equation 33.25 into Equation 33.33 gives

$$I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{\Delta V_{\text{rms}}}{\sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}} \tag{33.34}$$

Because the impedance depends on the frequency of the source, the current in the *RLC* circuit also depends on the frequency. The frequency ω_0 at which $X_L - X_C = 0$ is called the **resonance frequency** of the circuit. To find ω_0, we set $X_L = X_C$, which gives $\omega_0 L = 1/\omega_0 C$, or

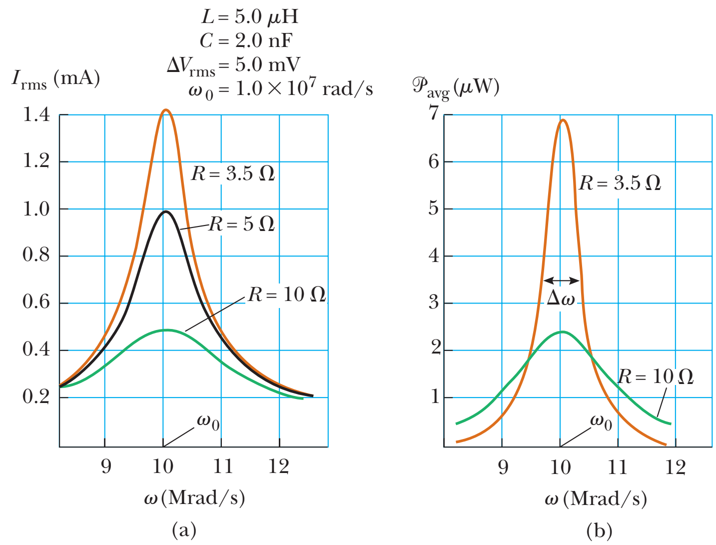
$$\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}} \tag{33.35}$$

◀ Resonance frequency

This frequency also corresponds to the natural frequency of oscillation of an *LC* circuit (see Section 32.5). Therefore, the rms current in a series *RLC* circuit has its maximum value when the frequency of the applied voltage matches the natural oscillator frequency, which depends only on L and C. Furthermore, at the resonance frequency, the current is in phase with the applied voltage.

Quick Quiz 33.7 What is the impedance of a series *RLC* circuit at resonance? (a) larger than R (b) less than R (c) equal to R (d) impossible to determine

A plot of rms current versus frequency for a series *RLC* circuit is shown in Active Figure 33.17a. The data assume a constant $\Delta V_{\text{rms}} = 5.0$ mV, $L = 5.0\ \mu$H, and $C = 2.0$ nF. The three curves correspond to three values of R. In each case,



ACTIVE FIGURE 33.17

(a) The rms current versus frequency for a series *RLC* circuit for three values of *R*. The current reaches its maximum value at the resonance frequency ω_0. (b) Average power delivered to the circuit versus frequency for the series *RLC* circuit for two values of *R*.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the resistance, inductance, and capacitance of the circuit in Active Figure 33.13a. You can then determine the current and power for a given frequency or sweep through the frequencies to generate resonance curves as shown in this figure.

the rms current has its maximum value at the resonance frequency ω_0. Furthermore, the curves become narrower and taller as the resistance decreases.

Equation 33.34 shows that when $R = 0$, the current becomes infinite at resonance. Real circuits, however, always have some resistance, which limits the value of the current to some finite value.

We can also calculate the average power as a function of frequency for a series *RLC* circuit. Using Equations 33.32, 33.33, and 33.25 gives

$$\mathcal{P}_{avg} = I_{rms}^2 R = \frac{(\Delta V_{rms})^2}{Z^2}\, R = \frac{(\Delta V_{rms})^2 R}{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2} \qquad \textbf{(33.36)}$$

Because $X_L = \omega L$, $X_C = 1/\omega C$, and $\omega_0{}^2 = 1/LC$, the term $(X_L - X_C)^2$ can be expressed as

$$(X_L - X_C)^2 = \left(\omega L - \frac{1}{\omega C}\right)^2 = \frac{L^2}{\omega^2}\,(\omega^2 - \omega_0{}^2)^2$$

Using this result in Equation 33.36 gives

Average power as a function of frequency in an *RLC* circuit ▶

$$\mathcal{P}_{avg} = \frac{(\Delta V_{rms})^2 R\omega^2}{R^2\omega^2 + L^2(\omega^2 - \omega_0{}^2)^2} \qquad \textbf{(33.37)}$$

Equation 33.37 shows that **at resonance, when $\omega = \omega_0$, the average power is a maximum** and has the value $(\Delta V_{rms})^2/R$. Active Figure 33.17b is a plot of average power versus frequency for two values of *R* in a series *RLC* circuit. As the resistance is made smaller, the curve becomes sharper in the vicinity of the resonance frequency. This curve sharpness is usually described by a dimensionless parameter known as the **quality factor,**[2] denoted by Q:

Quality factor ▶

$$Q = \frac{\omega_0}{\Delta\omega}$$

[2] The quality factor is also defined as the ratio $2\pi E/\Delta E$, where E is the energy stored in the oscillating system and ΔE is the energy decrease per cycle of oscillation due to the resistance.

where $\Delta\omega$ is the width of the curve measured between the two values of ω for which $\mathcal{P}_{avg}$ has one-half its maximum value, called the *half-power points* (see Active Fig. 33.17b.) It is left as a problem (Problem 68) to show that the width at the half-power points has the value $\Delta\omega = R/L$ so that

$$Q = \frac{\omega_0 L}{R} \quad \textbf{(33.38)}$$

A radio's receiving circuit is an important application of a resonant circuit. The radio is tuned to a particular station (which transmits an electromagnetic wave or signal of a specific frequency) by varying a capacitor, which changes the receiving circuit's resonance frequency. When the circuit is driven by the electromagnetic oscillations a radio signal produces in an antenna, the tuner circuit responds with a large amplitude of electrical oscillation only for the station frequency that matches the resonance frequency. Therefore, only the signal from one radio station is passed on to the amplifier and loudspeakers even though signals from all stations are driving the circuit at the same time. Because many signals are often present over a range of frequencies, it is important to design a high-Q circuit to eliminate unwanted signals. In this manner, stations whose frequencies are near but not equal to the resonance frequency give signals at the receiver that are negligibly small relative to the signal that matches the resonance frequency.

EXAMPLE 33.6 A Resonating Series *RLC* Circuit

Consider a series RLC circuit for which $R = 150\ \Omega$, $L = 20.0$ mH, $\Delta V_{rms} = 20.0$ V, and $\omega = 5\ 000\ \text{s}^{-1}$. Determine the value of the capacitance for which the current is a maximum.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Consider the circuit in Active Figure 33.13a and imagine varying the frequency of the AC source. The current in the circuit has its maximum value at the resonance frequency ω_0.

Categorize We find the result by using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Use Equation 33.35 to solve for the required capacitance in terms of the resonance frequency:

$$\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}} \quad \rightarrow \quad C = \frac{1}{\omega_0{}^2 L}$$

Substitute numerical values:

$$C = \frac{1}{(5.00 \times 10^3\ \text{s}^{-1})^2(20.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{H})} = \boxed{2.00\ \mu\text{F}}$$

33.8 The Transformer and Power Transmission

As discussed in Section 27.6, it is economical to use a high voltage and a low current to minimize the I^2R loss in transmission lines when electric power is transmitted over great distances. Consequently, 350-kV lines are common, and in many areas, even higher-voltage (765-kV) lines are used. At the receiving end of such lines, the consumer requires power at a low voltage (for safety and for efficiency in design). In practice, the voltage is decreased to approximately 20 000 V at a distributing station, then to 4 000 V for delivery to residential areas, and finally to 120 V and 240 V at the customer's site. Therefore, a device is needed that can change the alternating voltage and current without causing appreciable changes in the power delivered. The AC transformer is that device.

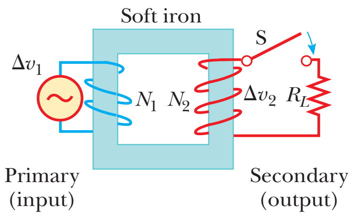


Figure 33.18 An ideal transformer consists of two coils wound on the same iron core. An alternating voltage Δv_1 is applied to the primary coil, and the output voltage Δv_2 is across the resistor of resistance R_L.

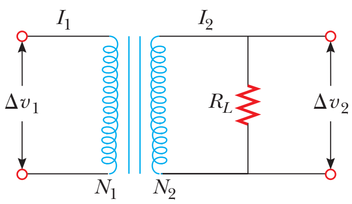


Figure 33.19 Circuit diagram for a transformer.

In its simplest form, the **AC transformer** consists of two coils of wire wound around a core of iron as illustrated in Figure 33.18. (Compare this arrangement to Faraday's experiment in Figure 31.2.) The coil on the left, which is connected to the input alternating voltage source and has N_1 turns, is called the *primary winding* (or the *primary*). The coil on the right, consisting of N_2 turns and connected to a load resistor R_L, is called the *secondary winding* (or the *secondary*). The purposes of the iron core are to increase the magnetic flux through the coil and to provide a medium in which nearly all the magnetic field lines through one coil pass through the other coil. Eddy-current losses are reduced by using a laminated core. Transformation of energy to internal energy in the finite resistance of the coil wires is usually quite small. Typical transformers have power efficiencies from 90% to 99%. In the discussion that follows, let's assume we are working with an *ideal transformer*, one in which the energy losses in the windings and core are zero.

Faraday's law states that the voltage Δv_1 across the primary is

$$\Delta v_1 = -N_1 \frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} \tag{33.39}$$

where Φ_B is the magnetic flux through each turn. If we assume all magnetic field lines remain within the iron core, the flux through each turn of the primary equals the flux through each turn of the secondary. Hence, the voltage across the secondary is

$$\Delta v_2 = -N_2 \frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} \tag{33.40}$$

Solving Equation 33.39 for $d\Phi_B/dt$ and substituting the result into Equation 33.40 gives

$$\Delta v_2 = \frac{N_2}{N_1}\Delta v_1 \tag{33.41}$$

When $N_2 > N_1$, the output voltage Δv_2 exceeds the input voltage Δv_1. This configuration is referred to as a *step-up transformer*. When $N_2 < N_1$, the output voltage is less than the input voltage, and we have a *step-down transformer*.

When the switch in the secondary circuit is closed, a current I_2 is induced in the secondary. (In this discussion, uppercase I and ΔV refer to rms values.) If the load in the secondary circuit is a pure resistance, the induced current is in phase with the induced voltage. The power supplied to the secondary circuit must be provided by the AC source connected to the primary circuit as shown in Figure 33.19. In an ideal transformer where there are no losses, the power $I_1\,\Delta V_1$ supplied by the source is equal to the power $I_2\,\Delta V_2$ in the secondary circuit. That is,

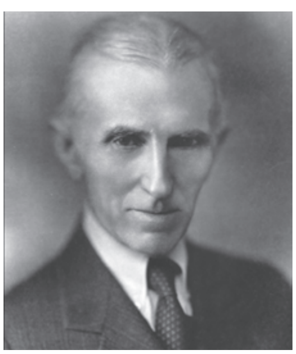
$$I_1 \Delta V_1 = I_2 \Delta V_2 \tag{33.42}$$

The value of the load resistance R_L determines the value of the secondary current because $I_2 = \Delta V_2/R_L$. Furthermore, the current in the primary is $I_1 = \Delta V_1/R_{\text{eq}}$, where

$$R_{\text{eq}} = \left(\frac{N_1}{N_2}\right)^2 R_L \tag{33.43}$$

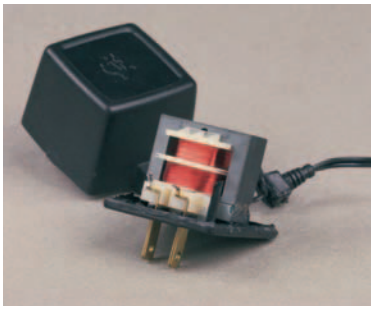
is the equivalent resistance of the load resistance when viewed from the primary side. We see from this analysis that a transformer may be used to match resistances between the primary circuit and the load. In this manner, maximum power transfer can be achieved between a given power source and the load resistance. For example, a transformer connected between the 1-kΩ output of an audio amplifier and an 8-Ω speaker ensures that as much of the audio signal as possible is transferred into the speaker. In stereo terminology, this process is called *impedance matching*.

To operate properly, many common household electronic devices require low voltages. A small transformer that plugs directly into the wall like the one illus-



UPI/CORBIS

NIKOLA TESLA
American Physicist (1856–1943)
Tesla was born in Croatia, but he spent most of his professional life as an inventor in the United States. He was a key figure in the development of alternating-current electricity, high-voltage transformers, and the transport of electrical power using AC transmission lines. Tesla's viewpoint was at odds with the ideas of Thomas Edison, who committed himself to the use of direct current in power transmission. Tesla's AC approach won out.



© Thomson Learning/George Semple

Figure 33.20 The primary winding in this transformer is directly attached to the prongs of the plug. The secondary winding is connected to the power cord on the right, which runs to an electronic device. Many of these power-supply transformers also convert alternating current to direct current.

© Thomson Learning/George Semple

This transformer is smaller than the one in the opening photograph of this chapter. In addition, it is a step-down transformer. It drops the voltage from 4 000 V to 240 V for delivery to a group of residences.

trated in Figure 33.20 can provide the proper voltage. The photograph shows the two windings wrapped around a common iron core that is found inside all these little "black boxes." This particular transformer converts the 120-V AC in the wall socket to 12.5-V AC. (Can you determine the ratio of the numbers of turns in the two coils?) Some black boxes also make use of diodes to convert the alternating current to direct current. (See Section 33.9.)

EXAMPLE 33.7 The Economics of AC Power

An electricity-generating station needs to deliver energy at a rate of 20 MW to a city 1.0 km away. A common voltage for commercial power generators is 22 kV, but a step-up transformer is used to boost the voltage to 230 kV before transmission.

(A) If the resistance of the wires is 2.0 Ω and the energy costs are about 10¢/kWh, estimate what it costs the utility company for the energy converted to internal energy in the wires during one day.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The resistance of the wires is in series with the resistance representing the load (homes and businesses). Therefore, there is a voltage drop in the wires, which means that some of the transmitted energy is converted to internal energy in the wires and never reaches the load.

Categorize This problem involves finding the power delivered to a resistive load in an AC circuit. Let's ignore any capacitive or inductive characteristics of the load and set the power factor equal to 1.

Analyze Calculate I_{rms} in the wires from Equation 33.31:

$$I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{\mathcal{P}_{\text{avg}}}{\Delta V_{\text{rms}}} = \frac{20 \times 10^6\ \text{W}}{230 \times 10^3\ \text{V}} = 87\ \text{A}$$

Determine the rate at which energy is delivered to the resistance in the wires from Equation 33.32:

$$\mathcal{P}_{\text{avg}} = I_{\text{rms}}^2 R = (87\ \text{A})^2(2.0\ \Omega) = 15\ \text{kW}$$

Calculate the energy T_{ET} delivered to the wires over the course of a day:

$$T_{\text{ET}} = \mathcal{P}_{\text{avg}}\Delta t = (15\ \text{kW})(24\ \text{h}) = 360\ \text{kWh}$$

Find the cost of this energy at a rate of 10¢/kWh:

$$\text{Cost} = (360\ \text{kWh})(\$0.10/\text{kWh}) = \boxed{\$36}$$

(B) Repeat the calculation for the situation in which the power plant delivers the energy at its original voltage of 22 kV.

SOLUTION

Calculate I_{rms} in the wires from Equation 33.31:

$$I_{rms} = \frac{\mathcal{P}_{avg}}{\Delta V_{rms}} = \frac{20 \times 10^6 \text{ W}}{22 \times 10^3 \text{ V}} = 910 \text{ A}$$

From Equation 33.32, determine the rate at which energy is delivered to the resistance in the wires:

$$\mathcal{P}_{avg} = I_{rms}^2 R = (910 \text{ A})^2 (2.0 \ \Omega) = 1.7 \times 10^3 \text{ kW}$$

Calculate the energy delivered to the wires over the course of a day:

$$T_{ET} = \mathcal{P}_{avg} \Delta t = (1.7 \times 10^3 \text{ kW})(24 \text{ h}) = 4.1 \times 10^4 \text{ kWh}$$

Find the cost of this energy at a rate of 10¢/kWh:

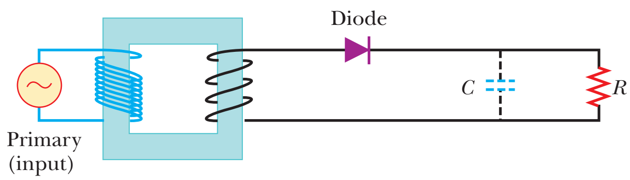
$$\text{Cost} = (4.1 \times 10^4 \text{ kWh})(\$0.10/\text{kWh}) = \boxed{\$4.1 \times 10^3}$$

Finalize Notice the tremendous savings that are possible through the use of transformers and high-voltage transmission lines. Such savings in combination with the efficiency of using alternating current to operate motors led to the universal adoption of alternating current instead of direct current for commercial power grids.

33.9 Rectifiers and Filters

Portable electronic devices such as radios and compact disc players are often powered by direct current supplied by batteries. Many devices come with AC–DC converters such as that shown in Figure 33.20. Such a converter contains a transformer that steps the voltage down from 120 V to, typically, 9 V and a circuit that converts alternating current to direct current. The AC–DC converting process is called **rectification,** and the converting device is called a **rectifier.**

The most important element in a rectifier circuit is a **diode,** a circuit element that conducts current in one direction but not the other. Most diodes used in modern electronics are semiconductor devices. The circuit symbol for a diode is —▶|—, where the arrow indicates the direction of the current in the diode. A diode has low resistance to current in one direction (the direction of the arrow) and high resistance to current in the opposite direction. To understand how a diode rectifies a current, consider Figure 33.21a, which shows a diode and a resistor connected to the secondary of a transformer. The transformer reduces the voltage from 120-V AC to the lower voltage that is needed for the device having a resistance R (the load resistance). Because the diode conducts current in only one direction, the alternating current in the load resistor is reduced to the form shown by the solid curve in Figure 33.21b. The diode conducts current only when the side of the symbol containing the arrowhead has a positive potential relative to the other side. In this situation, the diode acts as a *half-wave rectifier* because current is present in the circuit only during half of each cycle.



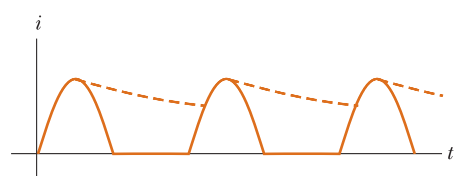
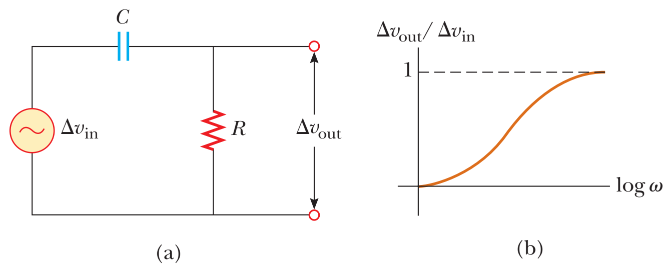


Figure 33.21 (a) A half-wave rectifier with an optional filter capacitor. (b) Current versus time in the resistor. The solid curve represents the current with no filter capacitor, and the dashed curve is the current when the circuit includes the capacitor.



ACTIVE FIGURE 33.22

(a) A simple *RC* high-pass filter. (b) Ratio of output voltage to input voltage for an *RC* high-pass filter as a function of the angular frequency of the AC source.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the resistance and capacitance of the circuit in (a). You can then determine the output voltage for a given frequency or sweep through the frequencies to generate a curve like that in (b).

When a capacitor is added to the circuit as shown by the dashed lines and the capacitor symbol in Figure 33.21a, the circuit is a simple DC power supply. The time variation of the current in the load resistor (the dashed curve in Fig. 33.21b) is close to being zero, as determined by the *RC* time constant of the circuit. As the current in the circuit begins to rise at $t = 0$ in Figure 33.21b, the capacitor charges up. When the current begins to fall, however, the capacitor discharges through the resistor, so the current in the resistor does not fall as quickly as the current from the transformer.

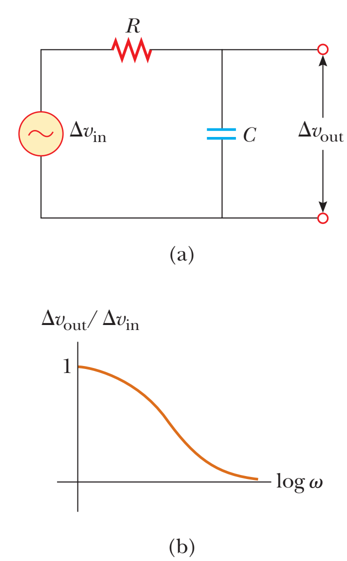
The *RC* circuit in Figure 33.21a is one example of a **filter circuit,** which is used to smooth out or eliminate a time-varying signal. For example, radios are usually powered by a 60-Hz alternating voltage. After rectification, the voltage still contains a small AC component at 60 Hz (sometimes called *ripple*), which must be filtered. By "filtered," we mean that the 60-Hz ripple must be reduced to a value much less than that of the audio signal to be amplified because without filtering, the resulting audio signal includes an annoying hum at 60 Hz.

We can also design filters that respond differently to different frequencies. Consider the simple series *RC* circuit shown in Active Figure 33.22a. The input voltage is across the series combination of the two elements. The output is the voltage across the resistor. A plot of the ratio of the output voltage to the input voltage as a function of the logarithm of angular frequency (see Active Fig. 33.22b) shows that at low frequencies, Δv_{out} is much smaller than Δv_{in}, whereas at high frequencies, the two voltages are equal. Because the circuit preferentially passes signals of higher frequency while blocking low-frequency signals, the circuit is called an *RC* high-pass filter. (See Problem 45 for an analysis of this filter.)

Physically, a high-pass filter works because a capacitor "blocks out" direct current and AC current at low frequencies. At low frequencies, the capacitive reactance is large and much of the applied voltage appears across the capacitor rather than across the output resistor. As the frequency increases, the capacitive reactance drops and more of the applied voltage appears across the resistor.

Now consider the circuit shown in Active Figure 33.23a, where we have interchanged the resistor and capacitor and where the output voltage is taken across the capacitor. At low frequencies, the reactance of the capacitor and the voltage across the capacitor is high. As the frequency increases, the voltage across the capacitor drops. Therefore, this filter is an *RC* low-pass filter. The ratio of output voltage to input voltage (see Problem 46), plotted as a function of the logarithm of ω in Active Figure 33.23b, shows this behavior.

You may be familiar with crossover networks, which are an important part of the speaker systems for high-fidelity audio systems. These networks use low-pass filters to direct low frequencies to a special type of speaker, the "woofer," which is designed to reproduce the low notes accurately. The high frequencies are sent to the "tweeter" speaker.



ACTIVE FIGURE 33.23

(a) A simple *RC* low-pass filter. (b) Ratio of output voltage to input voltage for an *RC* low-pass filter as a function of the angular frequency of the AC source.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the resistance and capacitance of the circuit in (a). You can then determine the output voltage for a given frequency or sweep through the frequencies to generate a curve like that in (b).

Summary

ThomsonNOW™ Sign in at **www.thomsonedu.com** and go to ThomsonNOW to take a practice test for this chapter.

DEFINITIONS

In AC circuits that contain inductors and capacitors, it is useful to define the **inductive reactance** X_L and the **capacitive reactance** X_C as

$$X_L \equiv \omega L \qquad (33.10)$$

$$X_C \equiv \frac{1}{\omega C} \qquad (33.18)$$

where ω is the angular frequency of the AC source. The SI unit of reactance is the ohm.

The **impedance** Z of an RLC series AC circuit is

$$Z \equiv \sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2} \qquad (33.25)$$

This expression illustrates that we cannot simply add the resistance and reactances in a circuit. We must account for the applied voltage and current being out of phase, with the **phase angle** ϕ between the current and voltage being

$$\phi = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{X_L - X_C}{R}\right) \qquad (33.27)$$

The sign of ϕ can be positive or negative, depending on whether X_L is greater or less than X_C. The phase angle is zero when $X_L = X_C$.

CONCEPTS AND PRINCIPLES

The **rms current** and **rms voltage** in an AC circuit in which the voltages and current vary sinusoidally are given by

$$I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{I_{\text{max}}}{\sqrt{2}} = 0.707 I_{\text{max}} \qquad (33.4)$$

$$\Delta V_{\text{rms}} = \frac{\Delta V_{\text{max}}}{\sqrt{2}} = 0.707\, \Delta V_{\text{max}} \qquad (33.5)$$

where I_{max} and ΔV_{max} are the maximum values.

If an AC circuit consists of a source and a resistor, the current is in phase with the voltage. That is, the current and voltage reach their maximum values at the same time.

If an AC circuit consists of a source and an inductor, the current lags the voltage by 90°. That is, the voltage reaches its maximum value one quarter of a period before the current reaches its maximum value.

If an AC circuit consists of a source and a capacitor, the current leads the voltage by 90°. That is, the current reaches its maximum value one quarter of a period before the voltage reaches its maximum value.

The **average power** delivered by the source in an RLC circuit is

$$\mathcal{P}_{\text{avg}} = I_{\text{rms}}\, \Delta V_{\text{rms}} \cos\phi \qquad (33.31)$$

An equivalent expression for the average power is

$$\mathcal{P}_{\text{avg}} = I_{\text{rms}}^2 R \qquad (33.32)$$

The average power delivered by the source results in increasing internal energy in the resistor. No power loss occurs in an ideal inductor or capacitor.

The rms current in a series RLC circuit is

$$I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{\Delta V_{\text{rms}}}{\sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}} \qquad (33.34)$$

A series RLC circuit is in resonance when the inductive reactance equals the capacitive reactance. When this condition is met, the rms current given by Equation 33.34 has its maximum value. The **resonance frequency** ω_0 of the circuit is

$$\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}} \qquad (33.35)$$

The rms current in a series RLC circuit has its maximum value when the frequency of the source equals ω_0, that is, when the "driving" frequency matches the resonance frequency.

AC transformers allow for easy changes in alternating voltage according to

$$\Delta v_2 = \frac{N_2}{N_1}\Delta v_1 \qquad (33.41)$$

where N_1 and N_2 are the numbers of windings on the primary and secondary coils, respectively, and Δv_1 and Δv_2 are the voltages on these coils.

Questions

☐ denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide;* **O** denotes objective question

1. **O** **(i)** What is the time average of the "square-wave" potential shown in Figure Q33.1? (a) $\sqrt{2}\,\Delta V_{\max}$ (b) $\Delta V_{\max}$ (c) $\Delta V_{\max}/\sqrt{2}$ (d) $\Delta V_{\max}/2$ (e) $\Delta V_{\max}/4$ **(ii)** What is the rms voltage? Choose from the same possibilities.

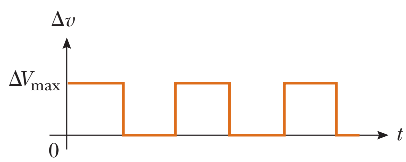


Figure Q33.1

2. **O** Do AC ammeters and voltmeters read (a) peak-to-valley, (b) maximum, (c) rms, or (d) average values?

3. **O** A sinusoidally varying potential difference has amplitude 170 V. **(i)** What is its minimum instantaneous value? (a) 240 V (b) 170 V (c) 120 V (d) 0 (e) −120 V (f) −170 V (g) −240 V **(ii)** What is its average value? **(iii)** What is its rms value? Choose from the same possibilities in each case.

4. Why does a capacitor act as a short circuit at high frequencies? Why does it act as an open circuit at low frequencies?

5. Explain how the mnemonic "ELI the ICE man" can be used to recall whether current leads voltage or voltage leads current in *RLC* circuits. Note that E represents emf $\mathcal{E}$.

6. Why is the sum of the maximum voltages across each element in a series *RLC* circuit usually greater than the maximum applied voltage? Doesn't that inequality violate Kirchhoff's loop rule?

7. Does the phase angle depend on frequency? What is the phase angle when the inductive reactance equals the capacitive reactance?

8. **O** **(i)** When a particular inductor is connected to a source of sinusoidally varying emf with constant amplitude and a frequency of 60 Hz, the rms current is 3 A. What is the rms current if the source frequency is doubled? (a) 12 A (b) 6 A (c) 4.24 A (d) 3 A (e) 2.12 A (f) 1.5 A (g) 0.75 A **(ii)** Repeat part (i) assuming the load is a capacitor instead of an inductor. **(iii)** Repeat part (i) assuming the load is a resistor instead of an inductor.

9. **O** What is the impedance of a series *RLC* circuit at resonance? (a) X_L (b) X_C (c) R (d) $X_L - X_C$ (e) $2X_L$ (f) $\sqrt{2}R$ (g) 0

10. **O** What is the phase angle in a series *RLC* circuit at resonance? (a) 180° (b) 90° (c) 0 (d) −90° (e) None of these answers is necessarily correct.

11. A certain power supply can be modeled as a source of emf in series with both a resistance of 10 Ω and an inductive reactance of 5 Ω. To obtain maximum power delivered to the load, it is found that the load should have a resistance of $R_L = 10\ \Omega$, an inductive reactance of zero, and a capacitive reactance of 5 Ω. (a) With this load, is the circuit in resonance? (b) With this load, what fraction of the average power put out by the source of emf is delivered to the load? (c) To increase the fraction of the power delivered to the load, how could the load be changed? You may wish to review Example 28.2 and Problem 4 in Chapter 28 on maximum power transfer in DC circuits.

12. As shown in Figure 7.5, a person pulls a vacuum cleaner at speed v across a horizontal floor, exerting on it a force of magnitude F directed upward at an angle θ with the horizontal. At what rate is the person doing work on the cleaner? State as completely as you can the analogy between power in this situation and in an electric circuit.

13. **O** A circuit containing a generator, a capacitor, an inductor, and a resistor has a high-Q resonance at 1 000 Hz. From greatest to least, rank the following contributions to the impedance of the circuit at that frequency and at lower and higher frequencies, and note any cases of equality in your ranking. (a) X_C at 500 Hz (b) X_C at 1 000 Hz (c) X_C at 1 500 Hz (d) X_L at 500 Hz (e) X_L at 1 000 Hz (f) X_L at 1 500 Hz (g) R at 500 Hz (h) R at 1 000 Hz (i) R at 1 500 Hz

14. Do some research to answer these questions: Who invented the metal detector? Why? Did it work?

15. Will a transformer operate if a battery is used for the input voltage across the primary? Explain.

16. Explain how the quality factor is related to the response characteristics of a radio receiver. Which variable most strongly influences the quality factor?

17. An ice storm breaks a transmission line and interrupts electric power to a town. A homeowner starts a gasoline-powered 120-V generator and clips its output terminals to "hot" and "ground" terminals of the electrical panel for his house. On a power pole down the block is a transformer designed to step down the voltage for household use. It has a ratio of turns N_1/N_2 of 100 to 1. A repairman climbs the pole. What voltage will he encounter on the input side of the transformer? As this question implies, safety precautions must be taken in the use of home generators and during power failures in general.

Problems

WebAssign The Problems from this chapter may be assigned online in WebAssign.

ThomsonNOW™ Sign in at **www.thomsonedu.com** and go to ThomsonNOW to assess your understanding of this chapter's topics with additional quizzing and conceptual questions.

1, 2, 3 denotes straightforward, intermediate, challenging; ☐ denotes full solution available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide;* ▲ denotes coached solution with hints available at **www.thomsonedu.com;** ▭ denotes developing symbolic reasoning; ● denotes asking for qualitative reasoning; 🖥 denotes computer useful in solving problem

Section 33.1 AC Sources

Section 33.2 Resistors in an AC Circuit

1. The rms output voltage of an AC source is 200 V and the operating frequency is 100 Hz. Write the equation giving the output voltage as a function of time.

2. (a) What is the resistance of a lightbulb that uses an average power of 75.0 W when connected to a 60.0-Hz power source having a maximum voltage of 170 V? (b) **What If?** What is the resistance of a 100-W lightbulb?

3. An AC power supply produces a maximum voltage ΔV_{max} = 100 V. This power supply is connected to a 24.0-Ω resistor, and the current and resistor voltage are measured with an ideal AC ammeter and voltmeter as shown in Figure P33.3. What does each meter read? An ideal ammeter has zero resistance and an ideal voltmeter has infinite resistance.

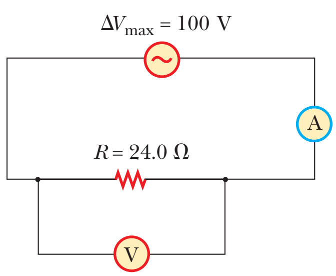


Figure P33.3

4. In the simple AC circuit shown in Active Figure 33.2, R = 70.0 Ω and $\Delta v = \Delta V_{max} \sin \omega t$. (a) If $\Delta v_R = 0.250\ \Delta V_{max}$ for the first time at t = 0.010 0 s, what is the angular frequency of the source? (b) What is the next value of t for which $\Delta v_R = 0.250\ \Delta V_{max}$?

5. The current in the circuit shown in Active Figure 33.2 equals 60.0% of the peak current at t = 7.00 ms. What is the lowest source frequency that gives this current?

6. An audio amplifier, represented by the AC source and resistor in Figure P33.6, delivers to the speaker alternating voltage at audio frequencies. If the source voltage has an amplitude of 15.0 V, R = 8.20 Ω, and the speaker is equivalent to a resistance of 10.4 Ω, what is the time-averaged power transferred to it?

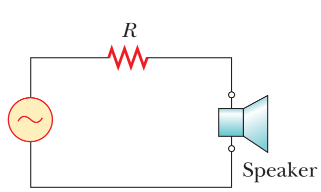


Figure P33.6

Section 33.3 Inductors in an AC Circuit

7. In a purely inductive AC circuit as shown in Active Figure 33.6, ΔV_{max} = 100 V. (a) The maximum current is 7.50 A at 50.0 Hz. Calculate the inductance L. (b) **What If?** At what angular frequency ω is the maximum current 2.50 A?

8. An inductor has a 54.0-Ω reactance at 60.0 Hz. What is the maximum current if this inductor is connected to a 50.0-Hz source that produces a 100-V rms voltage?

9. ▲ For the circuit shown in Active Figure 33.6, ΔV_{max} = 80.0 V, $\omega = 65.0\pi$ rad/s, and L = 70.0 mH. Calculate the current in the inductor at t = 15.5 ms.

10. A 20.0-mH inductor is connected to a standard electrical outlet (ΔV_{rms} = 120 V, f = 60.0 Hz). Determine the energy stored in the inductor at $t = \frac{1}{180}$ s, assuming this energy is zero at t = 0.

11. **Review problem.** Determine the maximum magnetic flux through an inductor connected to a standard electrical outlet (ΔV_{rms} = 120 V, f = 60.0 Hz).

Section 33.4 Capacitors in an AC Circuit

12. (a) For what frequencies does a 22.0-μF capacitor have a reactance below 175 Ω? (b) **What If?** What is the reactance of a 44.0-μF capacitor over this same frequency range?

13. What is the maximum current in a 2.20-μF capacitor when it is connected across (a) a North American electrical outlet having ΔV_{rms} = 120 V and f = 60.0 Hz, and (b) a European electrical outlet having ΔV_{rms} = 240 V and f = 50.0 Hz?

14. A capacitor C is connected to a power supply that operates at a frequency f and produces an rms voltage ΔV. What is the maximum charge that appears on either capacitor plate?

15. What maximum current is delivered by an AC source with ΔV_{max} = 48.0 V and f = 90.0 Hz when connected across a 3.70-μF capacitor?

16. A 1.00-mF capacitor is connected to a standard electrical outlet (ΔV_{rms} = 120 V, f = 60.0 Hz). Determine the current in the wires at $t = \frac{1}{180}$ s, assuming the energy stored in the capacitor is zero at t = 0.

Section 33.5 The *RLC* Series Circuit

17. An inductor (L = 400 mH), a capacitor (C = 4.43 μF), and a resistor (R = 500 Ω) are connected in series. A 50.0-Hz AC source produces a peak current of 250 mA in the circuit. (a) Calculate the required peak voltage ΔV_{max}. (b) Determine the phase angle by which the current leads or lags the applied voltage.

18. At what frequency does the inductive reactance of a 57.0-μH inductor equal the capacitive reactance of a 57.0-μF capacitor?

19. A series AC circuit contains the following components: a 150-Ω resistor, an inductor of 250 mH, a capacitor of 2.00 μF, and a source with $\Delta V_{max} = 210$ V operating at 50.0 Hz. Calculate the (a) inductive reactance, (b) capacitive reactance, (c) impedance, (d) maximum current, and (e) phase angle between current and source voltage.

20. A sinusoidal voltage $\Delta v(t) = (40.0\text{ V}) \sin(100t)$ is applied to a series *RLC* circuit with $L = 160$ mH, $C = 99.0\ \mu$F, and $R = 68.0\ \Omega$. (a) What is the impedance of the circuit? (b) What is the maximum current? (c) Determine the numerical values for I_{max}, ω, and ϕ in the equation $i(t) = I_{max} \sin(\omega t - \phi)$.

21. ▲ An *RLC* circuit consists of a 150-Ω resistor, a 21.0-μF capacitor, and a 460-mH inductor connected in series with a 120-V, 60.0-Hz power supply. (a) What is the phase angle between the current and the applied voltage? (b) Which reaches its maximum earlier, the current or the voltage?

22. Four circuit elements—a capacitor, an inductor, a resistor, and an AC source—are connected together in various ways. First the capacitor is connected to the source, and the rms current is found to be 25.1 mA. The capacitor is disconnected and discharged, and then it is connected in series with the resistor and the source, making the rms current 15.7 mA. The circuit is disconnected and the capacitor discharged. The capacitor is then connected in series with the inductor and the source, making the rms current 68.2 mA. After the circuit is disconnected and the capacitor discharged, all four circuit elements are connected together in a series loop. What is the rms current in the circuit?

23. A person is working near the secondary of a transformer as shown in Figure P33.23. The primary voltage is 120 V at 60.0 Hz. The capacitance C_s, which is the stray capacitance between the hand and the secondary winding, is 20.0 pF. Assuming the person has a body resistance to ground of $R_b = 50.0$ kΩ, determine the rms voltage across the body. *Suggestion:* Model the secondary of the transformer as an AC source.

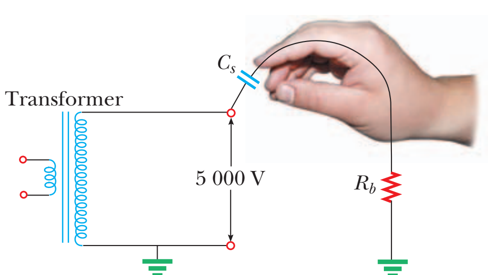


Figure P33.23

24. An AC source with $\Delta V_{max} = 150$ V and $f = 50.0$ Hz is connected between points *a* and *d* in Figure P33.24. Calculate the maximum voltages between (a) points *a* and *b*, (b) points *b* and *c*, (c) points *c* and *d*, and (d) points *b* and *d*.

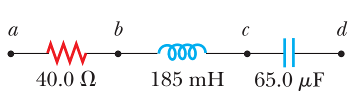


Figure P33.24 Problems 24 and 64.

25. Draw to scale a phasor diagram and determine Z, X_L, X_C, and ϕ for an AC series circuit for which $R = 300\ \Omega$, $C = 11.0\ \mu$F, $L = 0.200$ H, and $f = (500/\pi)$ Hz.

26. ● In an *RLC* series circuit that includes a source of alternating current operating at fixed frequency and voltage, the resistance *R* is equal to the inductive reactance. If the plate separation of the parallel-plate capacitor is reduced to one-half its original value, the current in the circuit doubles. Find the initial capacitive reactance in terms of *R*. Explain each step in your solution.

Section 33.6 Power in an AC Circuit

27. ▲ An AC voltage of the form $\Delta v = (100\text{ V}) \sin(1\,000t)$ is applied to a series *RLC* circuit. Assume the resistance is 400 Ω, the capacitance is 5.00 μF, and the inductance is 0.500 H. Find the average power delivered to the circuit.

28. A series *RLC* circuit has a resistance of 45.0 Ω and an impedance of 75.0 Ω. What average power is delivered to this circuit when $\Delta V_{rms} = 210$ V?

29. In a certain series *RLC* circuit, $I_{rms} = 9.00$ A, $\Delta V_{rms} = 180$ V, and the current leads the voltage by 37.0°. (a) What is the total resistance of the circuit? (b) Calculate the reactance of the circuit $(X_L - X_C)$.

30. Suppose you manage a factory that uses many electric motors. The motors create a large inductive load to the electric power line as well as a resistive load. The electric company builds an extra-heavy distribution line to supply you with a component of current that is 90° out of phase with the voltage as well as with current in phase with the voltage. The electric company charges you an extra fee for "reactive volt-amps" in addition to the amount you pay for the energy you use. You can avoid the extra fee by installing a capacitor between the power line and your factory. The following problem models this solution.

In an *RL* circuit, a 120-V (rms), 60.0-Hz source is in series with a 25.0-mH inductor and a 20.0-Ω resistor. What are (a) the rms current and (b) the power factor? (c) What capacitor must be added in series to make the power factor 1? (d) To what value can the supply voltage be reduced if the power supplied is to be the same as before the capacitor was installed?

31. Energy is to be transmitted at the rate of 20.0 kW with only 1.00% loss over a distance of 18.0 km at potential difference ΔV. (a) What is the diameter required for each of the two copper wires in the transmission line? Assume the current density is uniform in the conductors. (b) State how the diameter depends on ΔV. (c) Evaluate the diameter for $\Delta V = 1\,500$ V. (d) If you choose to make the diameter 3.00 mm, what potential difference is required?

32. ● A series circuit consists of an AC generator with an rms voltage of 120 V at a frequency of 60.0 Hz and a magnetic buzzer with a resistance of 100 Ω and an inductance of 100 mH. (a) Find the circuit's power factor. (b) Suppose a higher power factor is desired. Can a power factor of 1.00 be achieved by changing the inductance or any other circuit parameters? (c) Show that a power factor of 1.00 can be attained by inserting a capacitor into the original circuit, and find the value of its capacitance.

33. A diode is a device that allows current to be carried in only one direction (the direction indicated by the arrowhead in its circuit symbol). Find in terms of ΔV and *R* the average power delivered to the diode circuit of Figure P33.33.

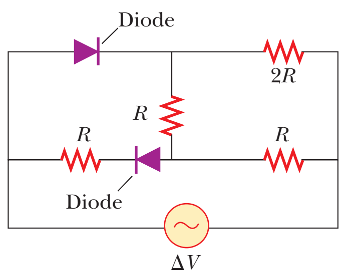


Figure P33.33

Section 33.7 Resonance in a Series *RLC* Circuit

34. A radar transmitter contains an *LC* circuit oscillating at 1.00×10^{10} Hz. (a) What capacitance resonates with a one-turn loop having an inductance of 400 pH at this frequency? (b) The capacitor has square, parallel plates separated by 1.00 mm of air. What should the edge length of the plates be? (c) What is the common reactance of the loop and capacitor at resonance?

35. An *RLC* circuit is used in a radio to tune into an FM station broadcasting at 99.7 MHz. The resistance in the circuit is 12.0 Ω, and the inductance is 1.40 μH. What capacitance should be used?

36. A series *RLC* circuit has components with the following values: $L = 20.0$ mH, $C = 100$ nF, $R = 20.0\ \Omega$, and $\Delta V_{max} = 100$ V, with $\Delta v = \Delta V_{max} \sin \omega t$. Find (a) the resonant frequency, (b) the amplitude of the current at the resonant frequency, (c) the Q of the circuit, and (d) the amplitude of the voltage across the inductor at resonance.

37. A 10.0-Ω resistor, 10.0-mH inductor, and 100-μF capacitor are connected in series to a 50.0-V (rms) source having variable frequency. Find the energy delivered to the circuit during one period if the operating frequency is twice the resonance frequency.

38. A resistor *R*, inductor *L*, and capacitor *C* are connected in series to an AC source of rms voltage ΔV and variable frequency. Find the energy delivered to the circuit during one period if the operating frequency is twice the resonance frequency.

39. Compute the quality factor for the circuits described in Problems 20 and 21. Which circuit has the sharper resonance?

Section 33.8 The Transformer and Power Transmission

40. A step-down transformer is used for recharging the batteries of portable devices such as tape players. The ratio of turns inside the transformer is 13:1, and the transformer is used with 120-V (rms) household service. If a particular ideal transformer draws 0.350 A from the house outlet, what are (a) the voltage and (b) the current supplied to a tape player from the transformer? (c) How much power is delivered?

41. A transformer has $N_1 = 350$ turns and $N_2 = 2\,000$ turns. If the input voltage is $\Delta v(t) = (170\text{ V}) \cos \omega t$, what rms voltage is developed across the secondary coil?

42. A step-up transformer is designed to have an output voltage of 2 200 V (rms) when the primary is connected across a 110-V (rms) source. (a) If the primary winding has 80 turns, how many turns are required on the secondary? (b) If a load resistor across the secondary draws a current of 1.50 A, what is the current in the primary, assuming ideal conditions? (c) **What If?** If the transformer actually has an efficiency of 95.0%, what is the current in the primary when the secondary current is 1.20 A?

43. ● A transmission line that has a resistance per unit length of $4.50 \times 10^{-4}\ \Omega/\text{m}$ is to be used to transmit 5.00 MW across 400 miles (6.44×10^5 m). The output voltage of the generator is 4.50 kV. (a) What is the line loss if a transformer is used to step up the voltage to 500 kV? (b) What fraction of the input power is lost to the line under these circumstances? (c) **What If?** What difficulties would be encountered in attempting to transmit the 5.00 MW at the generator voltage of 4.50 kV?

Section 33.9 Rectifiers and Filters

44. One particular plug-in power supply for a radio looks similar to the one shown in Figure 33.20 and is marked with the following information: Input 120 V AC 8 W Output 9 V DC 300 mA. Assume these values are accurate to two digits. (a) Find the energy efficiency of the device when the radio is operating. (b) At what rate is energy wasted in the device when the radio is operating? (c) Suppose the input power to the transformer is 8.0 W when the radio is switched off and energy costs \$0.135/kWh from the electric company. Find the cost of having six such transformers around the house, each plugged in for 31 days.

45. Consider the filter circuit shown in Active Figure 33.22a. (a) Show that the ratio of the output voltage to the input voltage is

$$\frac{\Delta v_{out}}{\Delta v_{in}} = \frac{R}{\sqrt{R^2 + \left(\dfrac{1}{\omega C}\right)^2}}$$

(b) What value does this ratio approach as the frequency decreases toward zero? What value does this ratio approach as the frequency increases without limit? (c) At what frequency is the ratio equal to one-half?

46. Consider the filter circuit shown in Active Figure 33.23a. (a) Show that the ratio of the output voltage to the input voltage is

$$\frac{\Delta v_{out}}{\Delta v_{in}} = \frac{1/\omega C}{\sqrt{R^2 + \left(\dfrac{1}{\omega C}\right)^2}}$$

(b) What value does this ratio approach as the frequency decreases toward zero? What value does this ratio approach as the frequency increases without limit? (c) At what frequency is the ratio equal to one-half?

47. ▲ The *RC* high-pass filter shown in Active Figure 33.22a has a resistance $R = 0.500\ \Omega$. (a) What capacitance gives an output signal that has one-half the amplitude of a 300-Hz input signal? (b) What is the ratio $(\Delta v_{out}/\Delta v_{in})$ for a 600-Hz signal? You may use the result of Problem 45.

48. The *RC* low-pass filter shown in Active Figure 33.23a has a resistance $R = 90.0\ \Omega$ and a capacitance $C = 8.00$ nF. Calculate the ratio $(\Delta v_{out}/\Delta v_{in})$ for an input frequency of (a) 600 Hz and (b) 600 kHz. You may use the result of Problem 46.

49. The resistor in Figure P33.49 represents the midrange speaker in a three-speaker system. Assume its resistance to be constant at 8.00 Ω. The source represents an audio amplifier producing signals of uniform amplitude $\Delta V_{max} = 10.0$ V at all audio frequencies. The inductor and capacitor are to function as a band-pass filter with $\Delta v_{out}/\Delta v_{in} = \frac{1}{2}$ at 200 Hz and at 4 000 Hz. (a) Determine the required values of L and C. (b) Find the maximum value of the ratio $\Delta v_{out}/\Delta v_{in}$. (c) Find the frequency f_0 at which the ratio has its maximum value. (d) Find the phase shift between Δv_{in} and Δv_{out} at 200 Hz, at f_0, and at 4 000 Hz. (e) Find the average power transferred to the speaker at 200 Hz, at f_0, and at 4 000 Hz. (f) Treating the filter as a resonant circuit, find its quality factor.

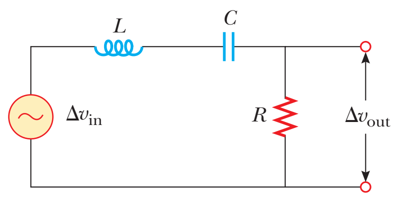


Figure P33.49

Additional Problems

50. Show that the rms value for the sawtooth voltage shown in Figure P33.50 is $\Delta V_{max}/\sqrt{3}$.

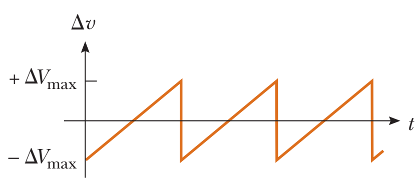


Figure P33.50

51. ● A 400-Ω resistor, an inductor, and a capacitor are in series with a generator. The reactance of the inductor is 700 Ω, and the circuit impedance is 760 Ω. (a) Explain what you can and cannot determine about the reactance of the capacitor. (b) If you find that the source power decreases as you raise the frequency, what do you know about the capacitive reactance in the original circuit? (c) Repeat part (a) assuming the resistance is 200 Ω instead of 400 Ω.

52. ● A capacitor, a coil, and two resistors of equal resistance are arranged in an AC circuit as shown in Figure P33.52. An AC generator provides an emf of 20.0 V (rms) at a frequency of 60.0 Hz. When the double-throw switch S is open as shown in the figure, the rms current is 183 mA. When the switch is closed in position 1, the rms current is 298 mA. When the switch is closed in position 2, the rms current is 137 mA. Determine the values of R, C and L. Is more than one set of values possible? Explain.

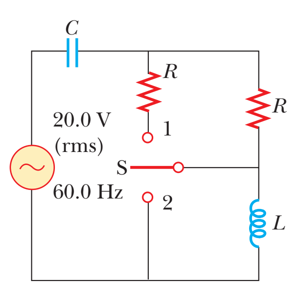


Figure P33.52

53. ▲ A series RLC circuit consists of an 8.00-Ω resistor, a 5.00-μF capacitor, and a 50.0-mH inductor. A variable frequency source applies an emf of 400 V (rms) across the combination. Determine the power delivered to the circuit when the frequency is equal to one-half the resonance frequency.

54. ● A series RLC circuit has resonance angular frequency 2 000 rad/s. When it is operating at some certain frequency, $X_L = 12.0$ Ω and $X_C = 8.00$ Ω. (a) Is this certain frequency higher than, lower than, or the same as the resonance frequency? Explain how you can tell. (b) Explain whether it is possible to determine the values of both L and C. (c) If it is possible, find L and C. If this determination is not possible, give a compact expression for the condition that L and C must satisfy.

55. ● **Review problem.** One insulated conductor from a household extension cord has a mass per length of 19.0 g/m. A section of this conductor is held under tension between two clamps. A subsection is located in a magnetic field of magnitude 15.3 mT directed perpendicular to the length of the cord. When the cord carries an AC current of 9.00 A at a frequency of 60.0 Hz, it vibrates in resonance in its simplest standing-wave vibration state. Determine the relationship that must be satisfied between the separation d of the clamps and the tension T in the cord. Determine one possible combination of values for these variables.

56. Sketch a graph of the phase angle for an RLC series circuit as a function of angular frequency from zero to a frequency much higher than the resonance frequency. Identify the value of ϕ at the resonance angular frequency ω_0. Prove that the slope of the graph of ϕ versus ω at the resonance point is $2Q/\omega_0$.

57. In Figure P33.57, find the rms current delivered by the 45.0-V (rms) power supply when (a) the frequency is very large and (b) the frequency is very small.

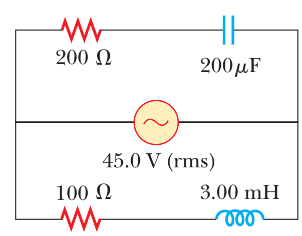


Figure P33.57

58. In the circuit shown in Figure P33.58 (page 950), assume all parameters except C are given. (a) Find the current as a function of time. (b) Find the power delivered to the circuit. (c) Find the current as a function of time after *only* switch 1 is opened. (d) After switch 2 is *also* opened, the current and voltage are in phase. Find the capacitance C. (e) Find the impedance of the circuit when both switches are open. (f) Find the maximum energy stored in the capacitor during oscillations. (g) Find the maximum energy stored in the inductor during oscillations.

(h) Now the frequency of the voltage source is doubled. Find the phase difference between the current and the voltage. (i) Find the frequency that makes the inductive reactance one-half the capacitive reactance.

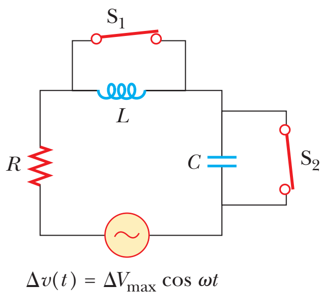


Figure P33.58

59. An 80.0-Ω resistor and a 200-mH inductor are connected in *parallel* across a 100-V (rms), 60.0-Hz source. (a) What is the rms current in the resistor? (b) By what angle does the total current lead or lag behind the voltage?

60. Make an order-of-magnitude estimate of the electric current that the electric company delivers to a town (Fig. P33.60) from a remote generating station. State the data you measure or estimate. If you wish, you may consider a suburban residential community of 20 000 people.

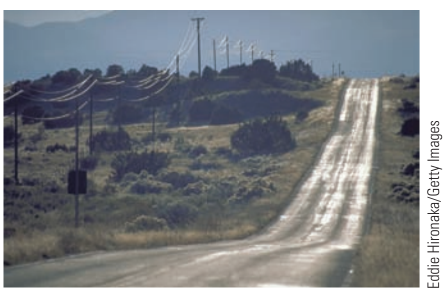


Figure P33.60

61. Consider a series *RLC* circuit having the following circuit parameters: $R = 200\ \Omega$, $L = 663$ mH, and $C = 26.5\ \mu$F. The applied voltage has an amplitude of 50.0 V and a frequency of 60.0 Hz. Find the following amplitudes. (a) the current I_{max} and its phase relative to the applied voltage Δv (b) the maximum voltage ΔV_R across the resistor and its phase relative to the current (c) the maximum voltage ΔV_C across the capacitor and its phase relative to the current (d) the maximum voltage ΔV_L across the inductor and its phase relative to the current

62. A voltage $\Delta v = (100\text{ V}) \sin \omega t$ is applied across a series combination of a 2.00-H inductor, a 10.0-μF capacitor, and a 10.0-Ω resistor. (a) Determine the angular frequency ω_0 at which the power delivered to the resistor is a maximum. (b) Calculate the power delivered at that frequency. (c) Determine the two angular frequencies ω_1 and ω_2 at which the power is one-half the maximum value. *Note:* The Q of the circuit is $\omega_0/(\omega_2 - \omega_1)$.

63. *Impedance matching.* Example 28.2 showed that maximum power is transferred when the internal resistance of a DC source is equal to the resistance of the load. A transformer may be used to provide maximum power transfer between two AC circuits that have different impedances Z_1 and Z_2. (a) Show that the ratio of turns N_1/N_2 needed to meet this condition is

$$\frac{N_1}{N_2} = \sqrt{\frac{Z_1}{Z_2}}$$

(b) Suppose you want to use a transformer as an impedance-matching device between an audio amplifier that has an output impedance of 8.00 kΩ and a speaker that has an input impedance of 8.00 Ω. What should your N_1/N_2 ratio be?

64. ● A power supply with $\Delta V_{rms} = 120$ V is connected between points *a* and *d* in Figure P33.24. At what frequency will it deliver a power of 250 W? Explain your answer.

65. Figure P33.65a shows a parallel *RLC* circuit, and the corresponding phasor diagram is given in Figure P33.65b. The instantaneous voltages (and rms voltages) across each of the three circuit elements are the same, and each is in phase with the current in the resistor. The currents in C and L lead or lag the current in the resistor as shown in Figure P33.65b. (a) Show that the rms current delivered by the source is

$$I_{rms} = \Delta V_{rms}\left[\frac{1}{R^2} + \left(\omega C - \frac{1}{\omega L}\right)^2\right]^{1/2}$$

(b) Show that the phase angle ϕ between ΔV_{rms} and I_{rms} is given by

$$\tan \phi = R\left(\frac{1}{X_C} - \frac{1}{X_L}\right)$$

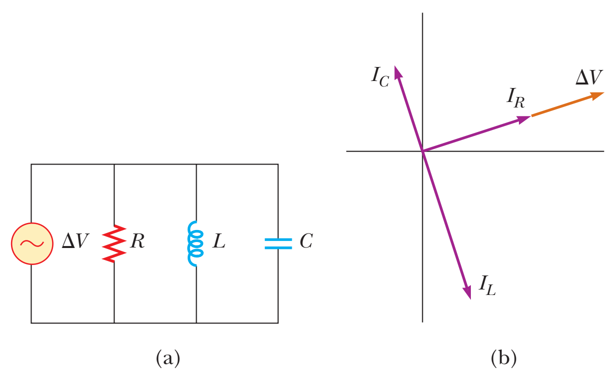


Figure P33.65

66. A certain electric circuit is described by the equations

$$\frac{200\text{ V}}{4.00\text{ A}} = \sqrt{(35.0\ \Omega)^2 + \left[\omega(205\text{ mH}) - \frac{1}{\omega C}\right]^2}$$

$$\omega = 2\pi\ (100\text{ Hz})$$

State a problem for which these equations would appear in the solution, giving the data and identifying the unknown. Evaluate the unknown quantity.

67. A series *RLC* circuit is operating at 2 000 Hz. At this frequency, $X_L = X_C = 1\,884\ \Omega$. The resistance of the circuit is 40.0 Ω. (a) Prepare a table showing the values of X_L, X_C, and Z for $f = 300$, 600, 800, 1 000, 1 500, 2 000, 3 000, 4 000, 6 000, and 10 000 Hz. (b) Plot on the same set of axes X_L, X_C, and Z as a function of ln f.

68. A series RLC circuit with $R = 1.00\ \Omega$, $L = 1.00$ mH, and $C = 1.00$ nF is connected to an AC source delivering 1.00 V (rms). Make a precise graph of the power delivered to the circuit as a function of the frequency and verify that the full width of the resonance peak at half-maximum is $R/2\pi L$.

69. Marie Cornu, a physicist at the Polytechnic Institute in Paris, invented phasors in about 1880. This problem helps you see their general utility in representing oscillations. Two mechanical vibrations are represented by the expressions

$$y_1 = (12.0 \text{ cm}) \sin (4.5t)$$

and

$$y_2 = (12.0 \text{ cm}) \sin (4.5t + 70°)$$

Find the amplitude and phase constant of the sum of these functions (a) by using a trigonometric identity (as from Appendix B) and (b) by representing the oscillations as phasors. State the result of comparing the answers to (a) and (b). (c) Phasors make it equally easy to add traveling waves. Find the amplitude and phase constant of the sum of the three waves represented by

$$y_1 = (12.0 \text{ cm}) \sin (15x - 4.5t + 70°)$$
$$y_2 = (15.5 \text{ cm}) \sin (15x - 4.5t - 80°)$$
$$y_3 = (17.0 \text{ cm}) \sin (15x - 4.5t + 160°)$$

Answers to Quick Quizzes

33.1 **(i),** (c). The phasor in (c) has the largest projection onto the vertical axis. **(ii),** (b). The phasor in (b) has the smallest-magnitude projection onto the vertical axis.

33.2 (b). For low frequencies, the reactance of the inductor is small, so the current is large. Most of the voltage from the source is across the lightbulb, so the power delivered to it is large.

33.3 (a). For high frequencies, the reactance of the capacitor is small, so the current is large. Most of the voltage from the source is across the lightbulb, so the power delivered to it is large.

33.4 (b). For low frequencies, the reactance of the capacitor is large, so very little current exists in the capacitor branch. The reactance of the inductor is small, so current exists in the inductor branch and the lightbulb glows. As the frequency increases, the inductive reactance increases and the capacitive reactance decreases. At high frequencies, more current exists in the capacitor branch than the inductor branch and the lightbulb glows more dimly.

33.5 (a) $X_L < X_C$ (b) $X_L = X_C$ (c) $X_L > X_C$

33.6 (c). The cosine of $-\phi$ is the same as that of $+\phi$, so the $\cos \phi$ factor in Equation 33.31 is the same for both frequencies. The factor ΔV_{rms} is the same because the source voltage is fixed. According to Equation 33.27, changing $+\phi$ to $-\phi$ simply interchanges the values of X_L and X_C. Equation 33.25 tells us that such an interchange does not affect the impedance, so the current I_{rms} in Equation 33.31 is the same for both frequencies.

33.7 (c). At resonance, $X_L = X_C$. According to Equation 33.25, that gives us $Z = R$.

Electromagnetic waves cover a broad spectrum of wavelengths, with waves in various wavelength ranges having distinct properties. These images of the Crab Nebula show different structure for observations made with waves of various wavelengths. The images (clockwise starting from upper left) were taken with x-rays, visible light, radio waves, and infrared waves. (upper left, NASA/CXC/SAO; upper right, Palomar Observatory; lower right, VLA/NRAO; lower left, WM Keck Observatory)

34 Electromagnetic Waves

The waves described in Chapters 16, 17, and 18 are mechanical waves. By definition, the propagation of mechanical disturbances—such as sound waves, water waves, and waves on a string—requires the presence of a medium. This chapter is concerned with the properties of electromagnetic waves, which (unlike mechanical waves) can propagate through empty space.

We begin by considering Maxwell's contributions in modifying Ampère's law, which we studied in Chapter 30. We then discuss Maxwell's equations, which form the theoretical basis of all electromagnetic phenomena. These equations predict the existence of electromagnetic waves that propagate through space at the speed of light c. Heinrich Hertz confirmed Maxwell's prediction when he generated and detected electromagnetic waves in 1887. That discovery has led to many practical communication systems, including radio, television, radar, and optoelectronics.

Next, we learn how electromagnetic waves are generated by oscillating electric charges. The waves radiated from the oscillating charges can be detected at great distances. Furthermore, because electromagnetic waves carry energy and momentum, they can exert pressure on a surface. The chapter concludes with a look at many frequencies covered by electromagnetic waves.

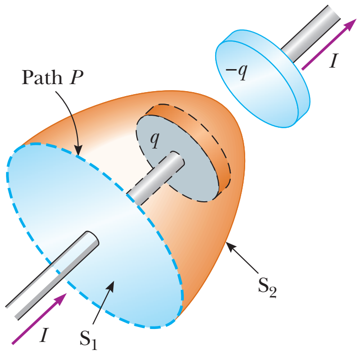
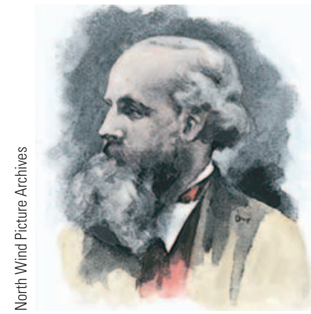


Figure 34.1 Two surfaces S_1 and S_2 near the plate of a capacitor are bounded by the same path P. The conduction current in the wire passes only through S_1, which leads to a contradiction in Ampère's law that is resolved only if one postulates a displacement current through S_2.



JAMES CLERK MAXWELL
Scottish Theoretical Physicist (1831–1879)
Maxwell developed the electromagnetic theory of light and the kinetic theory of gases, and explained the nature of Saturn's rings and color vision. Maxwell's successful interpretation of the electromagnetic field resulted in the field equations that bear his name. Formidable mathematical ability combined with great insight enabled him to lead the way in the study of electromagnetism and kinetic theory. He died of cancer before he was 50.

34.1 Displacement Current and the General Form of Ampère's Law

In Chapter 30, we discussed using Ampère's law (Eq. 30.13) to analyze the magnetic fields created by currents:

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = \mu_0 I$$

In this equation, the line integral is over any closed path through which conduction current passes, where conduction current is defined by the expression $I = dq/dt$. (In this section, we use the term *conduction current* to refer to the current carried by charge carriers in the wire to distinguish it from a new type of current we shall introduce shortly.) We now show that **Ampère's law in this form is valid only if any electric fields present are constant in time.** James Clerk Maxwell recognized this limitation and modified Ampère's law to include time-varying electric fields.

Consider a capacitor being charged as illustrated in Figure 34.1. When a conduction current is present, the charge on the positive plate changes but *no conduction current exists in the gap between the plates*. Now consider the two surfaces S_1 and S_2 in Figure 34.1, bounded by the same path P. Ampère's law states that $\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ around this path must equal $\mu_0 I$, where I is the total current through *any* surface bounded by the path P.

When the path P is considered to be the boundary of S_1, $\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = \mu_0 I$ because the conduction current I passes through S_1. When the path is considered to be the boundary of S_2, however, $\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = 0$ because no conduction current passes through S_2. Therefore, we have a contradictory situation that arises from the discontinuity of the current! Maxwell solved this problem by postulating an additional term on the right side of Ampère's law, which includes a factor called the **displacement current** I_d defined as[1]

$$\boxed{I_d \equiv \epsilon_0 \frac{d\Phi_E}{dt}} \quad \textbf{(34.1)}$$

◄ Displacement current

where ϵ_0 is the permittivity of free space (see Section 23.3) and $\Phi_E = \int \vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{A}}$ is the electric flux (see Eq. 24.3) through the surface bounded by the path of integration.

As the capacitor is being charged (or discharged), the changing electric field between the plates may be considered equivalent to a current that acts as a continuation of the conduction current in the wire. When the expression for the displacement current given by Equation 34.1 is added to the conduction current on the right side of Ampère's law, the difficulty represented in Figure 34.1 is resolved. No matter which surface bounded by the path P is chosen, either a conduction

[1] *Displacement* in this context does not have the meaning it does in Chapter 2. Despite the inaccurate implications, the word is historically entrenched in the language of physics, so we continue to use it.

current or a displacement current passes through it. With this new term I_d, we can express the general form of Ampère's law (sometimes called the **Ampère–Maxwell law**) as

Ampère–Maxwell law ▶

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = \mu_0(I + I_d) = \mu_0 I + \mu_0 \epsilon_0 \frac{d\Phi_E}{dt} \tag{34.2}$$

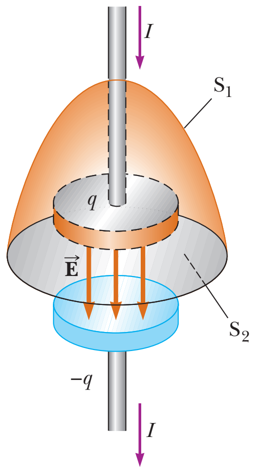


Figure 34.2 Because it exists only in the wires attached to the capacitor plates, the conduction current $I = dq/dt$ passes through S_1 but not through S_2. Only the displacement current $I_d = \epsilon_0 d\Phi_E/dt$ passes through S_2. The two currents must be equal for continuity.

We can understand the meaning of this expression by referring to Figure 34.2. The electric flux through surface S_2 is $\Phi_E = \int \vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{A}} = EA$, where A is the area of the capacitor plates and E is the magnitude of the uniform electric field between the plates. If q is the charge on the plates at any instant, then $E = q/(\epsilon_0 A)$ (see Section 26.2). Therefore, the electric flux through S_2 is

$$\Phi_E = EA = \frac{q}{\epsilon_0}$$

Hence, the displacement current through S_2 is

$$I_d = \epsilon_0 \frac{d\Phi_E}{dt} = \frac{dq}{dt} \tag{34.3}$$

That is, the displacement current I_d through S_2 is precisely equal to the conduction current I through S_1!

By considering surface S_2, we can identify the displacement current as the source of the magnetic field on the surface boundary. The displacement current has its physical origin in the time-varying electric field. The central point of this formalism is that **magnetic fields are produced both by conduction currents and by time-varying electric fields.** This result was a remarkable example of theoretical work by Maxwell, and it contributed to major advances in the understanding of electromagnetism.

Quick Quiz 34.1 In an RC circuit, the capacitor begins to discharge. **(i)** During the discharge in the region of space between the plates of the capacitor, is there (a) conduction current but no displacement current, (b) displacement current but no conduction current, (c) both conduction and displacement current, or (d) no current of any type? **(ii)** In the same region of space, is there (a) an electric field but no magnetic field, (b) a magnetic field but no electric field, (c) both electric and magnetic fields, or (d) no fields of any type?

EXAMPLE 34.1 Displacement Current in a Capacitor

A sinusoidally varying voltage is applied across an 8.00-μF capacitor. The frequency of the applied voltage is 3.00 kHz, and the voltage amplitude is 30.0 V. Find the displacement current in the capacitor.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Active Figure 33.9 represents the circuit diagram for this situation. Figure 34.2 shows a close-up of the capacitor and the electric field between the plates.

Categorize We evaluate results using equations discussed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Evaluate the angular frequency of the source from Equation 15.12:

$$\omega = 2\pi f = 2\pi(3.00 \times 10^3 \text{ Hz}) = 1.88 \times 10^4 \text{ s}^{-1}$$

Use Equation 33.20 to express the voltage across the capacitor as a function of time:

$$\Delta v_C = \Delta V_{\max} \sin \omega t = (30.0 \text{ V}) \sin (1.88 \times 10^4\, t)$$

Use Equation 34.3 to find the displacement current as a function of time. Note that the charge on the capacitor is $q = C\,\Delta v_C$:

$$I_d = \frac{dq}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}(C\,\Delta v_C) = C\frac{d}{dt}(\Delta v_C)$$

$$= (8.00 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{F})\frac{d}{dt}[(30.0\ \text{V})\sin(1.88 \times 10^4\,t)]$$

$$= \boxed{(4.52\ \text{A})\cos(1.88 \times 10^4\,t)}$$

34.2 Maxwell's Equations and Hertz's Discoveries

We now present four equations that are regarded as the basis of all electrical and magnetic phenomena. These equations, developed by Maxwell, are as fundamental to electromagnetic phenomena as Newton's laws are to mechanical phenomena. In fact, the theory that Maxwell developed was more far-reaching than even he imagined because it turned out to be in agreement with the special theory of relativity, as Einstein showed in 1905.

Maxwell's equations represent the laws of electricity and magnetism that we have already discussed, but they have additional important consequences. For simplicity, we present **Maxwell's equations** as applied to free space, that is, in the absence of any dielectric or magnetic material. The four equations are

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{A}} = \frac{q}{\epsilon_0} \tag{34.4}$$

◀ Gauss's law

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{A}} = 0 \tag{34.5}$$

◀ Gauss's law in magnetism

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} \tag{34.6}$$

◀ Faraday's law

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = \mu_0 I + \epsilon_0\mu_0\frac{d\Phi_E}{dt} \tag{34.7}$$

◀ Ampère–Maxwell law

Equation 34.4 is Gauss's law: **the total electric flux through any closed surface equals the net charge inside that surface divided by ϵ_0.** This law relates an electric field to the charge distribution that creates it.

Equation 34.5 is Gauss's law in magnetism, and it states that **the net magnetic flux through a closed surface is zero.** That is, the number of magnetic field lines that enter a closed volume must equal the number that leave that volume, which implies that magnetic field lines cannot begin or end at any point. If they did, it would mean that isolated magnetic monopoles existed at those points. That isolated magnetic monopoles have not been observed in nature can be taken as a confirmation of Equation 34.5.

Equation 34.6 is Faraday's law of induction, which describes the creation of an electric field by a changing magnetic flux. This law states that **the emf, which is the line integral of the electric field around any closed path, equals the rate of change of magnetic flux through any surface bounded by that path.** One consequence of Faraday's law is the current induced in a conducting loop placed in a time-varying magnetic field.

Equation 34.7 is the Ampère–Maxwell law, and it describes the creation of a magnetic field by a changing electric field and by electric current: **the line integral of the magnetic field around any closed path is the sum of μ_0 times the net current through that path and $\epsilon_0\mu_0$ times the rate of change of electric flux through any surface bounded by that path.**

Once the electric and magnetic fields are known at some point in space, the force acting on a particle of charge q can be calculated from the expression

Lorentz force law ▶

$$\vec{\mathbf{F}} = q\vec{\mathbf{E}} + q\vec{\mathbf{v}} \times \vec{\mathbf{B}} \tag{34.8}$$

This relationship is called the **Lorentz force law.** (We saw this relationship earlier as Eq. 29.6.) Maxwell's equations, together with this force law, completely describe all classical electromagnetic interactions in a vacuum.

Notice the symmetry of Maxwell's equations. Equations 34.4 and 34.5 are symmetric, apart from the absence of the term for magnetic monopoles in Equation 34.5. Furthermore, Equations 34.6 and 34.7 are symmetric in that the line integrals of $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ and $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ around a closed path are related to the rate of change of magnetic flux and electric flux, respectively. Maxwell's equations are of fundamental importance not only to electromagnetism, but to all science. Hertz once wrote, "One cannot escape the feeling that these mathematical formulas have an independent existence and an intelligence of their own, that they are wiser than we are, wiser even than their discoverers, that we get more out of them than we put into them."

In the next section, we show that Equations 34.6 and 34.7 can be combined to obtain a wave equation for both the electric field and the magnetic field. In empty space, where $q = 0$ and $I = 0$, the solution to these two equations shows that the speed at which electromagnetic waves travel equals the measured speed of light. This result led Maxwell to predict that light waves are a form of electromagnetic radiation.

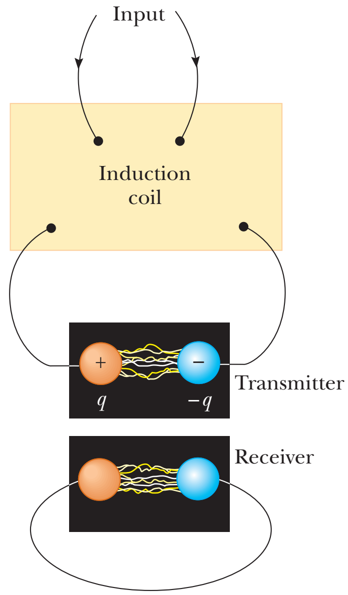


Figure 34.3 Schematic diagram of Hertz's apparatus for generating and detecting electromagnetic waves. The transmitter consists of two spherical electrodes connected to an induction coil, which provides short voltage surges to the spheres, setting up oscillations in the discharge between the electrodes. The receiver is a nearby loop of wire containing a second spark gap.

Hertz performed experiments that verified Maxwell's prediction. The experimental apparatus Hertz used to generate and detect electromagnetic waves is shown schematically in Figure 34.3. An induction coil is connected to a transmitter made up of two spherical electrodes separated by a narrow gap. The coil provides short voltage surges to the electrodes, making one positive and the other negative. A spark is generated between the spheres when the electric field near either electrode surpasses the dielectric strength for air (3×10^6 V/m; see Table 26.1). Free electrons in a strong electric field are accelerated and gain enough energy to ionize any molecules they strike. This ionization provides more electrons, which can accelerate and cause further ionizations. As the air in the gap is ionized, it becomes a much better conductor and the discharge between the electrodes exhibits an oscillatory behavior at a very high frequency. From an electric-circuit viewpoint, this experimental apparatus is equivalent to an LC circuit in which the inductance is that of the coil and the capacitance is due to the spherical electrodes.

Hulton-Deutsch Collection/CORBIS

HEINRICH RUDOLF HERTZ
German Physicist (1857–1894)
Hertz made his most important discovery of electromagnetic waves in 1887. After finding that the speed of an electromagnetic wave was the same as that of light, Hertz showed that electromagnetic waves, like light waves, could be reflected, refracted, and diffracted. Hertz died of blood poisoning at the age of 36. During his short life, he made many contributions to science. The hertz, equal to one complete vibration or cycle per second, is named after him.

Because L and C are small in Hertz's apparatus, the frequency of oscillation is high, on the order of 100 MHz. (Recall from Eq. 32.22 that $\omega = 1/\sqrt{LC}$ for an LC circuit.) Electromagnetic waves are radiated at this frequency as a result of the oscillation (and hence acceleration) of free charges in the transmitter circuit. Hertz was able to detect these waves using a single loop of wire with its own spark gap (the receiver). Such a receiver loop, placed several meters from the transmitter, has its own effective inductance, capacitance, and natural frequency of oscillation. In Hertz's experiment, sparks were induced across the gap of the receiving electrodes when the receiver's frequency was adjusted to match that of the transmitter. In this way, Hertz demonstrated that the oscillating current induced in the receiver was produced by electromagnetic waves radiated by the transmitter. His experiment is analogous to the mechanical phenomenon in which a tuning fork responds to acoustic vibrations from an identical tuning fork that is oscillating.

In addition, Hertz showed in a series of experiments that the radiation generated by his spark-gap device exhibited the wave properties of interference, diffraction, reflection, refraction, and polarization, which are all properties exhibited by light as we shall see in Part 5. Therefore, it became evident that the radiofrequency waves Hertz was generating had properties similar to those of light waves and that they differed only in frequency and wavelength. Perhaps his most convincing experiment was the measurement of the speed of this radiation. Waves of known frequency were reflected from a metal sheet and created a standing-wave interference pattern whose nodal points could be detected. The measured distance between the nodal points enabled determination of the wavelength λ. Using the relationship $v = \lambda f$ (Eq. 16.12), Hertz found that v was close to 3×10^8 m/s, the known speed c of visible light.

34.3 Plane Electromagnetic Waves

The properties of electromagnetic waves can be deduced from Maxwell's equations. One approach to deriving these properties is to solve the second-order differential equation obtained from Maxwell's third and fourth equations. A rigorous mathematical treatment of that sort is beyond the scope of this text. To circumvent this problem, let's assume the vectors for the electric field and magnetic field in an electromagnetic wave have a specific space–time behavior that is simple but consistent with Maxwell's equations.

To understand the prediction of electromagnetic waves more fully, let's focus our attention on an electromagnetic wave that travels in the x direction (the *direction of propagation*). For this wave, the electric field $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ is in the y direction and the magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ is in the z direction as shown in Active Figure 34.4a. Such waves, in which the electric and magnetic fields are restricted to being parallel to a pair of perpendicular axes, are said to be **linearly polarized waves.** Furthermore, let's assume the field magnitudes E and B depend on x and t only, not on the y or z coordinate. Active Figure 34.4b shows a sinusoidal electromagnetic wave, which we discuss below.

Let's also imagine that the source of the electromagnetic waves is such that a wave radiated from *any* position in the yz plane (not only from the origin as might be suggested by Active Fig. 34.4a) propagates in the x direction and all such waves are emitted in phase. If we define a **ray** as the line along which the wave travels, all rays for these waves are parallel. This entire collection of waves is often called a **plane wave.** A surface connecting points of equal phase on all waves is a geometric plane called a **wave front,** as introduced in Chapter 17. In comparison, a point source of radiation sends waves out radially in all directions. A surface connecting points of equal phase for this situation is a sphere, so this wave is called a **spherical wave.**

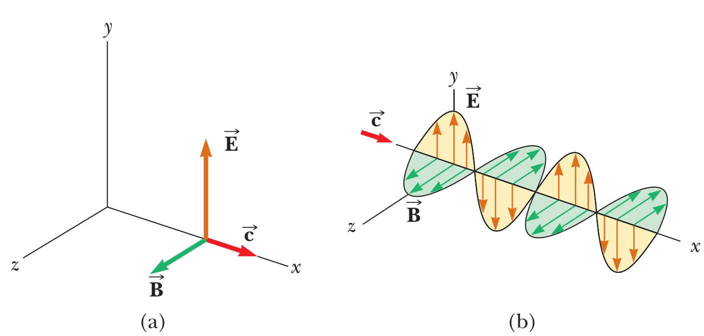
To generate the prediction of electromagnetic waves, we start with Faraday's law, Equation 34.6:

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt}$$

PITFALL PREVENTION 34.1

What Is "a" Wave?

What do we mean by a *single* wave? The word *wave* represents both the emission from a *single point* ("wave radiated from *any* position in the yz plane" in the text) and the collection of waves from *all points* on the source ("**plane wave**" in the text). You should be able to use this term in both ways and understand its meaning from the context.



ACTIVE FIGURE 34.4

(a) An electromagnetic wave traveling at velocity $\vec{\mathbf{c}}$ in the positive x direction. The wave is shown at an instant of time at which the electric field is along the y direction and has its maximum magnitude and the magnetic field is along the z direction, also with its maximum magnitude. These fields depend only on x and t. (b) Representation of a sinusoidal electromagnetic wave moving in the positive x direction with a speed c.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to observe the wave in (b) and the variation of the fields in time. In addition, you can take a "snapshot" of the wave at an instant of time and investigate the electric and magnetic field vectors at that instant.

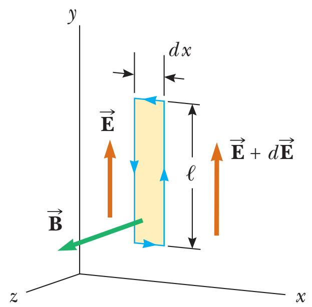


Figure 34.5 At an instant when a plane wave moving in the positive x direction passes through a rectangular path of width dx lying in the xy plane, the electric field in the y direction varies from $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ to $\vec{\mathbf{E}} + d\vec{\mathbf{E}}$. This spatial variation in $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ gives rise to a time-varying magnetic field along the z direction, according to Equation 34.11.

Let's again assume the electromagnetic wave is traveling in the x direction, with the electric field $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ in the positive y direction and the magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ in the positive z direction.

Consider a rectangle of width dx and height ℓ lying in the xy plane as shown in Figure 34.5. To apply Equation 34.6, let's first evaluate the line integral of $\vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ around this rectangle. The contributions from the top and bottom of the rectangle are zero because $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ is perpendicular to $d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ for these paths. We can express the electric field on the right side of the rectangle as

$$E(x + dx, t) \approx E(x, t) + \left.\frac{dE}{dx}\right|_{t\text{ constant}} dx = E(x, t) + \frac{\partial E}{\partial x}\, dx$$

where $E(x, t)$ is the field on the left side.[2] Therefore, the line integral over this rectangle is approximately

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = [E(x + dx, t)]\ell - [E(x, t)]\ell \approx \ell\left(\frac{\partial E}{\partial x}\right) dx \qquad \textbf{(34.9)}$$

Because the magnetic field is in the z direction, the magnetic flux through the rectangle of area $\ell\, dx$ is approximately $\Phi_B = B\ell\, dx$ (assuming dx is very small compared with the wavelength of the wave). Taking the time derivative of the magnetic flux gives

$$\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} = \ell\, dx \left.\frac{dB}{dt}\right|_{x\text{ constant}} = \ell\, dx \frac{\partial B}{\partial t} \qquad \textbf{(34.10)}$$

Substituting Equations 34.9 and 34.10 into Equation 34.6 gives

$$\ell\left(\frac{\partial E}{\partial x}\right) dx = -\ell\, dx \frac{\partial B}{\partial t}$$

$$\frac{\partial E}{\partial x} = -\frac{\partial B}{\partial t} \qquad \textbf{(34.11)}$$

In a similar manner, we can derive a second equation by starting with Maxwell's fourth equation in empty space (Eq. 34.7). In this case, the line integral of $\vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}}$ is evaluated around a rectangle lying in the xz plane and having width dx and length ℓ as in Figure 34.6. Noting that the magnitude of the magnetic field changes from $B(x, t)$ to $B(x + dx, t)$ over the width dx and that the direction for taking the line integral is as shown in Figure 34.6, the line integral over this rectangle is found to be approximately

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = [B(x, t)]\ell - [B(x + dx, t)]\ell \approx -\ell\left(\frac{\partial B}{\partial x}\right) dx \qquad \textbf{(34.12)}$$

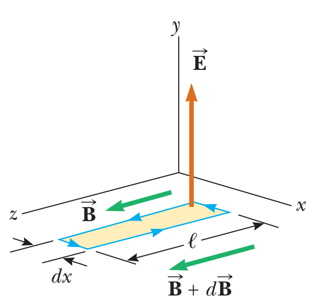


Figure 34.6 At an instant when a plane wave passes through a rectangular path of width dx lying in the xz plane, the magnetic field in the z direction varies from $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ to $\vec{\mathbf{B}} + d\vec{\mathbf{B}}$. This spatial variation in $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ gives rise to a time-varying electric field along the y direction, according to Equation 34.14.

The electric flux through the rectangle is $\Phi_E = E\ell\, dx$, which, when differentiated with respect to time, gives

$$\frac{\partial \Phi_E}{\partial t} = \ell\, dx \frac{\partial E}{\partial t} \qquad \textbf{(34.13)}$$

Substituting Equations 34.12 and 34.13 into Equation 34.7 gives

$$-\ell\left(\frac{\partial B}{\partial x}\right) dx = \mu_0\epsilon_0 \ell\, dx \left(\frac{\partial E}{\partial t}\right)$$

$$\frac{\partial B}{\partial x} = -\mu_0\epsilon_0 \frac{\partial E}{\partial t} \qquad \textbf{(34.14)}$$

[2] Because dE/dx in this equation is expressed as the change in E with x at a given instant t, dE/dx is equivalent to the partial derivative $\partial E/\partial x$. Likewise, dB/dt means the change in B with time at a particular position x; therefore, in Equation 34.10, we can replace dB/dt with $\partial B/\partial t$.

Taking the derivative of Equation 34.11 with respect to x and combining the result with Equation 34.14 gives

$$\frac{\partial^2 E}{\partial x^2} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{\partial B}{\partial t}\right) = -\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\frac{\partial B}{\partial x}\right) = -\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(-\mu_0\epsilon_0\frac{\partial E}{\partial t}\right)$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 E}{\partial x^2} = \mu_0\epsilon_0\frac{\partial^2 E}{\partial t^2} \quad \textbf{(34.15)}$$

In the same manner, taking the derivative of Equation 34.14 with respect to x and combining it with Equation 34.11 gives

$$\frac{\partial^2 B}{\partial x^2} = \mu_0\epsilon_0\frac{\partial^2 B}{\partial t^2} \quad \textbf{(34.16)}$$

Equations 34.15 and 34.16 both have the form of the general wave equation[3] with the wave speed v replaced by c, where

$$c = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\mu_0\epsilon_0}} \quad \textbf{(34.17)}$$

◀ Speed of electromagnetic waves

Let's evaluate this speed numerically:

$$c = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(4\pi \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{T\cdot m/A})(8.854\ 19 \times 10^{-12}\ \mathrm{C^2/N\cdot m^2})}}$$
$$= 2.997\ 92 \times 10^8\ \mathrm{m/s}$$

Because this speed is precisely the same as the speed of light in empty space, we are led to believe (correctly) that light is an electromagnetic wave.

The simplest solution to Equations 34.15 and 34.16 is a sinusoidal wave for which the field magnitudes E and B vary with x and t according to the expressions

$$E = E_{\max}\cos(kx - \omega t) \quad \textbf{(34.18)}$$

$$B = B_{\max}\cos(kx - \omega t) \quad \textbf{(34.19)}$$

◀ Sinusoidal electric and magnetic fields

where $E_{\max}$ and $B_{\max}$ are the maximum values of the fields. The angular wave number is $k = 2\pi/\lambda$, where λ is the wavelength. The angular frequency is $\omega = 2\pi f$, where f is the wave frequency. The ratio ω/k equals the speed of an electromagnetic wave, c:

$$\frac{\omega}{k} = \frac{2\pi f}{2\pi/\lambda} = \lambda f = c$$

where we have used Equation 16.12, $v = c = \lambda f$, which relates the speed, frequency, and wavelength of any continuous wave. Therefore, for electromagnetic waves, the wavelength and frequency of these waves are related by

$$\lambda = \frac{c}{f} = \frac{3.00 \times 10^8\ \mathrm{m/s}}{f} \quad \textbf{(34.20)}$$

Active Figure 34.4b is a pictorial representation, at one instant, of a sinusoidal, linearly polarized plane wave moving in the positive x direction.

Taking partial derivatives of Equations 34.18 (with respect to x) and 34.19 (with respect to t) gives

$$\frac{\partial E}{\partial x} = -kE_{\max}\sin(kx - \omega t)$$

$$\frac{\partial B}{\partial t} = \omega B_{\max}\sin(kx - \omega t)$$

[3] The general wave equation is of the form $(\partial^2 y/\partial x^2) = (1/v^2)(\partial^2 y/\partial t^2)$, where v is the speed of the wave and y is the wave function. The general wave equation was introduced as Equation 16.27, and we suggest you review Section 16.6.

PITFALL PREVENTION 34.2
$\vec{E}$ Stronger Than $\vec{B}$?

Because the value of c is so large, some students incorrectly interpret Equation 34.21 as meaning that the electric field is much stronger than the magnetic field. Electric and magnetic fields are measured in different units, however, so they cannot be directly compared. In Section 34.4, we find that the electric and magnetic fields contribute equally to the wave's energy.

Substituting these results into Equation 34.11 shows that at any instant,

$$kE_{\max} = \omega B_{\max}$$

$$\frac{E_{\max}}{B_{\max}} = \frac{\omega}{k} = c$$

Using these results together with Equations 34.18 and 34.19 gives

$$\frac{E_{\max}}{B_{\max}} = \frac{E}{B} = c \qquad (34.21)$$

That is, **at every instant, the ratio of the magnitude of the electric field to the magnitude of the magnetic field in an electromagnetic wave equals the speed of light.**

Finally, note that electromagnetic waves obey the superposition principle (which we discussed in Section 18.1 with respect to mechanical waves) because the differential equations involving E and B are linear equations. For example, we can add two waves with the same frequency and polarization simply by adding the magnitudes of the two electric fields algebraically.

Quick Quiz 34.2 What is the phase difference between the sinusoidal oscillations of the electric and magnetic fields in Active Figure 34.4b? (a) 180° (b) 90° (c) 0 (d) impossible to determine

EXAMPLE 34.2 An Electromagnetic Wave

A sinusoidal electromagnetic wave of frequency 40.0 MHz travels in free space in the x direction as in Figure 34.7.

(A) Determine the wavelength and period of the wave.

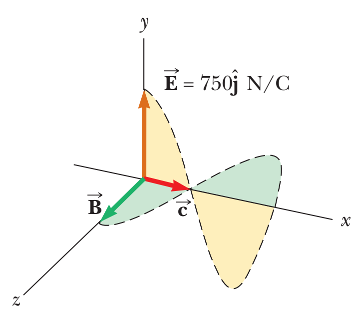


Figure 34.7 (Example 34.2) At some instant, a plane electromagnetic wave moving in the x direction has a maximum electric field of 750 N/C in the positive y direction. The corresponding magnetic field at that point has a magnitude E/c and is in the z direction.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine the wave in Figure 34.7 moving to the right along the x axis, with the electric and magnetic fields oscillating in phase.

Categorize We evaluate the results using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Use Equation 34.20 to find the wavelength of the wave:

$$\lambda = \frac{c}{f} = \frac{3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}}{40.0 \times 10^6 \text{ Hz}} = \boxed{7.50 \text{ m}}$$

Find the period T of the wave as the inverse of the frequency:

$$T = \frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{40.0 \times 10^6 \text{ Hz}} = \boxed{2.50 \times 10^{-8} \text{ s}}$$

(B) At some point and at some instant, the electric field has its maximum value of 750 N/C and is directed along the y axis. Calculate the magnitude and direction of the magnetic field at this position and time.

SOLUTION

Use Equation 34.21 to find the magnitude of the magnetic field:

$$B_{\max} = \frac{E_{\max}}{c} = \frac{750 \text{ N/C}}{3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}} = \boxed{2.50 \times 10^{-6} \text{ T}}$$

Because $\vec{E}$ and $\vec{B}$ must be perpendicular to each other and perpendicular to the direction of wave propagation (x in this case), we conclude that $\vec{B}$ is in the z direction.

34.4 Energy Carried by Electromagnetic Waves

In our discussion of the nonisolated system model in Section 8.1, we identified electromagnetic radiation as one method of energy transfer across the boundary of a system. The amount of energy transferred by electromagnetic waves is symbolized as T_{ER} in Equation 8.2. The rate of flow of energy in an electromagnetic wave is described by a vector $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$, called the **Poynting vector,** which is defined by the expression

$$\vec{\mathbf{S}} \equiv \frac{1}{\mu_0}\vec{\mathbf{E}} \times \vec{\mathbf{B}} \tag{34.22}$$

◀ Poynting vector

The magnitude of the Poynting vector represents the rate at which energy flows through a unit surface area perpendicular to the direction of wave propagation. Therefore, the magnitude of $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$ represents *power per unit area*. The direction of the vector is along the direction of wave propagation (Fig. 34.8). The SI units of $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$ are $\text{J/s} \cdot \text{m}^2 = \text{W/m}^2$.

As an example, let's evaluate the magnitude of $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$ for a plane electromagnetic wave where $|\vec{\mathbf{E}} \times \vec{\mathbf{B}}| = EB$. In this case,

$$S = \frac{EB}{\mu_0} \tag{34.23}$$

Because $B = E/c$, we can also express this result as

$$S = \frac{E^2}{\mu_0 c} = \frac{cB^2}{\mu_0}$$

These equations for S apply at any instant of time and represent the *instantaneous* rate at which energy is passing through a unit area.

What is of greater interest for a sinusoidal plane electromagnetic wave is the time average of S over one or more cycles, which is called the *wave intensity I*. (We discussed the intensity of sound waves in Chapter 17.) When this average is taken, we obtain an expression involving the time average of $\cos^2(kx - \omega t)$, which equals $\frac{1}{2}$. Hence, the average value of S (in other words, the intensity of the wave) is

$$I = S_{\text{avg}} = \frac{E_{\max}B_{\max}}{2\mu_0} = \frac{E_{\max}^2}{2\mu_0 c} = \frac{cB_{\max}^2}{2\mu_0} \tag{34.24}$$

◀ Wave intensity

Recall that the energy per unit volume, which is the instantaneous energy density u_E associated with an electric field, is given by Equation 26.13:

$$u_E = \tfrac{1}{2}\epsilon_0 E^2$$

Also recall that the instantaneous energy density u_B associated with a magnetic field is given by Equation 32.14:

$$u_B = \frac{B^2}{2\mu_0}$$

Because E and B vary with time for an electromagnetic wave, the energy densities also vary with time. Using the relationships $B = E/c$ and $c = 1/\sqrt{\epsilon_0\mu_0}$, the expression for u_B becomes

$$u_B = \frac{(E/c)^2}{2\mu_0} = \frac{\epsilon_0\mu_0}{2\mu_0}E^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}\epsilon_0 E^2$$

Comparing this result with the expression for u_E, we see that

$$u_B = u_E = \tfrac{1}{2}\epsilon_0 E^2 = \frac{B^2}{2\mu_0}$$

PITFALL PREVENTION 34.3
An Instantaneous Value

The Poynting vector given by Equation 34.22 is time dependent. Its magnitude varies in time, reaching a maximum value at the same instant as the magnitudes of $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ and $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ do. The *average* rate of energy transfer is given by Equation 34.24.

PITFALL PREVENTION 34.4
Irradiance

In this discussion, intensity is defined in the same way as in Chapter 17 (as power per unit area). In the optics industry, however, power per unit area is called the *irradiance*. Radiant intensity is defined as the power in watts per solid angle (measured in steradians).

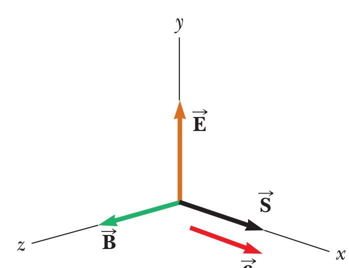


Figure 34.8 The Poynting vector $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$ for a plane electromagnetic wave is along the direction of wave propagation.

That is, **the instantaneous energy density associated with the magnetic field of an electromagnetic wave equals the instantaneous energy density associated with the electric field.** Hence, in a given volume, the energy is equally shared by the two fields.

The **total instantaneous energy density** u is equal to the sum of the energy densities associated with the electric and magnetic fields:

Total instantaneous energy density of an electromagnetic wave ▶

$$u = u_E + u_B = \epsilon_0 E^2 = \frac{B^2}{\mu_0}$$

When this total instantaneous energy density is averaged over one or more cycles of an electromagnetic wave, we again obtain a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$. Hence, for any electromagnetic wave, the total average energy per unit volume is

Average energy density of an electromagnetic wave ▶

$$u_{\text{avg}} = \epsilon_0 (E^2)_{\text{avg}} = \tfrac{1}{2}\epsilon_0 E_{\text{max}}^2 = \frac{B_{\text{max}}^2}{2\mu_0} \tag{34.25}$$

Comparing this result with Equation 34.24 for the average value of S, we see that

$$I = S_{\text{avg}} = cu_{\text{avg}} \tag{34.26}$$

In other words, **the intensity of an electromagnetic wave equals the average energy density multiplied by the speed of light.**

The Sun delivers about 10^3 W/m^2 of energy to the Earth's surface via electromagnetic radiation. Let's calculate the total power that is incident on the roof of a home. The roof's dimensions are 8.00 m $\times$ 20.0 m. We assume the average magnitude of the Poynting vector for solar radiation at the surface of the Earth is S_{avg} = 1 000 W/m^2. This average value represents the power per unit area, or the light intensity. Assuming the radiation is incident normal to the roof, we obtain

$$\mathcal{P}_{\text{avg}} = S_{\text{avg}}A = (1\,000 \text{ W/m}^2)(8.00 \text{ m} \times 20.0 \text{ m}) = 1.60 \times 10^5 \text{ W}$$

This power is large compared to the power requirements of a typical home. If this power were maintained for 24 hours per day and the energy could be absorbed and made available to electrical devices, it would provide more than enough energy for the average home. Solar energy is not easily harnessed, however, and the prospects for large-scale conversion are not as bright as may appear from this calculation. For example, the efficiency of conversion from solar energy is typically 10% for photovoltaic cells, reducing the available power by an order of magnitude. Other considerations reduce the power even further. Depending on location, the radiation is most likely not incident normal to the roof and, even if it is (in locations near the equator), this situation exists for only a short time near the middle of the day. No energy is available for about half of each day during the nighttime hours, and cloudy days further reduce the available energy. Finally, while energy is arriving at a large rate during the middle of the day, some of it must be stored for later use, requiring batteries or other storage devices. All in all, complete solar operation of homes is not currently cost effective for most homes.

Quick Quiz 34.3 An electromagnetic wave propagates in the $-y$ direction. The electric field at a point in space is momentarily oriented in the $+x$ direction. In which direction is the magnetic field at that point momentarily oriented? (a) the $-x$ direction (b) the $+y$ direction (c) the $+z$ direction (d) the $-z$ direction

---

EXAMPLE 34.3 Fields on the Page

Estimate the maximum magnitudes of the electric and magnetic fields of the light that is incident on this page because of the visible light coming from your desk lamp. Treat the lightbulb as a point source of electromagnetic radiation that is 5% efficient at transforming energy coming in by electrical transmission to energy leaving by visible light.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The filament in your lightbulb emits electromagnetic radiation. The brighter the light, the larger the magnitudes of the electric and magnetic fields.

Categorize Because the lightbulb is to be treated as a point source, it emits equally in all directions, so the outgoing electromagnetic radiation can be modeled as a spherical wave.

Analyze Recall from Equation 17.7 that the wave intensity I a distance r from a point source is $I = \mathcal{P}_{\text{avg}}/4\pi r^2$, where $\mathcal{P}_{\text{avg}}$ is the average power output of the source and $4\pi r^2$ is the area of a sphere of radius r centered on the source.

Set this expression for I equal to the intensity of an electromagnetic wave given by Equation 34.24:

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{P}_{\text{avg}}}{4\pi r^2} = \frac{E_{\text{max}}^2}{2\mu_0 c}$$

Solve for the electric field magnitude:

$$E_{\text{max}} = \sqrt{\frac{\mu_0 c \mathcal{P}_{\text{avg}}}{2\pi r^2}}$$

Let's make some assumptions about numbers to enter in this equation. The visible light output of a 60-W lightbulb operating at 5% efficiency is approximately 3.0 W by visible light. (The remaining energy transfers out of the lightbulb by conduction and invisible radiation.) A reasonable distance from the lightbulb to the page might be 0.30 m.

Substitute these values:

$$E_{\text{max}} = \sqrt{\frac{(4\pi \times 10^{-7}\ \text{T}\cdot\text{m/A})(3.00 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s})(3.0\ \text{W})}{2\pi(0.30\ \text{m})^2}}$$

$$= \boxed{45\ \text{V/m}}$$

Use Equation 34.21 to find the magnetic field magnitude:

$$B_{\text{max}} = \frac{E_{\text{max}}}{c} = \frac{45\ \text{V/m}}{3.00 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s}} = \boxed{1.5 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{T}}$$

Finalize This value of the magnetic field magnitude is two orders of magnitude smaller than the Earth's magnetic field.

34.5 Momentum and Radiation Pressure

Electromagnetic waves transport linear momentum as well as energy. As this momentum is absorbed by some surface, pressure is exerted on the surface. In this discussion, let's assume the electromagnetic wave strikes the surface at normal incidence and transports a total energy T_{ER} to the surface in a time interval Δt. Maxwell showed that if the surface absorbs all the incident energy T_{ER} in this time interval (as does a black body, introduced in Section 20.7), the total momentum $\vec{\mathbf{p}}$ transported to the surface has a magnitude

$$p = \frac{T_{\text{ER}}}{c} \quad \text{(complete absorption)} \tag{34.27}$$

◀ Momentum transported to a perfectly absorbing surface

The pressure exerted on the surface is defined as force per unit area F/A, which when combined with Newton's second law gives

$$P = \frac{F}{A} = \frac{1}{A}\frac{dp}{dt}$$

Substituting Equation 34.27 into this expression for P gives

$$P = \frac{1}{A}\frac{dp}{dt} = \frac{1}{A}\frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{T_{\text{ER}}}{c}\right) = \frac{1}{c}\frac{(dT_{\text{ER}}/dt)}{A}$$

PITFALL PREVENTION 34.5

So Many p's

We have p for momentum and P for pressure, and they are both related to $\mathcal{P}$ for power! Be sure to keep all these symbols straight.

We recognize $(dT_{ER}/dt)/A$ as the rate at which energy is arriving at the surface per unit area, which is the magnitude of the Poynting vector. Therefore, the radiation pressure P exerted on the perfectly absorbing surface is

Radiation pressure exerted on a perfectly absorbing surface ▶

$$P = \frac{S}{c} \tag{34.28}$$

If the surface is a perfect reflector (such as a mirror) and incidence is normal, the momentum transported to the surface in a time interval Δt is twice that given by Equation 34.27. That is, the momentum transferred to the surface by the incoming light is $p = T_{ER}/c$ and that transferred by the reflected light also is $p = T_{ER}/c$. Therefore,

$$p = \frac{2T_{ER}}{c} \quad \text{(complete reflection)} \tag{34.29}$$

The radiation pressure exerted on a perfectly reflecting surface for normal incidence of the wave is

Radiation pressure exerted on a perfectly reflecting surface ▶

$$P = \frac{2S}{c} \tag{34.30}$$

The pressure on a surface having a reflectivity somewhere between these two extremes has a value between S/c and $2S/c$, depending on the properties of the surface.

Although radiation pressures are very small (about 5×10^{-6} N/m^2 for direct sunlight), NASA is exploring the possibility of *solar sailing* as a low-cost means of sending spacecraft to the planets. Large sheets would experience radiation pressure from sunlight and would be used in much the way canvas sheets are used on earthbound sailboats. In 1973, NASA engineers took advantage of the momentum of the sunlight striking the solar panels of *Mariner 10* to make small course corrections when the spacecraft's fuel supply was running low. (This procedure was carried out when the spacecraft was in the vicinity of Mercury. Would it have worked as well near Neptune?)

Quick Quiz 34.4 To maximize the radiation pressure on the sails of a spacecraft using solar sailing, should the sheets be (a) very black to absorb as much sunlight as possible or (b) very shiny to reflect as much sunlight as possible?

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 34.4 Sweeping the Solar System

A great amount of dust exists in interplanetary space. Although in theory these dust particles can vary in size from molecular size to a much larger size, very little of the dust in our solar system is smaller than about 0.2 μm. Why?

SOLUTION

The dust particles are subject to two significant forces: the gravitational force that draws them toward the Sun and the radiation-pressure force that pushes them away from the Sun. The gravitational force is proportional to the cube of the radius of a spherical dust particle because it is proportional to the mass and therefore to the volume $4\pi r^3/3$ of the particle. The radiation pressure is proportional to the square of the radius because it depends on the planar cross section of the particle. For large particles, the gravitational force is greater than the force from radiation pressure. For particles having radii less than about 0.2 μm, the radiation-pressure force is greater than the gravitational force. As a result, these particles are swept out of our solar system by sunlight.

EXAMPLE 34.5 Pressure from a Laser Pointer

When giving presentations, many people use a laser pointer to direct the attention of the audience to information on a screen. If a 3.0-mW pointer creates a spot on a screen that is 2.0 mm in diameter, determine the radiation pressure on a screen that reflects 70% of the light that strikes it. The power 3.0 mW is a time-averaged value.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The pressure should not be very large.

Categorize This problem involves a calculation of radiation pressure using an approach like that leading to Equation 34.28 or Equation 34.30, but it is complicated by the 70% reflection.

Analyze We begin by determining the magnitude of the beam's Poynting vector.

Divide the time-averaged power delivered via the electromagnetic wave by the cross-sectional area of the beam:

$$S_{\text{avg}} = \frac{\mathcal{P}_{\text{avg}}}{A} = \frac{\mathcal{P}_{\text{avg}}}{\pi r^2} = \frac{3.0 \times 10^{-3}\text{ W}}{\pi\left(\dfrac{2.0 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m}}{2}\right)^2} = 955\text{ W/m}^2$$

Now let's determine the radiation pressure from the laser beam. Equation 34.30 indicates that a completely reflected beam would apply an average pressure of $P_{\text{avg}} = 2S_{\text{avg}}/c$. We can model the actual reflection as follows. Imagine that the surface absorbs the beam, resulting in pressure $P_{\text{avg}} = S_{\text{avg}}/c$. Then the surface emits the beam, resulting in additional pressure $P_{\text{avg}} = S_{\text{avg}}/c$. If the surface emits only a fraction f of the beam (so that f is the amount of the incident beam reflected), the pressure due to the emitted beam is $P_{\text{avg}} = fS_{\text{avg}}/c$.

Use this model to find the total pressure on the surface due to absorption and re-emission (reflection):

$$P_{\text{avg}} = \frac{S_{\text{avg}}}{c} + f\frac{S_{\text{avg}}}{c} = (1 + f)\frac{S_{\text{avg}}}{c}$$

Evaluate this pressure for a beam that is 70% reflected:

$$P_{\text{avg}} = (1 + 0.70)\frac{955\text{ W/m}^2}{3.0 \times 10^8\text{ m/s}} = \boxed{5.4 \times 10^{-6}\text{ N/m}^2}$$

Finalize Consider the magnitude of the Poynting vector, $S_{\text{avg}} = 955\text{ W/m}^2$. It is about the same as the intensity of sunlight at the Earth's surface. For this reason, it is not safe to shine the beam of a laser pointer into a person's eyes, which may be more dangerous than looking directly at the Sun. The pressure has an extremely small value, as expected. (Recall from Section 14.2 that atmospheric pressure is approximately 10^5 N/m^2.)

What If? What if the laser pointer is moved twice as far away from the screen? Does that affect the radiation pressure on the screen?

Answer Because a laser beam is popularly represented as a beam of light with constant cross section, you might think that the intensity of radiation, and therefore the radiation pressure, is independent of distance from the screen. A laser beam, however, does not have a constant cross section at all distances from the source; rather, there is a small but measurable divergence of the beam. If the laser is moved farther away from the screen, the area of illumination on the screen increases, decreasing the intensity. In turn, the radiation pressure is reduced.

In addition, the doubled distance from the screen results in more loss of energy from the beam due to scattering from air molecules and dust particles as the light travels from the laser to the screen. This energy loss further reduces the radiation pressure on the screen.

34.6 Production of Electromagnetic Waves by an Antenna

Stationary charges and steady currents cannot produce electromagnetic waves. Whenever the current in a wire changes with time, however, the wire emits electromagnetic radiation. **The fundamental mechanism responsible for this radiation is the acceleration of a charged particle. Whenever a charged particle accelerates, it radiates energy.**

Let's consider the production of electromagnetic waves by a *half-wave antenna.* In this arrangement, two conducting rods are connected to a source of alternating voltage (such as an LC oscillator) as shown in Figure 34.9 (page 966). The length

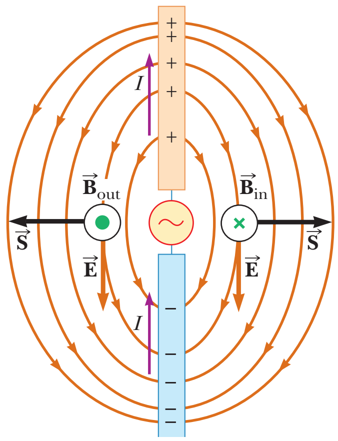


Figure 34.9 A half-wave antenna consists of two metal rods connected to an alternating voltage source. This diagram shows $\vec{E}$ and $\vec{B}$ at an arbitrary instant when the current is upward. Notice that the electric field lines resemble those of a dipole (shown in Fig. 23.20).

of each rod is equal to one quarter of the wavelength of the radiation emitted when the oscillator operates at frequency f. The oscillator forces charges to accelerate back and forth between the two rods. Figure 34.9 shows the configuration of the electric and magnetic fields at some instant when the current is upward. The separation of charges in the upper and lower portions of the antenna make the electric field lines resemble those of an electric dipole. (As a result, this type of antenna is sometimes called a *dipole antenna.*) Because these charges are continuously oscillating between the two rods, the antenna can be approximated by an oscillating electric dipole. The current representing the movement of charges between the ends of the antenna produces magnetic field lines forming concentric circles around the antenna that are perpendicular to the electric field lines at all points. The magnetic field is zero at all points along the axis of the antenna. Furthermore, $\vec{E}$ and $\vec{B}$ are 90° out of phase in time; for example, the current is zero when the charges at the outer ends of the rods are at a maximum.

At the two points where the magnetic field is shown in Figure 34.9, the Poynting vector $\vec{S}$ is directed radially outward, indicating that energy is flowing away from the antenna at this instant. At later times, the fields and the Poynting vector reverse direction as the current alternates. Because $\vec{E}$ and $\vec{B}$ are 90° out of phase at points near the dipole, the net energy flow is zero. From this fact, you might conclude (incorrectly) that no energy is radiated by the dipole.

Energy is indeed radiated, however. Because the dipole fields fall off as $1/r^3$ (as shown in Example 23.5 for the electric field of a static dipole), they are negligible at great distances from the antenna. At these great distances, something else causes a type of radiation different from that close to the antenna. The source of this radiation is the continuous induction of an electric field by the time-varying magnetic field and the induction of a magnetic field by the time-varying electric field, predicted by Equations 34.6 and 34.7. The electric and magnetic fields produced in this manner are in phase with each other and vary as $1/r$. The result is an outward flow of energy at all times.

The angular dependence of the radiation intensity produced by a dipole antenna is shown in Figure 34.10. Notice that the intensity and the power radiated are a maximum in a plane that is perpendicular to the antenna and passing through its midpoint. Furthermore, the power radiated is zero along the antenna's axis. A mathematical solution to Maxwell's equations for the dipole antenna shows that the intensity of the radiation varies as $(\sin^2\theta)/r^2$, where θ is measured from the axis of the antenna.

Electromagnetic waves can also induce currents in a receiving antenna. The response of a dipole receiving antenna at a given position is a maximum when the antenna axis is parallel to the electric field at that point and zero when the axis is perpendicular to the electric field.

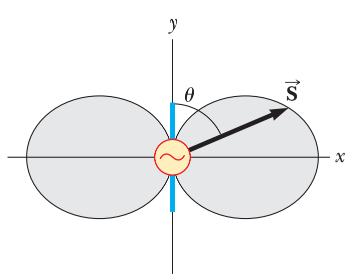


Figure 34.10 Angular dependence of the intensity of radiation produced by an oscillating electric dipole. The distance from the origin to a point on the edge of the gray shape is proportional to the intensity of radiation.

Quick Quiz 34.5 If the antenna in Figure 34.9 represents the source of a distant radio station, what would be the best orientation for your portable radio antenna located to the right of the figure? (a) up–down along the page (b) left–right along the page (c) perpendicular to the page

34.7 The Spectrum of Electromagnetic Waves

The various types of electromagnetic waves are listed in Figure 34.11, which shows the **electromagnetic spectrum.** Notice the wide ranges of frequencies and wavelengths. No sharp dividing point exists between one type of wave and the next. Remember that **all forms of the various types of radiation are produced by the same phenomenon, accelerating charges.** The names given to the types of waves are simply a convenient way to describe the region of the spectrum in which they lie.

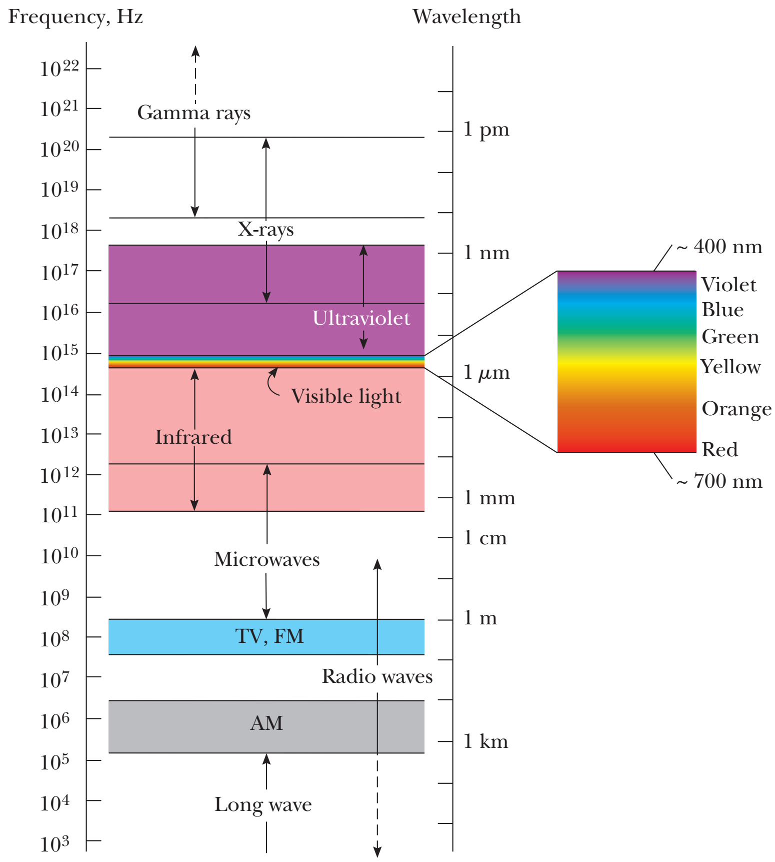


Figure 34.11 The electromagnetic spectrum. Notice the overlap between adjacent wave types. The expanded view to the right shows details of the visible spectrum.

Radio waves, whose wavelengths range from more than 10^4 m to about 0.1 m, are the result of charges accelerating through conducting wires. They are generated by such electronic devices as *LC* oscillators and are used in radio and television communication systems.

Microwaves have wavelengths ranging from approximately 0.3 m to 10^{-4} m and are also generated by electronic devices. Because of their short wavelengths, they are well suited for radar systems and for studying the atomic and molecular properties of matter. Microwave ovens are an interesting domestic application of these waves. It has been suggested that solar energy could be harnessed by beaming microwaves to the Earth from a solar collector in space.

Infrared waves have wavelengths ranging from approximately 10^{-3} m to the longest wavelength of visible light, 7×10^{-7} m. These waves, produced by molecules and room-temperature objects, are readily absorbed by most materials. The infrared (IR) energy absorbed by a substance appears as internal energy because the energy agitates the object's atoms, increasing their vibrational or translational motion, which results in a temperature increase. Infrared radiation has practical and scientific applications in many areas, including physical therapy, IR photography, and vibrational spectroscopy.

Visible light, the most familiar form of electromagnetic waves, is the part of the electromagnetic spectrum the human eye can detect. Light is produced by the rearrangement of electrons in atoms and molecules. The various wavelengths of visible light, which correspond to different colors, range from red ($\lambda \approx 7 \times 10^{-7}$ m) to violet ($\lambda \approx 4 \times 10^{-7}$ m). The sensitivity of the human eye is a function of wavelength, being a maximum at a wavelength of about 5.5×10^{-7} m. With that in mind, why do you suppose tennis balls often have a yellow-green color? Table 34.1 (page 968) provides approximate correspondences between the wavelength of

PITFALL PREVENTION 34.6
"Heat Rays"

Infrared rays are often called "heat rays," but this terminology is a misnomer. Although infrared radiation is used to raise or maintain temperature as in the case of keeping food warm with "heat lamps" at a fast-food restaurant, all wavelengths of electromagnetic radiation carry energy that can cause the temperature of a system to increase. As an example, consider a potato baking in your microwave oven.

visible light and the color assigned to it by humans. Light is the basis of the science of optics and optical instruments, to be discussed in Chapters 35 through 38.

Ultraviolet waves cover wavelengths ranging from approximately 4×10^{-7} m to 6×10^{-10} m. The Sun is an important source of ultraviolet (UV) light, which is the main cause of sunburn. Sunscreen lotions are transparent to visible light but absorb most UV light. The higher a sunscreen's solar protection factor, or SPF, the greater the percentage of UV light absorbed. Ultraviolet rays have also been implicated in the formation of cataracts, a clouding of the lens inside the eye.

Most of the UV light from the Sun is absorbed by ozone (O_3) molecules in the Earth's upper atmosphere, in a layer called the stratosphere. This ozone shield converts lethal high-energy UV radiation to IR radiation, which in turn warms the stratosphere.

X-rays have wavelengths in the range from approximately 10^{-8} m to 10^{-12} m. The most common source of x-rays is the stopping of high-energy electrons upon bombarding a metal target. X-rays are used as a diagnostic tool in medicine and as a treatment for certain forms of cancer. Because x-rays can damage or destroy living tissues and organisms, care must be taken to avoid unnecessary exposure or overexposure. X-rays are also used in the study of crystal structure because x-ray wavelengths are comparable to the atomic separation distances in solids (about 0.1 nm).

Gamma rays are electromagnetic waves emitted by radioactive nuclei (such as ^{60}Co and ^{137}Cs) and during certain nuclear reactions. High-energy gamma rays are a component of cosmic rays that enter the Earth's atmosphere from space. They have wavelengths ranging from approximately 10^{-10} m to less than 10^{-14} m. Gamma rays are highly penetrating and produce serious damage when absorbed by living tissues. Consequently, those working near such dangerous radiation must be protected with heavily absorbing materials such as thick layers of lead.

TABLE 34.1

Approximate Correspondence Between Wavelengths of Visible Light and Color

Wavelength Range (nm)	Color Description
400–430	Violet
430–485	Blue
485–560	Green
560–590	Yellow
590–625	Orange
625–700	Red

Note: The wavelength ranges here are approximate. Different people will describe colors differently.

Ron Chapple/Getty Images

Wearing sunglasses that do not block ultraviolet (UV) light is worse for your eyes than wearing no sunglasses at all. The lenses of any sunglasses absorb some visible light, thereby causing the wearer's pupils to dilate. If the glasses do not also block UV light, more damage may be done to the lens of the eye because of the dilated pupils. If you wear no sunglasses at all, your pupils are contracted, you squint, and much less UV light enters your eyes. High-quality sunglasses block nearly all the eye-damaging UV light.

Quick Quiz 34.6 In many kitchens, a microwave oven is used to cook food. The frequency of the microwaves is on the order of 10^{10} Hz. Are the wavelengths of these microwaves on the order of (a) kilometers, (b) meters, (c) centimeters, or (d) micrometers?

Quick Quiz 34.7 A radio wave of frequency on the order of 10^5 Hz is used to carry a sound wave with a frequency on the order of 10^3 Hz. Is the wavelength of this radio wave on the order of (a) kilometers, (b) meters, (c) centimeters, or (d) micrometers?

Summary

ThomsonNOW™ Sign in at **www.thomsonedu.com** and go to ThomsonNOW to take a practice test for this chapter.

DEFINITIONS

In a region of space in which there is a changing electric field, there is a **displacement current** defined as

$$I_d \equiv \epsilon_0 \frac{d\Phi_E}{dt} \qquad \textbf{(34.1)}$$

where ϵ_0 is the permittivity of free space (see Section 23.3) and $\Phi_E = \int \vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{A}}$ is the electric flux.

The rate of flow of energy crossing a unit area by electromagnetic radiation is described by the **Poynting vector** $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$, where

$$\vec{\mathbf{S}} \equiv \frac{1}{\mu_0} \vec{\mathbf{E}} \times \vec{\mathbf{B}} \qquad \textbf{(34.22)}$$

(*continued*)

CONCEPTS AND PRINCIPLES

When used with the **Lorentz force law,** $\vec{\mathbf{F}} = q\vec{\mathbf{E}} + q\vec{\mathbf{v}} \times \vec{\mathbf{B}}$, **Maxwell's equations** describe all electromagnetic phenomena:

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{A}} = \frac{q}{\epsilon_0} \qquad \textbf{(34.4)}$$

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{A}} = 0 \qquad \textbf{(34.5)}$$

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} \qquad \textbf{(34.6)}$$

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = \mu_0 I + \epsilon_0 \mu_0 \frac{d\Phi_E}{dt} \qquad \textbf{(34.7)}$$

Electromagnetic waves, which are predicted by Maxwell's equations, have the following properties:

- The electric field and the magnetic field each satisfy a wave equation. These two wave equations, which can be obtained from Maxwell's third and fourth equations, are

$$\frac{\partial^2 E}{\partial x^2} = \mu_0 \epsilon_0 \frac{\partial^2 E}{\partial t^2} \qquad \textbf{(34.15)}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 B}{\partial x^2} = \mu_0 \epsilon_0 \frac{\partial^2 B}{\partial t^2} \qquad \textbf{(34.16)}$$

- The waves travel through a vacuum with the speed of light c, where

$$c = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\mu_0 \epsilon_0}} \qquad \textbf{(34.17)}$$

- Numerically, the speed of electromagnetic waves in a vacuum is 3.00×10^8 m/s.
- The electric and magnetic fields are perpendicular to each other and perpendicular to the direction of wave propagation.
- The instantaneous magnitudes of $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ and $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ in an electromagnetic wave are related by the expression

$$\frac{E}{B} = c \qquad \textbf{(34.21)}$$

- Electromagnetic waves carry energy.
- Electromagnetic waves carry momentum.

Because electromagnetic waves carry momentum, they exert pressure on surfaces. If an electromagnetic wave whose Poynting vector is $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$ is completely absorbed by a surface upon which it is normally incident, the radiation pressure on that surface is

$$P = \frac{S}{c} \quad \text{(complete absorption)} \qquad \textbf{(34.28)}$$

If the surface totally reflects a normally incident wave, the pressure is doubled.

The electric and magnetic fields of a sinusoidal plane electromagnetic wave propagating in the positive x direction can be written as

$$E = E_{\max} \cos (kx - \omega t) \qquad \textbf{(34.18)}$$

$$B = B_{\max} \cos (kx - \omega t) \qquad \textbf{(34.19)}$$

where ω is the angular frequency of the wave and k is the angular wave number. These equations represent special solutions to the wave equations for E and B. The wavelength and frequency of electromagnetic waves are related by

$$\lambda = \frac{c}{f} = \frac{3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}}{f} \qquad \textbf{(34.20)}$$

The average value of the Poynting vector for a plane electromagnetic wave has a magnitude

$$S_{\text{avg}} = \frac{E_{\max} B_{\max}}{2\mu_0} = \frac{E_{\max}^2}{2\mu_0 c} = \frac{cB_{\max}^2}{2\mu_0} \qquad \textbf{(34.24)}$$

The intensity of a sinusoidal plane electromagnetic wave equals the average value of the Poynting vector taken over one or more cycles.

The electromagnetic spectrum includes waves covering a broad range of wavelengths, from long radio waves at more than 10^4 m to gamma rays at less than 10^{-14} m.

Questions

☐ denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide;* **O** denotes objective question

1. What new concept did Maxwell's generalized form of Ampère's law include?

2. Do Maxwell's equations allow for the existence of magnetic monopoles? Explain.

3. Radio stations often advertise "instant news." If that means you can hear the news the instant the radio announcer speaks it, is the claim true? What approximate time interval is required for a message to travel from Maine to California by radio waves? Assume the waves can be detected at this range.

4. When light (or other electromagnetic radiation) travels across a given region, what is it that oscillates? What is it that is transported?

5. If a high-frequency current exists in a solenoid containing a metallic core, the core becomes warm due to induction. Explain why the material rises in temperature in this situation.

6. O A student working with transmitting apparatus like Heinrich Hertz's wishes to adjust the electrodes to generate electromagnetic waves with a frequency half as large as before. **(i)** How large should she make the effective capacitance of the pair of electrodes? (a) 4 times larger than before (b) 2 times larger than before (c) $\frac{1}{2}$ as large as before (d) $\frac{1}{4}$ as large as before (e) None of these answers would have the desired effect. **(ii)** After she makes the required adjustment, what will the wavelength of the transmitted wave be? (a) 4 times larger than before (b) 2 times larger than before (c) the same as before (d) $\frac{1}{2}$ as large as before (e) $\frac{1}{4}$ as large as before (f) None of these answers is necessarily true.

7. O Assume you charge a comb by running it through your hair and then hold the comb next to a bar magnet. Do the electric and magnetic fields produced constitute an electromagnetic wave? (a) Yes they do, necessarily. (b) Yes they do because charged particles are moving inside the bar magnet. (c) They can, but only if the electric field of the comb and the magnetic field of the magnet are perpendicular. (d) They can, but only if both the comb and the magnet are moving. (e) They can, if either the comb or the magnet or both are accelerating.

8. O A small source radiates an electromagnetic wave with a single frequency into vacuum, equally in all directions. **(i)** As the wave moves, does its frequency (a) increase, (b) decrease, or (c) stay constant? Answer the same question about **(ii)** its wavelength, **(iii)** its speed, **(iv)** its intensity, and **(v)** the amplitude of its electric field.

9. O A plane electromagnetic wave with a single frequency moves in vacuum in the $+x$ direction. Its amplitude is uniform over the yz plane. **(i)** As the wave moves, does its frequency (a) increase, (b) decrease, or (c) stay constant? Answer the same question about **(ii)** its wavelength, **(iii)** its speed, **(iv)** its intensity, and **(v)** the amplitude of its magnetic field.

10. List as many similarities and differences between sound waves and light waves as you can.

11. Describe the physical significance of the Poynting vector.

12. O Assume the amplitude of the electric field in a plane electromagnetic wave is E_1 and the amplitude of the magnetic field is B_1. The source of the wave is then adjusted so that the amplitude of the electric field doubles to become $2E_1$. **(i)** What happens to the amplitude of the magnetic field in this process? (a) It becomes 4 times larger. (b) It becomes 2 times larger. (c) It can stay constant. (d) It becomes $\frac{1}{2}$ as large. (e) It becomes $\frac{1}{4}$ as large. (f) None of these answers is necessarily true. **(ii)** What happens to the intensity of the wave? Choose from the same possibilities.

13. O A spherical interplanetary dust grain of radius 0.2 μm is at distance r_1 from the Sun. The gravitational force exerted by the Sun on the grain just balances the force due to radiation pressure from the Sun's light. **(i)** Assume the grain is moved to a distance $2r_1$ from the Sun and released. At this location, what is the net force exerted on the grain? (a) toward the Sun (b) away from the Sun (c) zero (d) impossible to determine without knowing the mass of the grain **(ii)** Now assume the grain is moved back to its original location at r_1, compressed so that it crystallizes into a sphere with significantly higher density, and released. In this situation, what is the net force exerted on the grain? (a) toward the Sun (b) away from the Sun (c) zero (d) impossible to determine without knowing the mass of the grain

14. For a given incident energy of an electromagnetic wave, why is the radiation pressure on a perfectly reflecting surface twice as great as that on a perfect absorbing surface?

15. Some television viewers use "rabbit ears" atop their sets (Fig. Q34.15) instead of purchasing cable television service or satellite dishes. Certain orientations of the receiving antenna on a television set give better reception than others. Furthermore, the best orientation varies from station to station. Explain.

© Thomson Learning/George Semple

Figure Q34.15 Question 15 and Problem 63.

16. What does a radio wave do to the charges in the receiving antenna to provide a signal for your car radio?

17. O (i) Rank the following kinds of waves according to their wavelength ranges from those with the smallest typical or average wavelength to the largest, noting any cases of equality: (a) gamma rays (b) infrared light (c) microwaves (d) radio waves (e) ultraviolet light (f) visible light (g) x-rays **(ii)** Rank the kinds of waves according to their frequencies from lowest to highest. **(iii)** Rank the kinds of waves according to their speeds in a vacuum from slowest to fastest.

18. An empty plastic or glass dish being removed from a microwave oven can be cool to the touch, even when food on an adjoining dish is hot. How is this phenomenon possible?

19. Why should an infrared photograph of a person look different from a photograph taken with visible light?

20. Suppose a creature from another planet has eyes that are sensitive to infrared radiation. Describe what the alien would see if it looked around the room you are now in. In particular, what would be bright and what would be dim?

21. A home microwave oven uses electromagnetic waves with a wavelength of about 12.2 cm. Some 2.4-GHz cordless telephones suffer noisy interference when a microwave oven is used nearby. Locate the waves used by both devices on the electromagnetic spectrum. Do you expect them to interfere with each other?

Problems

WebAssign The Problems from this chapter may be assigned online in WebAssign.

ThomsonNOW™ Sign in at **www.thomsonedu.com** and go to ThomsonNOW to assess your understanding of this chapter's topics with additional quizzing and conceptual questions.

1, 2, 3 denotes straightforward, intermediate, challenging; □ denotes full solution available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide;* ▲ denotes coached solution with hints available at **www.thomsonedu.com;** ▭ denotes developing symbolic reasoning; ● denotes asking for qualitative reasoning; 🖥 denotes computer useful in solving problem

Section 34.1 Displacement Current and the General Form of Ampère's Law

1. A 0.100-A current is charging a capacitor that has square plates 5.00 cm on each side. The plate separation is 4.00 mm. Find (a) the time rate of change of electric flux between the plates and (b) the displacement current between the plates.

2. A 0.200-A current is charging a capacitor that has circular plates 10.0 cm in radius. If the plate separation is 4.00 mm, (a) what is the time rate of increase of electric field between the plates? (b) What is the magnetic field between the plates 5.00 cm from the center?

3. Consider the situation shown in Figure P34.3. An electric field of 300 V/m is confined to a circular area 10.0 cm in diameter and directed outward perpendicular to the plane of the figure. If the field is increasing at a rate of 20.0 V/m · s, what are the direction and magnitude of the magnetic field at the point *P*, 15.0 cm from the center of the circle?

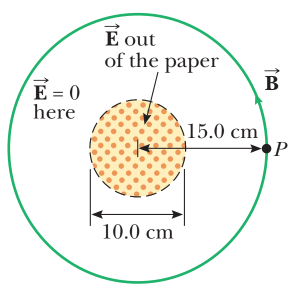


Figure P34.3

Section 34.2 Maxwell's Equations and Hertz's Discoveries

4. A very long, thin rod carries electric charge with the linear density 35.0 nC/m. It lies along the x axis and moves in the x direction at a speed of 15.0 Mm/s. (a) Find the electric field the rod creates at the point ($x = 0$, $y = 20.0$ cm, $z = 0$). (b) Find the magnetic field it creates at the same point. (c) Find the force exerted on an electron at this point, moving with a velocity of $(240\hat{\mathbf{i}})$ Mm/s.

5. A proton moves through a uniform electric field given by $\vec{\mathbf{E}} = 50.0\hat{\mathbf{j}}$ V/m and a uniform magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}} = (0.200\hat{\mathbf{i}} + 0.300\hat{\mathbf{j}} + 0.400\hat{\mathbf{k}})$ T. Determine the acceleration of the proton when it has a velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}} = 200\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m/s.

6. An electron moves through a uniform electric field $\vec{\mathbf{E}} = (2.50\hat{\mathbf{i}} + 5.00\hat{\mathbf{j}})$ V/m and a uniform magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}} = (0.400\hat{\mathbf{k}})$ T. Determine the acceleration of the electron when it has a velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}} = 10.0\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m/s.

Section 34.3 Plane Electromagnetic Waves

Note: Assume the medium is vacuum unless specified otherwise.

7. (a) The distance to the North Star, Polaris, is approximately 6.44×10^{18} m. If Polaris were to burn out today, in what year would we see it disappear? (b) What time interval is required for sunlight to reach the Earth? (c) What is the transit time for a microwave radar signal traveling from the Earth to the Moon and back? (d) In what time interval does a radio wave travel once around the Earth in a great circle, close to the planet's surface? (e) How long does it take for light to reach you from a lightning stroke 10.0 km away?

8. The speed of an electromagnetic wave traveling in a transparent nonmagnetic substance is $v = 1/\sqrt{\kappa\mu_0\epsilon_0}$, where κ is the dielectric constant of the substance. Determine the speed of light in water, which has a dielectric constant at optical frequencies of 1.78.

9. ▲ Active Figure 34.4b shows a plane electromagnetic sinusoidal wave propagating in the x direction. Suppose the wavelength is 50.0 m and the electric field vibrates in the xy plane with an amplitude of 22.0 V/m. Calculate (a) the frequency of the wave and (b) the magnitude and direction of $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ when the electric field has its maximum value in the negative y direction. (c) Write an expression for $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ with the correct unit vector, with numerical values for $B_{\max}$, k, and ω, and with its magnitude in the form

$$B = B_{\max}\cos(kx - \omega t)$$

10. An electromagnetic wave in vacuum has an electric field amplitude of 220 V/m. Calculate the amplitude of the corresponding magnetic field.

11. In SI units, the electric field in an electromagnetic wave is described by

$$E_y = 100\sin(1.00 \times 10^7 x - \omega t)$$

Find (a) the amplitude of the corresponding magnetic field oscillations, (b) the wavelength λ, and (c) the frequency f.

12. Verify by substitution that the following equations are solutions to Equations 34.15 and 34.16, respectively:

$$E = E_{\max} \cos (kx - \omega t)$$

$$B = B_{\max} \cos (kx - \omega t)$$

13. **Review problem.** A standing-wave pattern is set up by radio waves between two metal sheets 2.00 m apart, which is the shortest distance between the plates that produces a standing-wave pattern. What is the frequency of the radio waves?

14. A microwave oven is powered by an electron tube, called a magnetron, that generates electromagnetic waves of frequency 2.45 GHz. The microwaves enter the oven and are reflected by the walls. The standing-wave pattern produced in the oven can cook food unevenly, with hot spots in the food at antinodes and cool spots at nodes, so a turntable is often used to rotate the food and distribute the energy. If a microwave oven intended for use with a turntable is instead used with a cooking dish in a fixed position, the antinodes can appear as burn marks on foods such as carrot strips or cheese. The separation distance between the burns is measured to be 6 cm $\pm$ 5%. From these data, calculate the speed of the microwaves.

Section 34.4 Energy Carried by Electromagnetic Waves

15. How much electromagnetic energy per cubic meter is contained in sunlight if the intensity of sunlight at the Earth's surface under a fairly clear sky is 1 000 W/m^2?

16. An AM radio station broadcasts isotropically (equally in all directions) with an average power of 4.00 kW. A dipole receiving antenna 65.0 cm long is at a location 4.00 mi from the transmitter. Compute the amplitude of the emf that is induced by this signal between the ends of the receiving antenna.

17. What is the average magnitude of the Poynting vector 5.00 mi from a radio transmitter broadcasting isotropically (equally in all directions) with an average power of 250 kW?

18. ● The power of sunlight reaching each square meter of the Earth's surface on a clear day in the tropics is close to 1 000 W. On a winter day in Manitoba, the power concentration of sunlight can be 100 W/m^2. Many human activities are described by a power-per-footprint-area on the order of 10^2 W/m^2 or less. (a) Consider, for example, a family of four paying \$80 to the electric company every 30 days for 600 kWh of energy carried by electrical transmission to their house, which has floor dimensions of 13.0 m by 9.50 m. Compute the power-per-area measure of this energy use. (b) Consider a car 2.10 m wide and 4.90 m long traveling at 55.0 mi/h using gasoline having "heat of combustion" 44.0 MJ/kg with fuel economy 25.0 mi/gal. One gallon of gasoline has a mass of 2.54 kg. Find the power-per-area measure of the car's energy use. It can be similar to that of a steel mill in which rocks are melted in blast furnaces. (c) Explain why direct use of solar energy is not practical for a conventional automobile. What are some uses of solar energy that are on their face more practical?

19. ▲ A community plans to build a facility to convert solar radiation to electrical power. The community requires 1.00 MW of power, and the system to be installed has an efficiency of 30.0% (that is, 30.0% of the solar energy incident on the surface is converted to useful energy that can power the community). What must be the effective area of a perfectly absorbing surface used in such an installation, assuming sunlight has a constant intensity of 1 000 W/m^2?

20. ● Assuming the antenna of a 10.0-kW radio station radiates spherical electromagnetic waves, compute the maximum value of the magnetic field 5.00 km from the antenna and state how this value compares with the surface magnetic field of the Earth.

21. ▲ The filament of an incandescent lamp has a 150-Ω resistance and carries a direct current of 1.00 A. The filament is 8.00 cm long and 0.900 mm in radius. (a) Calculate the Poynting vector at the surface of the filament, associated with the static electric field producing the current and the current's static magnetic field. (b) Find the magnitudes of the static electric and magnetic fields at the surface of the filament.

22. One of the weapons being considered for the "Star Wars" antimissile system is a laser that could destroy ballistic missiles. When a high-power laser is used in the Earth's atmosphere, the electric field can ionize the air, turning it into a conducting plasma that reflects the laser light. In dry air at 0°C and 1 atm, electric breakdown occurs for fields with amplitudes above about 3.00 MV/m. (a) What laser beam intensity will produce such a field? (b) At this maximum intensity, what power can be delivered in a cylindrical beam of diameter 5.00 mm?

23. In a region of free space, the electric field at an instant of time is $\vec{\mathbf{E}} = (80.0\hat{\mathbf{i}} + 32.0\hat{\mathbf{j}} - 64.0\hat{\mathbf{k}})$ N/C and the magnetic field is $\vec{\mathbf{B}} = (0.200\hat{\mathbf{i}} + 0.080\,0\hat{\mathbf{j}} + 0.290\hat{\mathbf{k}})$ μT. (a) Show that the two fields are perpendicular to each other. (b) Determine the Poynting vector for these fields.

24. Model the electromagnetic wave in a microwave oven as a plane traveling wave moving to the left, with an intensity of 25.0 kW/m^2. An oven contains two cubical containers of small mass, each full of water. One has an edge length of 6.00 cm, and the other, 12.0 cm. Energy falls perpendicularly on one face of each container. The water in the smaller container absorbs 70.0% of the energy that falls on it. The water in the larger container absorbs 91.0%. That is, the fraction 0.3 of the incoming microwave energy passes through a 6-cm thickness of water, and the fraction (0.3)(0.3) = 0.09 passes through a 12-cm thickness. Find the temperature change of the water in each container over a time interval of 480 s. Assume a negligible amount of energy leaves either container by heat.

25. High-power lasers in factories are used to cut through cloth and metal (Fig. P34.25). One such laser has a beam diameter of 1.00 mm and generates an electric field having an amplitude of 0.700 MV/m at the target. Find (a) the amplitude of the magnetic field produced, (b) the intensity of the laser, and (c) the power delivered by the laser.

26. At one location on the Earth, the rms value of the magnetic field caused by solar radiation is 1.80 μT. From this value, calculate (a) the rms electric field due to solar radiation, (b) the average energy density of the solar component of electromagnetic radiation at this location, and (c) the average magnitude of the Poynting vector for the Sun's radiation.


Philippe Plailly/SPL/Photo Researchers

Figure P34.25

27. Consider a bright star in our night sky. Assume its distance from Earth is 20.0 ly and its power output is 4.00×10^{28} W, about 100 times that of the Sun. (a) Find the intensity of the starlight at the Earth. (b) Find the power of the starlight the Earth intercepts.

Section 34.5 Momentum and Radiation Pressure

28. A possible means of space flight is to place a perfectly reflecting aluminized sheet into orbit around the Earth and then use the light from the Sun to push this "solar sail." Suppose a sail of area 6.00×10^5 m^2 and mass 6 000 kg is placed in orbit facing the Sun. (a) What force is exerted on the sail? (b) What is the sail's acceleration? (c) What time interval is required for the sail to reach the Moon, 3.84×10^8 m away? Ignore all gravitational effects, assume the acceleration calculated in part (b) remains constant, and assume a solar intensity of 1 370 W/m^2.

29. A radio wave transmits 25.0 W/m^2 of power per unit area. A flat surface of area A is perpendicular to the direction of propagation of the wave. Calculate the radiation pressure on it, assuming the surface is a perfect absorber.

30. ● A plane electromagnetic wave of intensity 6.00 W/m^2, moving in the x direction, strikes a small pocket mirror, of area 40.0 cm^2, held in the yz plane. (a) What momentum does the wave transfer to the mirror each second? (b) Find the force that the wave exerts on the mirror. (c) Explain the relationship between the answers to parts (a) and (b).

31. ▲ A 15.0-mW helium–neon laser (λ = 632.8 nm) emits a beam of circular cross section with a diameter of 2.00 mm. (a) Find the maximum electric field in the beam. (b) What total energy is contained in a 1.00-m length of the beam? (c) Find the momentum carried by a 1.00-m length of the beam.

32. ● The intensity of sunlight at the Earth's distance from the Sun is 1 370 W/m^2. (a) Assume the Earth absorbs all the sunlight incident upon it. Find the total force the Sun exerts on the Earth due to radiation pressure. (b) Explain how this force compares with the Sun's gravitational attraction.

33. ● Assume the intensity of solar radiation incident on the upper atmosphere of the Earth is 1 370 W/m^2 and use data from Table 13.2 as necessary. Determine (a) the intensity of solar radiation incident on Mars, (b) the total power incident on Mars, and (c) the radiation force that acts on that planet if it absorbs nearly all the light. (d) State how this force compares with the gravitational attraction exerted by the Sun on Mars. (e) Compare the ratio of the gravitational force to the light-pressure force exerted on Earth, found in Problem 32, and the ratio of these forces exerted on Mars, found in part (d).

34. A uniform circular disk of mass 24.0 g and radius 40.0 cm hangs vertically from a fixed, frictionless, horizontal hinge at a point on its circumference. A beam of electromagnetic radiation with intensity 10.0 MW/m^2 is incident on the disk in a direction perpendicular to its surface. The disk is perfectly absorbing, and the resulting radiation pressure makes the disk rotate. Find the angle through which the disk rotates as it reaches its new equilibrium position. Assume the radiation is *always* perpendicular to the surface of the disk.

Section 34.6 Production of Electromagnetic Waves by an Antenna

35. Figure 34.9 shows a Hertz antenna (also known as a half-wave antenna because its length is $\lambda/2$). The antenna is located far enough from the ground that reflections do not significantly affect its radiation pattern. Most AM radio stations, however, use a Marconi antenna, which consists of the top half of a Hertz antenna. The lower end of this (quarter-wave) antenna is connected to Earth ground, and the ground itself serves as the missing lower half. What are the heights of the Marconi antennas for radio stations broadcasting at (a) 560 kHz and (b) 1 600 kHz? In the United States, these stations are at 560 and 1 600 on the AM dial.

36. Two handheld radio transceivers with dipole antennas are separated by a large, fixed distance. If the transmitting antenna is vertical, what fraction of the maximum received power will appear in the receiving antenna when it is inclined from the vertical by (a) 15.0°? (b) 45.0°? (c) 90.0°?

37. Two vertical radio-transmitting antennas are separated by half the broadcast wavelength and are driven in phase with each other. In what horizontal directions are (a) the strongest and (b) the weakest signals radiated?

38. **Review problem.** Accelerating charges radiate electromagnetic waves. Calculate the wavelength of radiation produced by a proton moving in a circle of radius R perpendicular to a magnetic field of magnitude B.

39. A large, flat sheet carries a uniformly distributed electric current with current per unit width J_s. Problem 33 in Chapter 30 demonstrated that the current creates a magnetic field on both sides of the sheet, parallel to the sheet and perpendicular to the current, with magnitude $B = \frac{1}{2}\mu_0 J_s$. If the current is in the y direction and oscillates in time according to

$$J_{\max}(\cos \omega t)\hat{\mathbf{j}} = J_{\max}[\cos(-\omega t)]\hat{\mathbf{j}}$$

the sheet radiates an electromagnetic wave as shown in Figure P34.39. The magnetic field of the wave is described

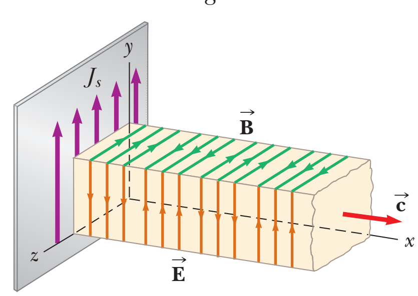


Figure P34.39

by the wave function $\vec{\mathbf{B}} = \frac{1}{2}\mu_0 J_{max}[\cos(kx - \omega t)]\hat{\mathbf{k}}$. (a) Find the wave function for the electric field in the wave. (b) Find the Poynting vector as a function of x and t. (c) Find the intensity of the wave. (d) **What If?** If the sheet is to emit radiation in each direction (normal to the plane of the sheet) with intensity 570 W/m^2, what maximum value of sinusoidal current density is required?

Section 34.7 The Spectrum of Electromagnetic Waves

40. Classify waves with frequencies of 2 Hz, 2 kHz, 2 MHz, 2 GHz, 2 THz, 2 PHz, 2 EHz, 2 ZHz, and 2 YHz on the electromagnetic spectrum. Classify waves with wavelengths of 2 km, 2 m, 2 mm, 2 μm, 2 nm, 2 pm, 2 fm, and 2 am.

41. What are the wavelengths of electromagnetic waves in free space that have frequencies of (a) 5.00×10^{19} Hz and (b) 4.00×10^9 Hz?

42. Compute an order-of-magnitude estimate for the frequency of an electromagnetic wave with wavelength equal to (a) your height and (b) the thickness of a sheet of paper. How is each wave classified on the electromagnetic spectrum?

43. Twelve VHF television channels (channels 2 through 13) lie in the range of frequencies between 54.0 MHz and 216 MHz. Each channel is assigned a width of 6.0 MHz, with the two ranges 72.0–76.0 MHz and 88.0–174 MHz reserved for non-TV purposes. (Channel 2, for example, lies between 54.0 and 60.0 MHz.) Calculate the broadcast wavelength range for (a) channel 4, (b) channel 6, and (c) channel 8.

44. ● *This just in!* An important news announcement is transmitted by radio waves to people sitting next to their radios 100 km from the station and by sound waves to people sitting across the newsroom 3.00 m from the newscaster. Who receives the news first? Explain. Take the speed of sound in air to be 343 m/s.

45. ● The United States Navy has long proposed the construction of extremely low-frequency (ELF) communication systems. Such waves could penetrate the oceans to reach distant submarines. Calculate the length of a quarter-wavelength antenna for a transmitter generating ELF waves of frequency 75.0 Hz. How practical is this plan?

Additional Problems

46. Write expressions for the electric and magnetic fields of a sinusoidal plane electromagnetic wave having a frequency of 3.00 GHz and traveling in the positive x direction. The amplitude of the electric field is 300 V/m.

47. Assume the intensity of solar radiation incident on the cloud tops of the Earth is 1 370 W/m^2. (a) Calculate the total power radiated by the Sun, taking the average Earth–Sun separation to be 1.496×10^{11} m. (b) Determine the maximum values of the electric and magnetic fields in the sunlight at the Earth's location.

48. The intensity of solar radiation at the top of the Earth's atmosphere is 1 370 W/m^2. Assuming that 60% of the incoming solar energy reaches the Earth's surface and you absorb 50% of the incident energy, make an order-of-magnitude estimate of the amount of solar energy you absorb in a 60-min sunbath.

49. ● You may wish to review Sections 16.5 and 17.3 on the transport of energy by string waves and sound. Active Figure 34.4b is a graphical representation of an electromagnetic wave moving in the x direction. A mathematical representation is given by the two equations $E = E_{max}\cos(kx - \omega t)$ and $B = B_{max}\cos(kx - \omega t)$, where E_{max} is the amplitude of the electric field and B_{max} is the amplitude of the magnetic field. (a) Sketch a graph of the electric field in this wave at the instant $t = 0$, letting your flat paper represent the xy plane. (b) Compute the energy density u_E in the electric field as a function of x at the instant $t = 0$. Compute (c) the energy density in the magnetic field u_B and (d) the total energy density u as functions of x. Add a curve to your graph representing $u = u_E + u_B$. The energy in a rectangular box of length dx along the x direction and area A parallel to the yz plane is $uA\,dx$. The energy in a "shoebox" of length λ and frontal area A is $E_\lambda = \int_0^\lambda uA\,dx$. (The symbol E_λ for energy in a wavelength imitates the notation of Sections 16.5 and 17.3.) (e) Perform the integration to compute the amount of this energy in terms of A, λ, E_{max}, and universal constants. We may think of the energy transport by the whole wave as a series of these shoeboxes going past as if carried on a conveyor belt. Each cycle passes in a time interval defined as the period $T = 1/f$ of the wave. The power the wave carries through area A is then $\mathcal{P} = T_{ER}/\Delta t = E_\lambda/T$. The intensity of the wave is $I = \mathcal{P}/A = E_\lambda/AT$. (f) Compute this intensity in terms of E_{max} and universal constants. Explain how your result compares with that given in Equation 34.24.

50. Consider a small, spherical particle of radius r located in space a distance R from the Sun. (a) Show that the ratio F_{rad}/F_{grav} is proportional to $1/r$, where F_{rad} is the force exerted by solar radiation and F_{grav} is the force of gravitational attraction. (b) The result of part (a) means that, for a sufficiently small value of r, the force exerted on the particle by solar radiation exceeds the force of gravitational attraction. Calculate the value of r for which the particle is in equilibrium under the two forces. Assume the particle has a perfectly absorbing surface and a mass density of 1.50 g/cm^3. Let the particle be located 3.75×10^{11} m from the Sun and use 214 W/m^2 as the value of the solar intensity at that point.

51. A dish antenna having a diameter of 20.0 m receives (at normal incidence) a radio signal from a distant source as shown in Figure P34.51. The radio signal is a continuous sinusoidal wave with amplitude $E_{max} = 0.200\ \mu$V/m. Assume the antenna absorbs all the radiation that falls on the dish. (a) What is the amplitude of the magnetic field in this wave? (b) What is the intensity of the radiation received by this antenna? (c) What is the power received by the antenna? (d) What force is exerted by the radio waves on the antenna?

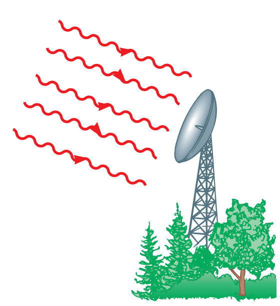


Figure P34.51

52. (a) A stationary charged particle at the origin creates an electric flux of 487 $N \cdot m^2/C$. Find the electric field it creates in the empty space around it as a function of radial distance r away from the particle. (b) A small source at the origin emits an electromagnetic wave with a single frequency into vacuum, equally in all directions, with power 25.0 W. Find the electric field amplitude as a function of radial distance away from the source. Show explicitly how the units in your expression work out. (c) At what distance is the amplitude of the electric field in the wave equal to 3.00 MV/m, representing the dielectric strength of air? (d) As the distance doubles, what happens to the field amplitude? State how this behavior compares with the behavior of the field in part (a).

53. In 1965, Arno Penzias and Robert Wilson discovered the cosmic microwave radiation left over from the Big Bang expansion of the Universe. Suppose the energy density of this background radiation is 4.00×10^{-14} J/m^3. Determine the corresponding electric field amplitude.

54. A handheld cellular telephone operates in the 860- to 900-MHz band and has a power output of 0.600 W from an antenna 10.0 cm long (Fig. P34.54). (a) Find the average magnitude of the Poynting vector 4.00 cm from the antenna at the location of a typical person's head. Assume the antenna emits energy with cylindrical wave fronts. (The actual radiation from antennas follows a more complicated pattern.) (b) The ANSI/IEEE C95.1-1991 maximum exposure standard is 0.57 mW/cm^2 for persons living near cellular telephone base stations, who would be continuously exposed to the radiation. State how the answer to part (a) compares with this standard.


Amos Morgan/Getty Images

Figure P34.54

55. A linearly polarized microwave of wavelength 1.50 cm is directed along the positive x axis. The electric field vector has a maximum value of 175 V/m and vibrates in the xy plane. (a) Assuming the magnetic field component of the wave can be written in the form $B = B_{max} \sin (kx - \omega t)$, give values for B_{max}, k, and ω. Also, determine in which plane the magnetic field vector vibrates. (b) Calculate the average value of the Poynting vector for this wave. (c) What radiation pressure would this wave exert if it were directed at normal incidence onto a perfectly reflecting sheet? (d) What acceleration would be imparted to a 500-g sheet (perfectly reflecting and at normal incidence) with dimensions of $1.00 \text{ m} \times 0.750 \text{ m}$?

56. The Earth reflects approximately 38.0% of the incident sunlight from its clouds and surface. (a) Given that the intensity of solar radiation is 1 370 W/m^2, find the radiation pressure on the Earth, in pascals, at the location where the Sun is straight overhead. (b) State how this quantity compares with normal atmospheric pressure at the Earth's surface, which is 101 kPa.

57. An astronaut, stranded in space 10.0 m from her spacecraft and at rest relative to it, has a mass (including equipment) of 110 kg. Because she has a 100-W light source that forms a directed beam, she considers using the beam as a photon rocket to propel herself continuously toward the spacecraft. (a) Calculate the time interval required for her to reach the spacecraft by this method. (b) **What If?** Suppose she throws the light source away in the direction away from the spacecraft instead. The mass of the light source is 3.00 kg, and, after being thrown, it moves at 12.0 m/s relative to the recoiling astronaut. After what time interval will the astronaut reach the spacecraft?

58. **Review problem.** A 1.00-m-diameter mirror focuses the Sun's rays onto an absorbing plate 2.00 cm in radius, which holds a can containing 1.00 L of water at 20.0°C. (a) If the solar intensity is 1.00 kW/m^2, what is the intensity on the absorbing plate? (b) What are the maximum magnitudes of the fields $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ and $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$? (c) If 40.0% of the energy is absorbed, what time interval is required to bring the water to its boiling point?

59. Lasers have been used to suspend spherical glass beads in the Earth's gravitational field. (a) A black bead has a mass of 1.00 μg and a density of 0.200 g/cm^3. Determine the radiation intensity needed to support the bead. (b) If the bead has a radius of 0.200 cm, what power is required for this laser?

60. Lasers have been used to suspend spherical glass beads in the Earth's gravitational field. (a) A black bead has mass m and density ρ. Determine the radiation intensity needed to support the bead. (b) If the bead has radius r, what power is required for this laser?

61. The electromagnetic power radiated by a nonrelativistic particle with charge q moving with acceleration a is

$$\mathcal{P} = \frac{q^2 a^2}{6\pi \epsilon_0 c^3}$$

where ϵ_0 is the permittivity of free space (also called the permittivity of vacuum) and c is the speed of light in vacuum. (a) Show that the right side of this equation has units of watts. (b) An electron is placed in a constant electric field of magnitude 100 N/C. Determine the acceleration of the electron and the electromagnetic power radiated by this electron. (c) **What If?** If a proton is placed in a cyclotron with a radius of 0.500 m and a magnetic field of magnitude 0.350 T, what electromagnetic power does this proton radiate?

62. A plane electromagnetic wave varies sinusoidally at 90.0 MHz as it travels along the $+x$ direction. The peak value of the electric field is 2.00 mV/m, and it is directed along the $\pm y$ direction. (a) Find the wavelength, the period, and the maximum value of the magnetic field. (b) Write expressions in SI units for the space and time variations of the electric field and of the magnetic field. Include both numerical values and subscripts to indicate coordinate directions. (c) Find the average power per unit area that this wave carries through space. (d) Find the average energy density in the radiation (in joules per cubic meter). (e) What radiation pressure would this wave exert upon a perfectly reflecting surface at normal incidence?

63. ▲ **Review problem.** In the absence of cable input or a satellite dish, a television set can use a dipole-receiving antenna for VHF channels and a loop antenna for UHF

channels. In Figure Q34.15, the "rabbit ears" form the VHF antenna and the smaller loop of wire is the UHF antenna. The UHF antenna produces an emf from the changing magnetic flux through the loop. The television station broadcasts a signal with a frequency f, and the signal has an electric-field amplitude E_{max} and a magnetic-field amplitude B_{max} at the location of the receiving antenna. (a) Using Faraday's law, derive an expression for the amplitude of the emf that appears in a single-turn, circular loop antenna with a radius r that is small compared with the wavelength of the wave. (b) If the electric field in the signal points vertically, what orientation of the loop gives the best reception?

Note: Section 8.1 introduced electromagnetic radiation as a mode of energy transfer, which was discussed in more detail in Section 20.7. The next three problems use ideas introduced there and in this chapter.

64. ● **Review problem.** Eliza is a black cat with four black kittens. Eliza's mass is 5.50 kg, and each kitten has mass 0.800 kg. One cool night, all five sleep snuggled together on a mat, with their bodies forming one hemisphere. (a) Assuming the purring heap has a uniform density of 990 kg/m^3, find the radius of the hemisphere. (b) Find the area of its curved surface. (c) Assume the surface temperature is 31.0°C and the emissivity is 0.970. Find the intensity of radiation emitted by the cats at their curved surface and (d) the radiated power from this surface. (e) You may think of the emitted electromagnetic wave as having a single predominant frequency (of 31.2 THz). Find the amplitude of the electric field just outside the surface of the cozy pile and (f) the amplitude of the magnetic field. (g) Are the sleeping cats charged? Are they current carrying? Are they magnetic? Are they a radiation source? Do they glow in the dark? Give an explanation for your answers so that they do not seem contradictory. (h) **What If?** The next night, the kittens all sleep alone, curling up into separate hemispheres like their mother. Find the total radiated power of the family. (For simplicity, ignore the cats' absorption of radiation from the environment.)

65. **Review problem.** (a) An elderly couple has a solar water heater installed on the roof of their house (Fig. P34.65). The heater is a flat, closed box with excellent thermal insulation. Its interior is painted black, and its front face is made of insulating glass. Its emissivity for visible light is 0.900, and its emissivity for infrared light is 0.700. Light from the noon Sun is incident perpendicular to the glass with an intensity of 1 000 W/m^2, and no water enters or leaves the box. Find the steady-state temperature of the box's interior. (b) **What If?** The couple builds an identical box with no water tubes. It lies flat on the ground in front of the house. They use it as a cold frame, where they plant seeds in early spring. Assuming the same noon Sun is at an elevation angle of 50.0°, find the steady-state temperature of the interior of the box when its ventilation slots are tightly closed.

© Bill Banaszewski/Visuals Unlimited

Figure P34.65

66. ● **Review problem.** The study of Creation suggests a Creator with an inordinate fondness for beetles and for small, red stars. A small, red star radiates electromagnetic waves with power 6.00×10^{23} W, which is only 0.159% of the luminosity of the Sun. Consider a spherical planet in a circular orbit around this star. Assume the emissivity of the planet is equal for infrared and for visible light and the planet has a uniform surface temperature. Identify the projected area over which the planet absorbs starlight and the radiating area of the planet. If beetles thrive at a temperature of 310 K, what should the radius of the planet's orbit be?

Answers to Quick Quizzes

34.1 **(i),** (b). There can be no conduction current because there is no conductor between the plates. There is a time-varying electric field because of the decreasing charge on the plates, and the time-varying electric flux represents a displacement current. **(ii),** (c). There is a time-varying electric field because of the decreasing charge on the plates. This time-varying electric field produces a magnetic field.

34.2 (c). Active Figure 34.4b shows that the $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ and $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ vectors reach their maximum positive values at the same time.

34.3 (c). The $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ field must be in the $+z$ direction in order that the Poynting vector be directed along the $-y$ direction.

34.4 (b). To maximize the pressure on the sails, they should be perfectly reflective, so the pressure is given by Equation 34.30.

34.5 (a). The best orientation is parallel to the transmitting antenna because that is the orientation of the electric field. The electric field moves electrons in the receiving antenna, thereby inducing a current that is detected and amplified.

34.6 (c). Either Equation 34.20 or Figure 34.11 can be used to find the order of magnitude of the wavelengths.

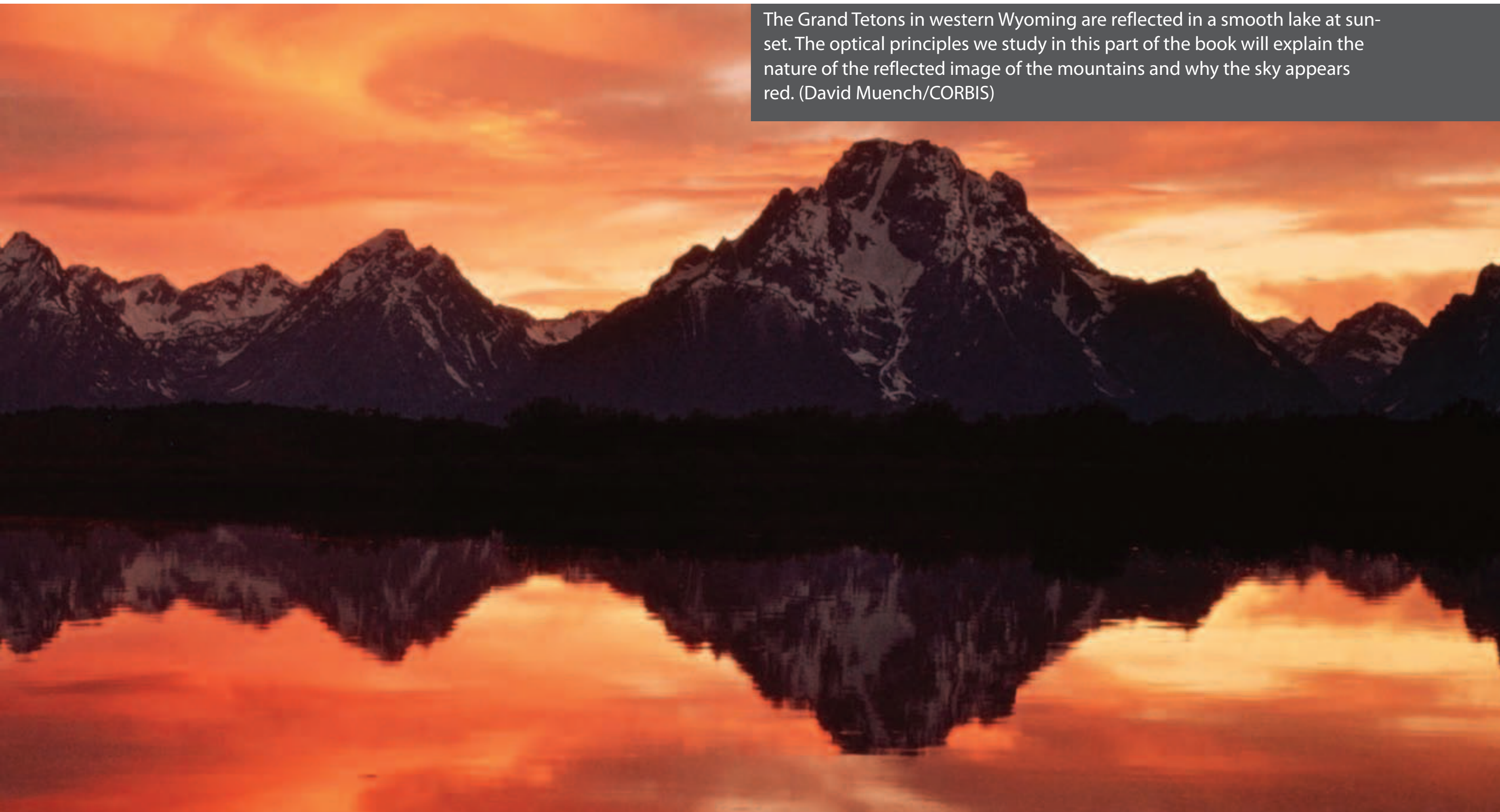
34.7 (a). Either Equation 34.20 or Figure 34.11 can be used to find the order of magnitude of the wavelength.

Light and Optics

Light is basic to almost all life on the Earth. For example, plants convert the energy transferred by sunlight to chemical energy through photosynthesis. In addition, light is the principal means by which we are able to transmit and receive information to and from objects around us and throughout the Universe. Light is a form of electromagnetic radiation and represents energy transfer from the source to the observer.

Many phenomena in our everyday life depend on the properties of light. When you watch a color television or view photos on a computer monitor, you are seeing millions of colors formed from combinations of only three colors that are physically on the screen: red, blue, and green. The blue color of the daytime sky is a result of the optical phenomenon of *scattering* of light by air molecules, as are the red and orange colors of sunrises and sunsets. You see your image in your bathroom mirror in the morning or the images of other cars in your car's rearview mirror when you are driving. These images result from *reflection* of light. If you wear glasses or contact lenses, you are depending on *refraction* of light for clear vision. The colors of a rainbow result from *dispersion* of light as it passes through raindrops hovering in the sky after a rainstorm. If you have ever seen the colored circles of the glory surrounding the shadow of your airplane on clouds as you fly above them, you are seeing an effect that results from *interference* of light. The phenomena mentioned here have been studied by scientists and are well understood.

In the introduction to Chapter 35, we discuss the dual nature of light. In some cases, it is best to model light as a stream of particles; in others, a wave model works better. Chapters 35 through 38 concentrate on those aspects of light that are best understood through the wave model of light. In Part 6, we will investigate the particle nature of light.



The Grand Tetons in western Wyoming are reflected in a smooth lake at sunset. The optical principles we study in this part of the book will explain the nature of the reflected image of the mountains and why the sky appears red. (David Muench/CORBIS)

Image not available due to copyright restrictions

35 The Nature of Light and the Laws of Geometric Optics

This first chapter on optics begins by introducing two historical models for light and discussing early methods for measuring the speed of light. Next we study the fundamental phenomena of geometric optics: reflection of light from a surface and refraction as the light crosses the boundary between two media. We will also study the dispersion of light as it refracts into materials, resulting in visual displays such as the rainbow. Finally, we investigate the phenomenon of total internal reflection, which is the basis for the operation of optical fibers and the burgeoning technology of fiber optics.

Image not available due to copyright restrictions

35.1 The Nature of Light

Before the beginning of the nineteenth century, light was considered to be a stream of particles that either was emitted by the object being viewed or emanated from the eyes of the viewer. Newton, the chief architect of the particle model of light, held that particles were emitted from a light source and that these particles stimulated the sense of sight upon entering the eye. Using this idea, he was able to explain reflection and refraction.

Most scientists accepted Newton's particle model. During Newton's lifetime, however, another model was proposed, one that argued that light might be some sort of wave motion. In 1678, Dutch physicist and astronomer Christian Huygens showed that a wave model of light could also explain reflection and refraction.

In 1801, Thomas Young (1773–1829) provided the first clear experimental demonstration of the wave nature of light. Young showed that under appropriate conditions light rays interfere with one another. Such behavior could not be explained at that time by a particle model because there was no conceivable way in which two or more particles could come together and cancel one another. Additional developments during the nineteenth century led to the general acceptance of the wave model of light, the most important resulting from the work of Maxwell, who in 1873 asserted that light was a form of high-frequency electromagnetic wave. As discussed in Chapter 34, Hertz provided experimental confirmation of Maxwell's theory in 1887 by producing and detecting electromagnetic waves.

Although the wave model and the classical theory of electricity and magnetism were able to explain most known properties of light, they could not explain some subsequent experiments. The most striking phenomenon is the photoelectric effect, also discovered by Hertz: when light strikes a metal surface, electrons are sometimes ejected from the surface. As one example of the difficulties that arose, experiments showed that the kinetic energy of an ejected electron is independent of the light intensity. This finding contradicted the wave model, which held that a more intense beam of light should add more energy to the electron. Einstein proposed an explanation of the photoelectric effect in 1905 using a model based on the concept of quantization developed by Max Planck (1858–1947) in 1900. The quantization model assumes the energy of a light wave is present in particles called *photons;* hence, the energy is said to be quantized. According to Einstein's theory, the energy of a photon is proportional to the frequency of the electromagnetic wave:

$$E = hf \tag{35.1}$$

◀ Energy of a photon

where the constant of proportionality $h = 6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s}$ is called *Planck's constant.* We study this theory in Chapter 40.

In view of these developments, light must be regarded as having a dual nature. **Light exhibits the characteristics of a wave in some situations and the characteristics of a particle in other situations.** Light is light, to be sure. The question "Is light a wave or a particle?" is inappropriate, however. Sometimes light acts like a wave, and other times it acts like a particle. In the next few chapters, we investigate the wave nature of light.

35.2 Measurements of the Speed of Light

Light travels at such a high speed (to three digits, $c = 3.00 \times 10^8$ m/s) that early attempts to measure its speed were unsuccessful. Galileo attempted to measure the speed of light by positioning two observers in towers separated by approximately 10 km. Each observer carried a shuttered lantern. One observer would open his lantern first, and then the other would open his lantern at the moment he saw the light from the first lantern. Galileo reasoned that by knowing the transit time of the light beams from one lantern to the other and the distance between the two lanterns, he could obtain the speed. His results were inconclusive. Today, we realize (as Galileo concluded) that it is impossible to measure the speed of light in this manner because the transit time for the light is so much less than the reaction time of the observers.

Roemer's Method

In 1675, Danish astronomer Ole Roemer (1644–1710) made the first successful estimate of the speed of light. Roemer's technique involved astronomical observations of Io, one of the moons of Jupiter. Io has a period of revolution around Jupiter of approximately 42.5 h. The period of revolution of Jupiter around the Sun is about 12 yr; therefore, as the Earth moves through 90° around the Sun, Jupiter revolves through only $(\frac{1}{12})90° = 7.5°$ (Fig. 35.1).

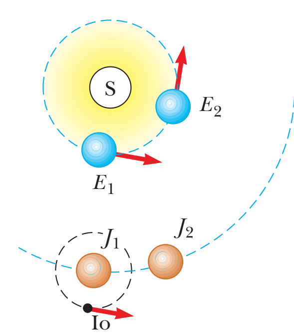


Figure 35.1 Roemer's method for measuring the speed of light. In the time interval during which the Earth travels 90° around the Sun (three months), Jupiter travels only about 7.5° (drawing not to scale).

An observer using the orbital motion of Io as a clock would expect the orbit to have a constant period. After collecting data for more than a year, however, Roemer observed a systematic variation in Io's period. He found that the periods were longer than average when the Earth was receding from Jupiter and shorter than average when the Earth was approaching Jupiter. Roemer attributed this variation in period to the distance between the Earth and Jupiter changing from one observation to the next.

Using Roemer's data, Huygens estimated the lower limit for the speed of light to be approximately 2.3×10^8 m/s. This experiment is important historically because it demonstrated that light does have a finite speed and gave an estimate of this speed.

Fizeau's Method

The first successful method for measuring the speed of light by means of purely terrestrial techniques was developed in 1849 by French physicist Armand H. L. Fizeau (1819–1896). Figure 35.2 represents a simplified diagram of Fizeau's apparatus. The basic procedure is to measure the total time interval during which light travels from some point to a distant mirror and back. If d is the distance between the light source (considered to be at the location of the wheel) and the mirror and if the time interval for one round trip is Δt, the speed of light is $c = 2d/\Delta t$.

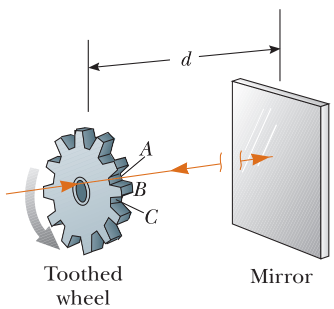


Figure 35.2 Fizeau's method for measuring the speed of light using a rotating toothed wheel. The light source is considered to be at the location of the wheel; therefore, the distance d is known.

To measure the transit time, Fizeau used a rotating toothed wheel, which converts a continuous beam of light into a series of light pulses. The rotation of such a wheel controls what an observer at the light source sees. For example, if the pulse traveling toward the mirror and passing the opening at point A in Figure 35.2 should return to the wheel at the instant tooth B had rotated into position to cover the return path, the pulse would not reach the observer. At a greater rate of rotation, the opening at point C could move into position to allow the reflected pulse to reach the observer. Knowing the distance d, the number of teeth in the wheel, and the angular speed of the wheel, Fizeau arrived at a value of 3.1×10^8 m/s. Similar measurements made by subsequent investigators yielded more precise values for c, which led to the currently accepted value of $2.997\,9 \times 10^8$ m/s.

EXAMPLE 35.1 Measuring the Speed of Light with Fizeau's Wheel

Assume Fizeau's wheel has 360 teeth and rotates at 27.5 rev/s when a pulse of light passing through opening A in Figure 35.2 is blocked by tooth B on its return. If the distance to the mirror is 7 500 m, what is the speed of light?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine a pulse of light passing through opening A in Figure 35.2 and reflecting from the mirror. By the time the pulse arrives back at the wheel, tooth B has rotated into the position previously occupied by opening A.

Categorize We model the wheel as a rigid object under constant angular speed and the pulse of light as a particle under constant speed.

Analyze The wheel has 360 teeth, so it must have 360 openings. Therefore, because the light passes through opening A but is blocked by the tooth immediately adjacent to A, the wheel must rotate through an angular displacement of $\frac{1}{720}$ rev in the time interval during which the light pulse makes its round trip.

Use the rigid object under constant angular speed model to find the time interval for the pulse's round trip:

$$\Delta t = \frac{\Delta\theta}{\omega} = \frac{\frac{1}{720}\text{ rev}}{27.5\text{ rev/s}} = 5.05 \times 10^{-5}\text{ s}$$

From the particle under constant speed model, find the speed of the pulse of light:

$$c = \frac{2d}{\Delta t} = \frac{2(7\,500\text{ m})}{5.05 \times 10^{-5}\text{ s}} = \boxed{2.97 \times 10^8\text{ m/s}}$$

Finalize This result is very close to the actual value of the speed of light.

35.3 The Ray Approximation in Geometric Optics

The field of **geometric optics** involves the study of the propagation of light. Geometric optics assumes light travels in a fixed direction in a straight line as it passes through a uniform medium and changes its direction when it meets the surface of a different medium or if the optical properties of the medium are nonuniform in either space or time. In our study of geometric optics here and in Chapter 36, we use what is called the **ray approximation.** To understand this approximation, first notice that the rays of a given wave are straight lines perpendicular to the wave fronts as illustrated in Figure 35.3 for a plane wave. In the ray approximation, a wave moving through a medium travels in a straight line in the direction of its rays.

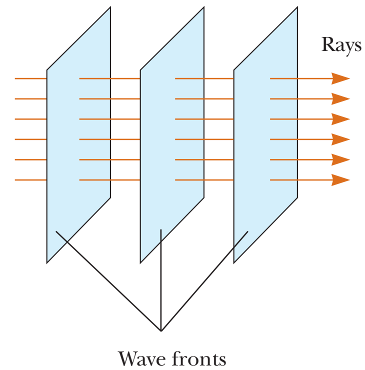


Figure 35.3 A plane wave propagating to the right. Notice that the rays, which always point in the direction of the wave propagation, are straight lines perpendicular to the wave fronts.

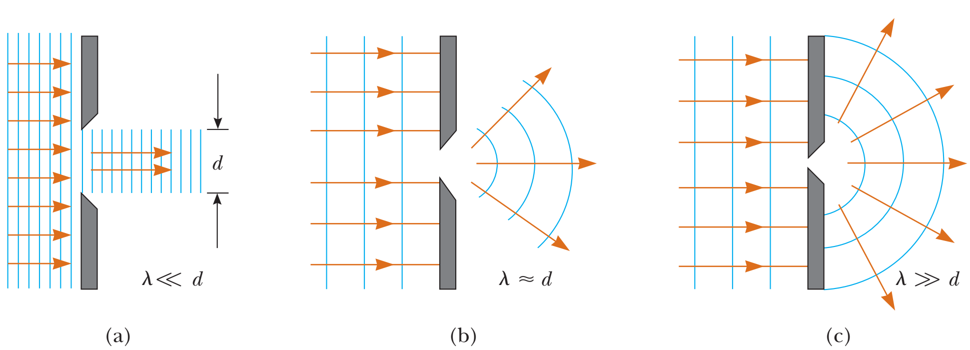
If the wave meets a barrier in which there is a circular opening whose diameter is much larger than the wavelength as in Active Figure 35.4a, the wave emerging from the opening continues to move in a straight line (apart from some small edge effects); hence, the ray approximation is valid. If the diameter of the opening is on the order of the wavelength as in Active Figure 35.4b, the waves spread out from the opening in all directions. This effect, called *diffraction,* will be studied in Chapter 37. Finally, if the opening is much smaller than the wavelength, the opening can be approximated as a point source of waves as shown in Active Fig. 35.4c.

Similar effects are seen when waves encounter an opaque object of dimension d. In that case, when $\lambda \ll d$, the object casts a sharp shadow.

The ray approximation and the assumption that $\lambda \ll d$ are used in this chapter and in Chapter 36, both of which deal with geometric optics. This approximation is very good for the study of mirrors, lenses, prisms, and associated optical instruments such as telescopes, cameras, and eyeglasses.

35.4 The Wave Under Reflection

We introduced the concept of reflection of waves in a discussion of waves on strings in Section 16.4. As with waves on strings, when a light ray traveling in one medium encounters a boundary with another medium, part of the incident light is reflected. For waves on a one-dimensional string, the reflected wave must necessarily be restricted to a direction along the string. For light waves traveling in three-dimensional space, no such restriction applies and the reflected light waves can be



ACTIVE FIGURE 35.4

A plane wave of wavelength λ is incident on a barrier in which there is an opening of diameter d. (a) When $\lambda \ll d$, the rays continue in a straight-line path and the ray approximation remains valid. (b) When $\lambda \approx d$, the rays spread out after passing through the opening. (c) When $\lambda \gg d$, the opening behaves as a point source emitting spherical waves.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the size of the opening and observe the effect on the waves passing through.

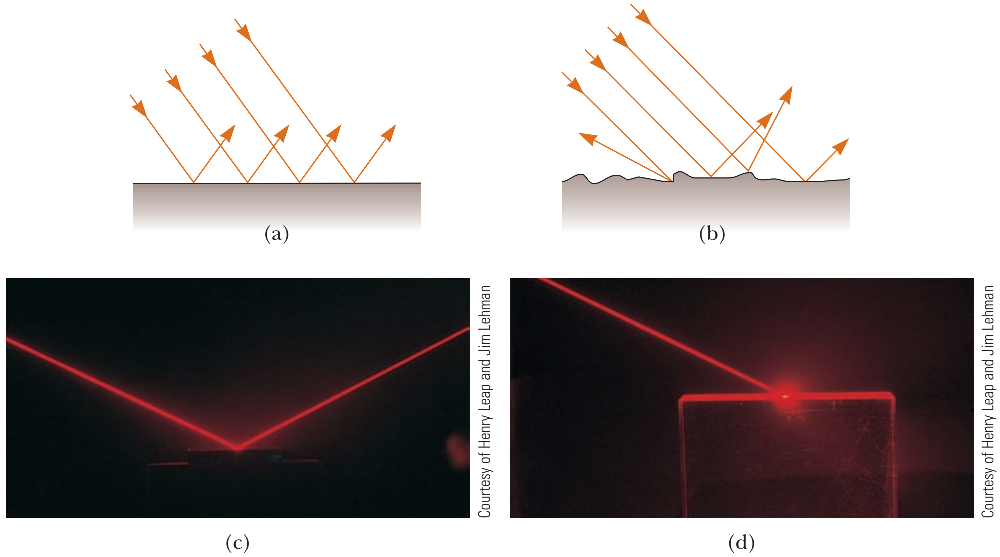
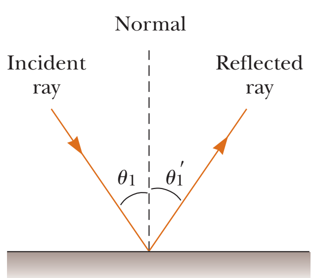


Figure 35.5 Schematic representation of (a) specular reflection, where the reflected rays are all parallel to each other, and (b) diffuse reflection, where the reflected rays travel in random directions. (c) and (d) Photographs of specular and diffuse reflection using laser light.

in directions different from the direction of the incident waves. Figure 35.5a shows several rays of a beam of light incident on a smooth, mirror-like, reflecting surface. The reflected rays are parallel to one another as indicated in the figure. The direction of a reflected ray is in the plane perpendicular to the reflecting surface that contains the incident ray. Reflection of light from such a smooth surface is called **specular reflection.** If the reflecting surface is rough as in Figure 35.5b, the surface reflects the rays not as a parallel set but in various directions. Reflection from any rough surface is known as **diffuse reflection.** A surface behaves as a smooth surface as long as the surface variations are much smaller than the wavelength of the incident light.



ACTIVE FIGURE 35.6

According to the wave under reflection model, $\theta_1' = \theta_1$. The incident ray, the reflected ray, and the normal all lie in the same plane.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to vary the incident angle and see the effect on the reflected ray.

The difference between these two kinds of reflection explains why it is more difficult to see while driving on a rainy night than on a dry, sunny day. If the road is wet, the smooth surface of the water specularly reflects most of your headlight beams away from your car (and perhaps into the eyes of oncoming drivers). When the road is dry, its rough surface diffusely reflects part of your headlight beam back toward you, allowing you to see the road more clearly. In this book, we restrict our study to specular reflection and use the term *reflection* to mean specular reflection.

Consider a light ray traveling in air and incident at an angle on a flat, smooth surface as shown in Active Figure 35.6. The incident and reflected rays make angles θ_1 and θ_1', respectively, where the angles are measured between the normal and the rays. (The normal is a line drawn perpendicular to the surface at the point where the incident ray strikes the surface.) Experiments and theory show that **the angle of reflection equals the angle of incidence:**

Law of reflection ▶

$$\theta_1' = \theta_1 \tag{35.2}$$

This relationship is called the **law of reflection.** Because reflection of waves from an interface between two media is a common phenomenon, we identify an analysis model for this situation: the **wave under reflection.** Equation 35.2 is the mathematical representation of this model.

PITFALL PREVENTION 35.1

Subscript Notation

The subscript 1 refers to parameters for the light in the initial medium. When light travels from one medium to another, we use the subscript 2 for the parameters associated with the light in the new medium. In this discussion, the light stays in the same medium, so we only have to use the subscript 1.

Quick Quiz 35.1 In the movies, you sometimes see an actor looking in a mirror and you can see his face in the mirror. During the filming of such a scene, what does the actor see in the mirror? (a) his face (b) your face (c) the director's face (d) the movie camera (e) impossible to determine

EXAMPLE 35.2 The Double-Reflected Light Ray

Two mirrors make an angle of 120° with each other as illustrated in Figure 35.7a. A ray is incident on mirror M_1 at an angle of 65° to the normal. Find the direction of the ray after it is reflected from mirror M_2.

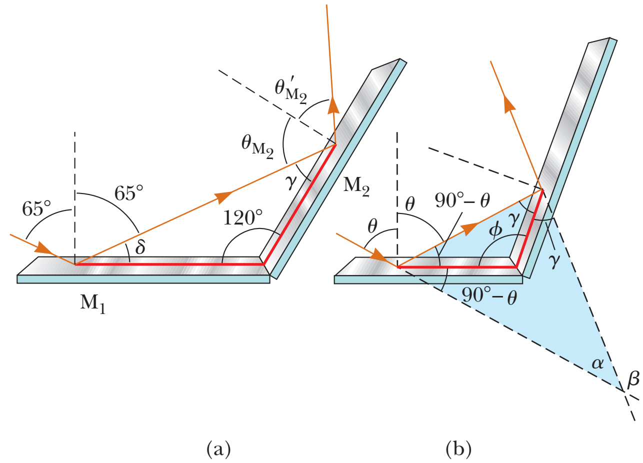


Figure 35.7 (Example 35.2) (a) Mirrors M_1 and M_2 make an angle of 120° with each other. (b) The geometry for an arbitrary mirror angle.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Figure 35.7a helps conceptualize this situation. The incoming ray reflects from the first mirror, and the reflected ray is directed toward the second mirror. Therefore, there is a second reflection from the second mirror.

Categorize Because the interactions with both mirrors are simple reflections, we apply the wave under reflection model and some geometry.

Analyze From the law of reflection, the first reflected ray makes an angle of 65° with the normal.

Find the angle the first reflected ray makes with the horizontal:

$$\delta = 90° - 65° = 25°$$

From the triangle made by the first reflected ray and the two mirrors, find the angle the reflected ray makes with M_2:

$$\gamma = 180° - 25° - 120° = 35°$$

Find the angle the first reflected ray makes with the normal to M_2:

$$\theta_{M_2} = 90° - 35° = 55°$$

From the law of reflection, find the angle the second reflected ray makes with the normal to M_2:

$$\theta'_{M_2} = \theta_{M_2} = \boxed{55°}$$

Finalize Let's explore variations in the angle between the mirrors as follows.

What If? If the incoming and outgoing rays in Figure 35.7a are extended behind the mirror, they cross at an angle of 60° and the overall change in direction of the light ray is 120°. This angle is the same as that between the mirrors. What if the angle between the mirrors is changed? Is the overall change in the direction of the light ray always equal to the angle between the mirrors?

Answer Making a general statement based on one data point or one observation is always a dangerous practice! Let's investigate the change in direction for a general situation. Figure 35.7b shows the mirrors at an arbitrary angle ϕ and the incoming light ray striking the mirror at an arbitrary angle θ with respect to the normal to the mirror surface. In accordance with the law of reflection and the sum of the interior angles of a triangle, the angle γ is given by $180° - (90° - \theta) - \phi = 90° + \theta - \phi$.

Consider the triangle highlighted in blue in Figure 35.7b and determine α:

$$\alpha + 2\gamma + 2(90° - \theta) = 180° \quad \rightarrow \quad \alpha = 2(\theta - \gamma)$$

Notice from Figure 35.7b that the change in direction of the light ray is angle β. Use the geometry in the figure to solve for β:

$$\beta = 180° - \alpha = 180° - 2(\theta - \gamma)$$
$$= 180° - 2[\theta - (90° + \theta - \phi)] = 360° - 2\phi$$

Notice that β is not equal to ϕ. For $\phi = 120°$, we obtain $\beta = 120°$, which happens to be the same as the mirror angle; that is true only for this special angle between the mirrors, however. For example, if $\phi = 90°$, we obtain $\beta = 180°$. In that case, the light is reflected straight back to its origin.

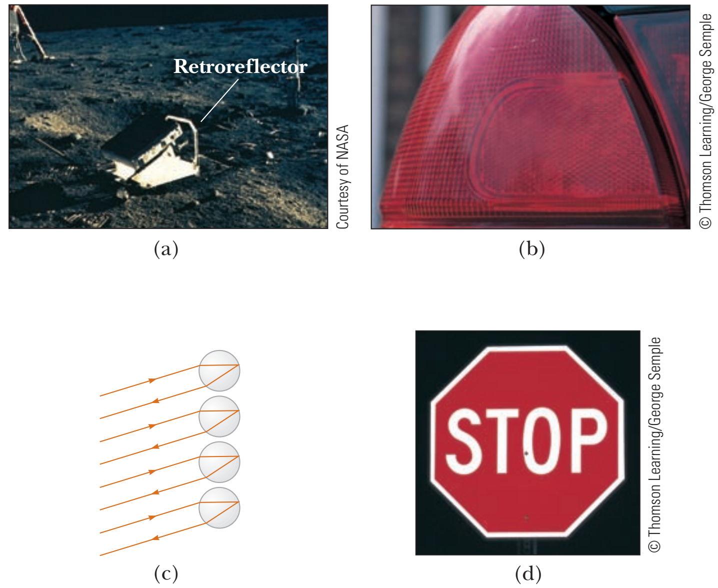


Figure 35.8 Applications of retroreflection. (a) This panel on the Moon reflects a laser beam directly back to its source on the Earth. (b) An automobile taillight has small retroreflectors to ensure that headlight beams are reflected back toward the car that sent them. (c) A light ray hitting a transparent sphere at the proper position is retroreflected. (d) This stop sign appears to glow in headlight beams because its surface is covered with a layer of many tiny retroreflecting spheres. What would you see if the sign had a mirror-like surface?

If the angle between two mirrors is 90°, the reflected beam returns to the source parallel to its original path as discussed in the **What If?** section of the preceding example. This phenomenon, called *retroreflection,* has many practical applications. If a third mirror is placed perpendicular to the first two so that the three form the corner of a cube, retroreflection works in three dimensions. In 1969, a panel of many small reflectors was placed on the Moon by the *Apollo 11* astronauts (Fig. 35.8a). A laser beam from the Earth is reflected directly back on itself, and its transit time is measured. This information is used to determine the distance to the Moon with an uncertainty of 15 cm. (Imagine how difficult it would be to align a regular flat mirror so that the reflected laser beam would hit a particular location on the Earth!) A more everyday application is found in automobile taillights. Part of the plastic making up the taillight is formed into many tiny cube corners (Fig. 35.8b) so that headlight beams from cars approaching from the rear are reflected back to the drivers. Instead of cube corners, small spherical bumps are sometimes used (Fig. 35.8c). Tiny clear spheres are used in a coating material found on many road signs. Due to retroreflection from these spheres, the stop sign in Figure 35.8d appears much brighter than it would if it were simply a flat, shiny surface. Retroreflectors are also used for reflective panels on running shoes and running clothing to allow joggers to be seen at night.

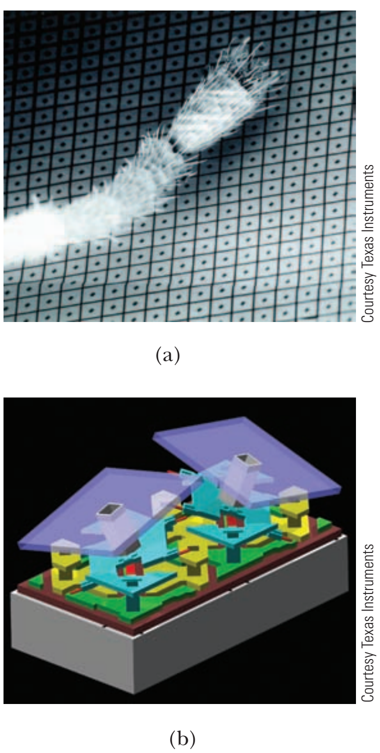


Figure 35.9 (a) An array of mirrors on the surface of a digital micromirror device. Each mirror has an area of approximately 16 μm^2. To provide a sense of scale, the leg of an ant appears in the photograph. (b) A close-up view of two single micromirrors. The mirror on the left is "on," and the one on the right is "off."

Another practical application of the law of reflection is the digital projection of movies, television shows, and computer presentations. A digital projector uses an optical semiconductor chip called a *digital micromirror device.* This device contains an array of tiny mirrors (Fig. 35.9a) that can be individually tilted by means of signals to an address electrode underneath the edge of the mirror. Each mirror corresponds to a pixel in the projected image. When the pixel corresponding to a given mirror is to be bright, the mirror is in the "on" position and is oriented so as to reflect light from a source illuminating the array to the screen (Fig. 35.9b). When the pixel for this mirror is to be dark, the mirror is "off" and is tilted so that the light is reflected away from the screen. The brightness of the pixel is determined by the total time interval during which the mirror is in the "on" position during the display of one image.

Digital movie projectors use three micromirror devices, one for each of the primary colors red, blue, and green, so that movies can be displayed with up to 35 trillion colors. Because information is stored as binary data, a digital movie does not degrade with time as does film. Furthermore, because the movie is entirely in the form of computer software, it can be delivered to theaters by means of satellites, optical discs, or optical fiber networks.

Several movies have been projected digitally to audiences, and polls show that 85% of viewers describe the image quality as "excellent." The first all-digital movie, from cinematography to postproduction to projection, was *Star Wars Episode II: Attack of the Clones* in 2002.

35.5 The Wave Under Refraction

In addition to the phenomenon of reflection discussed for waves on strings in Section 16.4, we also found that some of the energy of the incident wave transmits into the new medium. Similarly, when a ray of light traveling through a transparent medium encounters a boundary leading into another transparent medium as shown in Active Figure 35.10, part of the energy is reflected and part enters the second medium. As with reflection, the direction of the transmitted wave exhibits an interesting behavior because of the three-dimensional nature of the light waves. The ray that enters the second medium is bent at the boundary and is said to be **refracted.** The incident ray, the reflected ray, and the refracted ray all lie in the same plane. The **angle of refraction,** θ_2 in Active Figure 35.10a, depends on the properties of the two media and on the angle of incidence θ_1 through the relationship

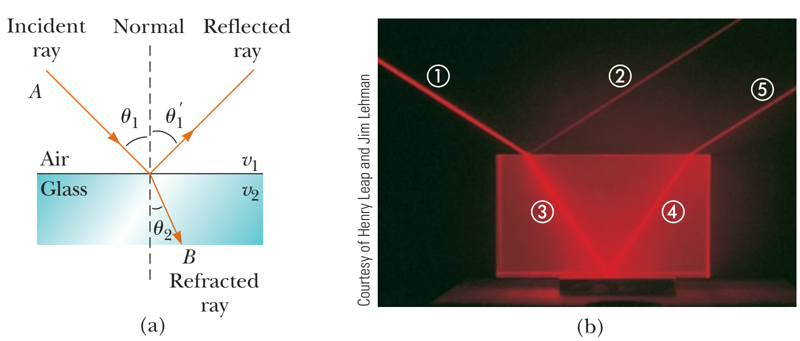
$$\frac{\sin\theta_2}{\sin\theta_1} = \frac{v_2}{v_1} \tag{35.3}$$

where v_1 is the speed of light in the first medium and v_2 is the speed of light in the second medium.

The path of a light ray through a refracting surface is reversible. For example, the ray shown in Active Figure 35.10a travels from point A to point B. If the ray originated at B, it would travel along line BA to reach point A and the reflected ray would point downward and to the left in the glass.

Quick Quiz 35.2 If beam ① is the incoming beam in Active Figure 35.10b, which of the other four red lines are reflected beams and which are refracted beams?

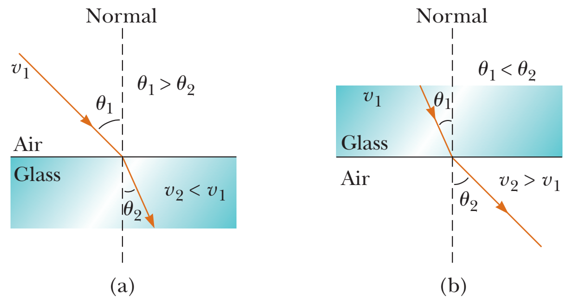
From Equation 35.3, we can infer that when light moves from a material in which its speed is high to a material in which its speed is lower as shown in Active



ACTIVE FIGURE 35.10

(a) A ray obliquely incident on an air–glass interface behaves according to the wave under refraction model. The refracted ray is bent toward the normal because $v_2 < v_1$. All rays and the normal lie in the same plane. (b) Light incident on the Lucite block refracts both when it enters the block and when it leaves the block.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to vary the incident angle and see the effect on the reflected and refracted rays.



ACTIVE FIGURE 35.11

(a) When the light beam moves from air into glass, the light slows down upon entering the glass and its path is bent toward the normal. (b) When the beam moves from glass into air, the light speeds up upon entering the air and its path is bent away from the normal.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to observe light passing through three layers of material. You can vary the incident angle and see the effect on the refracted rays for a variety of values of the index of refraction (defined in Equation 35.4) of the three materials.

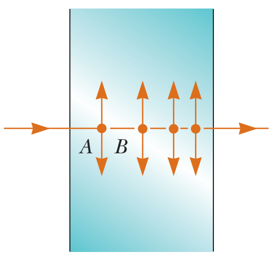


Figure 35.12 Light passing from one atom to another in a medium. The dots are electrons, and the vertical arrows represent their oscillations.

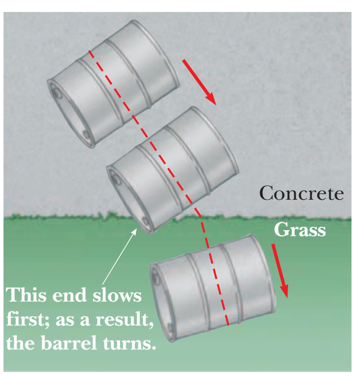


Figure 35.13 Overhead view of a barrel rolling from concrete onto grass.

Figure 35.11a, the angle of refraction θ_2 is less than the angle of incidence θ_1 and the ray is bent *toward* the normal. If the ray moves from a material in which light moves slowly to a material in which it moves more rapidly as illustrated in Active Figure 35.11b, θ_2 is greater than θ_1 and the ray is bent *away* from the normal.

The behavior of light as it passes from air into another substance and then re-emerges into air is often a source of confusion to students. When light travels in air, its speed is 3.00×10^8 m/s, but this speed is reduced to approximately 2×10^8 m/s when the light enters a block of glass. When the light re-emerges into air, its speed instantaneously increases to its original value of 3.00×10^8 m/s. This effect is far different from what happens, for example, when a bullet is fired through a block of wood. In that case, the speed of the bullet decreases as it moves through the wood because some of its original energy is used to tear apart the wood fibers. When the bullet enters the air once again, it emerges at a speed lower than it had when it entered the wood.

To see why light behaves as it does, consider Figure 35.12, which represents a beam of light entering a piece of glass from the left. Once inside the glass, the light may encounter an electron bound to an atom, indicated as point *A*. Let's assume light is absorbed by the atom, which causes the electron to oscillate (a detail represented by the double-headed vertical arrows). The oscillating electron then acts as an antenna and radiates the beam of light toward an atom at *B*, where the light is again absorbed. The details of these absorptions and radiations are best explained in terms of quantum mechanics (Chapter 42). For now, it is sufficient to think of light passing from one atom to another through the glass. Although light travels from one atom to another at 3.00×10^8 m/s, the absorption and radiation that take place cause the *average* light speed through the material to fall to about 2×10^8 m/s. Once the light emerges into the air, absorption and radiation cease and the light travels at a constant speed of 3.00×10^8 m/s.

A mechanical analog of refraction is shown in Figure 35.13. When the left end of the rolling barrel reaches the grass, it slows down, whereas the right end remains on the concrete and moves at its original speed. This difference in speeds causes the barrel to pivot, which changes the direction of travel.

Index of Refraction

In general, the speed of light in any material is *less* than its speed in vacuum. In fact, *light travels at its maximum speed c in vacuum*. It is convenient to define the **index of refraction** n of a medium to be the ratio

Index of refraction ▶

$$n \equiv \frac{\text{speed of light in vacuum}}{\text{speed of light in a medium}} \equiv \frac{c}{v} \tag{35.4}$$

TABLE 35.1

Indices of Refraction

Substance	Index of Refraction	Substance	Index of Refraction
Solids at 20°C		*Liquids at 20°C*	
Cubic zirconia	2.20	Benzene	1.501
Diamond (C)	2.419	Carbon disulfide	1.628
Fluorite (CaF_2)	1.434	Carbon tetrachloride	1.461
Fused quartz (SiO_2)	1.458	Ethyl alcohol	1.361
Gallium phosphide	3.50	Glycerin	1.473
Glass, crown	1.52	Water	1.333
Glass, flint	1.66		
Ice (H_2O)	1.309	*Gases at 0°C, 1 atm*	
Polystyrene	1.49	Air	1.000 293
Sodium chloride (NaCl)	1.544	Carbon dioxide	1.000 45

Note: All values are for light having a wavelength of 589 nm in vacuum.

PITFALL PREVENTION 35.2

***n* Is Not an Integer Here**

The symbol n has been used several times as an integer, such as in Chapter 18 to indicate the standing wave mode on a string or in an air column. The index of refraction n is *not* an integer.

This definition shows that the index of refraction is a dimensionless number greater than unity because v is always less than c. Furthermore, n is equal to unity for vacuum. The indices of refraction for various substances are listed in Table 35.1.

As light travels from one medium to another, its frequency does not change but its wavelength does. To see why that is true, consider Figure 35.14. Waves pass an observer at point A in medium 1 with a certain frequency and are incident on the boundary between medium 1 and medium 2. The frequency with which the waves pass an observer at point B in medium 2 must equal the frequency at which they pass point A. If that were not the case, energy would be piling up or disappearing at the boundary. Because there is no mechanism for that to occur, the frequency must be a constant as a light ray passes from one medium into another. Therefore, because the relationship $v = \lambda f$ (Eq. 16.12) must be valid in both media and because $f_1 = f_2 = f$, we see that

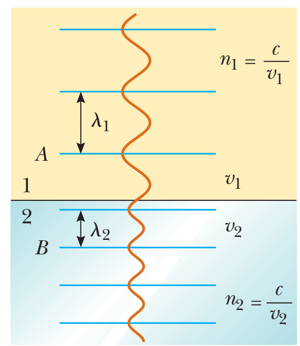


Figure 35.14 As a wave moves from medium 1 to medium 2, its wavelength changes but its frequency remains constant.

$$v_1 = \lambda_1 f \quad \text{and} \quad v_2 = \lambda_2 f \tag{35.5}$$

Because $v_1 \neq v_2$, it follows that $\lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2$ as shown in Figure 35.14.

We can obtain a relationship between index of refraction and wavelength by dividing the first Equation 35.5 by the second and then using Equation 35.4:

$$\frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2} = \frac{v_1}{v_2} = \frac{c/n_1}{c/n_2} = \frac{n_2}{n_1} \tag{35.6}$$

This expression gives

$$\lambda_1 n_1 = \lambda_2 n_2$$

If medium 1 is vacuum or, for all practical purposes, air, then $n_1 = 1$. Hence, it follows from Equation 35.6 that the index of refraction of any medium can be expressed as the ratio

$$n = \frac{\lambda}{\lambda_n} \tag{35.7}$$

where λ is the wavelength of light in vacuum and λ_n is the wavelength of light in the medium whose index of refraction is n. From Equation 35.7, we see that because $n > 1$, $\lambda_n < \lambda$.

PITFALL PREVENTION 35.3

An Inverse Relationship

The index of refraction is *inversely* proportional to the wave speed. As the wave speed v decreases, the index of refraction n increases. Therefore, the higher the index of refraction of a material, the more it *slows down* light from its speed in vacuum. The more the light slows down, the more θ_2 differs from θ_1 in Equation 35.8.

We are now in a position to express Equation 35.3 in an alternative form. Replacing the v_2/v_1 term in Equation 35.3 with n_1/n_2 from Equation 35.6 gives

◀ Snell's law of refraction

$$n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2 \tag{35.8}$$

The experimental discovery of this relationship is usually credited to Willebrord Snell (1591–1626) and it is therefore known as **Snell's law of refraction.** We shall examine this equation further in Section 35.6. Refraction of waves at an interface between two media is a common phenomenon, so we identify an analysis model for this situation: the **wave under refraction.** Equation 35.8 is the mathematical representation of this model for electromagnetic radiation. Other waves, such as seismic waves and sound waves, also exhibit refraction according to this model, and the mathematical representation for these waves is Equation 35.3.

Quick Quiz 35.3 Light passes from a material with index of refraction 1.3 into one with index of refraction 1.2. Compared to the incident ray, what happens to the refracted ray? (a) It bends toward the normal. (b) It is undeflected. (c) It bends away from the normal.

EXAMPLE 35.3 Angle of Refraction for Glass

A light ray of wavelength 589 nm traveling through air is incident on a smooth, flat slab of crown glass at an angle of 30.0° to the normal.

(A) Find the angle of refraction.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Study Active Figure 35.11a, which illustrates the refraction process occurring in this problem.

Categorize We evaluate results by using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Rearrange Snell's law of refraction to find $\sin\theta_2$:

$$\sin\theta_2 = \frac{n_1}{n_2}\sin\theta_1$$

Substitute the incident angle and, from Table 35.1, $n_1 = 1.00$ for air and $n_2 = 1.52$ for crown glass:

$$\sin\theta_2 = \left(\frac{1.00}{1.52}\right)\sin 30.0° = 0.329$$

Solve for θ_2:

$$\theta_2 = \sin^{-1}(0.329)$$
$$= \boxed{19.2°}$$

(B) Find the speed of this light once it enters the glass.

SOLUTION

Solve Equation 35.4 for the speed of light in the glass:

$$v = \frac{c}{n}$$

Substitute numerical values:

$$v = \frac{3.00 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s}}{1.52} = \boxed{1.97 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s}}$$

(C) What is the wavelength of this light in the glass?

SOLUTION

Use Equation 35.7 to find the wavelength in the glass:

$$\lambda_n = \frac{\lambda}{n} = \frac{589\ \text{nm}}{1.52} = \boxed{388\ \text{nm}}$$

EXAMPLE 35.4 Light Passing Through a Slab

A light beam passes from medium 1 to medium 2, with the latter medium being a thick slab of material whose index of refraction is n_2 (Fig. 35.15). Show that the beam emerging into medium 1 from the other side is parallel to the incident beam.

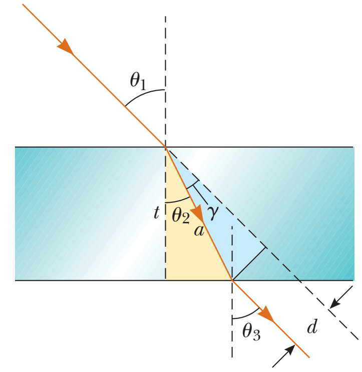


Figure 35.15 (Example 35.4) When light passes through a flat slab of material, the emerging beam is parallel to the incident beam; therefore, $\theta_1 = \theta_3$. The dashed line drawn parallel to the ray coming out the bottom of the slab represents the path the light would take were the slab not there.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Follow the path of the light beam as it enters and exits the slab of material in Figure 35.15. The ray bends toward the normal upon entering and away from the normal upon leaving.

Categorize We evaluate results by using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Apply Snell's law of refraction to the upper surface:

$$(1) \quad \sin\theta_2 = \frac{n_1}{n_2}\sin\theta_1$$

Apply Snell's law to the lower surface:

$$(2) \quad \sin\theta_3 = \frac{n_2}{n_1}\sin\theta_2$$

Substitute Equation (1) into Equation (2):

$$\sin\theta_3 = \frac{n_2}{n_1}\left(\frac{n_1}{n_2}\sin\theta_1\right) = \sin\theta_1$$

Therefore, $\theta_3 = \theta_1$ and the slab does not alter the direction of the beam. It does, however, offset the beam parallel to itself by the distance d shown in Figure 35.15.

What If? What if the thickness t of the slab is doubled? Does the offset distance d also double?

Answer Consider the region of the light path within the slab in Figure 35.15. The distance a is the hypotenuse of two right triangles.

Find an expression for a from the gold triangle:

$$a = \frac{t}{\cos\theta_2}$$

Find an expression for d from the blue triangle:

$$d = a\sin\gamma = a\sin(\theta_1 - \theta_2)$$

Combine these equations:

$$d = \frac{t}{\cos\theta_2}\sin(\theta_1 - \theta_2)$$

For a given incident angle θ_1, the refracted angle θ_2 is determined solely by the index of refraction, so the offset distance d is proportional to t. If the thickness doubles, so does the offset distance.

In Example 35.4, the light passes through a slab of material with parallel sides. What happens when light strikes a prism with nonparallel sides as shown in Figure 35.16? In this case, the outgoing ray does not propagate in the same direction as the incoming ray. A ray of single-wavelength light incident on the prism from the left emerges at angle δ from its original direction of travel. This angle δ is called the **angle of deviation.** The **apex angle** Φ of the prism, shown in the figure, is defined as the angle between the surface at which the light enters the prism and the second surface that the light encounters.

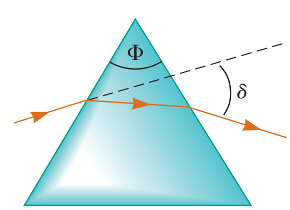


Figure 35.16 A prism refracts a single-wavelength light ray through an angle of deviation δ.

EXAMPLE 35.5 Measuring *n* Using a Prism

Although we do not prove it here, the minimum angle of deviation δ_{min} for a prism occurs when the angle of incidence θ_1 is such that the refracted ray inside the prism makes the same angle with the normal to the two prism faces[1] as shown in Figure 35.17. Obtain an expression for the index of refraction of the prism material in terms of the minimum angle of deviation and the apex angle Φ.

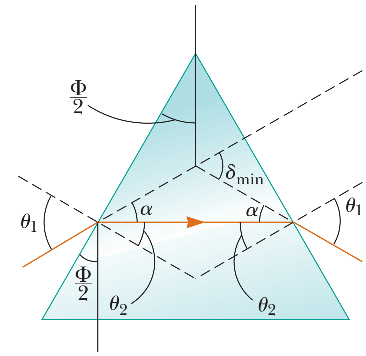


Figure 35.17 (Example 35.5) A light ray passing through a prism at the minimum angle of deviation δ_{min}.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Study Figure 35.17 carefully and be sure you understand why the light ray comes out of the prism traveling in a different direction.

Categorize In this example, light enters a material through one surface and leaves the material at another surface. Let's apply the wave under refraction model at each surface.

Analyze Consider the geometry in Figure 35.17. The reproduction of the angle $\Phi/2$ at the location of the incoming light ray shows that $\theta_2 = \Phi/2$. The theorem that an exterior angle of any triangle equals the sum of the two opposite interior angles shows that $\delta_{min} = 2\alpha$. The geometry also shows that $\theta_1 = \theta_2 + \alpha$.

Combine these three geometric results:

$$\theta_1 = \theta_2 + \alpha = \frac{\Phi}{2} + \frac{\delta_{min}}{2} = \frac{\Phi + \delta_{min}}{2}$$

Apply the wave under refraction model at the left surface and solve for n:

$$(1.00)\sin\theta_1 = n\sin\theta_2 \rightarrow n = \frac{\sin\theta_1}{\sin\theta_2}$$

Substitute for the incident and refracted angles:

$$\boxed{n = \frac{\sin\left(\dfrac{\Phi + \delta_{min}}{2}\right)}{\sin(\Phi/2)}} \qquad \textbf{(35.9)}$$

Finalize Knowing the apex angle Φ of the prism and measuring δ_{min}, you can calculate the index of refraction of the prism material. Furthermore, a hollow prism can be used to determine the values of n for various liquids filling the prism.

35.6 Huygens's Principle

PITFALL PREVENTION 35.4
Of What Use Is Huygens's Principle?
At this point, the importance of Huygens's principle may not be evident. Predicting the position of a future wave front may not seem to be very critical. We will use Huygens's principle in later chapters to explain additional wave phenomena for light, however.

In this section, we develop the laws of reflection and refraction by using a geometric method proposed by Huygens in 1678. **Huygens's principle** is a geometric construction for using knowledge of an earlier wave front to determine the position of a new wave front at some instant. In Huygens's construction, **all points on a given wave front are taken as point sources for the production of spherical secondary waves, called wavelets, that propagate outward through a medium with speeds characteristic of waves in that medium. After some time interval has passed, the new position of the wave front is the surface tangent to the wavelets.**

First, consider a plane wave moving through free space as shown in Figure 35.18a. At $t = 0$, the wave front is indicated by the plane labeled AA'. In Huygens's construction, each point on this wave front is considered a point source. For clarity, only three points on AA' are shown. With these points as sources for the wavelets, we draw circles, each of radius $c\,\Delta t$, where c is the speed of light in vacuum and Δt is some time interval during which the wave propagates. The surface drawn tangent to these wavelets is the plane BB', which is the wave front at a later

[1] The details of this proof are available in texts on optics.

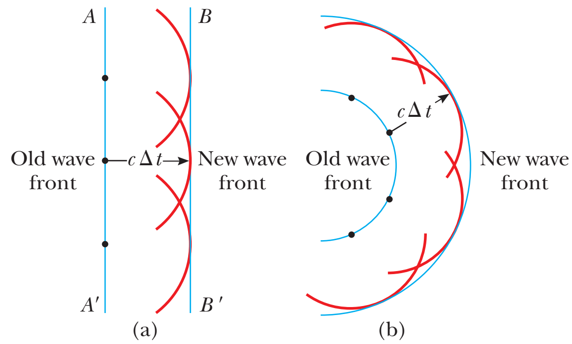


Figure 35.18 Huygens's construction for (a) a plane wave propagating to the right and (b) a spherical wave propagating to the right.

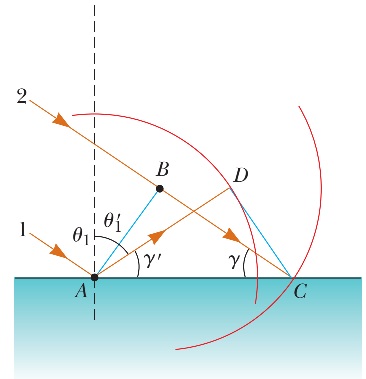


Figure 35.19 Huygens's construction for proving the law of reflection. The instant ray 1 strikes the surface, it sends out a Huygens wavelet from A and ray 2 sends out a Huygens wavelet from B. We choose a radius of the wavelet to be $c\,\Delta t$, where Δt is the time interval for ray 2 to travel from B to C. Triangle ADC is congruent to triangle ABC.

time, and is parallel to AA'. In a similar manner, Figure 35.18b shows Huygens's construction for a spherical wave.

Huygens's Principle Applied to Reflection and Refraction

The laws of reflection and refraction were stated earlier in this chapter without proof. We now derive these laws, using Huygens's principle.

For the law of reflection, refer to Figure 35.19. The line AB represents a plane wave front of the incident light just as ray 1 strikes the surface. At this instant, the wave at A sends out a Huygens wavelet (the red circular arc centered on A). The reflected light propagates toward D. At the same time, the wave at B emits a Huygens wavelet (the red circular arc centered on B) with the light propagating toward C. Figure 35.19 shows these wavelets after a time interval Δt, after which ray 2 strikes the surface. Because both rays 1 and 2 move with the same speed, we must have $AD = BC = c\,\Delta t$.

The remainder of our analysis depends on geometry. Notice that the two triangles ABC and ADC are congruent because they have the same hypotenuse AC and because $AD = BC$. Figure 35.19 shows that

$$\cos\gamma = \frac{BC}{AC} \quad \text{and} \quad \cos\gamma' = \frac{AD}{AC}$$

where $\gamma = 90° - \theta_1$ and $\gamma' = 90° - \theta_1'$. Because $AD = BC$,

$$\cos\gamma = \cos\gamma'$$

Therefore,

$$\gamma = \gamma'$$

$$90° - \theta_1 = 90° - \theta_1'$$

and

$$\theta_1 = \theta_1'$$

which is the law of reflection.

Now let's use Huygens's principle and Figure 35.20 to derive Snell's law of refraction. We focus our attention on the instant ray 1 strikes the surface and the subsequent time interval until ray 2 strikes the surface. During this time interval, the wave at A sends out a Huygens wavelet (the red arc centered on A) and the light refracts toward D. In the same time interval, the wave at B sends out a Huygens wavelet (the red arc centered on B) and the light continues to propagate toward C. Because these two wavelets travel through different media, the radii of the wavelets are different. The radius of the wavelet from A is $AD = v_2\,\Delta t$, where v_2 is the wave speed in the second medium. The radius of the wavelet from B is $BC = v_1\,\Delta t$, where v_1 is the wave speed in the original medium.

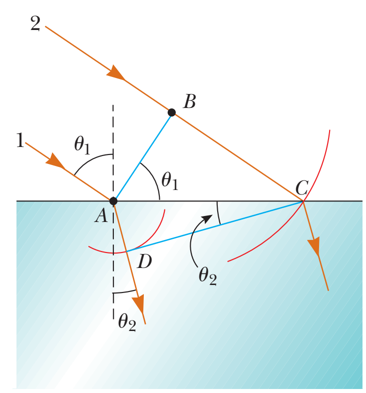


Figure 35.20 Huygens's construction for proving Snell's law of refraction. The instant ray 1 strikes the surface, it sends out a Huygens wavelet from A and ray 2 sends out a Huygens wavelet from B. The two wavelets have different radii because they travel in different media.

From triangles ABC and ADC, we find that

$$\sin\theta_1 = \frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{v_1\,\Delta t}{AC} \quad \text{and} \quad \sin\theta_2 = \frac{AD}{AC} = \frac{v_2\,\Delta t}{AC}$$

Dividing the first equation by the second gives

$$\frac{\sin\theta_1}{\sin\theta_2} = \frac{v_1}{v_2}$$

From Equation 35.4, however, we know that $v_1 = c/n_1$ and $v_2 = c/n_2$. Therefore,

$$\frac{\sin\theta_1}{\sin\theta_2} = \frac{c/n_1}{c/n_2} = \frac{n_2}{n_1}$$

and

$$n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2$$

which is Snell's law of refraction.

35.7 Dispersion

An important property of the index of refraction n is that, for a given material, the index varies with the wavelength of the light passing through the material as Figure 35.21 shows. This behavior is called **dispersion.** Because n is a function of wavelength, Snell's law of refraction indicates that light of different wavelengths is refracted at different angles when incident on a material.

Figure 35.21 shows that the index of refraction generally decreases with increasing wavelength. For example, violet light refracts more than red light does when passing into a material.

Now suppose a beam of *white light* (a combination of all visible wavelengths) is incident on a prism as illustrated in Figure 35.22. Clearly, the angle of deviation δ depends on wavelength. The rays that emerge spread out in a series of colors known as the **visible spectrum.** These colors, in order of decreasing wavelength, are red, orange, yellow, green, blue, and violet. Newton showed that each color has a particular angle of deviation and that the colors can be recombined to form the original white light.

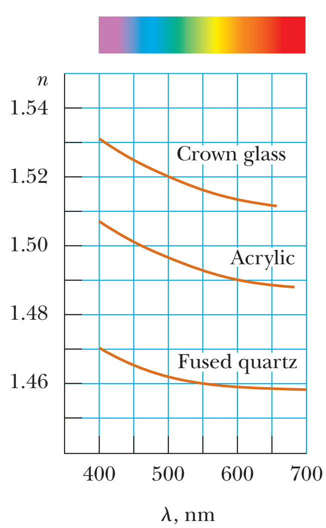
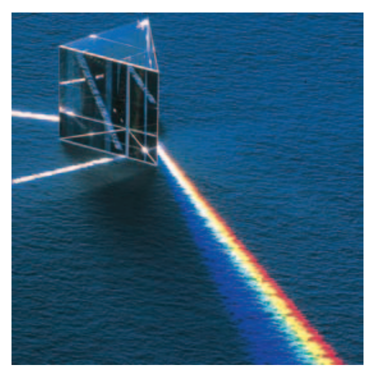


Figure 35.21 Variation of index of refraction with vacuum wavelength for three materials.



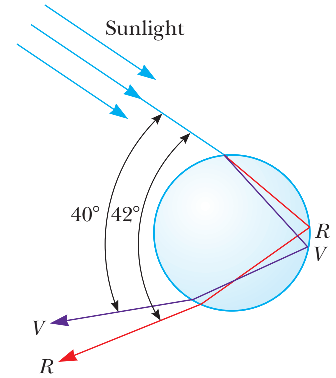
David Parker/Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers, Inc.

Figure 35.22 White light enters a glass prism at the upper left. A reflected beam of light comes out of the prism below the incoming beam. The beam moving toward the lower right shows distinct colors. Different colors are refracted at different angles because the index of refraction of the glass depends on wavelength. Violet light deviates the most; red light deviates the least.

The dispersion of light into a spectrum is demonstrated most vividly in nature by the formation of a rainbow, which is often seen by an observer positioned between the Sun and a rain shower. To understand how a rainbow is formed, consider Active Figure 35.23. A ray of sunlight (which is white light) passing overhead strikes a drop of water in the atmosphere and is refracted and reflected as follows. It is first refracted at the front surface of the drop, with the violet light deviating the most and the red light the least. At the back surface of the drop, the light is reflected and returns to the front surface, where it again undergoes refraction as it moves from water into air. The rays leave the drop such that the angle between the incident white light and the most intense returning violet ray is 40° and the angle between the incident white light and the most intense returning red ray is 42°. This small angular difference between the returning rays causes us to see a colored bow.

Now suppose an observer is viewing a rainbow as shown in Figure 35.24. If a raindrop high in the sky is being observed, the most intense red light returning from the drop reaches the observer because it is deviated the most; the most intense violet light, however, passes over the observer because it is deviated the least. Hence, the observer sees red light coming from this drop. Similarly, a drop lower in the sky directs the most intense violet light toward the observer and appears violet to the observer. (The most intense red light from this drop passes below the observer's eye and is not seen.) The most intense light from other colors of the spectrum reaches the observer from raindrops lying between these two extreme positions.

The opening photograph for this chapter shows a *double rainbow.* The secondary rainbow is fainter than the primary rainbow, and the colors are reversed. The secondary rainbow arises from light that makes two reflections from the interior surface before exiting the raindrop. In the laboratory, rainbows have been observed in which the light makes more than 30 reflections before exiting the water drop. Because each reflection involves some loss of light due to refraction out of the water drop, the intensity of these higher-order rainbows is small compared with that of the primary rainbow.



ACTIVE FIGURE 35.23

Path of sunlight through a spherical raindrop. Light following this path contributes to the visible rainbow.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to vary the point at which the sunlight enters the raindrop and verify that the angles shown are the maximum angles.

PITFALL PREVENTION 35.5

A Rainbow of Many Light Rays

Pictorial representations such as Active Figure 35.23 are subject to misinterpretation. The figure shows one ray of light entering the raindrop and undergoing reflection and refraction, exiting the raindrop in a range of 40° to 42° from the entering ray. This illustration might be interpreted incorrectly as meaning that *all* light entering the raindrop exits in this small range of angles. In reality, light exits the raindrop over a much larger range of angles, from 0° to 42°. A careful analysis of the reflection and refraction from the spherical raindrop shows that the range of 40° to 42° is where the *highest-intensity light* exits the raindrop.

Quick Quiz 35.4 In film photography, lenses in a camera use refraction to form an image on a film. Ideally, you want all the colors in the light from the object being photographed to be refracted by the same amount. Of the materials shown in Figure 35.21, which would you choose for a single-element camera lens? (a) crown glass (b) acrylic (c) fused quartz (d) impossible to determine

---

35.8 Total Internal Reflection

An interesting effect called **total internal reflection** can occur when light is directed from a medium having a given index of refraction toward one having a lower index of refraction. Consider Active Figure 35.25a (page 994), in which a light ray travels in medium 1 and meets the boundary between medium 1 and medium 2, where n_1 is greater than n_2. In the figure, labels 1 through 5 indicate various possible directions of the ray consistent with the wave under refraction model. The refracted rays are bent away from the normal because n_1 is greater than n_2. At some particular angle of incidence θ_c, called the **critical angle,** the refracted light ray moves parallel to the boundary so that $\theta_2 = 90°$ (Active Fig. 35.25b). For angles of incidence greater than θ_c, the ray is entirely reflected at the boundary as shown by ray 5 in Active Figure 35.25a.

We can use Snell's law of refraction to find the critical angle. When $\theta_1 = \theta_c$, $\theta_2 = 90°$ and Equation 35.8 gives

$$n_1 \sin \theta_c = n_2 \sin 90° = n_2$$

$$\sin \theta_c = \frac{n_2}{n_1} \quad (\text{for } n_1 > n_2) \qquad \textbf{(35.10)}$$

◀ Critical angle for total internal reflection

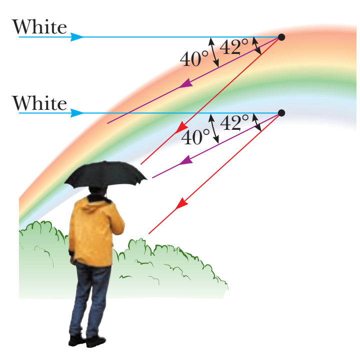
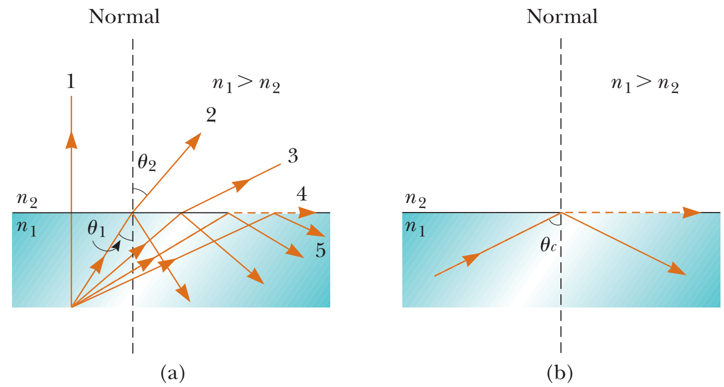


Figure 35.24 The formation of a rainbow seen by an observer standing with the Sun behind his back.



ACTIVE FIGURE 35.25

(a) Rays travel from a medium of index of refraction n_1 into a medium of index of refraction n_2, where $n_2 < n_1$. As the angle of incidence θ_1 increases, the angle of refraction θ_2 increases until θ_2 is 90° (ray 4). The dashed line indicates that no energy actually propagates in this direction. For even larger angles of incidence, total internal reflection occurs (ray 5). (b) The angle of incidence producing an angle of refraction equal to 90° is the critical angle θ_c. At this angle of incidence, all the energy of the incident light is reflected.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to vary the incident angle and see the effect on the refracted ray and the distribution of incident energy between the reflected and refracted rays.

This equation can be used only when n_1 is greater than n_2. That is, **total internal reflection occurs only when light is directed from a medium of a given index of refraction toward a medium of lower index of refraction.** If n_1 were less than n_2, Equation 35.10 would give $\sin \theta_c > 1$, which is a meaningless result because the sine of an angle can never be greater than unity.

The critical angle for total internal reflection is small when n_1 is considerably greater than n_2. For example, the critical angle for a diamond in air is 24°. Any ray inside the diamond that approaches the surface at an angle greater than 24° is completely reflected back into the crystal. This property, combined with proper faceting, causes diamonds to sparkle. The angles of the facets are cut so that light is "caught" inside the crystal through multiple internal reflections. These multiple reflections give the light a long path through the medium, and substantial dispersion of colors occurs. By the time the light exits through the top surface of the crystal, the rays associated with different colors have been fairly widely separated from one another.

Cubic zirconia also has a high index of refraction and can be made to sparkle very much like a diamond. If a suspect jewel is immersed in corn syrup, the difference in n for the cubic zirconia and that for the corn syrup is small and the critical angle is therefore great. Hence, more rays escape sooner; as a result, the sparkle completely disappears. A real diamond does not lose all its sparkle when placed in corn syrup.

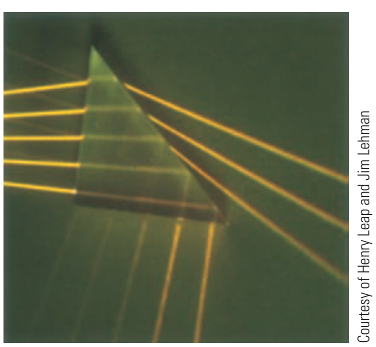


Figure 35.26 (Quick Quiz 35.5) Five nonparallel light rays enter a glass prism from the left.

Quick Quiz 35.5 In Figure 35.26, five light rays enter a glass prism from the left. **(i)** How many of these rays undergo total internal reflection at the slanted surface of the prism? (a) 1 (b) 2 (c) 3 (d) 4 (e) 5 **(ii)** Suppose the prism in Figure 35.26 can be rotated in the plane of the paper. For *all five* rays to experience total internal reflection from the slanted surface, should the prism be rotated (a) clockwise or (b) counterclockwise?

EXAMPLE 35.6 A View from the Fish's Eye

Find the critical angle for an air–water boundary. (The index of refraction of water is 1.33.)

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Study Active Figure 35.25 to understand the concept of total internal reflection and the significance of the critical angle.

Categorize We use concepts developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Apply Equation 35.10 to the air–water interface:

$$\sin\theta_c = \frac{n_2}{n_1} = \frac{1.00}{1.33} = 0.752$$

$$\theta_c = \boxed{48.8°}$$

What If? What if a fish in a still pond looks upward toward the water's surface at different angles relative to the surface as in Figure 35.27? What does it see?

Answer Because the path of a light ray is reversible, light traveling from medium 2 into medium 1 in Active Figure 35.25a follows the paths shown, but in the *opposite* direction. A fish looking upward toward the water surface as in Figure 35.27 can see out of the water if it looks toward the surface at an angle less than the critical angle. Therefore, when the fish's line of vision makes an angle of $\theta = 40°$ with the normal to the surface, for example, light from above the water reaches the fish's eye. At $\theta = 48.8°$, the critical angle for water, the light has to skim along the water's surface before being refracted to the fish's eye; at this angle, the fish can, in principle, see the entire shore of the pond. At angles greater than the critical angle, the light reaching the fish comes by means of total internal reflection at the surface. Therefore, at $\theta = 60°$, the fish sees a reflection of the bottom of the pond.

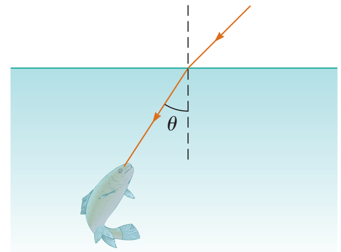


Figure 35.27 (Example 35.6) **What If?** A fish looks upward toward the water surface.

Optical Fibers

Another interesting application of total internal reflection is the use of glass or transparent plastic rods to "pipe" light from one place to another. As indicated in Figure 35.28, light is confined to traveling within a rod, even around curves, as the result of successive total internal reflections. Such a light pipe is flexible if thin fibers are used rather than thick rods. A flexible light pipe is called an **optical fiber.** If a bundle of parallel fibers is used to construct an optical transmission line, images can be transferred from one point to another. This technique is used in a sizable industry known as *fiber optics.*

A practical optical fiber consists of a transparent core surrounded by a *cladding,* a material that has a lower index of refraction than the core. The combination may be surrounded by a plastic *jacket* to prevent mechanical damage. Figure 35.29 shows a cutaway view of this construction. Because the index of refraction of the cladding is less than that of the core, light traveling in the core experiences total internal reflection if it arrives at the interface between the core and the cladding at an angle

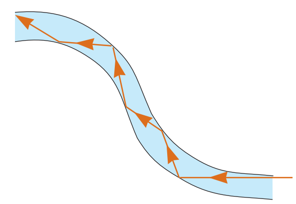
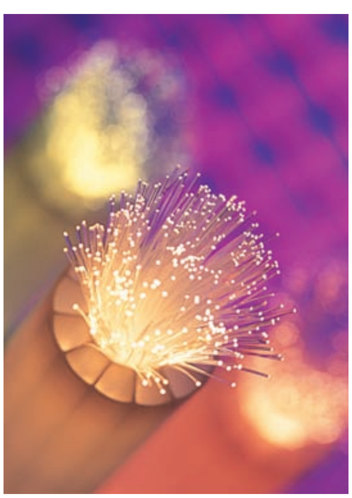
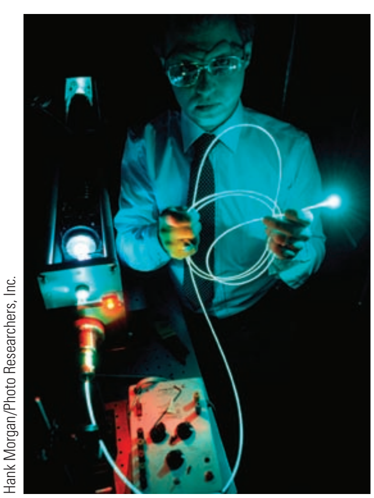


Figure 35.28 Light travels in a curved transparent rod by multiple internal reflections.



Dennis O'Clair/Tony Stone Images



Hank Morgan/Photo Researchers, Inc.

(Left) Strands of glass optical fibers are used to carry voice, video, and data signals in telecommunication networks. *(Right)* A bundle of optical fibers is illuminated by a laser.

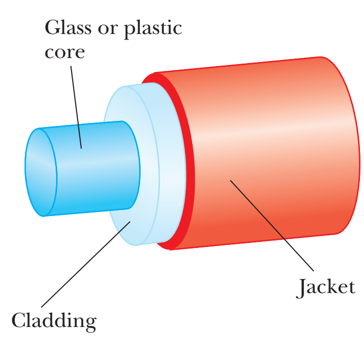


Figure 35.29 The construction of an optical fiber. Light travels in the core, which is surrounded by a cladding and a protective jacket.

of incidence that exceeds the critical angle. In this case, light "bounces" along the core of the optical fiber, losing very little of its intensity as it travels.

Any loss in intensity in an optical fiber is essentially due to reflections from the two ends and absorption by the fiber material. Optical fiber devices are particularly useful for viewing an object at an inaccessible location. For example, physicians often use such devices to examine internal organs of the body or to perform surgery without making large incisions. Optical fiber cables are replacing copper wiring and coaxial cables for telecommunications because the fibers can carry a much greater volume of telephone calls or other forms of communication than electrical wires can.

Summary

ThomsonNOW™ Sign in at **www.thomsonedu.com** and go to ThomsonNOW to take a practice test for this chapter.

DEFINITION

The **index of refraction** n of a medium is defined by the ratio

$$n \equiv \frac{c}{v} \qquad \textbf{(35.4)}$$

where c is the speed of light in a vacuum and v is the speed of light in the medium.

CONCEPTS AND PRINCIPLES

In geometric optics, we use the **ray approximation,** in which a wave travels through a uniform medium in straight lines in the direction of the rays.

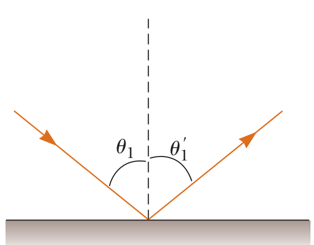
Total internal reflection occurs when light travels from a medium of high index of refraction to one of lower index of refraction. The **critical angle** θ_c for which total internal reflection occurs at an interface is given by

$$\sin \theta_c = \frac{n_2}{n_1} \quad (\text{for } n_1 > n_2) \qquad \textbf{(35.10)}$$

ANALYSIS MODELS FOR PROBLEM SOLVING

Wave Under Reflection. The **law of reflection** states that for a light ray (or other type of wave) incident on a smooth surface, the angle of reflection θ_1' equals the angle of incidence θ_1:

$$\theta_1' = \theta_1 \qquad \textbf{(35.2)}$$



Wave Under Refraction. A wave crossing a boundary as it travels from medium 1 to medium 2 is **refracted,** or bent. The angle of refraction θ_2 is related to the incident angle θ_1 by the relationship

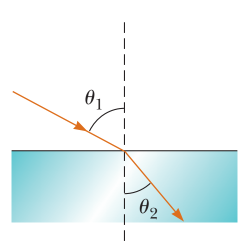
$$\frac{\sin \theta_2}{\sin \theta_1} = \frac{v_2}{v_1} \qquad \textbf{(35.3)}$$

where v_1 and v_2 are the speeds of the wave in medium 1 and medium 2, respectively. The incident ray, the reflected ray, the refracted ray, and the normal to the surface all lie in the same plane.

For light waves, **Snell's law of refraction** states that

$$n_1 \sin \theta_1 = n_2 \sin \theta_2 \qquad \textbf{(35.8)}$$

where n_1 and n_2 are the indices of refraction in the two media.



Questions

□ denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide;* **O** denotes objective question

1. Why do astronomers looking at distant galaxies talk about looking backward in time?

2. **O** What is the order of magnitude of the time interval required for light to travel 10 km as in Galileo's attempt to measure the speed of light? (a) several seconds (b) several milliseconds (c) several microseconds (d) several nanoseconds

3. **O** In each of the following situations, a wave passes through an opening in an absorbing wall. Rank the situations in order from the one in which the wave is best described by the ray approximation to the one in which the wave coming through the opening spreads out most nearly equally in all directions in the hemisphere beyond the wall. (a) The sound of a low whistle at 1 kHz passes through a doorway 1 m wide. (b) Red light passes through the pupil of your eye. (c) Blue light passes through the pupil of your eye. (d) The wave broadcast by an AM radio station passes through a doorway 1 m wide. (e) An x-ray passes through the space between bones in your elbow joint.

4. The display windows of some department stores are slanted slightly inward at the bottom. This tilt is to decrease the glare from streetlights and the Sun, which would make it difficult for shoppers to see the display inside. Sketch a light ray reflecting from such a window to show how this design works.

5. You take a child for walks around the neighborhood. She loves to listen to echoes from houses when she shouts or when you clap loudly. A house with a large, flat front wall can produce an echo if you stand straight in front of it and reasonably far away. Draw a bird's-eye view of the situation to explain the production of the echo. Shade the area where you can stand to hear the echo. **What If?** The child helps you discover that a house with an L-shaped floor plan can produce echoes if you are standing in a wider range of locations. You can be standing at any reasonably distant location from which you can see the inside corner. Explain the echo in this case and draw another diagram for comparison. **What If?** What if the two wings of the house are not perpendicular? Will you and the child, standing close together, hear echoes? **What If?** What if a rectangular house and its garage have perpendicular walls that would form an inside corner but have a breezeway between them so that the walls do not meet? Will this structure produce strong echoes for people in a wide range of locations? Explain your answers with diagrams.

6. The F-117A stealth fighter (Figure Q35.6) is specifically designed to be a *non*retroreflector of radar. What aspects of its design help accomplish this purpose? *Suggestion:* Answer the previous question as preparation for this one. Notice that the bottom of the plane is flat and that all the flat exterior panels meet at odd angles.

Courtesy of U.S. Air Force, Langley Air Force Base

Figure Q35.6

7. **O** A light wave moves between medium 1 and medium 2. Which of the following are correct statements relating its speed, frequency, and wavelength in the two media, the indices of refraction of the media, and the angles of incidence and refraction? Choose all correct statements. (a) $v_1/\sin\theta_1 = v_2/\sin\theta_2$ (b) $\csc\theta_1/n_1 = \csc\theta_2/n_2$ (c) $\lambda_1/\sin\theta_1 = \lambda_2/\sin\theta_2$ (d) $f_1/\sin\theta_1 = f_2/\sin\theta_2$ (e) $n_1/\cos\theta_1 = n_2/\cos\theta_2$

8. Sound waves have much in common with light waves, including the properties of reflection and refraction. Give examples of these phenomena for sound waves.

9. **O** Consider light traveling from one medium into another with a different index of refraction. (a) Does its wavelength change? (b) Does its frequency change? (c) Does its speed change? (d) Does its direction always change?

10. A laser beam passing through a nonhomogeneous sugar solution follows a curved path. Explain.

11. **O** (a) Can light undergo total internal reflection at a smooth interface between air and water? If so, in which medium must it be traveling originally? (b) Can sound undergo total internal reflection at a smooth interface between air and water? If so, in which medium must it be traveling originally?

12. Explain why a diamond sparkles more than a glass crystal of the same shape and size.

13. Total internal reflection is applied in the periscope of a submarine to let the user "see around corners." In this device, two prisms are arranged as shown in Figure Q35.13 so that an incident beam of light follows the path shown. Parallel tilted, silvered mirrors could be used, but glass prisms with no silvered surfaces give higher light throughput. Propose a reason for the higher efficiency.

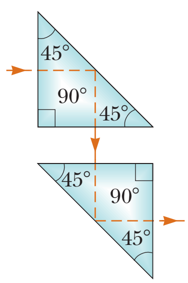


Figure Q35.13

14. **O** Suppose you find experimentally that two colors of light, A and B, originally traveling in the same direction in air, are sent through a glass prism, and A changes direction more than B. Which travels more slowly in the prism, A or B? Alternatively, is there insufficient information to determine which moves more slowly?

15. Retroreflection by transparent spheres, mentioned in Section 35.4, can be observed with dewdrops. To do so, look at the shadow of your head where it falls on dewy grass. Compare your observations to the reactions of two other people: Renaissance artist Benvenuto Cellini described the phenomenon and his reaction in his *Autobiography,* at the end of Part One, and American philosopher Henry David Thoreau did the same in *Walden,* "Baker Farm," second paragraph. The optical display around the shadow of your head is called *heiligenschein*, which is German for *holy light.* Try to find a person you know who has seen the heiligenschein. What did that person think about it?

16. How is it possible that a complete circle of a rainbow can sometimes be seen from an airplane? With a stepladder, a lawn sprinkler, and a sunny day, how can you show the complete circle to children?

17. At one restaurant, a worker uses colored chalk to write the daily specials on a blackboard illuminated with a spotlight. At another restaurant, a worker writes with colored grease pencils onto a flat, smooth sheet of transparent acrylic plastic with index of refraction 1.55. The panel hangs in front of a piece of black felt. Small, bright electric lights are installed all along the edges of the sheet, inside an opaque channel. Figure Q35.17 shows a cutaway view of the sign. Explain why viewers at both restaurants see the letters shining against a black background. Explain why the sign at the second restaurant may use less energy from the electric company than the illuminated blackboard at the first restaurant. What would be a good choice for the index of refraction of the material in the grease pencils?

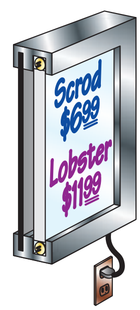


Figure Q35.17

18. **O** The core of an optical fiber transmits light with minimal loss if it is surrounded by what? (a) water (b) diamond (c) air (d) glass (e) fused quartz.

19. Under what conditions is a mirage formed? On a hot day, what are we seeing when we observe "water on the road"?

Problems

WebAssign The Problems from this chapter may be assigned online in WebAssign.

ThomsonNOW™ Sign in at **www.thomsonedu.com** and go to ThomsonNOW to assess your understanding of this chapter's topics with additional quizzing and conceptual questions.

1, 2, 3 denotes straightforward, intermediate, challenging; ☐ denotes full solution available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide;* ▲ denotes coached solution with hints available at **www.thomsonedu.com;** ▢ denotes developing symbolic reasoning; ● denotes asking for qualitative reasoning; ▪ denotes computer useful in solving problem

Section 35.1 The Nature of Light

Section 35.2 Measurements of the Speed of Light

1. ● The *Apollo 11* astronauts set up a panel of efficient corner-cube retroreflectors on the Moon's surface (Fig. 35.8a). The speed of light can be found by measuring the time interval required for a laser beam to travel from the Earth, reflect from the panel, and return to the Earth. Assume this interval is measured to be 2.51 s at a station where the Moon is at the zenith. What is the measured speed of light? Take the center-to-center distance from the Earth to the Moon to be 3.84×10^8 m. Explain whether it is necessary to consider the sizes of the Earth and the Moon in your calculation.

2. As a result of his observations, Roemer concluded that eclipses of Io by Jupiter were delayed by 22 min during a six-month period as the Earth moved from the point in its orbit where it is closest to Jupiter to the diametrically opposite point where it is farthest from Jupiter. Using 1.50×10^8 km as the average radius of the Earth's orbit around the Sun, calculate the speed of light from these data.

3. In an experiment to measure the speed of light using the apparatus of Fizeau (see Fig. 35.2), the distance between light source and mirror was 11.45 km and the wheel had 720 notches. The experimentally determined value of c was 2.998×10^8 m/s. Calculate the minimum angular speed of the wheel for this experiment.

Section 35.3 The Ray Approximation in Geometric Optics

Section 35.4 The Wave Under Reflection

Section 35.5 The Wave Under Refraction

Note: You may look up indices of refraction in Table 35.1.

4. A dance hall is built without pillars and with a horizontal ceiling 7.20 m above the floor. A mirror is fastened flat against one section of the ceiling. Following an earthquake, the mirror is in place and unbroken. An engineer makes a quick check of whether the ceiling is sagging by directing a vertical beam of laser light up at the mirror and observing its reflection on the floor. (a) Show that if the mirror has rotated to make an angle ϕ with the horizontal, the normal to the mirror makes an angle ϕ with the vertical. (b) Show that the reflected laser light makes an angle 2ϕ with the vertical. (c) Assume the reflected laser light makes a spot on the floor 1.40 cm away from the point vertically below the laser. Find the angle ϕ.

5. The two mirrors illustrated in Figure P35.5 meet at a right angle. The beam of light in the vertical plane P strikes mirror 1 as shown. (a) Determine the distance the reflected light beam travels before striking mirror 2. (b) In what direction does the light beam travel after being reflected from mirror 2?

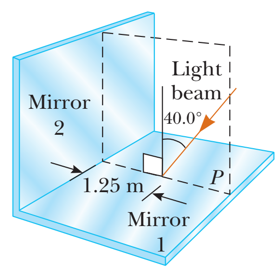


Figure P35.5

6. Two flat, rectangular mirrors, both perpendicular to a horizontal sheet of paper, are set edge to edge with their reflecting surfaces perpendicular to each other. (a) A light ray in the plane of the paper strikes one of the mirrors at an arbitrary angle of incidence θ_1. Prove that the final direction of the ray, after reflection from both mirrors, is opposite its initial direction. In a clothing store, such a pair of mirrors shows you an image of yourself as others see you, with no apparent right–left reversal. (b) **What If?** Now assume the paper is replaced with a third flat mirror, touching edges with the other two and perpendicular to both. The set of three mirrors is called a *corner-cube reflector.* A ray of light is incident from any direction within the octant of space bounded by the reflecting surfaces. Argue that the ray will reflect once from each mirror and that its final direction will be opposite to its original direction. The *Apollo 11* astronauts placed a panel of corner-cube retroreflectors on the Moon. Analysis of timing data taken with it reveals that the radius of the Moon's orbit is increasing at the rate of 3.8 cm/yr as it loses kinetic energy because of tidal friction.

7. The distance of a lightbulb from a large plane mirror is twice the distance of a person from the plane mirror. Light from the lightbulb reaches the person by two paths. It travels to the mirror at an angle of incidence θ and reflects from the mirror to the person. It also travels directly to the person without reflecting off the mirror. The total distance traveled by the light in the first case is twice the distance traveled by the light in the second case. Find the value of the angle θ.

8. Two light pulses are emitted simultaneously from a source. Both pulses travel to a detector, but mirrors shunt one pulse along a path that carries it through 6.20 m of ice along the way. Determine the difference in the pulses' times of arrival at the detector.

9. A narrow beam of sodium yellow light, with wavelength 589 nm in vacuum, is incident from air onto a smooth water surface at an angle of incidence of 35.0°. Determine the angle of refraction and the wavelength of the light in water.

10. ● A plane sound wave in air at 20°C, with wavelength 589 mm, is incident on a smooth surface of water at 25°C at an angle of incidence of 3.50°. Determine the angle of refraction for the sound wave and the wavelength of the sound in water. Compare and contrast the behavior of the sound in this problem with the behavior of the light in Problem 9.

11. An underwater scuba diver sees the Sun at an apparent angle of 45.0° above the horizontal. What is the actual elevation angle of the Sun above the horizontal?

12. The wavelength of red helium–neon laser light in air is 632.8 nm. (a) What is its frequency? (b) What is its wavelength in glass that has an index of refraction of 1.50? (c) What is its speed in the glass?

13. A ray of light is incident on a flat surface of a block of crown glass that is surrounded by water. The angle of refraction is 19.6°. Find the angle of reflection.

14. A laser beam with vacuum wavelength 632.8 nm is incident from air onto a block of Lucite as shown in Active Figure 35.10b. The line of sight of the photograph is perpendicular to the plane in which the light moves. Find (a) the speed, (b) the frequency, and (c) the wavelength of the light in the Lucite. *Suggestion:* Use a protractor.

15. Find the speed of light in (a) flint glass, (b) water, and (c) cubic zirconia.

16. A narrow beam of ultrasonic waves reflects off the liver tumor illustrated in Figure P35.16. The speed of the wave is 10.0% less in the liver than in the surrounding medium. Determine the depth of the tumor.

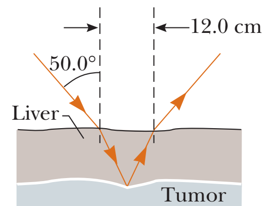


Figure P35.16

17. ▲ A ray of light strikes a flat block of glass (n = 1.50) of thickness 2.00 cm at an angle of 30.0° with the normal. Trace the light beam through the glass and find the angles of incidence and refraction at each surface.

18. An opaque cylindrical tank with an open top has a diameter of 3.00 m and is completely filled with water. When the afternoon Sun reaches an angle of 28.0° above the horizon, sunlight ceases to illuminate any part of the bottom of the tank. How deep is the tank?

19. When the light illustrated in Figure P35.19 passes through the glass block, it is shifted laterally by the distance d. Taking n = 1.50, find the value of d.

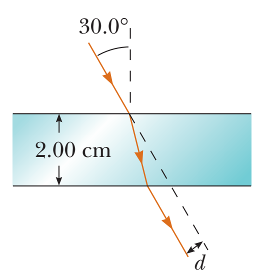


Figure P35.19

20. Find the time interval required for the light to pass through the glass block described in Problem 19.

21. The light beam shown in Figure P35.21 makes an angle of 20.0° with the normal line NN' in the linseed oil. Determine the angles θ and θ'. (The index of refraction of linseed oil is 1.48.)

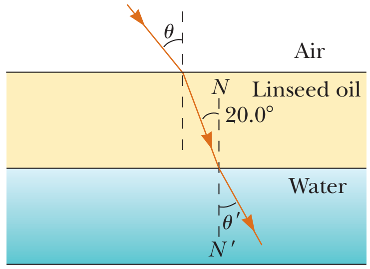


Figure P35.21

22. Three sheets of plastic have unknown indices of refraction. Sheet 1 is placed on top of sheet 2, and a laser beam is directed onto the sheets from above so that it strikes the interface at an angle of 26.5° with the normal. The refracted beam in sheet 2 makes an angle of 31.7° with the normal. The experiment is repeated with sheet 3 on top of sheet 2, and, with the same angle of incidence, the refracted beam makes an angle of 36.7° with the normal. If the experiment is repeated again with sheet 1 on top of sheet 3, what is the expected angle of refraction in sheet 3? Assume the same angle of incidence.

23. ● Light passes from air into flint glass. (a) Is it possible for the component of its velocity perpendicular to the interface to remain constant? Explain your answer. (b) **What If?** Can the component of velocity parallel to the interface remain constant during refraction? Explain your answer.

24. When you look through a window, by what time interval is the light you see delayed by having to go through glass instead of air? Make an order-of-magnitude estimate on the basis of data you specify. By how many wavelengths is it delayed?

25. A prism that has an apex angle of 50.0° is made of cubic zirconia, with $n = 2.20$. What is its angle of minimum deviation?

26. Light of wavelength 700 nm is incident on the face of a fused quartz prism at an angle of 75.0° (with respect to the normal to the surface). The apex angle of the prism is 60.0°. Use the value of n from Figure 35.21 and calculate the angle (a) of refraction at the first surface, (b) of incidence at the second surface, (c) of refraction at the second surface, and (d) between the incident and emerging rays.

27. A triangular glass prism with apex angle $\Phi = 60.0°$ has an index of refraction $n = 1.50$ (Fig. P35.27). What is the smallest angle of incidence θ_1 for which a light ray can emerge from the other side?

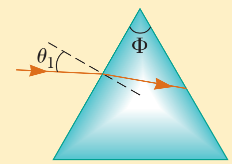


Figure P35.27 Problems 27 and 28.

28. A triangular glass prism with apex angle Φ has index of refraction n. (See Fig. P35.27.) What is the smallest angle of incidence θ_1 for which a light ray can emerge from the other side?

29. A triangular glass prism with apex angle 60.0° has an index of refraction of 1.50. (a) Show that if its angle of incidence on the first surface is $\theta_1 = 48.6°$, light will pass symmetrically through the prism as shown in Figure 35.17. (b) Find the angle of deviation $\delta_{\min}$ for $\theta_1 = 48.6°$. (c) **What If?** Find the angle of deviation if the angle of incidence on the first surface is 45.6°. (d) Find the angle of deviation if $\theta_1 = 51.6°$.

Section 35.6 Huygens's Principle

30. The speed of a water wave is described by $v = \sqrt{gd}$, where d is the water depth, assumed to be small compared to the wavelength. Because their speed changes, water waves refract when moving into a region of different depth. Sketch a map of an ocean beach on the eastern side of a landmass. Show contour lines of constant depth under water, assuming reasonably uniform slope. (a) Suppose waves approach the coast from a storm far away to the north–northeast. Demonstrate that the waves move nearly perpendicular to the shoreline when they reach the beach. (b) Sketch a map of a coastline with alternating bays and headlands as suggested in Figure P35.30. Again

Ray Atkeson/Image Archive

Figure P35.30

2 = intermediate; 3 = challenging; □ = SSM/SG; ▲ = ThomsonNOW; ▭ = symbolic reasoning; ● = qualitative reasoning

make a reasonable guess about the shape of contour lines of constant depth. Suppose waves approach the coast, carrying energy with uniform density along originally straight wave fronts. Show that the energy reaching the coast is concentrated at the headlands and has lower intensity in the bays.

Section 35.7 Dispersion

31. ▲ The index of refraction for violet light in silica flint glass is 1.66 and that for red light is 1.62. What is the angular spread of visible light passing through a prism of apex angle 60.0° if the angle of incidence is 50.0°? See Figure P35.31.

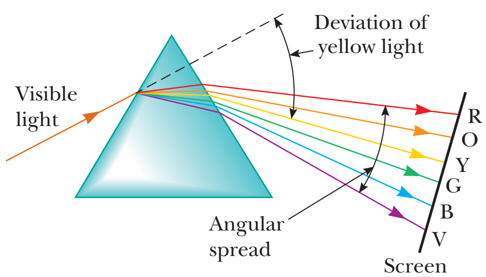


Figure P35.31

32. A narrow, white light beam is incident on a block of fused quartz at an angle of 30.0°. Find the angular spread of the light beam inside the quartz due to dispersion.

Section 35.8 Total Internal Reflection

33. For 589-nm light, calculate the critical angle for the following materials surrounded by air. (a) diamond (b) flint glass (c) ice

34. A glass fiber ($n = 1.50$) is submerged in water ($n = 1.33$). What is the critical angle for light to stay inside the optical fiber?

35. Consider a common mirage formed by superheated air immediately above a roadway. A truck driver whose eyes are 2.00 m above the road, where $n = 1.000\,3$, looks forward. She perceives the illusion of a patch of water ahead on the road, where her line of sight makes an angle of 1.20° below the horizontal. Find the index of refraction of the air immediately above the road surface. *Suggestion:* Treat this problem as one about total internal reflection.

36. Determine the maximum angle θ for which the light rays incident on the end of the pipe in Figure P35.36 are subject to total internal reflection along the walls of the pipe. Assume the pipe has an index of refraction of 1.36 and the outside medium is air. Your answer defines the size of the *cone of acceptance* for the light pipe.

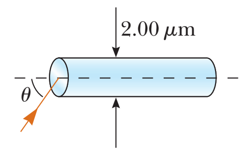


Figure P35.36

37. ● An optical fiber has index of refraction n and diameter d. It is surrounded by air. Light is sent into the fiber along its axis as shown in Figure P35.37. (a) Find the smallest outside radius R permitted for a bend in the fiber if no light is to escape. (b) **What If?** Does the result for part (a) predict reasonable behavior as d approaches zero? As n increases? As n approaches 1? (c) Evaluate R assuming the fiber diameter is 100 μm and its index of refraction is 1.40.

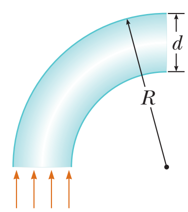


Figure P35.37

38. ● A room contains air in which the speed of sound is 343 m/s. The walls of the room are made of concrete in which the speed of sound is 1 850 m/s. (a) Find the critical angle for total internal reflection of sound at the concrete–air boundary. (b) In which medium must the sound be traveling if it is undergo total internal reflection? (c) "A bare concrete wall is a highly efficient mirror for sound." Give evidence for or against this statement.

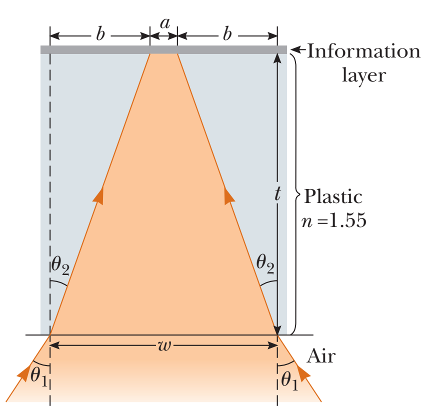
39. ● Around 1965, engineers at the Toro Company invented a gasoline gauge for small engines diagrammed in Figure P35.39. The gauge has no moving parts. It consists of a flat slab of transparent plastic fitting vertically into a slot in the cap on the gas tank. None of the plastic has a reflective coating. The plastic projects from the horizontal top down nearly to the bottom of the opaque tank. Its lower edge is cut with facets making angles of 45° with the horizontal. A lawn mower operator looks down from above and sees a boundary between bright and dark on the gauge. The location of the boundary, across the width of the plastic, indicates the quantity of gasoline in the tank. Explain how the gauge works. Explain the design requirements, if any, for the index of refraction of the plastic.

Figure P35.39

Additional Problems

40. A digital videodisc records information in a spiral track approximately 1 μm wide. The track consists of a series of pits in the information layer (Fig. P35.40a) that scatter light from a laser beam sharply focused on them. The laser shines in through transparent plastic of thickness t = 1.20 mm and index of refraction 1.55 (Fig. P35.40b). Assume the width of the laser beam at the information layer must be a = 1.00 μm to read from only one track and not from its neighbors. Assume the width of the beam as it enters the transparent plastic from below is w = 0.700 mm. A lens makes the beam converge into a cone with an apex angle $2\theta_1$ before it enters the videodisc. Find the incidence angle θ_1 of the light at the edge of the conical beam. This design is relatively immune to small dust particles degrading the video quality. Particles on the plastic surface would have to be as large as 0.7 mm to obscure the beam.

Image not available due to copyright restrictions



(b)

Figure P35.40

41. ● Figure P35.41a shows a desk ornament globe containing a photograph. The flat photograph is in air, inside a vertical slot located behind a water-filled compartment having the shape of one half of a cylinder. Suppose you are looking at the center of the photograph and then rotate the globe about a vertical axis. You find that the center of the photograph disappears when you rotate the globe beyond a certain maximum angle (Fig. P35.41b). Account for this phenomenon and calculate the maximum angle. Describe what you see when you turn the globe beyond this angle.

Courtesy Edwin Lo

(a) (b)

Figure P35.41

42. ● A light ray enters the atmosphere of a planet and descends vertically to the surface a distance h below. The index of refraction where the light enters the atmosphere is 1.000, and it increases linearly with distance to have the value n at the planet surface. (a) Over what time interval does the light traverse this path? (b) State how this travel time compares with the time interval required in the absence of an atmosphere.

43. A narrow beam of light is incident from air onto the surface of glass with index of refraction 1.56. Find the angle of incidence for which the corresponding angle of refraction is half the angle of incidence. *Suggestion:* You might want to use the trigonometric identity $\sin 2\theta = 2 \sin\theta \cos\theta$.

44. (a) Consider a horizontal interface between air above and glass of index 1.55 below. Draw a light ray incident from the air at angle of incidence 30.0°. Determine the angles of the reflected and refracted rays and show them on the diagram. (b) **What If?** Now suppose the light ray is incident from the glass at angle of incidence 30.0°. Determine the angles of the reflected and refracted rays and show all three rays on a new diagram. (c) For rays incident from the air onto the air–glass surface, determine and tabulate the angles of reflection and refraction for all the angles of incidence at 10.0° intervals from 0° to 90.0°.

Copyright 2008 Thomson Learning, Inc. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part.

(d) Do the same for light rays coming up to the interface through the glass.

45. ▲ A small light fixture on the bottom of a swimming pool is 1.00 m below the surface. The light emerging from the still water forms a circle on the water surface. What is the diameter of this circle?

46. The walls of a prison cell are perpendicular to the four cardinal compass directions. On the first day of spring, light from the rising Sun enters a rectangular window in the eastern wall. The light traverses 2.37 m horizontally to shine perpendicularly on the wall opposite the window. A young prisoner observes the patch of light moving across this western wall and for the first time forms his own understanding of the rotation of the Earth. (a) With what speed does the illuminated rectangle move? (b) The prisoner holds a small, square mirror flat against the wall at one corner of the rectangle of light. The mirror reflects light back to a spot on the eastern wall close beside the window. With what speed does the smaller square of light move across that wall? (c) Seen from a latitude of 40.0° north, the rising Sun moves through the sky along a line making a 50.0° angle with the southeastern horizon. In what direction does the rectangular patch of light on the western wall of the prisoner's cell move? (d) In what direction does the smaller square of light on the eastern wall move?

47. A hiker stands on an isolated mountain peak near sunset and observes a rainbow caused by water droplets in the air at a distance of 8.00 km along her line of sight. The valley is 2.00 km below the mountain peak and entirely flat. What fraction of the complete circular arc of the rainbow is visible to the hiker? (See Fig. 35.24.)

48. Figure P35.48 shows a top view of a square enclosure. The inner surfaces are plane mirrors. A ray of light enters a small hole in the center of one mirror. (a) At what angle θ must the ray enter if it exits through the hole after being reflected once by each of the other three mirrors? (b) **What If?** Are there other values of θ for which the ray can exit after multiple reflections? If so, sketch one of the ray's paths.

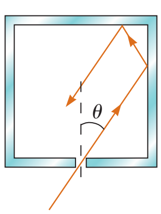


Figure P35.48

49. ▲ A laser beam strikes one end of a slab of material as shown in Figure P35.49. The index of refraction of the slab is 1.48. Determine the number of internal reflections of the beam before it emerges from the opposite end of the slab.

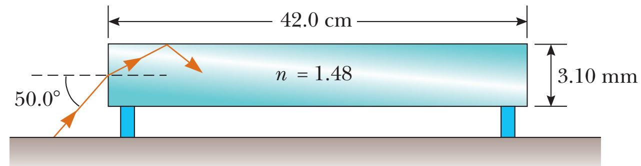


Figure P35.49

50. A 4.00-m-long pole stands vertically in a lake having a depth of 2.00 m. The Sun is 40.0° above the horizontal. Determine the length of the pole's shadow on the bottom of the lake. Take the index of refraction for water to be 1.33.

51. The light beam in Figure P35.51 strikes surface 2 at the critical angle. Determine the angle of incidence θ_1.

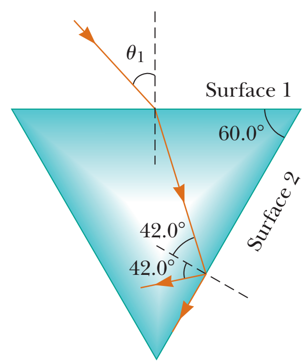


Figure P35.51

52. Builders use a leveling instrument in which the beam from a fixed helium–neon laser reflects in a horizontal plane from a small, flat mirror mounted on a vertical rotating shaft. The light is sufficiently bright and the rotation rate is sufficiently high that the reflected light appears as a horizontal line, wherever it falls on a wall. (a) Assume the mirror is at the center of a circular grain elevator of radius 3.00 m. The mirror spins with constant angular velocity 35.0 rad/s. Find the speed of the spot of laser light on the curved wall. (b) Now assume the spinning mirror is at a perpendicular distance of 3.00 m from point O on a long, flat, vertical wall. When the spot of laser light on the wall is at distance x from point O, what is its speed? (c) What is the minimum value for the speed? What value of x corresponds to it? How does the minimum speed compare with the speed you found in part (a)? (d) What is the maximum speed of the spot on the flat wall? (e) In what time interval does the spot change from its minimum to its maximum speed?

53. ▲ ● A light ray of wavelength 589 nm is incident at an angle θ on the top surface of a block of polystyrene as shown in Figure P35.53. (a) Find the maximum value of θ for which the refracted ray undergoes total internal reflection at the left vertical face of the block. **What If?** Repeat the calculation for the case in which the polystyrene block is immersed in (b) water and (c) carbon disulfide. You will need to explain your answers.

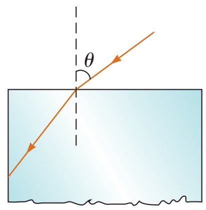


Figure P35.53

54. ● As sunlight enters the Earth's atmosphere, it changes direction due to the small difference between the speeds of light in vacuum and in air. The duration of an *optical* day is defined as the time interval between the instant when the top of the rising Sun is just visible above the horizon and the instant when the top of the Sun just disappears below the horizontal plane. The duration of the *geometric* day is defined as the time interval between the instant when a mathematically straight line between an observer and the top of the Sun just clears the horizon and the instant at which this line just dips below the horizon. (a) Explain which is longer, an optical day or a geometric day. (b) Find the difference between these two time intervals. Model the Earth's atmosphere as uniform, with index of refraction 1.000 293, a sharply defined upper surface, and depth 8 614 m. Assume the observer is at the Earth's equator so that the apparent path of the rising and setting Sun is perpendicular to the horizon.

55. A shallow glass dish is 4.00 cm wide at the bottom as shown in Figure P35.55. When an observer's eye is located as shown, the observer sees the edge of the bottom of the empty dish. When this dish is filled with water, the observer sees the center of the bottom of the dish. Find the height of the dish.

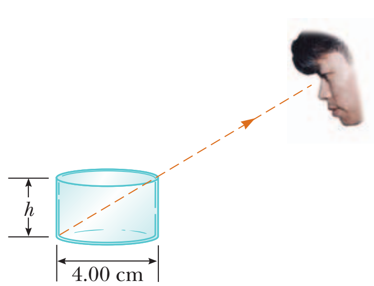


Figure P35.55

56. A ray of light passes from air into water. For its deviation angle $\delta = |\theta_1 - \theta_2|$ to be 10.0°, what must its angle of incidence be?

57. A material having an index of refraction n is surrounded by a vacuum and is in the shape of a quarter circle of radius R (Fig. P35.57). A light ray parallel to the base of the material is incident from the left at a distance L above the base and emerges from the material at the angle θ. Determine an expression for θ.

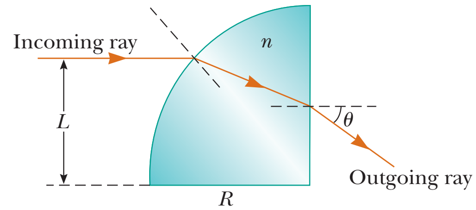


Figure P35.57

58. *Fermat's principle.* Pierre de Fermat (1601–1665) showed that whenever light travels from one point to another, its actual path is the path that requires the smallest time interval. The simplest example is for light propagating in a homogeneous medium. It moves in a straight line because a straight line is the shortest distance between two points. Derive Snell's law of refraction from Fermat's principle. Proceed as follows. In Figure P35.58, a light ray travels from point P in medium 1 to point Q in medium 2. The two points are respectively at perpendicular distances a and b from the interface. The displacement from P to Q has the component d parallel to the interface, and we let x represent the coordinate of the point where the ray enters the second medium. Let $t = 0$ be the instant at which the light starts from P. (a) Show that the time at which the light arrives at Q is

$$t = \frac{r_1}{v_1} + \frac{r_2}{v_2} = \frac{n_1\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}}{c} + \frac{n_2\sqrt{b^2 + (d - x)^2}}{c}$$

(b) To obtain the value of x for which t has its minimum value, differentiate t with respect to x and set the derivative equal to zero. Show that the result implies

$$\frac{n_1 x}{\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}} = \frac{n_2(d - x)}{\sqrt{b^2 + (d - x)^2}}$$

(c) Show that this expression in turn gives Snell's law

$$n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2$$

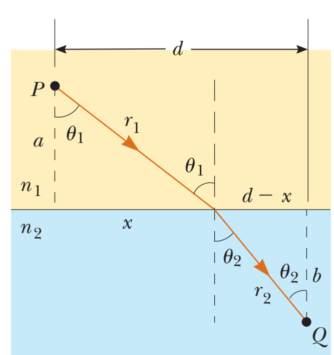


Figure P35.58

59. Refer to Problem 58 for the statement of Fermat's principle of least time. Derive the law of reflection (Eq. 35.2) from Fermat's principle.

60. A transparent cylinder of radius $R = 2.00$ m has a mirrored surface on its right half as shown in Figure P35.60. A light ray traveling in air is incident on the left side of the cylinder. The incident light ray and exiting light ray are parallel, and $d = 2.00$ m. Determine the index of refraction of the material.

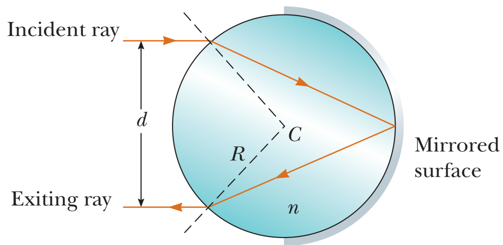


Figure P35.60

61. Suppose a luminous sphere of radius R_1 (such as the Sun) is surrounded by a uniform atmosphere of radius R_2 and index of refraction n. When the sphere is viewed from a location far away in vacuum, what is its apparent radius? You will need to distinguish between the two cases (a) $R_2 > nR_1$ and (b) $R_2 < nR_1$.

62. A. H. Pfund's method for measuring the index of refraction of glass is illustrated in Figure P35.62. One face of a slab of thickness t is painted white, and a small hole scraped clear at point P serves as a source of diverging rays when the slab is illuminated from below. Ray PBB' strikes the clear surface at the critical angle and is totally reflected as are rays such as PCC'. Rays such as PAA' emerge from the clear surface. On the painted surface, there appears a dark circle of diameter d surrounded by an illuminated region, or halo. (a) Derive an equation for n in terms of the measured quantities d and t. (b) What is the diameter of the dark circle if $n = 1.52$ for a slab 0.600 cm thick? (c) If white light is used, dispersion causes the critical angle to depend on color. Is the inner edge of the white halo tinged with red light or with violet light? Explain.

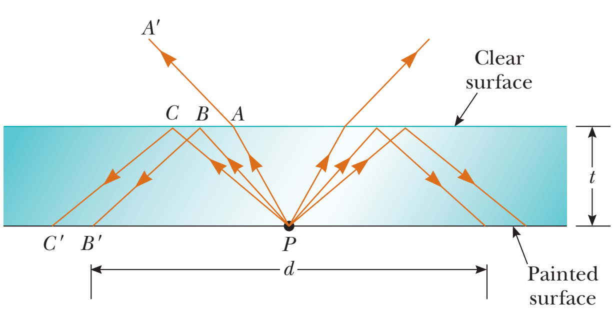


Figure P35.62

63. A light ray enters a rectangular block of plastic at an angle $\theta_1 = 45.0°$ and emerges at an angle $\theta_2 = 76.0°$ as shown in Figure P35.63. (a) Determine the index of refraction of the plastic. (b) If the light ray enters the plastic at a point $L = 50.0$ cm from the bottom edge, what time interval is required for the light ray to travel through the plastic?

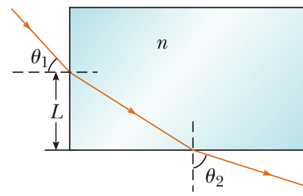


Figure P35.63

64. Students allow a narrow beam of laser light to strike a water surface. They measure the angle of refraction for selected angles of incidence and record the data shown in the accompanying table. Use the data to verify Snell's law of refraction by plotting the sine of the angle of incidence versus the sine of the angle of refraction. Explain what the shape of the graph demonstrates. Use the resulting plot to deduce the index of refraction of water, explaining how you do so.

Angle of Incidence (degrees)	Angle of Refraction (degrees)
10.0	7.5
20.0	15.1
30.0	22.3
40.0	28.7
50.0	35.2
60.0	40.3
70.0	45.3
80.0	47.7

65. **Review problem.** A mirror is often "silvered" with aluminum. By adjusting the thickness of the metallic film, one can make a sheet of glass into a mirror that reflects anything between, say, 3% and 98% of the incident light, transmitting the rest. Prove that it is impossible to construct a "one-way mirror" that would reflect 90% of the electromagnetic waves incident from one side and reflect 10% of those incident from the other side. *Suggestion:* Use Clausius's statement of the second law of thermodynamics.

Answers to Quick Quizzes

35.1 (d). The light rays from the actor's face must reflect from the mirror and into the camera. If these light rays are reversed, light from the camera reflects from the mirror into the eyes of the actor.

35.2 Beams ② and ④ are reflected; beams ③ and ⑤ are refracted.

35.3 (c). Because the light is entering a material in which the index of refraction is lower, the speed of light is higher and the light bends away from the normal.

35.4 (c). An ideal camera lens would have an index of refraction that does not vary with wavelength so that all colors would be bent through the same angle by the lens. Of the three choices, fused quartz has the least variation in n across the visible spectrum. A lens designer can do even better by stacking two lenses of different materials together to make an *achromatic doublet*.

35.5 **(i),** (b). The two bright rays exiting the bottom of the prism on the right in Figure 35.26 result from total internal reflection at the right face of the prism. Notice that there is no refracted light exiting the slanted side for these rays. The light from the other three rays is divided into reflected and refracted parts. **(ii),** (b). Counterclockwise rotation of the prism will cause the rays to strike the slanted side of the prism at a larger angle. When the five rays strike at an angle larger than the critical angle, they all undergo total internal reflection.

The light rays coming from the leaves in the background of this scene did not form a focused image on the film of the camera that took this photograph. Consequently, the background appears very blurry. Light rays passing though the raindrop, however, have been altered so as to form a focused image of the background leaves on the film. In this chapter, we investigate the formation of images as light rays reflect from mirrors and refract through lenses. (Don Hammond/CORBIS)

36 Image Formation

This chapter is concerned with the images that result when light rays encounter flat and curved surfaces. Images can be formed by either reflection or refraction, and we can design mirrors and lenses to form images with desired characteristics. We continue to use the ray approximation and assume light travels in straight lines. These two steps lead to valid predictions in the field called *geometric optics*. Subsequent chapters cover interference and diffraction effects, which are the objects of study in the field of *wave optics*.

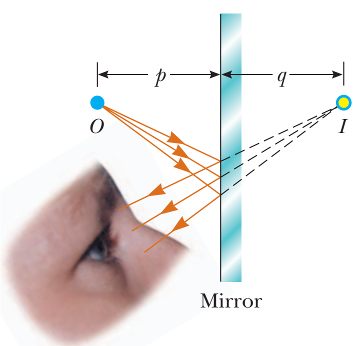


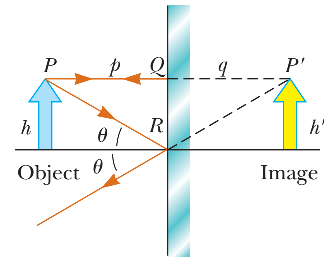
Figure 36.1 An image formed by reflection from a flat mirror. The image point I is located behind the mirror a perpendicular distance q from the mirror (the image distance). The image distance has the same magnitude as the object distance p.

36.1 Images Formed by Flat Mirrors

Image formation by mirrors can be understood through the analysis of light rays following the wave under reflection model. We begin by considering the simplest possible mirror, the flat mirror. Consider a point source of light placed at O in Figure 36.1, a distance p in front of a flat mirror. The distance p is called the **object distance.** Diverging light rays leave the source and are reflected from the mirror. Upon reflection, the rays continue to diverge. The dashed lines in Figure 36.1 are extensions of the diverging rays back to a point of intersection at I. The diverging rays appear to the viewer to originate at the point I behind the mirror. Point I, which is a distance q behind the mirror, is called the **image** of the object at O. The distance q is called the **image distance.** Regardless of the system under study, images can always be located by extending diverging rays back to a point at which they intersect. **Images are located either at a point from which rays of light *actually* diverge or at a point from which they *appear* to diverge.**

Images are classified as **real** or **virtual. A real image is formed when light rays pass through and diverge from the image point; a virtual image is formed when the light rays do not pass through the image point but only appear to diverge from that point.** The image formed by the mirror in Figure 36.1 is virtual. The image of an object seen in a flat mirror is *always* virtual. Real images can be displayed on a screen (as at a movie theater), but virtual images cannot be displayed on a screen. We shall see an example of a real image in Section 36.2.

We can use the simple geometry in Active Figure 36.2 to examine the properties of the images of extended objects formed by flat mirrors. Even though there are an infinite number of choices of direction in which light rays could leave each point on the object (represented by a blue arrow), we need to choose only two rays to determine where an image is formed. One of those rays starts at P, follows a path perpendicular to the mirror, and reflects back on itself. The second ray follows the oblique path PR and reflects as shown in Active Figure 36.2 according to the law of reflection. An observer in front of the mirror would extend the two reflected rays back to the point at which they appear to have originated, which is point P' behind the mirror. A continuation of this process for points other than P on the object would result in a virtual image (represented by a yellow arrow) of the entire object behind the mirror. Because triangles PQR and $P'QR$ are congruent, $PQ = P'Q$, so that $|p| = |q|$. Therefore, **the image formed of an object placed in front of a flat mirror is as far behind the mirror as the object is in front of the mirror.**



ACTIVE FIGURE 36.2

A geometric construction that is used to locate the image of an object placed in front of a flat mirror. Because the triangles PQR and $P'QR$ are congruent, $|p| = |q|$ and $h = h'$.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to move the object and see the effect on the image.

The geometry in Active Figure 36.2 also reveals that the object height h equals the image height h'. Let us define **lateral magnification** M of an image as follows:

$$M \equiv \frac{\text{image height}}{\text{object height}} = \frac{h'}{h} \tag{36.1}$$

◀ Lateral magnification

This general definition of the lateral magnification for an image from any type of mirror is also valid for images formed by lenses, which we study in Section 36.4. For a flat mirror, $M = +1$ for any image because $h' = h$. The positive value of the magnification signifies that the image is upright. (By upright we mean that if the object arrow points upward as in Active Figure 36.2, so does the image arrow.)

A flat mirror produces an image that has an *apparent* left–right reversal. You can see this reversal by standing in front of a mirror and raising your right hand as shown in Figure 36.3. The image you see raises its left hand. Likewise, your hair appears to be parted on the side opposite your real part, and a mole on your right cheek appears to be on your left cheek.

This reversal is not *actually* a left–right reversal. Imagine, for example, lying on your left side on the floor with your body parallel to the mirror surface. Now your head is on the left and your feet are on the right. If you shake your feet, the image does not shake its head! If you raise your right hand, however, the image again raises its left hand. Therefore, the mirror again appears to produce a left–right reversal but in the up–down direction!

The reversal is actually a *front–back reversal,* caused by the light rays going forward toward the mirror and then reflecting back from it. An interesting exercise is to stand in front of a mirror while holding an overhead transparency in front of you so that you can read the writing on the transparency. You will also be able to read the writing on the image of the transparency. You may have had a similar experience if you have attached a transparent decal with words on it to the rear window of your car. If the decal can be read from outside the car, you can also read it when looking into your rearview mirror from inside the car.

PITFALL PREVENTION 36.1

Magnification Does Not Necessarily Imply Enlargement

For optical elements other than flat mirrors, the magnification defined in Equation 36.1 can result in a number with a magnitude larger *or* smaller than 1. Therefore, despite the cultural usage of the word *magnification* to mean *enlargement,* the image could be smaller than the object.

© Thomson Learning/George Semple

Figure 36.3 The image in the mirror of a person's right hand is reversed front to back, which makes the right hand appear to be a left hand. Notice that the thumb is on the left side of both real hands and on the left side of the image. That the thumb is not on the right side of the image indicates that there is no left-to-right reversal.

Quick Quiz 36.1 You are standing approximately 2 m away from a mirror. The mirror has water spots on its surface. True or False: It is possible for you to see the water spots and your image both in focus at the same time.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 36.1 Multiple Images Formed by Two Mirrors

Two flat mirrors are perpendicular to each other as in Figure 36.4, and an object is placed at point O. In this situation, multiple images are formed. Locate the positions of these images.

SOLUTION

The image of the object is at I_1 in mirror 1 (violet rays) and at I_2 in mirror 2 (blue rays). In addition, a third image is formed at I_3 (brown rays). This third image is the image of I_1 in mirror 2 or, equivalently, the image of I_2 in mirror 1. That is, the image at I_1 (or I_2) serves as the object for I_3. To form this image at I_3, the rays reflect twice after leaving the object at O.

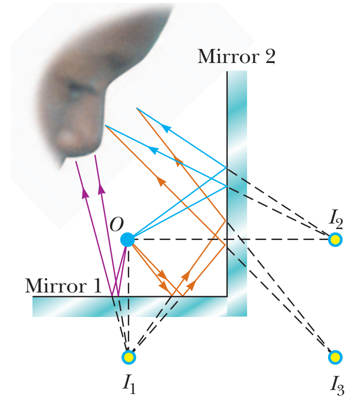


Figure 36.4 (Conceptual Example 36.1) When an object is placed in front of two mutually perpendicular mirrors as shown, three images are formed. Follow the different-colored light rays to understand the formation of each image.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 36.2 The Tilting Rearview Mirror

Most rearview mirrors in cars have a day setting and a night setting. The night setting greatly diminishes the intensity of the image so that lights from trailing vehicles do not temporarily blind the driver. How does such a mirror work?

SOLUTION

Figure 36.5 shows a cross-sectional view of a rearview mirror for each setting. The unit consists of a reflective coating on the back of a wedge of glass. In the day setting (Fig. 36.5a), the light from an object behind the car strikes the glass wedge at point 1. Most of the light enters the wedge, refracting as it crosses the front surface, and reflects from the back surface to return to the front surface, where it is refracted again as it re-enters the air as ray B (for *bright*). In addition, a small portion of the light is reflected at the front surface of the glass as indicated by ray D (for *dim*).

This dim reflected light is responsible for the image observed when the mirror is in the night setting (Fig. 36.5b). In that case, the wedge is rotated so that the path followed by the bright light (ray B) does not lead to the eye. Instead, the dim light reflected from the front surface of the wedge travels to the eye, and the brightness of trailing headlights does not become a hazard.

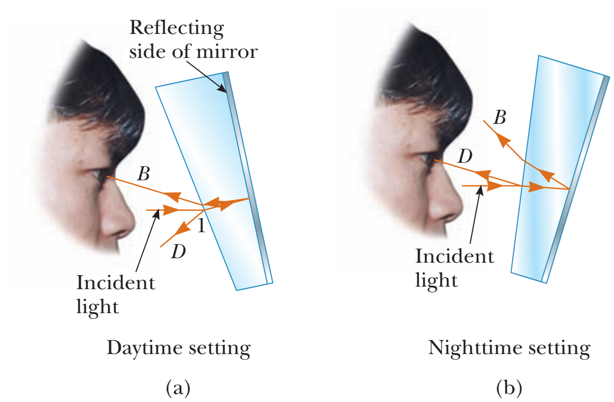


Figure 36.5 (Conceptual Example 36.2) Cross-sectional views of a rearview mirror. (a) With the day setting, the silvered back surface of the mirror reflects a bright ray B into the driver's eyes. (b) With the night setting, the glass of the unsilvered front surface of the mirror reflects a dim ray D into the driver's eyes.

36.2 Images Formed by Spherical Mirrors

In the preceding section, we considered images formed from flat mirrors. Now we study images formed by curved mirrors. Although a variety of curvatures are possible, we will restrict our investigation to spherical mirrors. As its name implies, a **spherical mirror** has the shape of a section of a sphere.

Concave Mirrors

We first consider reflection of light from the inner, concave surface of a spherical mirror as shown in Figure 36.6. This type of reflecting surface is called a **concave mirror.** Figure 36.6a shows that the mirror has a radius of curvature R, and its center of curvature is point C. Point V is the center of the spherical section, and a line through C and V is called the **principal axis** of the mirror. Figure 36.6a shows a

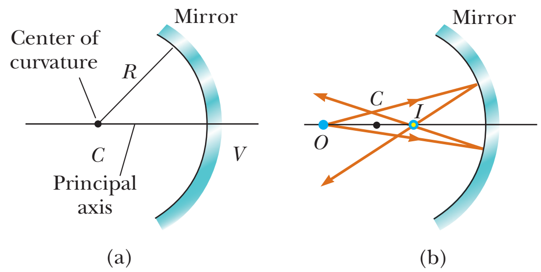
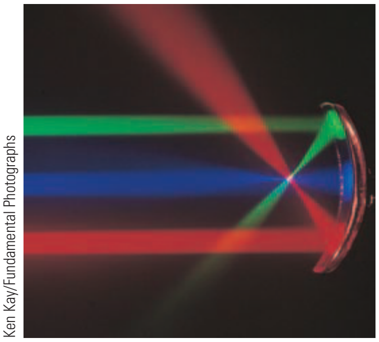


Figure 36.6 (a) A concave mirror of radius *R*. The center of curvature *C* is located on the principal axis. (b) A point object placed at *O* in front of a concave spherical mirror of radius *R*, where *O* is any point on the principal axis farther than *R* from the mirror surface, forms a real image at *I*. If the rays diverge from *O* at small angles, they all reflect through the same image point.



Ken Kay/Fundamental Photographs

Figure 36.7 Red, blue, and green light rays are reflected by a curved mirror. Notice that the three colored beams meet at a point.

cross section of a spherical mirror, with its surface represented by the solid, curved black line. (The blue band represents the structural support for the mirrored surface, such as a curved piece of glass on which the silvered surface is deposited.) This type of mirror focuses incoming parallel rays to a point as demonstrated by the colored light rays in Figure 36.7.

Now consider a point source of light placed at point *O* in Figure 36.6b, where *O* is any point on the principal axis to the left of *C*. Two diverging light rays that originate at *O* are shown. After reflecting from the mirror, these rays converge and cross at the image point *I*. They then continue to diverge from *I* as if an object were there. As a result, the image at point *I* is real.

In this section, we shall consider only rays that diverge from the object and make a small angle with the principal axis. Such rays are called **paraxial rays.** All paraxial rays reflect through the image point as shown in Figure 36.6b. Rays that are far from the principal axis such as those shown in Figure 36.8 converge to other points on the principal axis, producing a blurred image. This effect, called *spherical aberration,* is present to some extent for any spherical mirror and is discussed in Section 36.5.

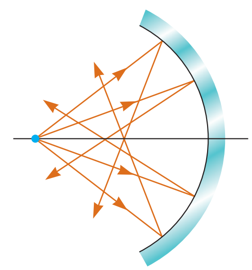


Figure 36.8 Rays diverging from the object at large angles from the principal axis reflect from a spherical concave mirror to intersect the principal axis at different points, resulting in a blurred image. This condition is called *spherical aberration.*

If the object distance p and radius of curvature R are known, we can use Figure 36.9 to calculate the image distance q. By convention, these distances are measured from point V. Figure 36.9 shows two rays leaving the tip of the object. One of these rays passes through the center of curvature C of the mirror, hitting the mirror perpendicular to the mirror surface and reflecting back on itself. The second ray strikes the mirror at its center (point V) and reflects as shown, obeying the law of reflection. The image of the tip of the arrow is located at the point where these two rays intersect. From the large, gold right triangle in Figure 36.9, we see that $\tan\theta = h/p$, and from the blue right triangle, we see that $\tan\theta = -h'/q$. The negative sign is introduced because the image is inverted, so h' is taken to be negative. Therefore, from Equation 36.1 and these results, we find that the magnification of the image is

$$M = \frac{h'}{h} = -\frac{q}{p} \tag{36.2}$$

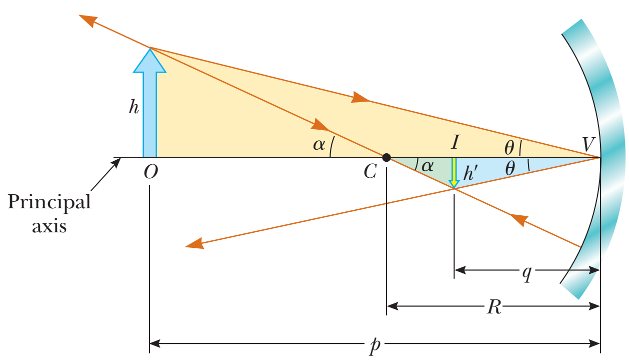


Figure 36.9 The image formed by a spherical concave mirror when the object *O* lies outside the center of curvature *C*. This geometric construction is used to derive Equation 36.4.

Courtesy of Thomson Consumer Electronics

A satellite-dish antenna is a concave reflector for television signals from a satellite in orbit around the Earth. Because the satellite is so far away, the signals are carried by microwaves that are parallel when they arrive at the dish. These waves reflect from the dish and are focused on the receiver.

Also notice from the green right triangle in Figure 36.9 and the smaller gold right triangle that

$$\tan \alpha = \frac{-h'}{R-q} \quad \text{and} \quad \tan \alpha = \frac{h}{p-R}$$

from which it follows that

$$\frac{h'}{h} = -\frac{R-q}{p-R} \tag{36.3}$$

Comparing Equations 36.2 and 36.3 gives

$$\frac{R-q}{p-R} = \frac{q}{p}$$

Simple algebra reduces this expression to

Mirror equation in terms of radius of curvature ▶

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = \frac{2}{R} \tag{36.4}$$

which is called the *mirror equation.* We present a modified version of this equation shortly.

If the object is very far from the mirror—that is, if p is so much greater than R that p can be said to approach infinity—then $1/p \approx 0$, and Equation 36.4 shows that $q \approx R/2$. That is, when the object is very far from the mirror, the image point is halfway between the center of curvature and the center point on the mirror as shown in Figure 36.10a. The incoming rays from the object are essentially parallel in this figure because the source is assumed to be very far from the mirror. The image point in this special case is called the **focal point** F, and the image distance the **focal length** f, where

Focal length ▶

$$f = \frac{R}{2} \tag{36.5}$$

In Figure 36.7, the colored beams are traveling parallel to the principal axis and the mirror reflects all three beams to the focal point. Notice that the point at which the three beams intersect and the colors add is white.

Because the focal length is a parameter particular to a given mirror, it can be used to compare one mirror with another. Combining Equations 36.4 and 36.5, the **mirror equation** can be expressed in terms of the focal length:

Mirror equation in terms of focal length ▶

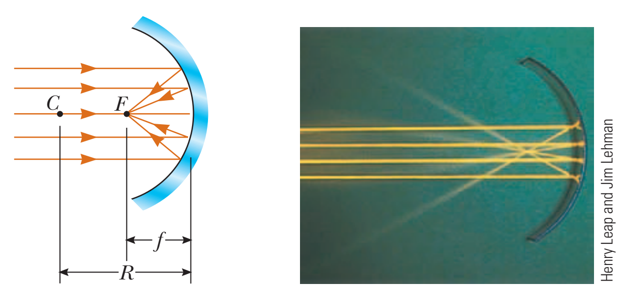
$$\boxed{\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f}} \tag{36.6}$$

Notice that the focal length of a mirror depends only on the curvature of the mirror and not on the material from which the mirror is made because the formation of the image results from rays reflected from the surface of the material. The situ-

PITFALL PREVENTION 36.2

The *Focal* Point Is Not the *Focus* Point

The focal point *is usually not* the point at which the light rays focus to form an image. The focal point is determined solely by the curvature of the mirror; it does not depend on the location of the object. In general, an image forms at a point different from the focal point of a mirror (or a lens). The *only* exception is when the object is located infinitely far away from the mirror.



(a) (b)

Figure 36.10 (a) Light rays from a distant object ($p \rightarrow \infty$) reflect from a concave mirror through the focal point F. In this case, the image distance $q \approx R/2 = f$, where f is the focal length of the mirror. (b) Reflection of parallel rays from a concave mirror.

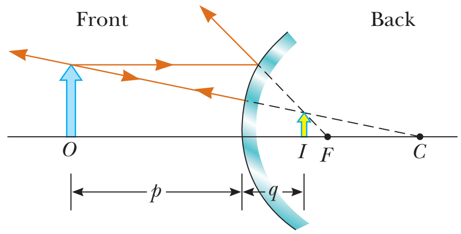


Figure 36.11 Formation of an image by a spherical convex mirror. The image formed by the object is virtual and upright.

ation is different for lenses; in that case, the light actually passes through the material and the focal length depends on the type of material from which the lens is made. (See Section 36.4.)

Convex Mirrors

Figure 36.11 shows the formation of an image by a **convex mirror**, that is, one silvered so that light is reflected from the outer, convex surface. It is sometimes called a **diverging mirror** because the rays from any point on an object diverge after reflection as though they were coming from some point behind the mirror. The image in Figure 36.11 is virtual because the reflected rays only appear to originate at the image point as indicated by the dashed lines. Furthermore, the image is always upright and smaller than the object. This type of mirror is often used in stores to foil shoplifters. A single mirror can be used to survey a large field of view because it forms a smaller image of the interior of the store.

We do not derive any equations for convex spherical mirrors because Equations 36.2, 36.4, and 36.6 can be used for either concave or convex mirrors if we adhere to the following procedure. We will refer to the region in which light rays originate and move toward the mirror as the *front side* of the mirror and the other side as the *back side*. For example, in Figures 36.9 and 36.11, the side to the left of the mirrors is the front side and the side to the right of the mirrors is the back side. Figure 36.12 states the sign conventions for object and image distances, and Table 36.1 summarizes the sign conventions for all quantities. One entry in the table, a *virtual object,* is formally introduced in Section 36.4.

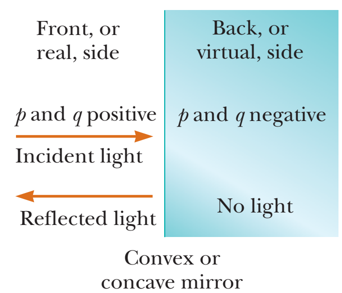


Figure 36.12 Signs of p and q for convex and concave mirrors.

Ray Diagrams for Mirrors

The positions and sizes of images formed by mirrors can be conveniently determined with *ray diagrams*. These pictorial representations reveal the nature of the image and can be used to check results calculated from the mathematical representation using the mirror and magnification equations. To draw a ray diagram, you must know the position of the object and the locations of the mirror's focal point and center of curvature. You then draw three rays to locate the image as

TABLE 36.1

Sign Conventions for Mirrors

Quantity	Positive When . . .	Negative When . . .
Object location (p)	object is in front of mirror (real object).	object is in back of mirror (virtual object).
Image location (q)	image is in front of mirror (real image).	image is in back of mirror (virtual image).
Image height (h')	image is upright.	image is inverted.
Focal length (f) and radius (R)	mirror is concave.	mirror is convex.
Magnification (M)	image is upright.	image is inverted.

PITFALL PREVENTION 36.3

Watch Your Signs

Success in working mirror problems (as well as problems involving refracting surfaces and thin lenses) is largely determined by proper sign choices when substituting into the equations. The best way to success is to work a multitude of problems on your own.

PITFALL PREVENTION 36.4

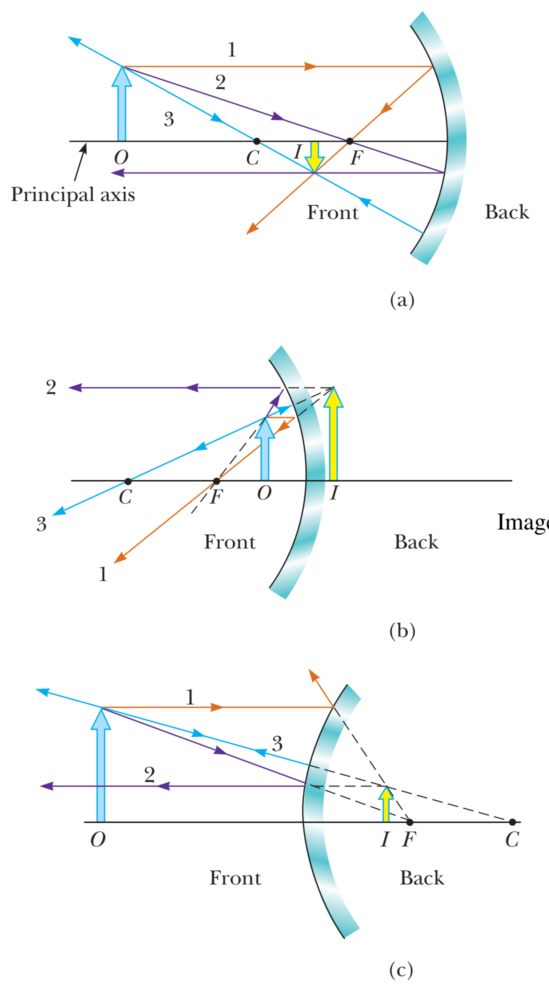
Choose a Small Number of Rays

A *huge* number of light rays leave each point on an object (and pass through each point on an image). In a ray diagram, which displays the characteristics of the image, we choose only a few rays that follow simply stated rules. Locating the image by calculation complements the diagram.

shown by the examples in Active Figure 36.13. These rays all start from the same object point and are drawn as follows. You may choose any point on the object; here, let's choose the top of the object for simplicity. For concave mirrors (see Active Figs. 36.13a and 36.13b), draw the following three rays:

- Ray 1 is drawn from the top of the object parallel to the principal axis and is reflected through the focal point F.
- Ray 2 is drawn from the top of the object through the focal point (or as if coming from the focal point if $p < f$) and is reflected parallel to the principal axis.
- Ray 3 is drawn from the top of the object through the center of curvature C and is reflected back on itself.

The intersection of any two of these rays locates the image. The third ray serves as a check of the construction. The image point obtained in this fashion must always agree with the value of q calculated from the mirror equation. With concave mirrors, notice what happens as the object is moved closer to the mirror. The real, inverted image in Active Figure 36.13a moves to the left and becomes larger as the object approaches the focal point. When the object is at the focal point, the image is infinitely far to the left. When the object lies between the focal point and the mirror surface as shown in Active Figure 36.13b, however, the image is to the right, behind the object, and virtual, upright, and enlarged. This latter situation applies when you use a shaving mirror or a makeup mirror, both of which are concave. Your face is closer to the mirror than the focal point, and you see an upright, enlarged image of your face.



Images not available due to copyright restrictions

ACTIVE FIGURE 36.13

Ray diagrams for spherical mirrors along with corresponding photographs of the images of candles. (a) When the object is located so that the center of curvature lies between the object and a concave mirror surface, the image is real, inverted, and reduced in size. (b) When the object is located between the focal point and a concave mirror surface, the image is virtual, upright, and enlarged. (c) When the object is in front of a convex mirror, the image is virtual, upright, and reduced in size.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to move the objects and change the focal length of the mirrors to see the effect on the images.

For convex mirrors (see Active Fig. 36.13c), draw the following three rays:

- Ray 1 is drawn from the top of the object parallel to the principal axis and is reflected *away from* the focal point *F*.
- Ray 2 is drawn from the top of the object toward the focal point on the back side of the mirror and is reflected parallel to the principal axis.
- Ray 3 is drawn from the top of the object toward the center of curvature *C* on the back side of the mirror and is reflected back on itself.

In a convex mirror, the image of an object is always virtual, upright, and reduced in size as shown in Active Figure 36.13c. In this case, as the object distance decreases, the virtual image increases in size and moves away from the focal point toward the mirror as the object approaches the mirror. You should construct other diagrams to verify how image position varies with object position.

Quick Quiz 36.2 You wish to start a fire by reflecting sunlight from a mirror onto some paper under a pile of wood. Which would be the best choice for the type of mirror? (a) flat (b) concave (c) convex

Quick Quiz 36.3 Consider the image in the mirror in Figure 36.14. Based on the appearance of this image, would you conclude that (a) the mirror is concave and the image is real, (b) the mirror is concave and the image is virtual, (c) the mirror is convex and the image is real, or (d) the mirror is convex and the image is virtual?

NASA

Figure 36.14 (Quick Quiz 36.3) What type of mirror is shown here?

EXAMPLE 36.3 The Image Formed by a Concave Mirror

A spherical mirror has a focal length of +10.0 cm.

(A) Locate and describe the image for an object distance of 25.0 cm.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Because the focal length of the mirror is positive, it is a concave mirror (see Table 36.1). We expect the possibilities of both real and virtual images.

Categorize Because the object distance in this part of the problem is larger than the focal length, we expect the image to be real. This situation is analogous to that in Active Figure 36.13a.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.6:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{10.0 \text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{25.0 \text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{16.7 \text{ cm}}$$

Find the magnification of the image from Equation 36.2:

$$M = -\frac{q}{p} = -\frac{16.7 \text{ cm}}{25.0 \text{ cm}} = \boxed{-0.668}$$

Finalize The absolute value of M is less than unity, so the image is smaller than the object, and the negative sign for M tells us that the image is inverted. Because q is positive, the image is located on the front side of the mirror and is real. Look into the bowl of a shiny spoon or stand far away from a shaving mirror to see this image.

(B) Locate and describe the image for an object distance of 10.0 cm.

SOLUTION

Categorize Because the object is at the focal point, we expect the image to be infinitely far away.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.6:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{10.0\text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{10.0\text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{\infty}$$

Finalize This result means that rays originating from an object positioned at the focal point of a mirror are reflected so that the image is formed at an infinite distance from the mirror; that is, the rays travel parallel to one another after reflection. Such is the situation in a flashlight or an automobile headlight, where the bulb filament is placed at the focal point of a reflector, producing a parallel beam of light.

(C) Locate and describe the image for an object distance of 5.00 cm.

SOLUTION

Categorize Because the object distance is smaller than the focal length, we expect the image to be virtual. This situation is analogous to that in Active Figure 36.13b.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.6:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{10.0\text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{5.00\text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{-10.0\text{ cm}}$$

Find the magnification of the image from Equation 36.2:

$$M = -\frac{q}{p} = -\left(\frac{-10.0\text{ cm}}{5.00\text{ cm}}\right) = \boxed{+2.00}$$

Finalize The image is twice as large as the object, and the positive sign for M indicates that the image is upright (see Active Fig. 36.13b). The negative value of the image distance tells us that the image is virtual, as expected. Put your face close to a shaving mirror to see this type of image.

What If? Suppose you set up the candle and mirror apparatus illustrated in Active Figure 36.13a and described here in part (A). While adjusting the apparatus, you accidentally bump the candle and it begins to slide toward the mirror at velocity v_p. How fast does the image of the candle move?

Answer Solve the mirror equation, Equation 36.6, for q:

$$q = \frac{fp}{p - f}$$

Differentiate this equation with respect to time to find the velocity of the image:

$$(1) \quad v_q = \frac{dq}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{fp}{p-f}\right) = -\frac{f^2}{(p-f)^2}\frac{dp}{dt} = -\frac{f^2 v_p}{(p-f)^2}$$

Substitute numerical values from part (A):

$$v_q = -\frac{(10.0\text{ cm})^2\, v_p}{(25.0\text{ cm} - 10.0\text{ cm})^2} = -0.444 v_p$$

Therefore, the speed of the image is less than that of the object in this case.

We can see two interesting behaviors of the function for v_q in Equation (1). First, the velocity is negative regardless of the value of p or f. Therefore, if the object moves toward the mirror, the image moves toward the left in Active Figure 36.13 without regard for the side of the focal point at which the object is located or whether the mirror is concave or convex. Second, in the limit of $p \to 0$, the velocity v_q approaches $-v_p$. As the object moves very close to the mirror, the mirror looks like a plane mirror, the image is as far behind the mirror as the object is in front, and both the object and the image move with the same speed.

EXAMPLE 36.4 The Image Formed by a Convex Mirror

An automobile rearview mirror as shown in Figure 36.15 shows an image of a truck located 10.0 m from the mirror. The focal length of the mirror is -0.60 m.

(A) Find the position of the image of the truck.

© Bo Zaunders/CORBIS

Figure 36.15 (Example 36.4) An approaching truck is seen in a convex mirror on the right side of an automobile. Because the image is reduced in size, the truck appears to be farther away than it actually is. Notice also that the image of the truck is in focus, but the frame of the mirror is not, which demonstrates that the image is not at the same location as the mirror surface.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize This situation is depicted in Active Figure 36.13c.

Categorize Because the mirror is convex, we expect it to form an upright, reduced, virtual image for any object position.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.6:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{-0.60 \text{ m}} - \frac{1}{10.0 \text{ m}}$$

$$q = \boxed{-0.57 \text{ m}}$$

(B) Find the magnification of the image.

SOLUTION

Analyze Use Equation 36.2:

$$M = -\frac{q}{p} = -\left(\frac{-0.57 \text{ m}}{10.0 \text{ m}}\right) = \boxed{+0.057}$$

Finalize The negative value of q in part (A) indicates that the image is virtual, or behind the mirror, as shown in Active Figure 36.13c. The magnification in part (B) indicates that the image is much smaller than the truck and is upright because M is positive. Because of the image's small size, these mirrors carry the inscription, "Objects in this mirror are closer than they appear." Look into your rearview mirror or the back side of a shiny spoon to see an image of this type.

36.3 Images Formed by Refraction

In this section, we describe how images are formed when light rays follow the wave under refraction model at the boundary between two transparent materials. Consider two transparent media having indices of refraction n_1 and n_2, where the boundary between the two media is a spherical surface of radius R (Fig. 36.16). We assume the object at O is in the medium for which the index of refraction is n_1. Let's consider the paraxial rays leaving O. As we shall see, all such rays are refracted at the spherical surface and focus at a single point I, the image point.

Figure 36.17 (page 1018) shows a single ray leaving point O and refracting to point I. Snell's law of refraction applied to this ray gives

$$n_1 \sin \theta_1 = n_2 \sin \theta_2$$

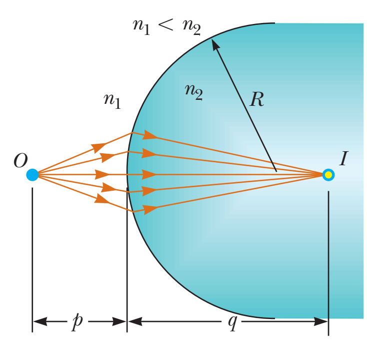


Figure 36.16 An image formed by refraction at a spherical surface. Rays making small angles with the principal axis diverge from a point object at O and are refracted through the image point I.

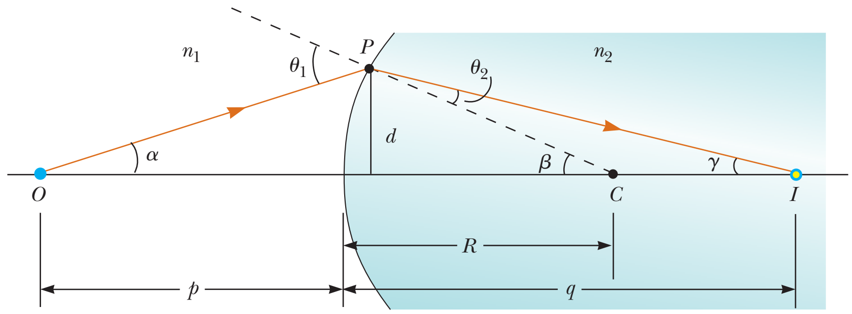


Figure 36.17 Geometry used to derive Equation 36.8, assuming that $n_1 < n_2$.

Because θ_1 and θ_2 are assumed to be small, we can use the small-angle approximation $\sin\theta \approx \theta$ (with angles in radians) and write Snell's law as

$$n_1\theta_1 = n_2\theta_2$$

We know that an exterior angle of any triangle equals the sum of the two opposite interior angles, so applying this rule to triangles *OPC* and *PIC* in Figure 36.17 gives

$$\theta_1 = \alpha + \beta$$

$$\beta = \theta_2 + \gamma$$

Combining all three expressions and eliminating θ_1 and θ_2 gives

$$n_1\alpha + n_2\gamma = (n_2 - n_1)\beta \qquad \textbf{(36.7)}$$

Figure 36.17 shows three right triangles that have a common vertical leg of length d. For paraxial rays (unlike the relatively large-angle ray shown in Fig. 36.17), the horizontal legs of these triangles are approximately p for the triangle containing angle α, R for the triangle containing angle β, and q for the triangle containing angle γ. In the small-angle approximation, $\tan\theta \approx \theta$, so we can write the approximate relationships from these triangles as follows:

$$\tan\alpha \approx \alpha \approx \frac{d}{p} \qquad \tan\beta \approx \beta \approx \frac{d}{R} \qquad \tan\gamma \approx \gamma \approx \frac{d}{q}$$

Substituting these expressions into Equation 36.7 and dividing through by d gives

Relation between object and image distance for a refracting surface ▶

$$\boxed{\frac{n_1}{p} + \frac{n_2}{q} = \frac{n_2 - n_1}{R}} \qquad \textbf{(36.8)}$$

For a fixed object distance p, the image distance q is independent of the angle the ray makes with the axis. This result tells us that all paraxial rays focus at the same point I.

As with mirrors, we must use a sign convention to apply Equation 36.8 to a variety of cases. We define the side of the surface in which light rays originate as the front side. The other side is called the back side. In contrast with mirrors, where real images are formed in front of the reflecting surface, real images are formed by refraction of light rays to the back of the surface. Because of the difference in location of real images, the refraction sign conventions for q and R are opposite the reflection sign conventions. For example, q and R are both positive in Figure 36.17. The sign conventions for spherical refracting surfaces are summarized in Table 36.2.

We derived Equation 36.8 from an assumption that $n_1 < n_2$ in Figure 36.17. This assumption is not necessary, however. Equation 36.8 is valid regardless of which index of refraction is greater.

TABLE 36.2

Sign Conventions for Refracting Surfaces

Quantity	Positive When . . .	Negative When . . .
Object location (p)	object is in front of surface (real object).	object is in back of surface (virtual object).
Image location (q)	image is in back of surface (real image).	image is in front of surface (virtual image).
Image height (h')	image is upright.	image is inverted.
Radius (R)	center of curvature is in back of surface.	center of curvature is in front of surface.

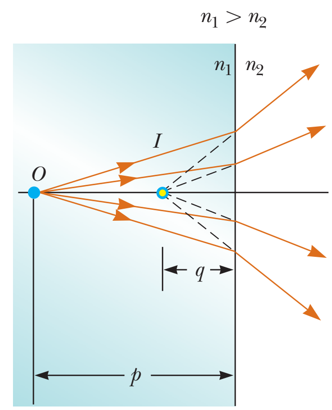
Flat Refracting Surfaces

If a refracting surface is flat, then R is infinite and Equation 36.8 reduces to

$$\frac{n_1}{p} = -\frac{n_2}{q}$$

$$q = -\frac{n_2}{n_1}p \qquad \textbf{(36.9)}$$

From this expression, we see that the sign of q is opposite that of p. Therefore, according to Table 36.2, **the image formed by a flat refracting surface is on the same side of the surface as the object** as illustrated in Active Figure 36.18 for the situation in which the object is in the medium of index n_1 and n_1 is greater than n_2. In this case, a virtual image is formed between the object and the surface. If n_1 is less than n_2, the rays on the back side diverge from one another at lesser angles than those in Active Figure 36.18. As a result, the virtual image is formed to the left of the object.



ACTIVE FIGURE 36.18

The image formed by a flat refracting surface is virtual and on the same side of the surface as the object. All rays are assumed to be paraxial.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to move the object and see the effect on the location of the image.

Quick Quiz 36.4 In Figure 36.16, what happens to the image point I as the object point O is moved to the right from very far away to very close to the refracting surface? (a) It is always to the right of the surface. (b) It is always to the left of the surface. (c) It starts off to the left, and at some position of O, I moves to the right of the surface. (d) It starts off to the right, and at some position of O, I moves to the left of the surface.

Quick Quiz 36.5 In Active Figure 36.18, what happens to the image point I as the object point O moves toward the right-hand surface of the material of index of refraction n_1? (a) It always remains between O and the surface, arriving at the surface just as O does. (b) It moves toward the surface more slowly than O so that eventually O passes I. (c) It approaches the surface and then moves to the right of the surface.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 36.5 Let's Go Scuba Diving!

Objects viewed under water with the naked eye appear blurred and out of focus. A scuba diver using a mask, however, has a clear view of underwater objects. Explain how that works, using the information that the indices of refraction of the cornea, water, and air are 1.376, 1.333, and 1.000 29, respectively.

SOLUTION

Because the cornea and water have almost identical indices of refraction, very little refraction occurs when a person under water views objects with the naked eye. In this case, light rays from an object focus behind the retina, resulting in a blurred image. When a mask is used, however, the air space between the eye and the mask surface provides the normal amount of refraction at the eye–air interface; consequently, the light from the object focuses on the retina.

EXAMPLE 36.6 Gaze into the Crystal Ball

A set of coins is embedded in a spherical plastic paperweight having a radius of 3.0 cm. The index of refraction of the plastic is $n_1 = 1.50$. One coin is located 2.0 cm from the edge of the sphere (Fig. 36.19). Find the position of the image of the coin.

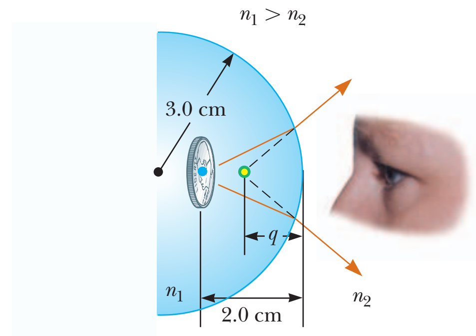


Figure 36.19 (Example 36.6) Light rays from a coin embedded in a plastic sphere form a virtual image between the surface of the object and the sphere surface. Because the object is inside the sphere, the front of the refracting surface is the *interior* of the sphere.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Because $n_1 > n_2$, where $n_2 = 1.00$ is the index of refraction for air, the rays originating from the coin in Figure 36.19 are refracted away from the normal at the surface and diverge outward.

Categorize Because the light rays originate in one material and then pass through a curved surface into another material, this example involves an image formed by refraction.

Analyze Apply Equation 36.8, noting from Table 36.2 that R is negative:

$$\frac{n_2}{q} = \frac{n_2 - n_1}{R} - \frac{n_1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1.00 - 1.50}{-3.0\text{ cm}} - \frac{1.50}{2.0\text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{-1.7\text{ cm}}$$

Finalize The negative sign for q indicates that the image is in front of the surface; in other words, it is in the same medium as the object as shown in Figure 36.19. Therefore, the image must be virtual. (See Table 36.2.) The coin appears to be closer to the paperweight surface than it actually is.

EXAMPLE 36.7 The One That Got Away

A small fish is swimming at a depth d below the surface of a pond (Fig. 36.20).

(A) What is the apparent depth of the fish as viewed from directly overhead?

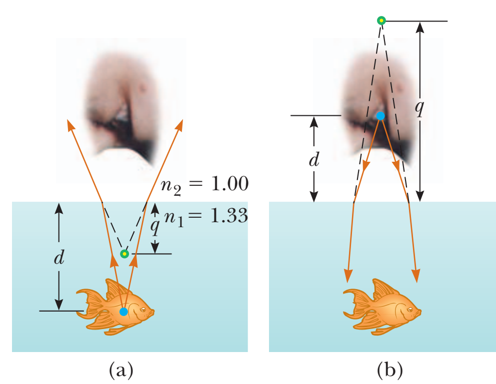


Figure 36.20 (Example 36.7) (a) The apparent depth q of the fish is less than the true depth d. All rays are assumed to be paraxial. (b) Your face appears to the fish to be higher above the surface than it is.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Because $n_1 > n_2$, where $n_2 = 1.00$ is the index of refraction for air, the rays originating from the fish in Figure 36.20a are refracted away from the normal at the surface and diverge outward.

Categorize Because the refracting surface is flat, R is infinite. Hence, we can use Equation 36.9 to determine the location of the image with $p = d$.

Analyze Use the indices of refraction given in Figure 36.20a in Equation 36.9:

$$q = -\frac{n_2}{n_1}p = -\frac{1.00}{1.33}d = \boxed{-0.752d}$$

Finalize Because q is negative, the image is virtual as indicated by the dashed lines in Figure 36.20a. The apparent depth is approximately three-fourths the actual depth.

(B) If your face is a distance d above the water surface, at what apparent distance above the surface does the fish see your face?

SOLUTION

The light rays from your face are shown in Figure 36.20b.

Conceptualize Because the rays refract toward the normal, your face appears higher above the surface than it actually is.

Categorize Because the refracting surface is flat, R is infinite. Hence, we can use Equation 36.9 to determine the location of the image with $p = d$.

Analyze Use Equation 36.9 to find the image distance:

$$q = -\frac{n_2}{n_1}p = -\frac{1.33}{1.00}d = \boxed{-1.33d}$$

Finalize The negative sign for q indicates that the image is in the medium from which the light originated, which is the air above the water.

What If? What if you look more carefully at the fish and measure its apparent *height* from its upper fin to its lower fin? Is the apparent height h' of the fish different from the actual height h?

Answer Because all points on the fish appear to be fractionally closer to the observer, we expect the height to be smaller. Let the distance d in Figure 36.20a be measured to the top fin, and let the distance to the bottom fin be $d + h$. Then the images of the top and bottom of the fish are located at

$$q_{\text{top}} = -0.752d$$

$$q_{\text{bottom}} = -0.752(d + h)$$

The apparent height h' of the fish is

$$h' = q_{\text{top}} - q_{\text{bottom}} = -0.752d - [-0.752(d + h)] = 0.752h$$

Hence, the fish appears to be approximately three-fourths its actual height.

36.4 Thin Lenses

Lenses are commonly used to form images by refraction in optical instruments such as cameras, telescopes, and microscopes. Let's use what we just learned about images formed by refracting surfaces to help locate the image formed by a lens. Light passing through a lens experiences refraction at two surfaces. The development we shall follow is based on the notion that **the image formed by one refracting surface serves as the object for the second surface.** We shall analyze a thick lens first and then let the thickness of the lens be approximately zero.

Consider a lens having an index of refraction n and two spherical surfaces with radii of curvature R_1 and R_2 as in Figure 36.21 (page 1022). (Notice that R_1 is the radius of curvature of the lens surface the light from the object reaches first and R_2 is the radius of curvature of the other surface of the lens.) An object is placed at point O at a distance p_1 in front of surface 1.

Let's begin with the image formed by surface 1. Using Equation 36.8 and assuming $n_1 = 1$ because the lens is surrounded by air, we find that the image I_1 formed by surface 1 satisfies the equation

$$\frac{1}{p_1} + \frac{n}{q_1} = \frac{n-1}{R_1} \qquad \textbf{(36.10)}$$

where q_1 is the position of the image formed by surface 1. If the image formed by surface 1 is virtual (Fig. 36.21a), q_1 is negative; it is positive if the image is real (Fig. 36.21b).

Now let's apply Equation 36.8 to surface 2, taking $n_1 = n$ and $n_2 = 1$. (We make this switch in index because the light rays approaching surface 2 are *in the material*

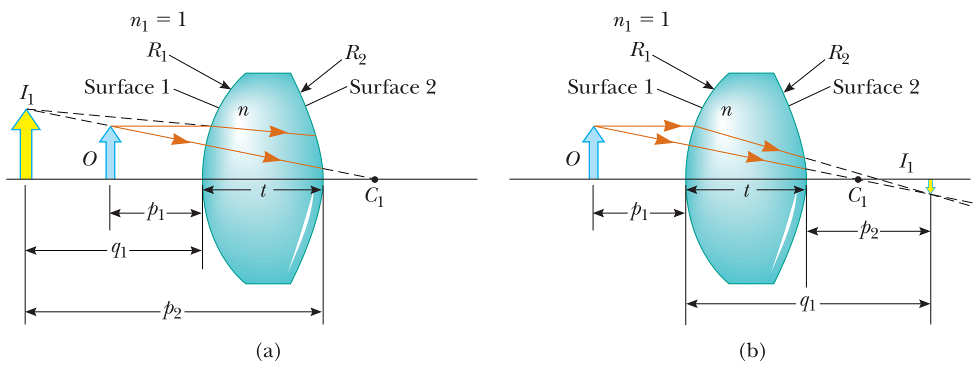


Figure 36.21 To locate the image formed by a lens, we use the virtual image at I_1 formed by surface 1 as the object for the image formed by surface 2. The point C_1 is the center of curvature of surface 1. (a) The image due to surface 1 is virtual, so I_1 is to the left of the surface. (b) The image due to surface 1 is real, so I_1 is to the right of the surface.

of the lens, and this material has index n.) Taking p_2 as the object distance for surface 2 and q_2 as the image distance gives

$$\frac{n}{p_2} + \frac{1}{q_2} = \frac{1 - n}{R_2} \tag{36.11}$$

We now introduce mathematically that the image formed by the first surface acts as the object for the second surface. If the image from surface 1 is virtual as in Figure 36.21a, we see that p_2, measured from surface 2, is related to q_1 as $p_2 = -q_1 + t$, where t is the thickness of the lens. Because q_1 is negative, p_2 is a positive number. Figure 36.21b shows the case of the image from surface 1 being real. In this situation, q_1 is positive and $p_2 = -q_1 + t$, where the image from surface 1 acts as a virtual object, so p_2 is negative. Regardless of the type of image from surface 1, the same equation describes the location of the object for surface 2 based on our sign convention. For a *thin* lens (one whose thickness is small compared with the radii of curvature), we can neglect t. In this approximation, $p_2 = -q_1$ for either type of image from surface 1. Hence, Equation 36.11 becomes

$$-\frac{n}{q_1} + \frac{1}{q_2} = \frac{1 - n}{R_2} \tag{36.12}$$

Adding Equations 36.10 and 36.12 gives

$$\frac{1}{p_1} + \frac{1}{q_2} = (n - 1)\left(\frac{1}{R_1} - \frac{1}{R_2}\right) \tag{36.13}$$

For a thin lens, we can omit the subscripts on p_1 and q_2 in Equation 36.13 and call the object distance p and the image distance q, as in Figure 36.22. Hence, we can write Equation 36.13 as

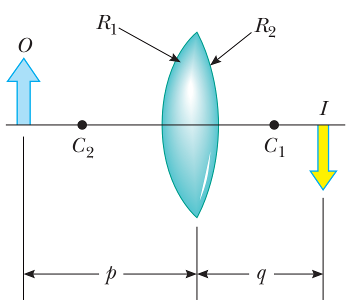


Figure 36.22 Simplified geometry for a thin lens.

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = (n - 1)\left(\frac{1}{R_1} - \frac{1}{R_2}\right) \tag{36.14}$$

This expression relates the image distance q of the image formed by a thin lens to the object distance p and to the lens properties (index of refraction and radii of curvature). It is valid only for paraxial rays and only when the lens thickness is much less than R_1 and R_2.

The **focal length** f of a thin lens is the image distance that corresponds to an infinite object distance, just as with mirrors. Letting p approach ∞ and q approach f in Equation 36.14, we see that the inverse of the focal length for a thin lens is

Lens-makers' equation ▶

$$\boxed{\frac{1}{f} = (n - 1)\left(\frac{1}{R_1} - \frac{1}{R_2}\right)} \tag{36.15}$$

This relationship is called the **lens-makers' equation** because it can be used to determine the values of R_1 and R_2 needed for a given index of refraction and a desired focal length f. Conversely, if the index of refraction and the radii of curvature of a lens are given, this equation can be used to find the focal length. If the

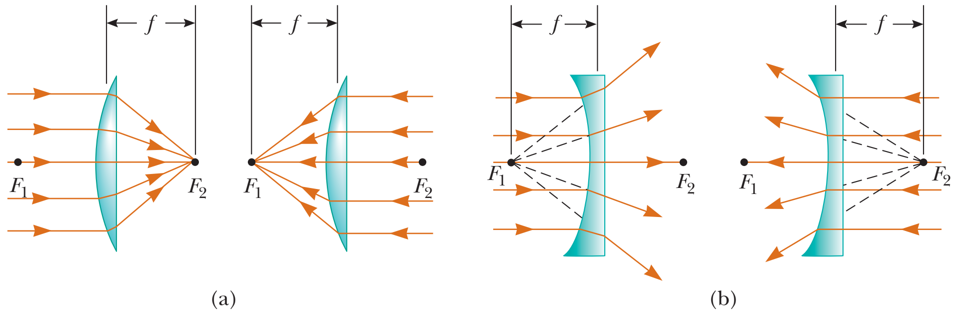


Figure 36.23 Parallel light rays pass through (a) a converging lens and (b) a diverging lens. The focal length is the same for light rays passing through a given lens in either direction. Both focal points F_1 and F_2 are the same distance from the lens.

PITFALL PREVENTION 36.5

A Lens Has Two Focal Points but Only One Focal Length

A lens has a focal point on each side, front and back. There is only one focal length, however; each of the two focal points is located the same distance from the lens (Fig. 36.23). As a result, the lens forms an image of an object at the same point if it is turned around. In practice, that might not happen because real lenses are not infinitesimally thin.

lens is immersed in something other than air, this same equation can be used, with n interpreted as the *ratio* of the index of refraction of the lens material to that of the surrounding fluid.

Using Equation 36.15, we can write Equation 36.14 in a form identical to Equation 36.6 for mirrors:

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} \qquad (36.16)$$

This equation, called the **thin lens equation,** can be used to relate the image distance and object distance for a thin lens.

Because light can travel in either direction through a lens, each lens has two focal points, one for light rays passing through in one direction and one for rays passing through in the other direction. These two focal points are illustrated in Figure 36.23 for a plano-convex lens (a converging lens) and a plano-concave lens (a diverging lens).

Figure 36.24 is useful for obtaining the signs of p and q, and Table 36.3 gives the sign conventions for thin lenses. These sign conventions are the *same* as those for refracting surfaces (see Table 36.2).

Various lens shapes are shown in Figure 36.25. Notice that a converging lens is thicker at the center than at the edge, whereas a diverging lens is thinner at the center than at the edge.

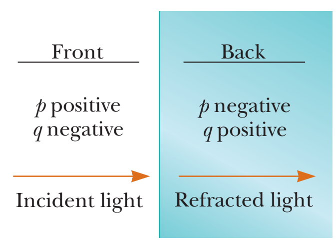


Figure 36.24 A diagram for obtaining the signs of p and q for a thin lens. (This diagram also applies to a refracting surface.)

Magnification of Images

Consider a thin lens through which light rays from an object pass. As with mirrors (Eq. 36.2), a geometric construction shows that the lateral magnification of the image is

$$M = \frac{h'}{h} = -\frac{q}{p} \qquad (36.17)$$

From this expression, it follows that when M is positive, the image is upright and on the same side of the lens as the object. When M is negative, the image is inverted and on the side of the lens opposite the object.

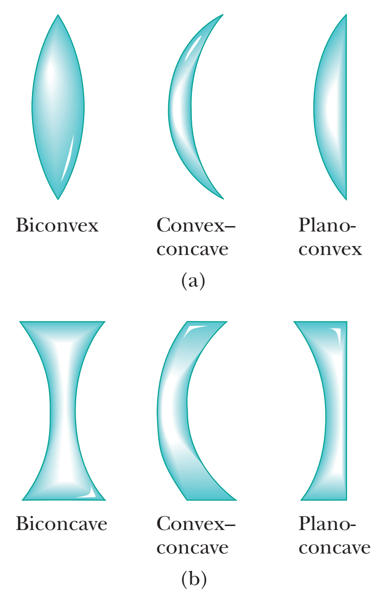


Figure 36.25 Various lens shapes. (a) Converging lenses have a positive focal length and are thickest at the middle. (b) Diverging lenses have a negative focal length and are thickest at the edges.

TABLE 36.3

Sign Conventions for Thin Lenses

Quantity	Positive When . . .	Negative When . . .
Object location (p)	object is in front of lens (real object).	object is in back of lens (virtual object).
Image location (q)	image is in back of lens (real image).	image is in front of lens (virtual image).
Image height (h')	image is upright.	image is inverted.
R_1 and R_2	center of curvature is in back of lens.	center of curvature is in front of lens.
Focal length (f)	a converging lens.	a diverging lens.

Ray Diagrams for Thin Lenses

Ray diagrams are convenient for locating the images formed by thin lenses or systems of lenses. They also help clarify our sign conventions. Active Figure 36.26 shows such diagrams for three single-lens situations.

To locate the image of a *converging* lens (Active Fig. 36.26a and b), the following three rays are drawn from the top of the object:

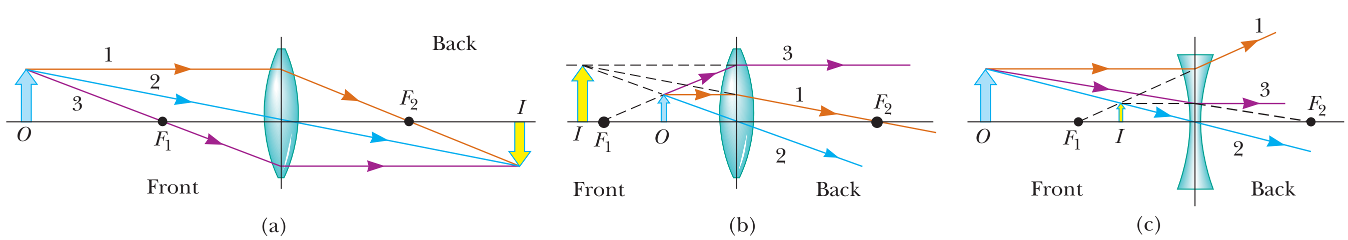
- Ray 1 is drawn parallel to the principal axis. After being refracted by the lens, this ray passes through the focal point on the back side of the lens.
- Ray 2 is drawn through the center of the lens and continues in a straight line.
- Ray 3 is drawn through the focal point on the front side of the lens (or as if coming from the focal point if $p < f$) and emerges from the lens parallel to the principal axis.

To locate the image of a *diverging* lens (Active Fig. 36.26c), the following three rays are drawn from the top of the object:

- Ray 1 is drawn parallel to the principal axis. After being refracted by the lens, this ray emerges directed away from the focal point on the front side of the lens.
- Ray 2 is drawn through the center of the lens and continues in a straight line.
- Ray 3 is drawn in the direction toward the focal point on the back side of the lens and emerges from the lens parallel to the principal axis.

For the converging lens in Active Figure 36.26a, where the object is to the left of the focal point ($p > f$), the image is real and inverted. When the object is between the focal point and the lens ($p < f$) as in Active Figure 36.26b, the image is virtual and upright. In that case, the lens acts as a magnifying glass, which we study in more detail in Section 36.8. For a diverging lens (Active Fig. 36.26c), the image is always virtual and upright, regardless of where the object is placed. These geometric constructions are reasonably accurate only if the distance between the rays and the principal axis is much less than the radii of the lens surfaces.

Notice that refraction occurs only at the surfaces of the lens. A certain lens design takes advantage of this behavior to produce the *Fresnel lens,* a powerful lens



ACTIVE FIGURE 36.26

Ray diagrams for locating the image formed by a thin lens. (a) When the object is in front of and outside the focal point of a converging lens, the image is real, inverted, and on the back side of the lens. (b) When the object is between the focal point and a converging lens, the image is virtual, upright, larger than the object, and on the front side of the lens. (c) When an object is anywhere in front of a diverging lens, the image is virtual, upright, smaller than the object, and on the front side of the lens.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to move the objects and change the focal length of the lenses to see the effect on the images.

without great thickness. Because only the surface curvature is important in the refracting qualities of the lens, material in the middle of a Fresnel lens is removed as shown in the cross sections of lenses in Figure 36.27. Because the edges of the curved segments cause some distortion, Fresnel lenses are generally used only in situations in which image quality is less important than reduction of weight. A classroom overhead projector often uses a Fresnel lens; the circular edges between segments of the lens can be seen by looking closely at the light projected onto a screen.

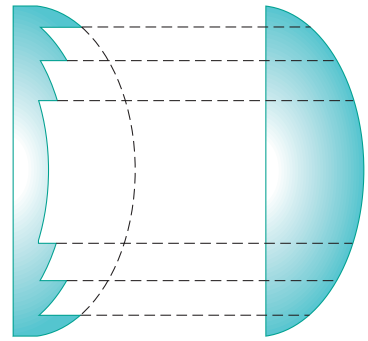


Figure 36.27 The Fresnel lens on the left has the same focal length as the thick lens on the right but is made of much less glass.

Quick Quiz 36.6 What is the focal length of a pane of window glass? (a) zero (b) infinity (c) the thickness of the glass (d) impossible to determine

EXAMPLE 36.8 Images Formed by a Converging Lens

A converging lens has a focal length of 10.0 cm.

(A) An object is placed 30.0 cm from the lens. Construct a ray diagram, find the image distance, and describe the image.

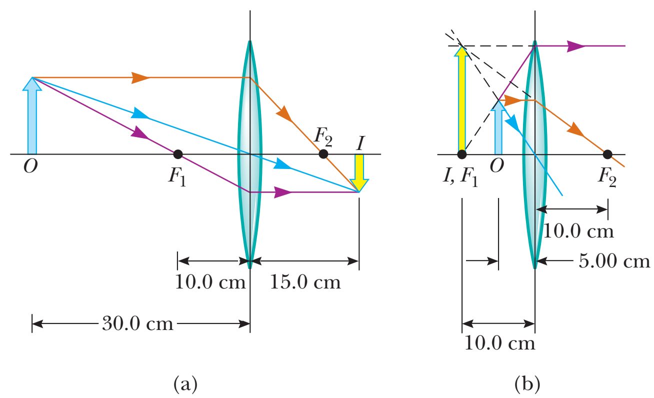


Figure 36.28 (Example 36.8) An image is formed by a converging lens. (a) The object is farther from the lens than the focal point. (b) The object is closer to the lens than the focal point.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Because the lens is converging, the focal length is positive (see Table 36.3). We expect the possibilities of both real and virtual images.

Categorize Because the object distance is larger than the focal length, we expect the image to be real. The ray diagram for this situation is shown in Figure 36.28a.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.16:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{10.0 \text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{30.0 \text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{+15.0 \text{ cm}}$$

Find the magnification of the image from Equation 36.17:

$$M = -\frac{q}{p} = -\frac{15.0 \text{ cm}}{30.0 \text{ cm}} = \boxed{-0.500}$$

Finalize The positive sign for the image distance tells us that the image is indeed real and on the back side of the lens. The magnification of the image tells us that the image is reduced in height by one half, and the negative sign for M tells us that the image is inverted.

(B) An object is placed 10.0 cm from the lens. Find the image distance and describe the image.

SOLUTION

Categorize Because the object is at the focal point, we expect the image to be infinitely far away.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.16:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{10.0\text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{10.0\text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{\infty}$$

Finalize This result means that rays originating from an object positioned at the focal point of a lens are refracted so that the image is formed at an infinite distance from the lens; that is, the rays travel parallel to one another after refraction.

(C) An object is placed 5.00 cm from the lens. Construct a ray diagram, find the image distance, and describe the image.

SOLUTION

Categorize Because the object distance is smaller than the focal length, we expect the image to be virtual. The ray diagram for this situation is shown in Figure 36.28b.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.16:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{10.0\text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{5.00\text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{-10.0\text{ cm}}$$

Find the magnification of the image from Equation 36.17:

$$M = -\frac{q}{p} = -\left(\frac{-10.0\text{ cm}}{5.00\text{ cm}}\right) = \boxed{+2.00}$$

Finalize The negative image distance tells us that the image is virtual and formed on the side of the lens from which the light is incident, the front side. The image is enlarged, and the positive sign for M tells us that the image is upright.

What If? What if the object moves right up to the lens surface, so that $p \to 0$? Where is the image?

Answer In this case, because $p \ll R$, where R is either of the radii of the surfaces of the lens, the curvature of the lens can be ignored. The lens should appear to have the same effect as a flat piece of material, which suggests that the image is just on the front side of the lens, at $q = 0$. This conclusion can be verified mathematically by rearranging the thin lens equation:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

If we let $p \to 0$, the second term on the right becomes very large compared with the first and we can neglect $1/f$. The equation becomes

$$\frac{1}{q} = -\frac{1}{p} \quad \to \quad q = -p = 0$$

Therefore, q is on the front side of the lens (because it has the opposite sign as p) and right at the lens surface.

EXAMPLE 36.9 Images Formed by a Diverging Lens

A diverging lens has a focal length of 10.0 cm.

(A) An object is placed 30.0 cm from the lens. Construct a ray diagram, find the image distance, and describe the image.

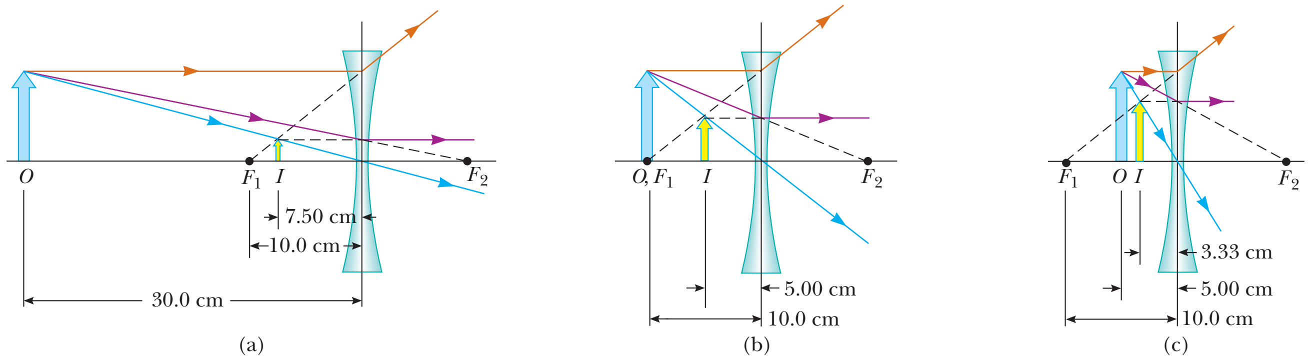


Figure 36.29 (Example 36.9) An image is formed by a diverging lens. (a) The object is farther from the lens than the focal point. (b) The object is at the focal point. (c) The object is closer to the lens than the focal point.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Because the lens is diverging, the focal length is negative (see Table 36.3). The ray diagram for this situation is shown in Figure 36.29a.

Categorize Because the lens is diverging, we expect it to form an upright, reduced, virtual image for any object position.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.16:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{-10.0\text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{30.0\text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{-7.50\text{ cm}}$$

Find the magnification of the image from Equation 36.17:

$$M = -\frac{q}{p} = -\left(\frac{-7.50\text{ cm}}{30.0\text{ cm}}\right) = \boxed{+0.250}$$

Finalize This result confirms that the image is virtual, smaller than the object, and upright. Look through the diverging lens in a door peephole to see this type of image.

(B) An object is placed 10.0 cm from the lens. Construct a ray diagram, find the image distance, and describe the image.

SOLUTION

The ray diagram for this situation is shown in Figure 36.29b.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.16:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{-10.0\text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{10.0\text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{-5.00\text{ cm}}$$

Find the magnification of the image from Equation 36.17:

$$M = -\frac{q}{p} = -\left(\frac{-5.00\text{ cm}}{10.0\text{ cm}}\right) = \boxed{+0.500}$$

Finalize Notice the difference between this situation and that for a converging lens. For a diverging lens, an object at the focal point does not produce an image infinitely far away.

(C) An object is placed 5.00 cm from the lens. Construct a ray diagram, find the image distance, and describe the image.

SOLUTION

The ray diagram for this situation is shown in Figure 36.29c.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.16:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{-10.0 \text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{5.00 \text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{-3.33 \text{ cm}}$$

Find the magnification of the image from Equation 36.17:

$$M = -\left(\frac{-3.33 \text{ cm}}{5.00 \text{ cm}}\right) = \boxed{+0.667}$$

Finalize For all three object positions, the image position is negative and the magnification is a positive number smaller than 1, which confirms that the image is virtual, smaller than the object, and upright.

Combination of Thin Lenses

If two thin lenses are used to form an image, the system can be treated in the following manner. First, the image formed by the first lens is located as if the second lens were not present. Then a ray diagram is drawn for the second lens, with the image formed by the first lens now serving as the object for the second lens. The second image formed is the final image of the system. If the image formed by the first lens lies on the back side of the second lens, that image is treated as a **virtual object** for the second lens (that is, in the thin lens equation, p is negative). The same procedure can be extended to a system of three or more lenses. Because the magnification due to the second lens is performed on the magnified image due to the first lens, the **overall magnification of the image due to the combination of lenses is the product of the individual magnifications:**

$$M = M_1 M_2 \tag{36.18}$$

This equation can be used for combinations of any optical elements such as a lens and a mirror. For more than two optical elements, the magnifications due to all elements are multiplied together.

Let's consider the special case of a system of two lenses of focal lengths f_1 and f_2 in contact with each other. If $p_1 = p$ is the object distance for the combination, application of the thin lens equation (Eq. 36.16) to the first lens gives

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q_1} = \frac{1}{f_1}$$

where q_1 is the image distance for the first lens. Treating this image as the object for the second lens, we see that the object distance for the second lens must be $p_2 = -q_1$. (The distances are the same because the lenses are in contact and assumed to be infinitesimally thin. The object distance is negative because the object is virtual.) Therefore, for the second lens,

$$\frac{1}{p_2} + \frac{1}{q_2} = \frac{1}{f_2} \quad \rightarrow \quad -\frac{1}{q_1} + \frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f_2}$$

where $q = q_2$ is the final image distance from the second lens, which is the image distance for the combination. Adding the equations for the two lenses eliminates q_1 and gives

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f_1} + \frac{1}{f_2}$$

If the combination is replaced with a single lens that forms an image at the same location, its focal length must be related to the individual focal lengths by the expression

$$\frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{f_1} + \frac{1}{f_2} \tag{36.19}$$

◀ Focal length for a combination of two thin lenses in contact

Therefore, **two thin lenses in contact with each other are equivalent to a single thin lens having a focal length given by Equation 36.19.**

EXAMPLE 36.10 Where Is the Final Image?

Two thin converging lenses of focal lengths $f_1 = 10.0$ cm and $f_2 = 20.0$ cm are separated by 20.0 cm as illustrated in Figure 36.30. An object is placed 30.0 cm to the left of lens 1. Find the position and the magnification of the final image.

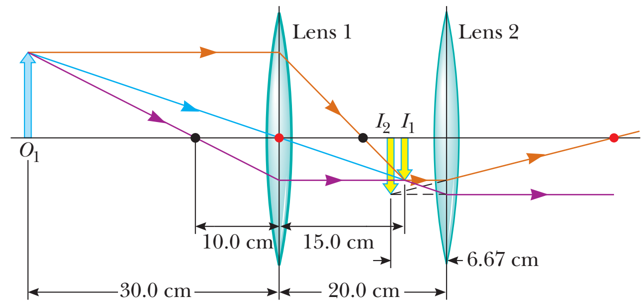


Figure 36.30 (Example 36.10) A combination of two converging lenses. The ray diagram shows the location of the final image due to the combination of lenses. The black dots are the focal points of lens 1 and the red dots are the focal points of lens 2.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine light rays passing through the first lens and forming a real image (because $p > f$) in the absence of a second lens. Figure 36.30 shows these light rays forming the inverted image I_1. Once the light rays converge to the image point, they do not stop. They continue through the image point and interact with the second lens. The rays leaving the image point behave in the same way as the rays leaving an object. Therefore, the image of the first lens serves as the object of the second lens.

Categorize We categorize this problem as one in which the thin lens equation is applied in a stepwise fashion to the two lenses.

Analyze Find the location of the image formed by lens 1 from the thin lens equation:

$$\frac{1}{q_1} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p_1}$$

$$\frac{1}{q_1} = \frac{1}{10.0 \text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{30.0 \text{ cm}}$$

$$q_1 = +15.0 \text{ cm}$$

Find the magnification of the image from Equation 36.17:

$$M_1 = -\frac{q_1}{p_1} = -\frac{15.0 \text{ cm}}{30.0 \text{ cm}} = -0.500$$

The image formed by this lens acts as the object for the second lens. Therefore, the object distance for the second lens is 20.0 cm − 15.0 cm = 5.00 cm.

Find the location of the image formed by lens 2 from the thin lens equation:

$$\frac{1}{q_2} = \frac{1}{20.0 \text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{5.00 \text{ cm}}$$

$$q_2 = \boxed{-6.67 \text{ cm}}$$

Find the magnification of the image from Equation 36.17:

$$M_2 = -\frac{q_2}{p_2} = -\frac{(-6.67 \text{ cm})}{5.00 \text{ cm}} = +1.33$$

Find the overall magnification of the system from Equation 36.18:

$$M = M_1 M_2 = (-0.500)(1.33) = \boxed{-0.667}$$

Finalize The negative sign on the overall magnification indicates that the final image is inverted with respect to the initial object. Because the absolute value of the magnification is less than 1, the final image is smaller than the object. Because q_2 is negative, the final image is on the front, or left, side of lens 2. These conclusions are consistent with the ray diagram in Figure 36.30.

What If? Suppose you want to create an upright image with this system of two lenses. How must the second lens be moved?

Answer Because the object is farther from the first lens than the focal length of that lens, the first image is inverted. Consequently, the second lens must invert the image once again so that the final image is upright. An inverted image is only formed by a converging lens if the object is outside the focal point. Therefore, the image formed by the first lens must be to the left of the focal point of the second lens in Figure 36.30. To make that happen, you must move the second lens at least as far away from the first lens as the sum $q_1 + f_2 = 15.0 \text{ cm} + 20.0 \text{ cm} = 35.0 \text{ cm}$.

36.5 Lens Aberrations

Our analysis of mirrors and lenses assumes rays make small angles with the principal axis and the lenses are thin. In this simple model, all rays leaving a point source focus at a single point, producing a sharp image. Clearly, that is not always true. When the approximations used in this analysis do not hold, imperfect images are formed.

A precise analysis of image formation requires tracing each ray, using Snell's law at each refracting surface and the law of reflection at each reflecting surface. This procedure shows that the rays from a point object do not focus at a single point, with the result that the image is blurred. The departures of actual images from the ideal predicted by our simplified model are called **aberrations.**

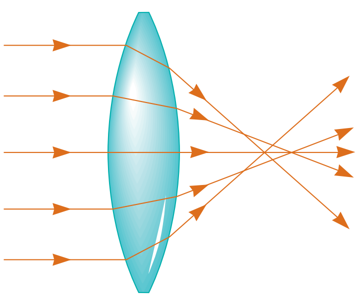


Figure 36.31 Spherical aberration caused by a converging lens. Does a diverging lens cause spherical aberration?

Spherical Aberration

Spherical aberration occurs because the focal points of rays far from the principal axis of a spherical lens (or mirror) are different from the focal points of rays of the same wavelength passing near the axis. Figure 36.31 illustrates spherical aberration for parallel rays passing through a converging lens. Rays passing through points near the center of the lens are imaged farther from the lens than rays passing through points near the edges. Figure 36.8 earlier in the chapter showed a similar situation for a spherical mirror.

Many cameras have an adjustable aperture to control light intensity and reduce spherical aberration. (An aperture is an opening that controls the amount of light passing through the lens.) Sharper images are produced as the aperture size is reduced; with a small aperture, only the central portion of the lens is exposed to the light and therefore a greater percentage of the rays are paraxial. At the same time, however, less light passes through the lens. To compensate for this lower light intensity, a longer exposure time is used.

In the case of mirrors, spherical aberration can be minimized through the use of a parabolic reflecting surface rather than a spherical surface. Parabolic surfaces are not used often, however, because those with high-quality optics are very expensive to make. Parallel light rays incident on a parabolic surface focus at a common point, regardless of their distance from the principal axis. Parabolic reflecting surfaces are used in many astronomical telescopes to enhance image quality.

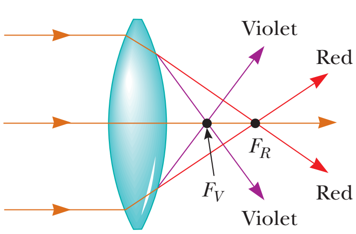


Figure 36.32 Chromatic aberration caused by a converging lens. Rays of different wavelengths focus at different points.

Chromatic Aberration

In Chapter 35, we described dispersion, whereby a material's index of refraction varies with wavelength. Because of this phenomenon, violet rays are refracted more than red rays when white light passes through a lens (Fig. 36.32). The figure shows that the focal length of a lens is greater for red light than for violet light. Other wavelengths (not shown in Fig. 36.32) have focal points intermediate between those of red and violet, which causes a blurred image and is called **chromatic aberration.**

Chromatic aberration for a diverging lens also results in a shorter focal length for violet light than for red light, but on the front side of the lens. Chromatic aberration can be greatly reduced by combining a converging lens made of one type of glass and a diverging lens made of another type of glass.

36.6 The Camera

The photographic **camera** is a simple optical instrument whose essential features are shown in Figure 36.33. It consists of a lighttight chamber, a converging lens that produces a real image, and a film behind the lens to receive the image.

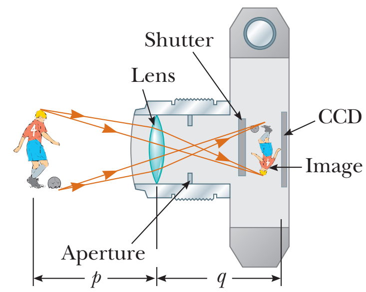


Figure 36.33 Cross-sectional view of a simple digital camera. The CCD is the light-sensitive component of the camera. In a nondigital camera, the light from the lens falls onto photographic film. In reality, $p \gg q$.

Digital cameras are similar to film cameras except that the light does not form an image on photographic film. The image in a digital camera is formed on a *charge-coupled device* (CCD), which digitizes the image, turning it into binary code as we discussed for sound in Section 17.5. (A CCD is described in Section 40.2.) The digital information is then stored on a memory chip for playback on the camera's display screen, or it can be downloaded to a computer. In the discussion that follows, we assume the camera is digital.

A camera is focused by varying the distance between the lens and the CCD. For proper focusing—which is necessary for the formation of sharp images—the lens-to-CCD distance depends on the object distance as well as the focal length of the lens.

The shutter, positioned behind the lens, is a mechanical device that is opened for selected time intervals, called *exposure times*. You can photograph moving objects by using short exposure times or photograph dark scenes (with low light levels) by using long exposure times. If this adjustment were not available, it would be impossible to take stop-action photographs. For example, a rapidly moving vehicle could move enough in the time interval during which the shutter is open to produce a blurred image. Another major cause of blurred images is the movement of the camera while the shutter is open. To prevent such movement, either short exposure times or a tripod should be used, even for stationary objects. Typical shutter speeds (that is, exposure times) are $\frac{1}{30}$ s, $\frac{1}{60}$ s, $\frac{1}{125}$ s, and $\frac{1}{250}$ s. In practice, stationary objects are normally shot with an intermediate shutter speed of $\frac{1}{60}$ s.

The intensity I of the light reaching the CCD is proportional to the area of the lens. Because this area is proportional to the square of the diameter D, it follows that I is also proportional to D^2. Light intensity is a measure of the rate at which energy is received by the CCD per unit area of the image. Because the area of the image is proportional to q^2 and $q \approx f$ (when $p \gg f$, so p can be approximated as infinite), we conclude that the intensity is also proportional to $1/f^2$ and therefore that $I \propto D^2/f^2$.

The ratio f/D is called the ***f*-number** of a lens:

$$f\text{-number} \equiv \frac{f}{D} \tag{36.20}$$

Hence, the intensity of light incident on the CCD varies according to the following proportionality:

$$I \propto \frac{1}{(f/D)^2} \propto \frac{1}{(f\text{-number})^2} \tag{36.21}$$

The *f*-number is often given as a description of the lens's "speed." The lower the *f*-number, the wider the aperture and the higher the rate at which energy from the light exposes the CCD; therefore, a lens with a low *f*-number is a "fast" lens. The conventional notation for an *f*-number is "$f/$" followed by the actual number. For example, "$f/4$" means an f-number of 4; it *does not* mean to divide f by 4! Extremely fast lenses, which have f-numbers as low as approximately $f/1.2$, are expensive because it is very difficult to keep aberrations acceptably small with light rays passing through a large area of the lens. Camera lens systems (that is, combinations of lenses with adjustable apertures) are often marked with multiple f-numbers, usually $f/2.8$, $f/4$, $f/5.6$, $f/8$, $f/11$, and $f/16$. Any one of these settings can be selected by adjusting the aperture, which changes the value of D. Increasing the setting from one f-number to the next higher value (for example, from $f/2.8$ to $f/4$) decreases the area of the aperture by a factor of 2. The lowest f-number setting on a camera lens corresponds to a wide-open aperture and the use of the maximum possible lens area.

Simple cameras usually have a fixed focal length and a fixed aperture size, with an f-number of about $f/11$. This high value for the f-number allows for a large **depth of field,** meaning that objects at a wide range of distances from the lens form reasonably sharp images on the CCD. In other words, the camera does not have to be focused.

Quick Quiz 36.7 A camera can be modeled as a simple converging lens that focuses an image on the CCD, acting as the screen. A camera is initially focused on a distant object. To focus the image of an object close to the camera, must the lens be (a) moved away from the CCD, (b) left where it is, or (c) moved toward the CCD?

EXAMPLE 36.11 Finding the Correct Exposure Time

The lens of a digital camera has a focal length of 55 mm and a speed (an f-number) of $f/1.8$. The correct exposure time for this speed under certain conditions is known to be $\frac{1}{500}$ s.

(A) Determine the diameter of the lens.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Remember that the f-number for a lens relates its focal length to its diameter.

Categorize We evaluate results using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Solve Equation 36.20 for D and substitute numerical values:

$$D = \frac{f}{f\text{-number}} = \frac{55\text{ mm}}{1.8} = \boxed{31\text{ mm}}$$

(B) Calculate the correct exposure time if the f-number is changed to $f/4$ under the same lighting conditions.

SOLUTION

The total light energy hitting the CCD is proportional to the product of the intensity and the exposure time. If I is the light intensity reaching the CCD, the energy per unit area received by the CCD in a time interval Δt is proportional to $I\,\Delta t$. Comparing the two situations, we require that $I_1\,\Delta t_1 = I_2\,\Delta t_2$, where Δt_1 is the correct exposure time for $f/1.8$ and Δt_2 is the correct exposure time for $f/4$.

Use this result and substitute for I from Equation 36.21:

$$I_1\,\Delta t_1 = I_2\,\Delta t_2 \rightarrow \frac{\Delta t_1}{(f_1\text{-number})^2} = \frac{\Delta t_2}{(f_2\text{-number})^2}$$

Solve for Δt_2 and substitute numerical values:

$$\Delta t_2 = \left(\frac{f_2\text{-number}}{f_1\text{-number}}\right)^2 \Delta t_1 = \left(\frac{4}{1.8}\right)^2 \left(\tfrac{1}{500}\text{ s}\right) \approx \boxed{\tfrac{1}{100}\text{ s}}$$

As the aperture size is reduced, the exposure time must increase.

36.7 The Eye

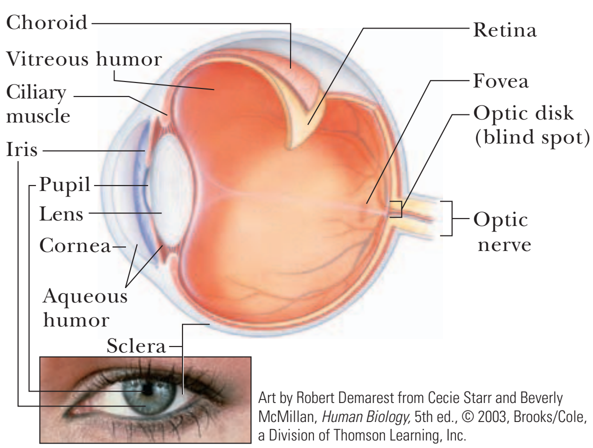
Like a camera, a normal eye focuses light and produces a sharp image. The mechanisms by which the eye controls the amount of light admitted and adjusts to produce correctly focused images, however, are far more complex, intricate, and effective than those in even the most sophisticated camera. In all respects, the eye is a physiological wonder.

Figure 36.34 shows the basic parts of the human eye. Light entering the eye passes through a transparent structure called the *cornea* (Fig. 36.35), behind which are a clear liquid (the *aqueous humor*), a variable aperture (the *pupil,* which is an opening in the *iris*), and the *crystalline lens.* Most of the refraction occurs at the outer surface of the eye, where the cornea is covered with a film of tears. Relatively little refraction occurs in the crystalline lens because the aqueous humor in contact with the lens has an average index of refraction close to that of the lens. The iris, which is the colored portion of the eye, is a muscular diaphragm that controls pupil size. The iris regulates the amount of light entering the eye by dilating, or opening, the pupil in low-light conditions and contracting, or closing, the pupil in high-light conditions. The *f*-number range of the human eye is approximately $f/2.8$ to $f/16$.

The cornea–lens system focuses light onto the back surface of the eye, the *retina,* which consists of millions of sensitive receptors called *rods* and *cones.* When stimulated by light, these receptors send impulses via the optic nerve to the brain, where an image is perceived. By this process, a distinct image of an object is observed when the image falls on the retina.

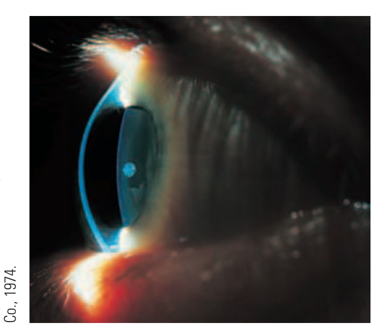
The eye focuses on an object by varying the shape of the pliable crystalline lens through a process called **accommodation.** The lens adjustments take place so swiftly that we are not even aware of the change. Accommodation is limited in that objects very close to the eye produce blurred images. The **near point** is the closest distance for which the lens can accommodate to focus light on the retina. This distance usually increases with age and has an average value of 25 cm. At age 10, the near point of the eye is typically approximately 18 cm. It increases to approximately 25 cm at age 20, to 50 cm at age 40, and to 500 cm or greater at age 60. The **far point** of the eye represents the greatest distance for which the lens of the relaxed eye can focus light on the retina. A person with normal vision can see very distant objects and therefore has a far point that can be approximated as infinity.

Recall that the light leaving the mirror in Figure 36.7 becomes white where it comes together but then diverges into separate colors again. Because nothing but air exists at the point where the rays cross (and hence nothing exists to cause the colors to separate again), seeing white light as a result of a combination of colors must be a visual illusion. In fact, that is the case. Only three types of color-sensitive



Art by Robert Demarest from Cecie Starr and Beverly McMillan, *Human Biology,* 5th ed., © 2003, Brooks/Cole, a Division of Thomson Learning, Inc.

Figure 36.34 Important parts of the eye.



From Lennart Nilsson, in collaboration with Jan Lindberg, *Behold Man: A Photographic Journey of Discovery Inside the Body,* Boston, Little, Brown & Co., 1974.

Figure 36.35 Close-up photograph of the cornea of the human eye.

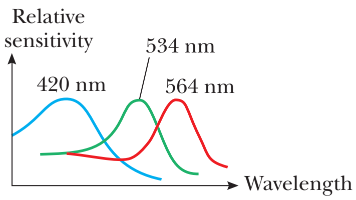


Figure 36.36 Approximate color sensitivity of the three types of cones in the retina.

cells are present in the retina. They are called red, green, and blue cones because of the peaks of the color ranges to which they respond (Fig. 36.36). If the red and green cones are stimulated simultaneously (as would be the case if yellow light were shining on them), the brain interprets what is seen as yellow. If all three types of cones are stimulated by the separate colors red, blue, and green as in Figure 36.7, white light is seen. If all three types of cones are stimulated by light that contains *all* colors, such as sunlight, again white light is seen.

Color televisions take advantage of this visual illusion by having only red, green, and blue dots on the screen. With specific combinations of brightness in these three primary colors, our eyes can be made to see any color in the rainbow. Therefore, the yellow lemon you see in a television commercial is not actually yellow, it is red and green! The paper on which this page is printed is made of tiny, matted, translucent fibers that scatter light in all directions, and the resultant mixture of colors appears white to the eye. Snow, clouds, and white hair are not actually white. In fact, there is no such thing as a white pigment. The appearance of these things is a consequence of the scattering of light containing all colors, which we interpret as white.

Conditions of the Eye

When the eye suffers a mismatch between the focusing range of the lens–cornea system and the length of the eye, with the result that light rays from a near object reach the retina before they converge to form an image as shown in Figure 36.37a, the condition is known as **farsightedness** (or *hyperopia*). A farsighted person can usually see faraway objects clearly but not nearby objects. Although the near point of a normal eye is approximately 25 cm, the near point of a farsighted person is much farther away. The refracting power in the cornea and lens is insufficient to focus the light from all but distant objects satisfactorily. The condition can be corrected by placing a converging lens in front of the eye as shown in Figure 36.37b. The lens refracts the incoming rays more toward the principal axis before entering the eye, allowing them to converge and focus on the retina.

A person with **nearsightedness** (or *myopia*), another mismatch condition, can focus on nearby objects but not on faraway objects. The far point of the nearsighted eye is not infinity and may be less than 1 m. The maximum focal length of the nearsighted eye is insufficient to produce a sharp image on the retina, and rays from a distant object converge to a focus in front of the retina. They then continue past that point, diverging before they finally reach the retina and causing blurred vision (Fig. 36.38a). Nearsightedness can be corrected with a diverging lens as shown in Figure 36.38b. The lens refracts the rays away from the principal axis before they enter the eye, allowing them to focus on the retina.

Beginning in middle age, most people lose some of their accommodation ability as their visual muscles weaken and the lens hardens. Unlike farsightedness, which is a mismatch between focusing power and eye length, **presbyopia** (literally, "old-age vision") is due to a reduction in accommodation ability. The cornea and

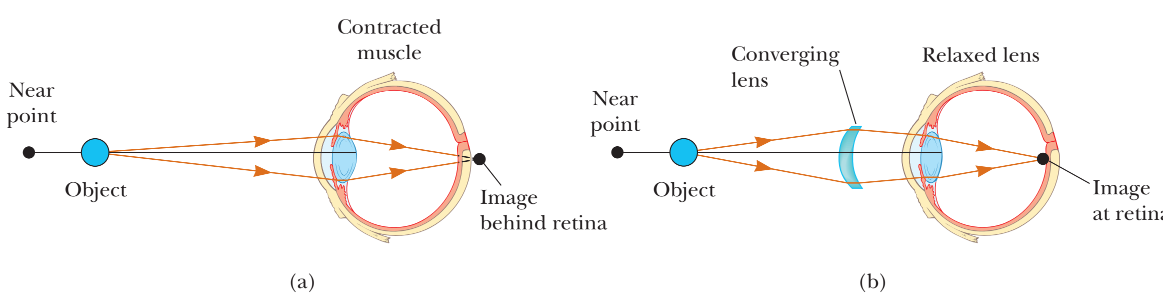


Figure 36.37 (a) When a farsighted eye looks at an object located between the near point and the eye, the image point is behind the retina, resulting in blurred vision. The eye muscle contracts to try to bring the object into focus. (b) Farsightedness is corrected with a converging lens.

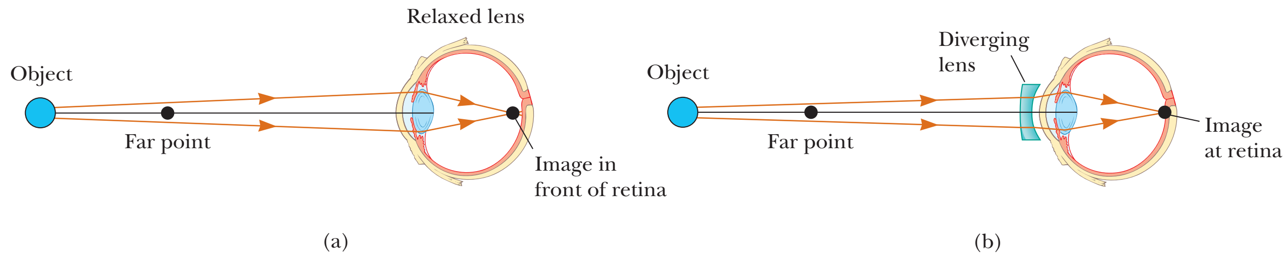


Figure 36.38 (a) When a nearsighted eye looks at an object that lies beyond the eye's far point, the image is formed in front of the retina, resulting in blurred vision. (b) Nearsightedness is corrected with a diverging lens.

lens do not have sufficient focusing power to bring nearby objects into focus on the retina. The symptoms are the same as those of farsightedness, and the condition can be corrected with converging lenses.

In eyes having a defect known as **astigmatism,** light from a point source produces a line image on the retina. This condition arises when either the cornea, the lens, or both are not perfectly symmetric. Astigmatism can be corrected with lenses that have different curvatures in two mutually perpendicular directions.

Optometrists and ophthalmologists usually prescribe lenses[1] measured in **diopters:** the **power** P of a lens in diopters equals the inverse of the focal length in meters: $P = 1/f$. For example, a converging lens of focal length $+20$ cm has a power of $+5.0$ diopters, and a diverging lens of focal length -40 cm has a power of -2.5 diopters.

Quick Quiz 36.8 Two campers wish to start a fire during the day. One camper is nearsighted, and one is farsighted. Whose glasses should be used to focus the Sun's rays onto some paper to start the fire? (a) either camper (b) the nearsighted camper (c) the farsighted camper

36.8 The Simple Magnifier

The simple magnifier, or magnifying glass, consists of a single converging lens. This device increases the apparent size of an object.

Suppose an object is viewed at some distance p from the eye as illustrated in Figure 36.39. The size of the image formed at the retina depends on the angle θ subtended by the object at the eye. As the object moves closer to the eye, θ increases and a larger image is observed. An average normal human eye, however, cannot focus on an object closer than about 25 cm, the near point (Fig. 36.40a, page 1036). Therefore, θ is maximum at the near point.

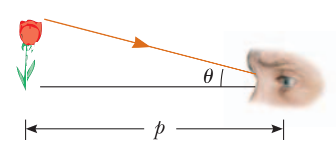


Figure 36.39 The size of the image formed on the retina depends on the angle θ subtended at the eye.

To further increase the apparent angular size of an object, a converging lens can be placed in front of the eye as in Figure 36.40b, with the object located at point O, immediately inside the focal point of the lens. At this location, the lens forms a virtual, upright, enlarged image. We define **angular magnification** m as the ratio of the angle subtended by an object with a lens in use (angle θ in Fig. 36.40b) to the angle subtended by the object placed at the near point with no lens in use (angle θ_0 in Fig. 36.40a):

$$m \equiv \frac{\theta}{\theta_0} \qquad \textbf{(36.22)}$$

[1] The word *lens* comes from *lentil*, the name of an Italian legume. (You may have eaten lentil soup.) Early eyeglasses were called "glass lentils" because the biconvex shape of their lenses resembled the shape of a lentil. The first lenses for farsightedness and presbyopia appeared around 1280; concave eyeglasses for correcting nearsightedness did not appear until more than 100 years later.

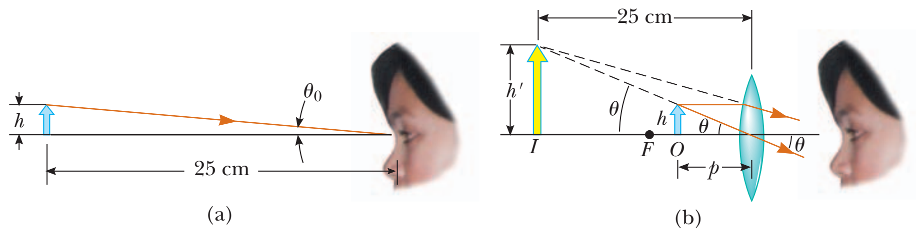


Figure 36.40 (a) An object placed at the near point of the eye (p = 25 cm) subtends an angle $\theta_0 \approx h/25$ at the eye. (b) An object placed near the focal point of a converging lens produces a magnified image that subtends an angle $\theta \approx h'/25$ at the eye.

The angular magnification is a maximum when the image is at the near point of the eye, that is, when $q = -25$ cm. The object distance corresponding to this image distance can be calculated from the thin lens equation:

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{-25\text{ cm}} = \frac{1}{f} \quad \rightarrow \quad p = \frac{25f}{25 + f}$$

where f is the focal length of the magnifier in centimeters. If we make the small-angle approximations

$$\tan\theta_0 \approx \theta_0 \approx \frac{h}{25} \quad \text{and} \quad \tan\theta \approx \theta \approx \frac{h}{p} \qquad \textbf{(36.23)}$$

Equation 36.22 becomes

$$m_{\text{max}} = \frac{\theta}{\theta_0} = \frac{h/p}{h/25} = \frac{25}{p} = \frac{25}{25f/(25 + f)}$$

$$m_{\text{max}} = 1 + \frac{25\text{ cm}}{f} \qquad \textbf{(36.24)}$$

Although the eye can focus on an image formed anywhere between the near point and infinity, it is most relaxed when the image is at infinity. For the image formed by the magnifying lens to appear at infinity, the object has to be at the focal point of the lens. In this case, Equations 36.23 become

$$\theta_0 \approx \frac{h}{25} \quad \text{and} \quad \theta \approx \frac{h}{f}$$

and the magnification is

$$m_{\text{min}} = \frac{\theta}{\theta_0} = \frac{25\text{ cm}}{f} \qquad \textbf{(36.25)}$$

With a single lens, it is possible to obtain angular magnifications up to about 4 without serious aberrations. Magnifications up to about 20 can be achieved by using one or two additional lenses to correct for aberrations.

A simple magnifier, also called a magnifying glass, is used to view an enlarged image of a portion of a map.

EXAMPLE 36.12 Magnification of a Lens

What is the maximum magnification that is possible with a lens having a focal length of 10 cm, and what is the magnification of this lens when the eye is relaxed?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Study Figure 36.40b for the situation in which a magnifying glass forms an enlarged image of an object placed inside the focal point. The maximum magnification occurs when the image is located at the near point of the eye. When the eye is relaxed, the image is at infinity.

Categorize We evaluate results using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Evaluate the maximum magnification from Equation 36.24:

$$m_{\max} = 1 + \frac{25\text{ cm}}{f} = 1 + \frac{25\text{ cm}}{10\text{ cm}} = \boxed{3.5}$$

Evaluate the minimum magnification, when the eye is relaxed, from Equation 36.25:

$$m_{\min} = \frac{25\text{ cm}}{f} = \frac{25\text{ cm}}{10\text{ cm}} = \boxed{2.5}$$

36.9 The Compound Microscope

A simple magnifier provides only limited assistance in inspecting minute details of an object. Greater magnification can be achieved by combining two lenses in a device called a **compound microscope** shown in Active Figure 36.41a. It consists of one lens, the *objective,* that has a very short focal length $f_o < 1$ cm and a second lens, the *eyepiece,* that has a focal length f_e of a few centimeters. The two lenses are separated by a distance L that is much greater than either f_o or f_e. The object, which is placed just outside the focal point of the objective, forms a real, inverted image at I_1, and this image is located at or close to the focal point of the eyepiece. The eyepiece, which serves as a simple magnifier, produces at I_2 a virtual, enlarged image of I_1. The lateral magnification M_1 of the first image is $-q_1/p_1$. Notice from Active Figure 36.41a that q_1 is approximately equal to L and that the object is very close to the focal point of the objective: $p_1 \approx f_o$. Therefore, the lateral magnification by the objective is

$$M_o \approx -\frac{L}{f_o}$$

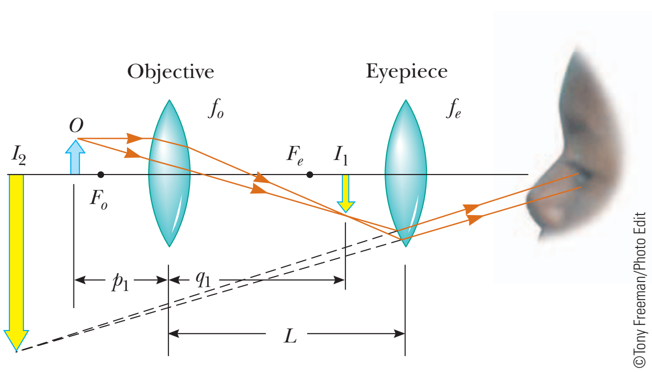
The angular magnification by the eyepiece for an object (corresponding to the image at I_1) placed at the focal point of the eyepiece is, from Equation 36.25,

$$m_e = \frac{25\text{ cm}}{f_e}$$

The overall magnification of the image formed by a compound microscope is defined as the product of the lateral and angular magnifications:

$$M = M_o m_e = -\frac{L}{f_o}\left(\frac{25\text{ cm}}{f_e}\right) \quad \textbf{(36.26)}$$

The negative sign indicates that the image is inverted.



ACTIVE FIGURE 36.41

(a) Diagram of a compound microscope, which consists of an objective lens and an eyepiece lens. (b) A compound microscope. The three-objective turret allows the user to choose from several powers of magnification. Combinations of eyepieces with different focal lengths and different objectives can produce a wide range of magnifications.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the focal lengths of the objective and eyepiece lenses and see the effect on the final image.

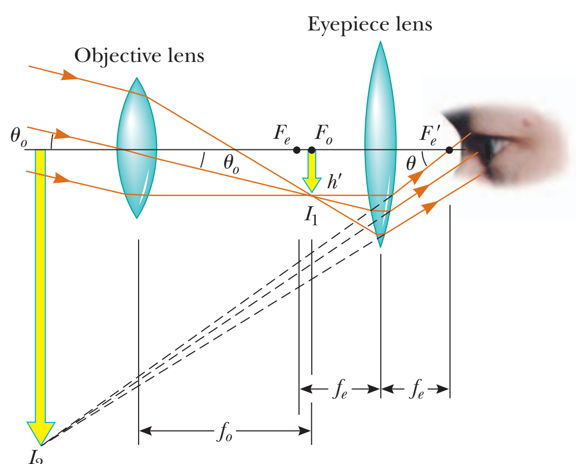
The microscope has extended human vision to the point where we can view previously unknown details of incredibly small objects. The capabilities of this instrument have steadily increased with improved techniques for precision grinding of lenses. A question often asked about microscopes is, "If one were extremely patient and careful, would it be possible to construct a microscope that would enable the human eye to see an atom?" The answer is no, as long as light is used to illuminate the object. For an object under an optical microscope (one that uses visible light) to be seen, the object must be at least as large as a wavelength of light. Because the diameter of any atom is many times smaller than the wavelengths of visible light, the mysteries of the atom must be probed using other types of "microscopes."

36.10 The Telescope

Two fundamentally different types of **telescopes** exist; both are designed to aid in viewing distant objects, such as the planets in our solar system. The **refracting telescope** uses a combination of lenses to form an image, and the **reflecting telescope** uses a curved mirror and a lens.

Like the compound microscope, the refracting telescope shown in Active Figure 36.42a has an objective and an eyepiece. The two lenses are arranged so that the objective forms a real, inverted image of a distant object very near the focal point of the eyepiece. Because the object is essentially at infinity, this point at which I_1 forms is the focal point of the objective. The eyepiece then forms, at I_2, an enlarged, inverted image of the image at I_1. To provide the largest possible magnification, the image distance for the eyepiece is infinite. The light rays exit the eyepiece lens parallel to the principal axis, and the image due to the objective lens must form at the focal point of the eyepiece. Hence, the two lenses are separated by a distance $f_o + f_e$, which corresponds to the length of the telescope tube.

The angular magnification of the telescope is given by θ/θ_o, where θ_o is the angle subtended by the object at the objective and θ is the angle subtended by the final image at the viewer's eye. Consider Active Figure 36.42a, in which the object is a very great distance to the left of the figure. The angle θ_o (to the *left* of the objective) subtended by the object at the objective is the same as the angle (to the *right* of the objective) subtended by the first image at the objective. Therefore,



ACTIVE FIGURE 36.42

(a) Lens arrangement in a refracting telescope, with the object at infinity. (b) A refracting telescope.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the focal lengths of the objective and eyepiece lenses and see the effect on the final image.

$$\tan\theta_o \approx \theta_o \approx -\frac{h'}{f_o}$$

where the negative sign indicates that the image is inverted.

The angle θ subtended by the final image at the eye is the same as the angle that a ray coming from the tip of I_1 and traveling parallel to the principal axis makes with the principal axis after it passes through the lens. Therefore,

$$\tan\theta \approx \theta \approx \frac{h'}{f_e}$$

We have not used a negative sign in this equation because the final image is not inverted; the object creating this final image I_2 is I_1, and both it and I_2 point in the same direction. Therefore, the angular magnification of the telescope can be expressed as

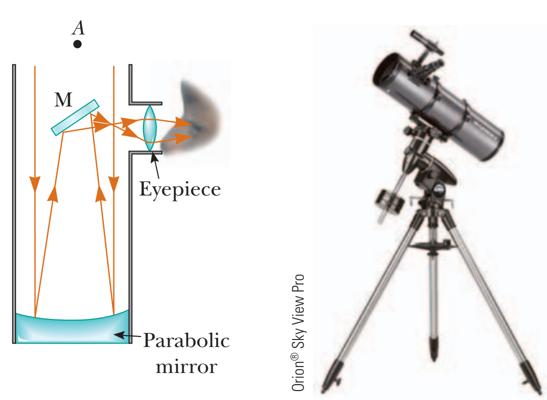
$$m = \frac{\theta}{\theta_o} = \frac{h'/f_e}{-h'/f_o} = -\frac{f_o}{f_e} \qquad \textbf{(36.27)}$$

This result shows that the angular magnification of a telescope equals the ratio of the objective focal length to the eyepiece focal length. The negative sign indicates that the image is inverted.

When you look through a telescope at such relatively nearby objects as the Moon and the planets, magnification is important. Individual stars in our galaxy, however, are so far away that they always appear as small points of light no matter how great the magnification. To gather as much light as possible, large research telescopes used to study very distant objects must have a large diameter. It is difficult and expensive to manufacture large lenses for refracting telescopes. Another difficulty with large lenses is that their weight leads to sagging, which is an additional source of aberration.

These problems associated with large lenses can be partially overcome by replacing the objective with a concave mirror, which results in a reflecting telescope. Because light is reflected from the mirror and does not pass through a lens, the mirror can have rigid supports on the back side. Such supports eliminate the problem of sagging.

Figure 36.43a shows the design for a typical reflecting telescope. The incoming light rays are reflected by a parabolic mirror at the base. These reflected rays converge toward point A in the figure, where an image would be formed. Before this image is formed, however, a small, flat mirror M reflects the light toward an opening in the tube's side and it passes into an eyepiece. This particular design is said to have a Newtonian focus because Newton developed it. Figure 36.43b shows such a telescope. Notice that the light never passes through glass (except through the



(a) (b)

Figure 36.43 (a) A Newtonian-focus reflecting telescope. (b) A reflecting telescope. This type of telescope is shorter than that in Figure 36.42b.

small eyepiece) in the reflecting telescope. As a result, problems associated with chromatic aberration are virtually eliminated. The reflecting telescope can be made even shorter by orienting the flat mirror so that it reflects the light back toward the objective mirror and the light enters an eyepiece in a hole in the middle of the mirror.

The largest reflecting telescopes in the world are at the Keck Observatory on Mauna Kea, Hawaii. The site includes two telescopes with diameters of 10 m, each containing 36 hexagonally shaped, computer-controlled mirrors that work together to form a large reflecting surface. Discussions and plans have been initiated for telescopes with different mirrors working together, as at the Keck Observatory, resulting in an effective diameter up to 21 m. In contrast, the largest refracting telescope in the world, at the Yerkes Observatory in Williams Bay, Wisconsin, has a diameter of only 1 m.

Summary

ThomsonNOW™ Sign in at **www.thomsonedu.com** and go to ThomsonNOW to take a practice test for this chapter.

DEFINITIONS

The **lateral magnification** M of the image due to a mirror or lens is defined as the ratio of the image height h' to the object height h. It is equal to the negative of the ratio of the image distance q to the object distance p:

$$M \equiv \frac{\text{image height}}{\text{object height}} = \frac{h'}{h} = -\frac{q}{p} \qquad \textbf{(36.1, 36.2, 36.17)}$$

The **angular magnification** m is the ratio of the angle subtended by an object with a lens in use (angle θ in Fig. 36.40b) to the angle subtended by the object placed at the near point with no lens in use (angle θ_0 in Fig. 36.40a):

$$m \equiv \frac{\theta}{\theta_0} \qquad \textbf{(36.22)}$$

The ratio of the focal length of a camera lens to the diameter of the lens is called the ***f*-number** of the lens:

$$f\text{-number} \equiv \frac{f}{D} \qquad \textbf{(36.20)}$$

CONCEPTS AND PRINCIPLES

In the paraxial ray approximation, the object distance p and image distance q for a spherical mirror of radius R are related by the **mirror equation:**

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = \frac{2}{R} = \frac{1}{f} \qquad \textbf{(36.4, 36.6)}$$

where $f = R/2$ is the **focal length** of the mirror.

An image can be formed by refraction from a spherical surface of radius R. The object and image distances for refraction from such a surface are related by

$$\frac{n_1}{p} + \frac{n_2}{q} = \frac{n_2 - n_1}{R} \qquad \textbf{(36.8)}$$

where the light is incident in the medium for which the index of refraction is n_1 and is refracted in the medium for which the index of refraction is n_2.

(*continued*)

The inverse of the **focal length** f of a thin lens surrounded by air is given by the **lens-makers' equation:**

$$\frac{1}{f} = (n-1)\left(\frac{1}{R_1} - \frac{1}{R_2}\right) \qquad \textbf{(36.15)}$$

Converging lenses have positive focal lengths, and **diverging lenses** have negative focal lengths.

For a thin lens, and in the paraxial ray approximation, the object and image distances are related by the **thin lens equation:**

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} \qquad \textbf{(36.16)}$$

The maximum magnification of a single lens of focal length f used as a simple magnifier is

$$m_{\text{max}} = 1 + \frac{25\text{ cm}}{f} \qquad \textbf{(36.24)}$$

The overall magnification of the image formed by a compound microscope is:

$$M = -\frac{L}{f_o}\left(\frac{25\text{ cm}}{f_e}\right) \qquad \textbf{(36.26)}$$

where f_o and f_e are the focal lengths of the objective and eyepiece lenses, respectively, and L is the distance between the lenses.

The angular magnification of a refracting telescope can be expressed as

$$m = -\frac{f_o}{f_e} \qquad \textbf{(36.27)}$$

where f_o and f_e are the focal lengths of the objective and eyepiece lenses, respectively. The angular magnification of a reflecting telescope is given by the same expression where f_o is the focal length of the objective mirror.

Questions

☐ denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide;* **O** denotes objective question

1. Consider a concave spherical mirror with a real object. Is the image always inverted? Is the image always real? Give conditions for your answers.

2. Repeat Question 1 for a convex spherical mirror.

3. **O** **(i)** What is the focal length of a plane mirror? (a) 0 (b) 1 (c) −1 (d) ∞ (e) equal to the mirror height (f) Neither the focal length nor its reciprocal can be defined. **(ii)** What magnification does a plane mirror produce? (a) 0 (b) 1 (c) −1 (d) ∞ (e) Neither the magnification nor its reciprocal can be defined.

4. Do the equations $1/p + 1/q = 1/f$ and $M = -q/p$ apply to the image formed by a flat mirror? Explain your answer.

5. **O** Lulu looks at her image in a makeup mirror. It is enlarged when she is close to the mirror. As she backs away, the image becomes larger, then impossible to identify when she is 30 cm from the mirror, then upside down when she is beyond 30 cm, and finally small, clear, and upside down when she is much farther from the mirror. **(i)** Is the mirror (a) convex, (b) plane, or (c) concave? **(ii)** What is the magnitude of its focal length? (a) 0 (b) 15 cm (c) 30 cm (d) 60 cm (e) ∞

6. Consider a spherical concave mirror with the object located to the left of the mirror beyond the focal point. Using ray diagrams, show that the image moves to the left as the object approaches the focal point.

7. **O** **(i)** Consider the mirror in Figure 36.11. What are the signs of the following? (a) the object distance (b) the image distance (c) the mirror radius (d) the focal length (e) the object height (f) the image height (g) the magnification **(ii)** Consider the objective lens in Active Figure 36.41a. What are the signs of the following? (a) the object distance (b) the image distance (c) the focal length (d) the object height (e) the image height (f) the magnification **(iii)** Answer the same questions (a) through (f) as in part (ii) for the eyepiece in Active Figure 36.41a.

8. **O** A person spearfishing from a boat sees a stationary fish a few meters away in a direction about 30° below the horizontal. To spear the fish, should the person (a) aim above where he sees the fish, (b) aim precisely at the fish, or (c) aim below the fish? Assume the dense spear does not change direction when it enters the water.

9. **O** A single converging lens can be used to constitute a scale model of each of the following devices in use simply by changing the distance from the lens to a candle representing the object. Rank the cases according to the distance from the object to the lens from the largest to the smallest. (a) a movie projector (b) Batman's signal, used to project an image on clouds high above Gotham City (c) a magnifying glass (d) a burning glass, used to make a sharp image of the Sun on tinder (e) an astronomical refracting telescope, used to make a sharp image of stars on an electronic detector (f) a searchlight, used to produce a beam of parallel rays from a point source. (g) a camera lens, used to photograph a soccer game.

10. In Active Figure 36.26a, assume the blue object arrow is replaced by one that is much taller than the lens. How many rays from the top of the object will strike the lens? How many principal rays can be drawn in a ray diagram?

11. **O** A converging lens in a vertical plane receives light from an object and forms an inverted image on a screen. An opaque card is then placed next to the lens, covering only the upper half of the lens. What happens to the image on the screen? (a) The upper half of the image disappears. (b) The lower half of the image disappears. (c) The entire image disappears. (d) The entire image is still visible, but is dimmer. (e) Half of the image disappears and the rest is dimmer. (f) No change in the image occurs.

12. **O** A converging lens of focal length 8 cm forms a sharp image of an object on a screen. What is the smallest possible distance between the object and the screen? (a) 0 (b) 4 cm (c) 8 cm (d) 16 cm (e) 32 cm (f) ∞

13. Explain this statement: "The focal point of a lens is the location of the image of a point object at infinity." Discuss the notion of infinity in real terms as it applies to object distances. Based on this statement, can you think of a simple method for determining the focal length of a converging lens?

14. Discuss the proper position of a photographic slide relative to the lens in a slide projector. What type of lens must the slide projector have?

15. **O** In this chapter's opening photograph, a water drop functions as a biconvex lens with radii of curvature of small magnitude. What is the location of the image photographed? (a) inside the water drop (b) on the back surface of the drop, farthest from the camera (c) somewhat beyond the back surface of the drop (d) on the front surface of the drop, closest to the camera (e) somewhat closer to the camera than the front surface of the drop

16. Explain why a mirror cannot give rise to chromatic aberration.

17. Can a converging lens be made to diverge light if it is placed into a liquid? **What If?** What about a converging mirror?

18. Explain why a fish in a spherical goldfish bowl appears larger than it really is.

19. Why do some emergency vehicles have the symbol ƎƆNA⅃UᗺMA written on the front?

20. Lenses used in eyeglasses, whether converging or diverging, are always designed so that the middle of the lens curves away from the eye like the center lenses of Figures 36.25a and 36.25b. Why?

21. **O** The faceplate of a diving mask can be a corrective lens for a diver who does not have perfect vision and who needs essentially the same prescription for both eyes. Then the diver does not have to wear glasses or contact lenses. The proper design allows the person to see clearly both under water and in the air. Normal eyeglasses have lenses with both the front and back surfaces curved. Should the lens of a diving mask be curved (a) on the outer surface only, (b) on the inner surface only, or (c) on both surfaces?

22. In Figures Q36.22a and Q36.22b, which glasses correct nearsightedness and which correct farsightedness?

© Thomson Learning/George Semple

(a) (b)

Figure Q36.22 Questions 22 and 23.

23. A child tries on either his hyperopic grandfather's or his myopic brother's glasses and complains, "Everything looks blurry." Why do the eyes of a person wearing glasses not look blurry? (See Figure Q36.22.)

24. In a Jules Verne novel, a piece of ice is shaped to form a magnifying lens to focus sunlight to start a fire. Is that possible?

25. A solar furnace can be constructed by using a concave mirror to reflect and focus sunlight into a furnace enclosure. What factors in the design of the reflecting mirror would guarantee very high temperatures?

26. Figure Q36.26 shows a lithograph by M. C. Escher titled *Hand with Reflection Sphere (Self-Portrait in Spherical Mirror)*. Escher said about the work:

> The picture shows a spherical mirror, resting on a left hand. But as a print is the reverse of the original drawing on stone, it was my right hand that you see depicted. (Being left-handed, I needed my left hand to make the drawing.) Such a globe reflection collects almost one's whole surroundings in one disk-shaped image. The whole room, four walls, the floor, and the ceiling, everything, albeit distorted, is compressed into that one small circle. Your own head, or more exactly the point between your eyes, is the absolute center. No matter how you turn or twist yourself, you can't get out of that central point. You are immovably the focus, the unshakable core, of your world.

Comment on the accuracy of Escher's description.

Figure Q36.26

27. A converging lens of short focal length can take light diverging from a small source and refract it into a beam of parallel rays. A Fresnel lens as shown in Figure 36.27 is used in a lighthouse for this purpose. A concave mirror can take light diverging from a small source and reflect it into a beam of parallel rays. Is it possible to make a Fresnel mirror? Is this idea original, or has it already been done? *Suggestion:* Look at the walls and ceiling of an auditorium.

Problems

WebAssign The Problems from this chapter may be assigned online in WebAssign.

ThomsonNOW™ Sign in at **www.thomsonedu.com** and go to ThomsonNOW to assess your understanding of this chapter's topics with additional quizzing and conceptual questions.

1, 2, 3 denotes straightforward, intermediate, challenging; □ denotes full solution available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide;* ▲ denotes coached solution with hints available at **www.thomsonedu.com;** ■ denotes developing symbolic reasoning; ● denotes asking for qualitative reasoning; 🖥 denotes computer useful in solving problem

Section 36.1 Images Formed by Flat Mirrors

1. Does your bathroom mirror show you older or younger than you actually are? Compute an order-of-magnitude estimate for the age difference based on data you specify.

2. In a church choir loft, two parallel walls are 5.30 m apart. The singers stand against the north wall. The organist faces the south wall, sitting 0.800 m away from it. To enable her to see the choir, a flat mirror 0.600 m wide is mounted on the south wall, straight in front of her. What width of the north wall can the organist see? *Suggestion:* Draw a top-view diagram to justify your answer.

3. Determine the minimum height of a vertical flat mirror in which a person 5 ft 10 in. in height can see his or her full image. (A ray diagram would be helpful.)

4. A person walks into a room that has two flat mirrors on opposite walls. The mirrors produce multiple images of the person. When the person is 5.00 ft from the mirror on the left wall and 10.0 ft from the mirror on the right wall, find the distance from the person to the first three images seen in the mirror on the left.

5. A periscope (Fig. P36.5) is useful for viewing objects that cannot be seen directly. It can be used in submarines and when watching golf matches or parades from behind a crowd of people. Suppose the object is a distance p_1 from the upper mirror and the two flat mirrors are separated by a distance h. (a) What is the distance of the final image from the lower mirror? (b) Is the final image real or virtual? (c) Is it upright or inverted? (d) What is its magnification? (e) Does it appear to be left–right reversed?

Figure P36.5

Section 36.2 Images Formed by Spherical Mirrors

6. A concave spherical mirror has a radius of curvature of 20.0 cm. Find the location of the image for object distances of (a) 40.0 cm, (b) 20.0 cm, and (c) 10.0 cm. For each case, state whether the image is real or virtual and upright or inverted. Find the magnification in each case.

7. ▲ A spherical convex mirror has a radius of curvature with a magnitude of 40.0 cm. Determine the position of the virtual image and the magnification for object distances of (a) 30.0 cm and (b) 60.0 cm. (c) Are the images upright or inverted?

8. At an intersection of hospital hallways, a convex mirror is mounted high on a wall to help people avoid collisions. The magnitude of the mirror's radius of curvature is 0.550 m. Locate and describe the image of a patient 10.0 m from the mirror. Determine the magnification of the image.

9. A concave mirror has a radius of curvature of 60.0 cm. Calculate the image position and magnification of an object placed in front of the mirror at distances of (a) 90.0 cm and (b) 20.0 cm. (c) Draw ray diagrams to obtain the image characteristics in each case.

10. A large church has a niche in one wall. On the floor plan, the niche appears as a semicircular indentation of radius 2.50 m. A worshiper stands on the centerline of the niche, 2.00 m out from its deepest point, and whispers a prayer. Where is the sound concentrated after reflection from the back wall of the niche?

11. A dentist uses a mirror to examine a tooth. The tooth is 1.00 cm in front of the mirror, and the image is formed 10.0 cm behind the mirror. Determine (a) the mirror's radius of curvature and (b) the magnification of the image.

12. A certain Christmas tree ornament is a silver sphere having a diameter of 8.50 cm. Determine an object location for which the size of the reflected image is three-fourths the object's size. Use a principal-ray diagram to arrive at a description of the image.

13. (a) A concave mirror forms an inverted image four times larger than the object. Find the focal length of the mirror, assuming the distance between object and image is 0.600 m. (b) A convex mirror forms a virtual image half the size of the object. Assuming the distance between image and object is 20.0 cm, determine the radius of curvature of the mirror.

14. To fit a contact lens to a patient's eye, a *keratometer* can be used to measure the curvature of the eye's front surface, the cornea. This instrument places an illuminated object of known size at a known distance p from the cornea. The cornea reflects some light from the object, forming an image of the object. The magnification M of the image is measured by using a small viewing telescope that allows comparison of the image formed by the cornea with a second calibrated image projected into the field of view by a prism arrangement. Determine the radius of curvature of the cornea for the case $p = 30.0$ cm and $M = 0.013\,0$.

15. An object 10.0 cm tall is placed at the zero mark of a meterstick. A spherical mirror located at some point on the meterstick creates an image of the object that is upright, 4.00 cm tall, and located at the 42.0-cm mark of the meterstick. (a) Is the mirror convex or concave? (b) Where is the mirror? (c) What is the mirror's focal length?

16. A dedicated sports car enthusiast polishes the inside and outside surfaces of a hubcap that is a section of a sphere. When she looks into one side of the hubcap, she sees an image of her face 30.0 cm in back of the hubcap. She then flips the hubcap over and sees another image of her face 10.0 cm in back of the hubcap. (a) How far is her face from the hubcap? (b) What is the radius of curvature of the hubcap?

17. A spherical mirror is to be used to form, on a screen located 5.00 m from the object, an image five times the size of the object. (a) Describe the type of mirror

required. (b) Where should the mirror be positioned relative to the object?

18. You unconsciously estimate the distance to an object from the angle it subtends in your field of view. This angle θ in radians is related to the linear height of the object h and to the distance d by $\theta = h/d$. Assume you are driving a car and another car, 1.50 m high, is 24.0 m behind you. (a) Suppose your car has a flat passenger-side rearview mirror, 1.55 m from your eyes. How far from your eyes is the image of the car following you? (b) What angle does the image subtend in your field of view? (c) **What If?** Now suppose your car has a convex rearview mirror with a radius of curvature of magnitude 2.00 m (as suggested in Fig. 36.15). How far from your eyes is the image of the car behind you? (d) What angle does the image subtend at your eyes? (e) Based on its angular size, how far away does the following car appear to be?

19. ● **Review problem.** A ball is dropped at $t = 0$ from rest 3.00 m directly above the vertex of a concave mirror that has a radius of curvature of 1.00 m and lies in a horizontal plane. (a) Describe the motion of the ball's image in the mirror. (b) At what instant or instants do the ball and its image coincide?

Section 36.3 Images Formed by Refraction

20. A flint glass plate ($n = 1.66$) rests on the bottom of an aquarium tank. The plate is 8.00 cm thick (vertical dimension) and is covered with a layer of water ($n = 1.33$) 12.0 cm deep. Calculate the apparent thickness of the plate as viewed from straight above the water.

21. A cubical block of ice 50.0 cm on a side is placed over a speck of dust on a level floor. Find the location of the image of the speck as viewed from above. The index of refraction of ice is 1.309.

22. One end of a long glass rod ($n = 1.50$) is formed into a convex surface with a radius of curvature of 6.00 cm. An object is located in air along the axis of the rod. Find the image positions corresponding to object distances of (a) 20.0 cm, (b) 10.0 cm, and (c) 3.00 cm from the end of the rod.

23. A glass sphere ($n = 1.50$) with a radius of 15.0 cm has a tiny air bubble 5.00 cm above its center. The sphere is viewed looking down along the extended radius containing the bubble. What is the apparent depth of the bubble below the surface of the sphere?

24. Figure P36.24 shows a curved surface separating a material with index of refraction n_1 from a material with index n_2. The surface forms an image I of object O. The ray shown in blue passes through the surface along a radial line. Its angles of incidence and refraction are both zero, so its direction does not change at the surface. For the ray shown in brown, the direction changes according to $n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2$. For paraxial rays, we assume θ_1 and θ_2 are small, so we may write $n_1 \tan\theta_1 = n_2 \tan\theta_2$. The magnification is defined as $M = h'/h$. Prove that the magnification is given by $M = -n_1 q/n_2 p$.

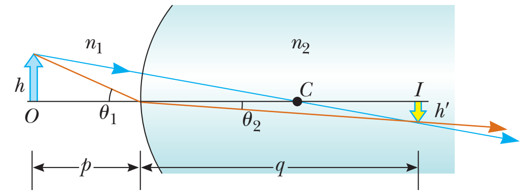


Figure P36.24

25. ● As shown in Figure P36.25, a water tank containing lobsters has a curved front made of plastic with uniform thickness and a radius of curvature of magnitude 80.0 cm. Locate and describe the images of lobsters (a) 30.0 cm and (b) 90.0 cm from the base of the front wall. (c) Find the magnification of each image. You may use the result of Problem 24. (d) The lobsters are both 9.00 cm in height. Find the height of each image. (e) Explain why you do not need to know the index of refraction of the plastic to solve this problem.

Alexandra Héder

Figure P36.25

26. A goldfish is swimming at 2.00 cm/s toward the front wall of a rectangular aquarium. What is the apparent speed of the fish measured by an observer looking in from outside the front wall of the tank? The index of refraction of water is 1.33.

Section 36.4 Thin Lenses

27. ▲ The left face of a biconvex lens has a radius of curvature of magnitude 12.0 cm, and the right face has a radius of curvature of magnitude 18.0 cm. The index of refraction of the glass is 1.44. (a) Calculate the focal length of the lens. (b) **What If?** Calculate the focal length the lens has after it is turned around to interchange the radii of curvature of the two faces.

28. A contact lens is made of plastic with an index of refraction of 1.50. The lens has an outer radius of curvature of +2.00 cm and an inner radius of curvature of +2.50 cm. What is the focal length of the lens?

29. A converging lens has a focal length of 20.0 cm. Locate the image for object distances of (a) 40.0 cm, (b) 20.0 cm, and (c) 10.0 cm. For each case, state whether the image is real or virtual and upright or inverted. Find the magnification in each case.

30. An object located 32.0 cm in front of a lens forms an image on a screen 8.00 cm behind the lens. (a) Find the focal length of the lens. (b) Determine the magnification. (c) Is the lens converging or diverging?

31. ▲ The nickel's image in Figure P36.31 has twice the diameter of the nickel and is 2.84 cm from the lens. Determine the focal length of the lens.

Figure P36.31

32. Suppose an object has thickness dp so that it extends from object distance p to $p + dp$. Prove that the thickness dq of its image is given by $(-q^2/p^2)\,dp$. Then the longitudinal magnification is $dq/dp = -M^2$, where M is the lateral magnification.

33. An object is located 20.0 cm to the left of a diverging lens having a focal length $f = -32.0$ cm. Determine (a) the location and (b) the magnification of the image. (c) Construct a ray diagram for this arrangement.

34. The projection lens in a certain slide projector is a single thin lens. A slide 24.0 mm high is to be projected so that its image fills a screen 1.80 m high. The slide-to-screen distance is 3.00 m. (a) Determine the focal length of the projection lens. (b) How far from the slide should the lens of the projector be placed so as to form the image on the screen?

35. The use of a lens in a certain situation is described by the equation

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{-3.50p} = \frac{1}{7.50 \text{ cm}}$$

Determine (a) the object distance and (b) the image distance. (c) Use a ray diagram to obtain a description of the image. (d) Identify a practical device described by the given equation and write the statement of a problem for which the equation appears in the solution.

36. An antelope is at a distance of 20.0 m from a converging lens of focal length 30.0 cm. The lens forms an image of the animal. If the antelope runs away from the lens at a speed of 5.00 m/s, how fast does the image move? Does the image move toward or away from the lens?

37. ● An object is at a distance d to the left of a flat screen. A converging lens with focal length $f < d/4$ is placed between object and screen. (a) Show that two lens positions exist that form an image on the screen and determine how far these positions are from the object. (b) How do the two images differ from each other?

38. ● In Figure P36.38, a thin converging lens of focal length 14.0 cm forms an image of the square $abcd$, which is $h_c = h_b = 10.0$ cm high and lies between distances of $p_d = 20.0$ cm and $p_a = 30.0$ cm from the lens. (a) Let a', b', c', and d' represent the respective corners of the image. Let q_a represent the image distance for points a' and b', q_d represent the image distance for points c' and d', h'_b represent the distance from point b' to the axis, and h'_c represent the height of c'. Evaluate each of these quantities. Make a sketch of the image. (b) The area of the object is 100 cm^2. By carrying out the following steps, you will evaluate the area of the image. Let q represent the image distance of any point between a' and d', for which the object distance is p. Let h' represent the distance from the axis to the point at the edge of the image between b' and c' at image distance q. Demonstrate that

$$|h'| = (10 \text{ cm})q\left(\frac{1}{14 \text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{q}\right)$$

(c) Explain why the geometric area of the image is given by

$$\int_{q_a}^{q_d} |h'|\,dq$$

Carry out the integration to find the area of the image.

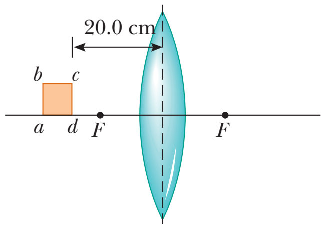


Figure P36.38

39. Figure 36.33 diagrams a cross section of a camera. It has a single lens of focal length 65.0 mm that is to form an image on the CCD at the back of the camera. Suppose the position of the lens has been adjusted to focus the image of a distant object. How far and in what direction must the lens be moved to form a sharp image of an object that is 2.00 m away?

Section 36.5 Lens Aberrations

40. The magnitudes of the radii of curvature are 32.5 cm and 42.5 cm for the two faces of a biconcave lens. The glass has index of refraction 1.53 for violet light and 1.51 for red light. For a very distant object, locate and describe (a) the image formed by violet light and (b) the image formed by red light.

41. Two rays traveling parallel to the principal axis strike a large plano-convex lens having an index of refraction of 1.60 (Fig. P36.41). If the convex face is spherical, a ray near the edge does not pass through the focal point (spherical aberration occurs). Assume this face has a radius of curvature of 20.0 cm and the two rays are at distances $h_1 = 0.500$ cm and $h_2 = 12.0$ cm from the principal axis. Find the difference Δx in the positions where each crosses the principal axis.

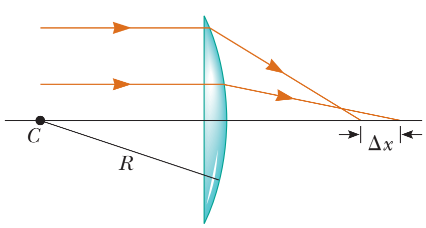


Figure P36.41

Section 36.6 The Camera

42. A camera is being used with a correct exposure at $f/4$ and a shutter speed of $\frac{1}{16}$ s. To photograph a rapidly moving subject, the shutter speed is changed to $\frac{1}{128}$ s. Find the new f-number setting needed to maintain satisfactory exposure.

Section 36.7 The Eye

43. A nearsighted person cannot see objects clearly beyond 25.0 cm (her far point). If she has no astigmatism and contact lenses are prescribed for her, what power and type of lens are required to correct her vision?

44. The accommodation limits for nearsighted Nick's eyes are 18.0 cm and 80.0 cm. When he wears his glasses, he can see faraway objects clearly. At what minimum distance is he able to see objects clearly?

Section 36.8 The Simple Magnifier

Section 36.9 The Compound Microscope

Section 36.10 The Telescope

45. A lens that has a focal length of 5.00 cm is used as a magnifying glass. (a) To obtain maximum magnification, where should the object be placed? (b) What is the magnification?

46. The distance between eyepiece and objective lens in a certain compound microscope is 23.0 cm. The focal length of the eyepiece is 2.50 cm and that of the objective is 0.400 cm. What is the overall magnification of the microscope?

47. The refracting telescope at the Yerkes Observatory has a 1.00-m diameter objective lens of focal length 20.0 m. Assume it is used with an eyepiece of focal length 2.50 cm. (a) Determine the magnification of Mars as seen through this telescope. (b) Are the Martian polar caps right side up or upside down?

48. ● Astronomers often take photographs with the objective lens or mirror of a telescope alone, without an eyepiece. (a) Show that the image size h' for such a telescope is given by $h' = fh/(f - p)$, where h is the object size, f is the objective focal length, and p is the object distance. (b) **What If?** Simplify the expression in part (a) for the case in which the object distance is much greater than objective focal length. (c) The "wingspan" of the International Space Station is 108.6 m, the overall width of its solar panel configuration. Find the width of the image formed by a telescope objective of focal length 4.00 m when the station is orbiting at an altitude of 407 km.

49. A certain telescope has an objective mirror with an aperture diameter of 200 mm and a focal length of 2 000 mm. It captures the image of a nebula on photographic film at its prime focus with an exposure time of 1.50 min. To produce the same light energy per unit area on the film, what is the required exposure time to photograph the same nebula with a smaller telescope that has an objective with a diameter of 60.0 mm and a focal length of 900 mm?

Additional Problems

50. A *zoom lens* system is a combination of lenses that produces a variable magnification of a fixed object as it maintains a fixed image position. The magnification is varied by moving one or more lenses along the axis. Multiple lenses are used in practice to obtain high-quality images, but the effect of zooming in on an object can be demonstrated with a simple two-lens system. An object, two converging lenses, and a screen are mounted on an optical bench. The first lens, which is to the right of the object, has a focal length of 5.00 cm, and the second lens, which is to the right of the first lens, has a focal length of 10.0 cm. The screen is to the right of the second lens. Initially, an object is situated at a distance of 7.50 cm to the left of the first lens, and the image formed on the screen has a magnification of +1.00. (a) Find the distance between the object and the screen. (b) Both lenses are now moved along their common axis, while the object and the screen maintain fixed positions, until the image formed on the screen has a magnification of +3.00. Find the displacement of each lens from its initial position in part (a). Can the lenses be displaced in more than one way?

51. The distance between an object and its upright image is 20.0 cm. If the magnification is 0.500, what is the focal length of the lens being used to form the image?

52. The distance between an object and its upright image is *d*. If the magnification is *M*, what is the focal length of the lens being used to form the image?

53. A real object is located at the zero end of a meterstick. A large concave mirror at the 100-cm end of the meterstick forms an image of the object at the 70.0-cm position. A small convex mirror placed at the 20.0-cm position forms a final image at the 10.0-cm point. What is the radius of curvature of the convex mirror?

54. The lens and mirror in Figure P36.54 have focal lengths of +80.0 cm and −50.0 cm, respectively. An object is placed 1.00 m to the left of the lens as shown. Locate the final image, formed by light that has gone through the lens twice. State whether the image is upright or inverted and determine the overall magnification.

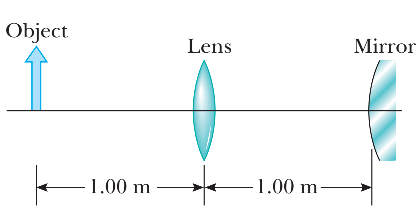


Figure P36.54

55. ● An object is originally at the $x_i = 0$ cm position of a meterstick located on the x axis. A converging lens of focal length 26.0 cm is fixed at the position 32.0 cm. Then we gradually slide the object to the position $x_f = 12.0$ cm. Find the location x' of the object's image as a function of the object position x. Describe the pattern of the motion of the image with reference to a graph or a table of values. As the object moves 12 cm to the right, how far does the image move? In what direction or directions?

56. The object in Figure P36.56 is midway between the lens and the mirror. The mirror's radius of curvature is 20.0 cm, and the lens has a focal length of −16.7 cm. Considering only the light that leaves the object and travels first toward the mirror, locate the final image formed by this system. Is this image real or virtual? Is it upright or inverted? What is the overall magnification?

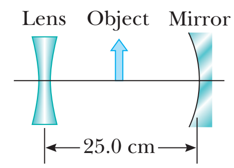


Figure P36.56

57. ● In many applications, it is necessary to expand or decrease the diameter of a beam of parallel rays of light. This change can be made by using a converging lens and a diverging lens in combination. Suppose you have a converging lens of focal length 21.0 cm and a diverging lens of focal length −12.0 cm. How can you arrange these lenses to increase the diameter of a beam of parallel rays? By what factor will the diameter increase?

58. The lens-makers' equation applies to a lens immersed in a liquid if n in the equation is replaced by n_2/n_1. Here n_2 refers to the index of refraction of the lens material and n_1 is that of the medium surrounding the lens. (a) A certain lens has focal length 79.0 cm in air and index of refraction 1.55. Find its focal length in water. (b) A certain mirror has focal length 79.0 cm in air. Find its focal length in water.

59. ▲ A parallel beam of light enters a glass hemisphere perpendicular to the flat face as shown in Figure P36.59. The

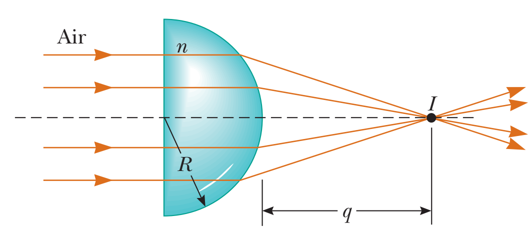


Figure P36.59

magnitude of the radius is 6.00 cm, and the index of refraction is 1.560. Determine the point at which the beam is focused. (Assume paraxial rays.)

60. **Review problem.** A spherical lightbulb of diameter 3.20 cm radiates light equally in all directions, with power 4.50 W. (a) Find the light intensity at the surface of the lightbulb. (b) Find the light intensity 7.20 m away from the center of the lightbulb. (c) At this 7.20-m distance, a lens is set up with its axis pointing toward the lightbulb. The lens has a circular face with a diameter 15.0 cm and has a focal length of 35.0 cm. Find the diameter of the image of the lightbulb. (d) Find the light intensity at the image.

61. An object is placed 12.0 cm to the left of a diverging lens of focal length −6.00 cm. A converging lens of focal length 12.0 cm is placed a distance *d* to the right of the diverging lens. Find the distance *d* so that the final image is at infinity. Draw a ray diagram for this case.

62. Assume the intensity of sunlight is 1.00 kW/m^2 at a particular location. A highly reflecting concave mirror is to be pointed toward the Sun to produce a power of at least 350 W at the image. (a) Find the required radius R_a of the circular face area of the mirror. (b) Now suppose the light intensity is to be at least 120 kW/m^2 at the image. Find the required relationship between R_a and the radius of curvature R of the mirror. The disk of the Sun subtends an angle of 0.533° at the Earth.

63. ▲ The disk of the Sun subtends an angle of 0.533° at the Earth. What are the position and diameter of the solar image formed by a concave spherical mirror with a radius of curvature of 3.00 m?

64. ● Figure P36.64 shows a thin converging lens for which the radii of curvature are $R_1 = 9.00$ cm and $R_2 = -11.0$ cm. The lens is in front of a concave spherical mirror with the radius of curvature $R = 8.00$ cm. (a) Assume its focal points F_1 and F_2 are 5.00 cm from the center of the lens. Determine its index of refraction. (b) The lens and mirror are 20.0 cm apart, and an object is placed 8.00 cm to the left of the lens. Determine the position of the final image and its magnification as seen by the eye in the figure. (c) Is the final image inverted or upright? Explain.

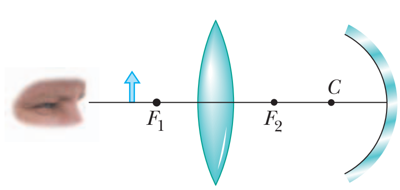


Figure P36.64

65. In a darkened room, a burning candle is placed 1.50 m from a white wall. A lens is placed between candle and wall at a location that causes a larger, inverted image to form on the wall. When the lens is moved 90.0 cm toward the wall, another image of the candle is formed. Find (a) the two object distances that produce the specified images and (b) the focal length of the lens. (c) Characterize the second image.

66. ● A floating strawberry illusion is achieved with two parabolic mirrors, each having a focal length 7.50 cm, facing each other so that their centers are 7.50 cm apart (Fig. P36.66). If a strawberry is placed on the lower mirror, an image of the strawberry is formed at the small opening at the center of the top mirror. Show that the final image is formed at that location and describe its characteristics. *Note:* A very startling effect is to shine a flashlight beam on this image. Even at a glancing angle, the incoming light beam is seemingly reflected from the image! Do you understand why?

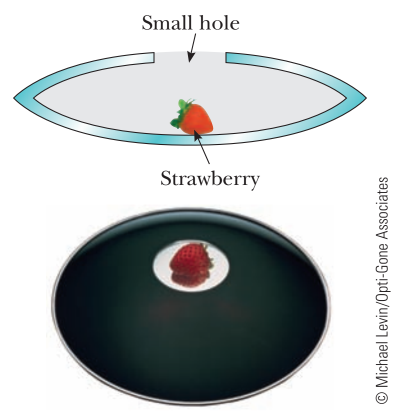


Figure P36.66

67. An object 2.00 cm high is placed 40.0 cm to the left of a converging lens having a focal length of 30.0 cm. A diverging lens with a focal length of −20.0 cm is placed 110 cm to the right of the converging lens. (a) Determine the position and magnification of the final image. (b) Is the image upright or inverted? (c) **What If?** Repeat parts (a) and (b) for the case in which the second lens is a converging lens having a focal length of +20.0 cm.

68. Two lenses made of kinds of glass having different indices of refraction n_1 and n_2 are cemented together to form an *optical doublet*. Optical doublets are often used to correct chromatic aberrations in optical devices. The first lens of a certain doublet has one flat side and one concave side with a radius of curvature of magnitude R. The second lens has two convex sides with radii of curvature also of magnitude R. Show that the doublet can be modeled as a single thin lens with a focal length described by

$$\frac{1}{f} = \frac{2n_2 - n_1 - 1}{R}$$

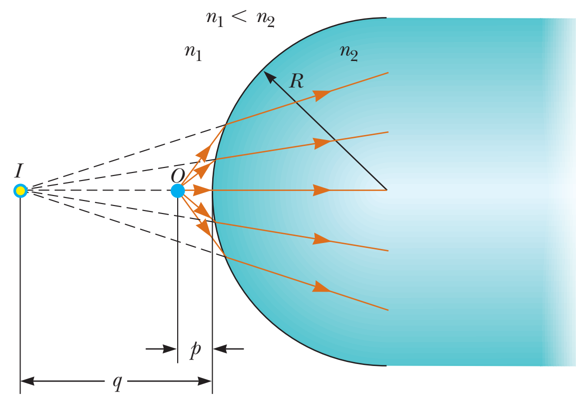
Answers to Quick Quizzes

36.1 False. The water spots are 2 m away from you, and your image is 4 m away. You cannot focus your eyes on both at the same time.

36.2 (b). A concave mirror focuses the light from a large area of the mirror onto a small area of the paper, resulting in a very high power input to the paper.

36.3 (b). A convex mirror always forms an image with a magnification less than 1, so the mirror must be concave. In a concave mirror, only virtual images are upright. This particular photograph is of the Hubble Space Telescope primary mirror. The scientists acting as the object for the image are to the left of the photograph and not visible to us.

36.4 (d). When O is far away, the rays refract into the material of index n_2 and converge to form a real image as in Figure 36.16. For certain combinations of R and n_2 as O moves very close to the refracting surface, the incident angle of the rays increases so much that rays are no longer refracted back toward the principal axis. The result is a virtual image as shown in the next column.



36.5 (a). No matter where O is, the rays refract into the air away from the normal and form a virtual image between O and the surface.

36.6 (b). Because the flat surfaces of the plane have infinite radii of curvature, Equation 36.15 indicates that the focal length is also infinite. Parallel rays striking the plane focus at infinity, which means that they remain parallel after passing through the glass.

36.7 (a). If the object is brought closer to the lens, the image moves farther away from the lens, behind the plane of the CCD. To bring the image back up to the CCD, the lens is moved toward the object and away from the CCD.

36.8 (c). The Sun's rays must converge onto the paper. A farsighted person wears converging lenses.

The colors in many of a hummingbird's feathers are not due to pigment. The *iridescence* that makes the brilliant colors that often appear on the bird's throat and belly is due to an interference effect caused by structures in the feathers. The colors will vary with the viewing angle. (RO-MA/Index Stock Imagery)

37 Interference of Light Waves

In Chapter 36, we studied light rays passing through a lens or reflecting from a mirror to describe the formation of images. This discussion completed our study of *geometric optics*. In this chapter and in Chapter 38, we are concerned with *wave optics* or *physical optics,* the study of interference, diffraction, and polarization of light. These phenomena cannot be adequately explained with the ray optics used in Chapters 35 and 36. We now learn how treating light as waves rather than as rays leads to a satisfying description of such phenomena.

37.1 Conditions for Interference

In Chapter 18, we studied the waves in interference model and found that the superposition of two mechanical waves can be constructive or destructive. In constructive interference, the amplitude of the resultant wave is greater than that of either individual wave, whereas in destructive interference, the resultant amplitude is less than that of the larger wave. Light waves also interfere with one another. Fundamentally, all interference associated with light waves arises when the electromagnetic fields that constitute the individual waves combine.

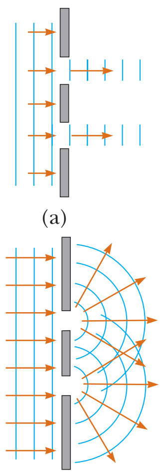
If two lightbulbs are placed side by side so that light from both bulbs combines, no interference effects are observed because the light waves from one bulb are emitted independently of those from the other bulb. The emissions from the two lightbulbs do not maintain a constant phase relationship with each other over time. Light waves from an ordinary source such as a lightbulb undergo random phase changes in time intervals of less than a nanosecond. Therefore, the conditions for constructive interference, destructive interference, or some intermediate state are maintained only for such short time intervals. Because the eye cannot follow such rapid changes, no interference effects are observed. Such light sources are said to be **incoherent.**

To observe interference of waves from two sources, the following conditions must be met:

Conditions for interference ▶

- The sources must be **coherent**; that is, **they must maintain a constant phase with respect to each other.**
- The sources should be **monochromatic**; that is, they should be of a single wavelength.

As an example, single-frequency sound waves emitted by two side-by-side loudspeakers driven by a single amplifier can interfere with each other because the two speakers are coherent. In other words, they respond to the amplifier in the same way at the same time.



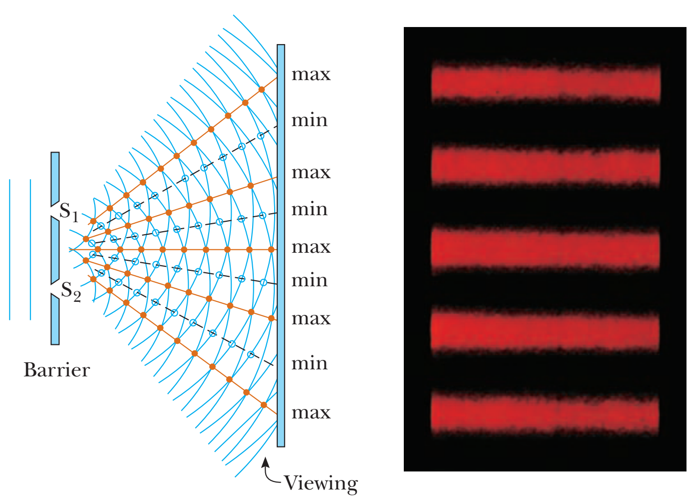
(a) (b)

Figure 37.1 (a) If light waves did not spread out after passing through the slits, no interference would occur. (b) The light waves from the two slits overlap as they spread out, filling what we expect to be shadowed regions with light and producing interference fringes on a screen placed to the right of the slits.

37.2 Young's Double-Slit Experiment

A common method for producing two coherent light sources is to use a monochromatic source to illuminate a barrier containing two small openings, usually in the shape of slits. The light emerging from the two slits is coherent because a single source produces the original light beam and the two slits serve only to separate the original beam into two parts (which, after all, is what is done to the sound signal from two side-by-side loudspeakers). Any random change in the light emitted by the source occurs in both beams at the same time. As a result, interference effects can be observed when the light from the two slits arrives at a viewing screen.

If the light traveled only in its original direction after passing through the slits as shown in Figure 37.1a, the waves would not overlap and no interference pattern would be seen. Instead, as we have discussed in our treatment of Huygens's principle (Section 35.6), the waves spread out from the slits as shown in Figure 37.1b. In other words, the light deviates from a straight-line path and enters the region that



(a) (b)

M. Cagnet, M. Françon, J. C. Thrierr, *Atlas of Optical Phenomena*, Berlin, Springer-Verlag, 1962

ACTIVE FIGURE 37.2

(a) Schematic diagram of Young's double-slit experiment. Slits S_1 and S_2 behave as coherent sources of light waves that produce an interference pattern on the viewing screen (drawing not to scale). (b) An enlargement of the center of a fringe pattern formed on the viewing screen.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to adjust the slit separation and the wavelength of the light and see the effect on the interference pattern.

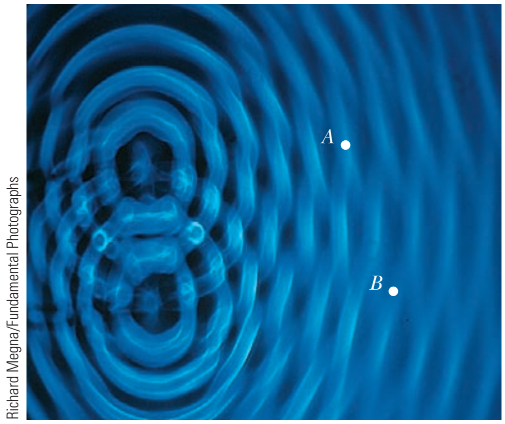


Figure 37.3 An interference pattern involving water waves is produced by two vibrating sources at the water's surface. The pattern is analogous to that observed in Young's double-slit experiment. Notice the regions of constructive (*A*) and destructive (*B*) interference.

would otherwise be shadowed. As noted in Section 35.3, this divergence of light from its initial line of travel is called **diffraction.**

Interference in light waves from two sources was first demonstrated by Thomas Young in 1801. A schematic diagram of the apparatus Young used is shown in Active Figure 37.2a. Plane light waves arrive at a barrier that contains two parallel slits S_1 and S_2. The light from S_1 and S_2 produces on a viewing screen a visible pattern of bright and dark parallel bands called **fringes** (Active Fig. 37.2b). When the light from S_1 and that from S_2 both arrive at a point on the screen such that constructive interference occurs at that location, a bright fringe appears. When the light from the two slits combines destructively at any location on the screen, a dark fringe results. Figure 37.3 is a photograph of an interference pattern produced by two coherent vibrating sources in a water tank.

Figure 37.4 shows some of the ways in which two waves can combine at the screen. In Figure 37.4a, the two waves, which leave the two slits in phase, strike the screen at the central point *O*. Because both waves travel the same distance, they arrive at *O* in phase. As a result, constructive interference occurs at this location and a bright fringe is observed. In Figure 37.4b, the two waves also start in phase, but here the lower wave has to travel one wavelength farther than the upper wave to reach point *P*. Because the lower wave falls behind the upper one by exactly one wavelength, they still arrive in phase at *P* and a second bright fringe appears at this location. At point *R* in Figure 37.4c, however, between points *O* and *P*, the lower wave has fallen half a wavelength behind the upper wave and a trough of the upper wave overlaps a crest of the lower wave, giving rise to destructive interference at point *R*. A dark fringe is therefore observed at this location.

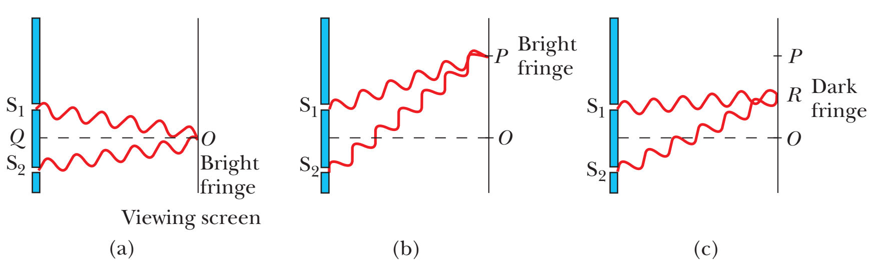


Figure 37.4 (a) Constructive interference occurs at point *O* when the waves combine. (b) Constructive interference also occurs at point *P*. (c) Destructive interference occurs at point *R* when the two waves combine because the lower wave falls one-half a wavelength behind the upper wave. (All figures not to scale.)

37.3 Light Waves in Interference

We can describe Young's experiment quantitatively with the help of Figure 37.5. The viewing screen is located a perpendicular distance L from the barrier containing two slits, S_1 and S_2 (Fig. 37.5a). These slits are separated by a distance d, and the source is monochromatic. To reach any arbitrary point P in the upper half of the screen, a wave from the lower slit must travel farther than a wave from the upper slit by a distance $d \sin\theta$ (Fig. 37.5b). This distance is called the **path difference** δ (Greek letter delta). If we assume the rays labeled r_1 and r_2 are parallel, which is approximately true if L is much greater than d, then δ is given by

Path difference ▶

$$\delta = r_2 - r_1 = d \sin\theta \tag{37.1}$$

The value of δ determines whether the two waves are in phase when they arrive at point P. If δ is either zero or some integer multiple of the wavelength, the two waves are in phase at point P and constructive interference results. Therefore, the condition for bright fringes, or **constructive interference,** at point P is

Conditions for constructive interference ▶

$$d \sin\theta_{\text{bright}} = m\lambda \quad (m = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \cdots) \tag{37.2}$$

The number m is called the **order number.** For constructive interference, the order number is the same as the number of wavelengths that represents the path difference between the waves from the two slits. The central bright fringe at $\theta_{\text{bright}} = 0$ is called the *zeroth-order maximum.* The first maximum on either side, where $m = \pm 1$, is called the *first-order maximum*, and so forth.

When δ is an odd multiple of $\lambda/2$, the two waves arriving at point P are 180° out of phase and give rise to destructive interference. Therefore, the condition for dark fringes, or **destructive interference,** at point P is

Conditions for destructive interference ▶

$$d \sin\theta_{\text{dark}} = (m + \tfrac{1}{2})\lambda \quad (m = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \cdots) \tag{37.3}$$

These equations provide the *angular* positions of the fringes. It is also useful to obtain expressions for the *linear* positions measured along the screen from O to P. From the triangle OPQ in Figure 37.5a, we see that

$$\tan\theta = \frac{y}{L} \tag{37.4}$$

Using this result, the linear positions of bright and dark fringes are given by

$$y_{\text{bright}} = L \tan\theta_{\text{bright}} \tag{37.5}$$

$$y_{\text{dark}} = L \tan\theta_{\text{dark}} \tag{37.6}$$

where θ_{bright} and θ_{dark} are given by Equations 37.2 and 37.3.

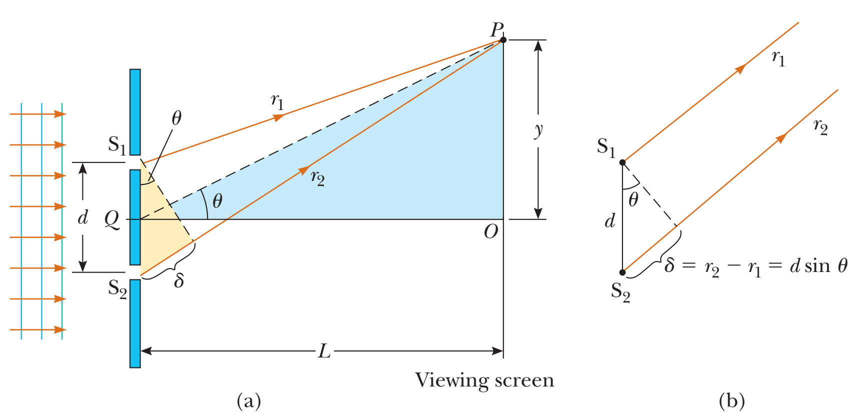


Figure 37.5 (a) Geometric construction for describing Young's double-slit experiment (not to scale). (b) When we assume r_1 is parallel to r_2, the path difference between the two rays is $r_2 - r_1 = d \sin\theta$. For this approximation to be valid, it is essential that $L \gg d$.

When the angles to the fringes are small, the positions of the fringes are linear near the center of the pattern. This can be verified by noting that for small angles, $\tan\theta \approx \sin\theta$, so Equation 37.5 gives the positions of the bright fringes as $y_{\text{bright}} = L\sin\theta_{\text{bright}}$. Incorporating Equation 37.2 gives

$$y_{\text{bright}} = L\left(\frac{m\lambda}{d}\right) \quad \text{(small angles)} \tag{37.7}$$

This result shows that y_{bright} is linear in the order number m, so the fringes are equally spaced.

As demonstrated in Example 37.1, Young's double-slit experiment provides a method for measuring the wavelength of light. In fact, Young used this technique to do precisely that. In addition, his experiment gave the wave model of light a great deal of credibility. It was inconceivable that particles of light coming through the slits could cancel one another in a way that would explain the dark fringes.

The principles discussed in this section are the basis of the **waves in interference** analysis model. This model was applied to mechanical waves in one dimension in Chapter 18. Here we see the details of applying this model in three dimensions to light.


John W. Jewett Jr.

The faint pastel-colored bows beneath the main rainbow are called *supernumerary bows*. They are formed by interference between rays of light leaving raindrops at angles slightly smaller than the angle of maximum intensity. (See Section 35.7 for a discussion of the rainbow.)

Quick Quiz 37.1 Which of the following causes the fringes in a two-slit interference pattern to move farther apart? (a) decreasing the wavelength of the light (b) decreasing the screen distance L (c) decreasing the slit spacing d (d) immersing the entire apparatus in water

---

EXAMPLE 37.1 Measuring the Wavelength of a Light Source

A viewing screen is separated from a double slit by 1.2 m. The distance between the two slits is 0.030 mm. Monochromatic light is directed toward the double slit and forms an interference pattern on the screen. The second-order bright fringe ($m = 2$) is 4.5 cm from the center line on the screen.

(A) Determine the wavelength of the light.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Study Figure 37.5 to be sure you understand the phenomenon of interference of light waves.

Categorize We evaluate results using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Solve Equation 37.7 for the wavelength and substitute numerical values:

$$\lambda = \frac{y_{\text{bright}}d}{mL} = \frac{(4.5\times10^{-2}\text{ m})(3.0\times10^{-5}\text{ m})}{2(1.2\text{ m})}$$

$$= 5.6\times10^{-7}\text{ m} = \boxed{560\text{ nm}}$$

(B) Calculate the distance between adjacent bright fringes.

SOLUTION

Find the distance between adjacent bright fringes from Equation 37.7 and the results of part (A):

$$y_{m+1} - y_m = L\frac{(m+1)\lambda}{d} - L\left(\frac{m\lambda}{d}\right)$$

$$= L\left(\frac{\lambda}{d}\right) = 1.2\text{ m}\left(\frac{5.6\times10^{-7}\text{ m}}{3.0\times10^{-5}\text{ m}}\right)$$

$$= 2.2\times10^{-2}\text{ m} = \boxed{2.2\text{ cm}}$$

EXAMPLE 37.2 Separating Double-Slit Fringes of Two Wavelengths

A light source emits visible light of two wavelengths: $\lambda = 430$ nm and $\lambda' = 510$ nm. The source is used in a double-slit interference experiment in which $L = 1.50$ m and $d = 0.025\,0$ mm. Find the separation distance between the third-order bright fringes for the two wavelengths.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize In Figure 37.5a, imagine light of two wavelengths incident on the slits and forming two interference patterns on the screen.

Categorize We evaluate results using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Use Equation 37.7, with $m = 3$, to find the fringe positions corresponding to these two wavelengths:

$$y_{\text{bright}} = L\left(\frac{m\lambda}{d}\right) = L\left(\frac{3\lambda}{d}\right) = 1.50\text{ m}\left[\frac{3(430 \times 10^{-9}\text{ m})}{0.025\,0 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m}}\right]$$
$$= 7.74 \times 10^{-2}\text{ m}$$

$$y'_{\text{bright}} = L\left(\frac{m\lambda'}{d}\right) = L\left(\frac{3\lambda'}{d}\right) = 1.50\text{ m}\left[\frac{3(510 \times 10^{-9}\text{ m})}{0.025\,0 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m}}\right]$$
$$= 9.18 \times 10^{-2}\text{ m}$$

Evaluate the separation distance between the two fringes:

$$\Delta y = 9.18 \times 10^{-2}\text{ m} - 7.74 \times 10^{-2}\text{ m}$$
$$= 1.44 \times 10^{-2}\text{ m} = 1.44\text{ cm}$$

What If? What if we examine the entire interference pattern due to the two wavelengths and look for overlapping fringes? Are there any locations on the screen where the bright fringes from the two wavelengths overlap exactly?

Answer Find such a location by setting the location of any bright fringe due to λ equal to one due to λ', using Equation 37.7:

$$L\left(\frac{m\lambda}{d}\right) = L\left(\frac{m'\lambda'}{d}\right) \rightarrow \frac{m'}{m} = \frac{\lambda}{\lambda'}$$

Substitute the wavelengths:

$$\frac{m'}{m} = \frac{430\text{ nm}}{510\text{ nm}} = \frac{43}{51}$$

Use Equation 37.7 to find the value of y for these fringes:

$$y = 1.50\text{ m}\left[\frac{51(430 \times 10^{-9}\text{ m})}{0.025\,0 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m}}\right] = 1.32\text{ m}$$

This value of y is comparable to L, so the small-angle approximation used for Equation 37.7 is *not* valid. This conclusion suggests we should not expect Equation 37.7 to give us the correct result. If you use Equation 37.5, you can show that the bright fringes do indeed overlap when the same condition, $m'/m = \lambda/\lambda'$, is met (see Problem 38). Therefore, the 51st fringe of the 430-nm light does overlap with the 43rd fringe of the 510-nm light, but not at the location of 1.32 m. You are asked to find the correct location as part of Problem 38.

37.4 Intensity Distribution of the Double-Slit Interference Pattern

Notice that the edges of the bright fringes in Active Figure 37.2b are not sharp; rather, there is a gradual change from bright to dark. So far, we have discussed the locations of only the centers of the bright and dark fringes on a distant screen. Let's now direct our attention to the intensity of the light at other points between the positions of maximum constructive and destructive interference. In other words, we now calculate the distribution of light intensity associated with the double-slit interference pattern.

Again, suppose the two slits represent coherent sources of sinusoidal waves such that the two waves from the slits have the same angular frequency ω and are in phase. The total magnitude of the electric field at point P on the screen in Figure 37.6 is the superposition of the two waves. Assuming that the two waves have the same amplitude E_0, we can write the magnitude of the electric field at point P due to each wave separately as

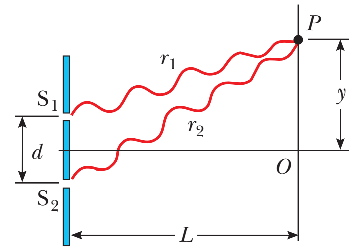


Figure 37.6 Construction for analyzing the double-slit interference pattern. A bright fringe, or intensity maximum, is observed at O.

$$E_1 = E_0 \sin \omega t \quad \text{and} \quad E_2 = E_0 \sin (\omega t + \phi) \tag{37.8}$$

Although the waves are in phase at the slits, *their phase difference ϕ at P depends on the path difference* $\delta = r_2 - r_1 = d \sin \theta$. A path difference of λ (for constructive interference) corresponds to a phase difference of 2π rad. A path difference of δ is the same fraction of λ as the phase difference ϕ is of 2π. We can describe this fraction mathematically with the ratio

$$\frac{\delta}{\lambda} = \frac{\phi}{2\pi}$$

which gives

◀ Phase difference

$$\phi = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\delta = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} d \sin \theta \tag{37.9}$$

This equation shows how the phase difference ϕ depends on the angle θ in Figure 37.5.

Using the superposition principle and Equation 37.8, we obtain the following expression for the magnitude of the resultant electric field at point P:

$$E_P = E_1 + E_2 = E_0[\sin \omega t + \sin (\omega t + \phi)] \tag{37.10}$$

We can simplify this expression by using the trigonometric identity

$$\sin A + \sin B = 2 \sin \left(\frac{A + B}{2}\right) \cos \left(\frac{A - B}{2}\right)$$

Taking $A = \omega t + \phi$ and $B = \omega t$, Equation 37.10 becomes

$$E_P = 2E_0 \cos \left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right) \sin \left(\omega t + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) \tag{37.11}$$

This result indicates that the electric field at point P has the same frequency ω as the light at the slits but that the amplitude of the field is multiplied by the factor $2 \cos (\phi/2)$. To check the consistency of this result, note that if $\phi = 0, 2\pi, 4\pi, \ldots$, the magnitude of the electric field at point P is $2E_0$, corresponding to the condition for maximum constructive interference. These values of ϕ are consistent with Equation 37.2 for constructive interference. Likewise, if $\phi = \pi, 3\pi, 5\pi, \ldots$, the magnitude of the electric field at point P is zero, which is consistent with Equation 37.3 for total destructive interference.

Finally, to obtain an expression for the light intensity at point P, recall from Section 34.4 that *the intensity of a wave is proportional to the square of the resultant electric field magnitude at that point* (Eq. 34.24). Using Equation 37.11, we can therefore express the light intensity at point P as

$$I \propto E_P{}^2 = 4E_0{}^2 \cos^2 \left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right) \sin^2 \left(\omega t + \frac{\phi}{2}\right)$$

Most light-detecting instruments measure time-averaged light intensity, and the time-averaged value of $\sin^2 (\omega t + \phi/2)$ over one cycle is $\frac{1}{2}$. (See Fig. 33.5.) Therefore, we can write the average light intensity at point P as

$$I = I_{\max} \cos^2 \left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right) \tag{37.12}$$

Image not available due to copyright restrictions

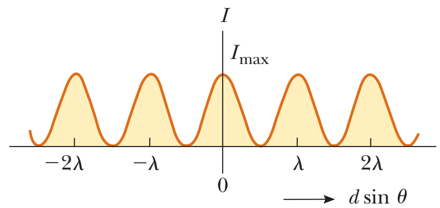


Figure 37.7 Light intensity versus $d \sin \theta$ for a double-slit interference pattern when the screen is far from the two slits $(L \gg d)$.

where I_{max} is the maximum intensity on the screen and the expression represents the time average. Substituting the value for ϕ given by Equation 37.9 into this expression gives

$$I = I_{max} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi d \sin \theta}{\lambda}\right) \qquad \textbf{(37.13)}$$

Alternatively, because $\sin \theta \approx y/L$ for small values of θ in Figure 37.5, we can write Equation 37.13 in the form

$$I = I_{max} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi d}{\lambda L}\, y\right) \qquad \textbf{(37.14)}$$

Constructive interference, which produces light intensity maxima, occurs when the quantity $\pi\, dy/\lambda L$ is an integral multiple of π, corresponding to $y = (\lambda L/d)m$. This result is consistent with Equation 37.7.

A plot of light intensity versus $d \sin \theta$ is given in Figure 37.7. The interference pattern consists of equally spaced fringes of equal intensity. Remember, however, that this result is valid only if the slit-to-screen distance L is much greater than the slit separation and only for small values of θ.

Figure 37.8 shows similar plots of light intensity versus $d \sin \theta$ for light passing through multiple slits. For more than two slits, the pattern contains primary and secondary maxima. For three slits, notice that the primary maxima are nine times more intense than the secondary maxima as measured by the height of the curve because the intensity varies as E^2. For N slits, the intensity of the primary maxima is N^2 times greater than that due to a single slit. As the number of slits increases, the primary maxima increase in intensity and become narrower, while the secondary maxima decrease in intensity relative to the primary maxima. Figure 37.8 also shows that as the number of slits increases, the number of secondary maxima also increases. In fact, the number of secondary maxima is always $N - 2$, where N is the number of slits. In Section 38.4, we shall investigate the pattern for a very large number of slits in a device called a *diffraction grating*.

Quick Quiz 37.2 Using Figure 37.8 as a model, sketch the interference pattern from six slits.

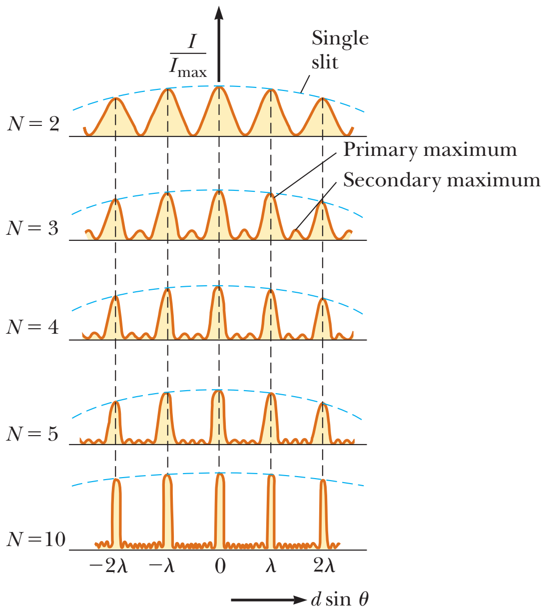


Figure 37.8 Multiple-slit interference patterns. As N, the number of slits, is increased, the primary maxima (the tallest peaks in each graph) become narrower but remain fixed in position and the number of secondary maxima increases. For any value of N, the decrease in intensity in maxima to the left and right of the central maximum, indicated by the blue dashed arcs, is due to *diffraction patterns* from the individual slits, which are discussed in Chapter 38.

37.5 Change of Phase Due to Reflection

Young's method for producing two coherent light sources involves illuminating a pair of slits with a single source. Another simple, yet ingenious, arrangement for producing an interference pattern with a single light source is known as *Lloyd's mirror*[1] (Fig. 37.9). A point light source S is placed close to a mirror, and a viewing screen is positioned some distance away and perpendicular to the mirror. Light waves can reach point P on the screen either directly from S to P or by the path involving reflection from the mirror. The reflected ray can be treated as a ray originating from a virtual source S′. As a result, we can think of this arrangement as a double-slit source with the distance between sources S and S′ comparable to length d in Figure 37.5. Hence, at observation points far from the source ($L \gg d$), we expect waves from S and S′ to form an interference pattern exactly like the one formed by two real coherent sources. An interference pattern is indeed observed. The positions of the dark and bright fringes, however, are reversed relative to the pattern created by two real coherent sources (Young's experiment). Such a reversal can only occur if the coherent sources S and S′ differ in phase by 180°.

To illustrate further, consider point P', the point where the mirror intersects the screen. This point is equidistant from sources S and S′. If path difference alone were responsible for the phase difference, we would see a bright fringe at P' (because the path difference is zero for this point), corresponding to the central bright fringe of the two-slit interference pattern. Instead, a dark fringe is observed at P'. We therefore conclude that a 180° phase change must be produced by reflection from the mirror. In general, **an electromagnetic wave undergoes a phase change of 180° upon reflection from a medium that has a higher index of refraction than the one in which the wave is traveling.**

It is useful to draw an analogy between reflected light waves and the reflections of a transverse wave pulse on a stretched string (Section 16.4). The reflected pulse on a string undergoes a phase change of 180° when reflected from the boundary

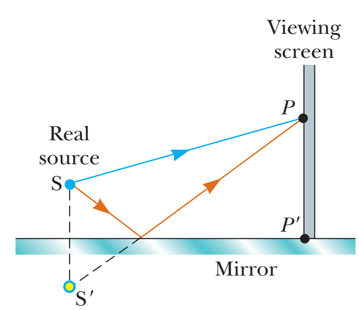


Figure 37.9 Lloyd's mirror. An interference pattern is produced at point P on the screen as a result of the combination of the direct ray (blue) and the reflected ray (brown). The reflected ray undergoes a phase change of 180°.

[1] Developed in 1834 by Humphrey Lloyd (1800–1881), Professor of Natural and Experimental Philosophy, Trinity College, Dublin.

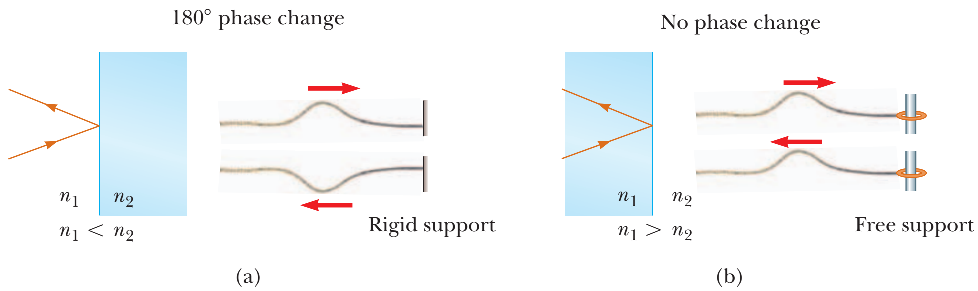


Figure 37.10 (a) For $n_1 < n_2$, a light ray traveling in medium 1 when reflected from the surface of medium 2 undergoes a 180° phase change. The same thing happens with a reflected pulse traveling along a string fixed at one end. (b) For $n_1 > n_2$, a light ray traveling in medium 1 undergoes no phase change when reflected from the surface of medium 2. The same is true of a reflected wave pulse on a string whose supported end is free to move.

of a denser medium, but no phase change occurs when the pulse is reflected from the boundary of a less dense medium. Similarly, an electromagnetic wave undergoes a 180° phase change when reflected from a boundary leading to an optically denser medium (defined as a medium with a higher index of refraction), but no phase change occurs when the wave is reflected from a boundary leading to a less dense medium. These rules, summarized in Figure 37.10, can be deduced from Maxwell's equations, but the treatment is beyond the scope of this text.

37.6 Interference in Thin Films

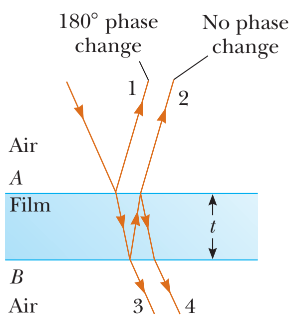


Figure 37.11 Interference in light reflected from a thin film is due to a combination of rays 1 and 2 reflected from the upper and lower surfaces of the film. Rays 3 and 4 lead to interference effects for light transmitted through the film.

Interference effects are commonly observed in thin films, such as thin layers of oil on water or the thin surface of a soap bubble. The varied colors observed when white light is incident on such films result from the interference of waves reflected from the two surfaces of the film.

Consider a film of uniform thickness t and index of refraction n as shown in Figure 37.11. Let's assume the light rays traveling in air are nearly normal to the two surfaces of the film. The wavelength of light λ_n in the film (see Section 35.5) is

$$\lambda_n = \frac{\lambda}{n}$$

where λ is the wavelength of the light in free space and n is the index of refraction of the film material.

Reflected ray 1, which is reflected from the upper surface (A) in Figure 37.11, undergoes a phase change of 180° with respect to the incident wave. Reflected ray 2, which is reflected from the lower film surface (B), undergoes no phase change because it is reflected from a medium (air) that has a lower index of refraction. Therefore, ray 1 is 180° out of phase with ray 2, which is equivalent to a path difference of $\lambda_n/2$. We must also consider, however, that ray 2 travels an extra distance $2t$ before the waves recombine in the air above surface A. (Remember that we are considering light rays that are close to normal to the surface. If the rays are not close to normal, the path difference is larger than $2t$.) If $2t = \lambda_n/2$, rays 1 and 2 recombine in phase and the result is constructive interference. In general, the condition for *constructive* interference in thin films is[2]

$$2t = (m + \tfrac{1}{2})\lambda_n \quad (m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots) \qquad \textbf{(37.15)}$$

This condition takes into account two factors: (1) the difference in path length for the two rays (the term $m\lambda_n$) and (2) the 180° phase change upon reflection (the term $\frac{1}{2}\lambda_n$). Because $\lambda_n = \lambda/n$, we can write Equation 37.15 as

Conditions for constructive interference in thin films ▶

$$2nt = (m + \tfrac{1}{2})\lambda \quad (m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots) \qquad \textbf{(37.16)}$$

[2] The full interference effect in a thin film requires an analysis of an infinite number of reflections back and forth between the top and bottom surfaces of the film. We focus here only on a single reflection from the bottom of the film, which provides the largest contribution to the interference effect.

If the extra distance $2t$ traveled by ray 2 corresponds to a multiple of λ_n, the two waves combine out of phase and the result is destructive interference. The general equation for *destructive* interference in thin films is

$$2nt = m\lambda \quad (m = 0, 1, 2, \dots) \qquad \textbf{(37.17)}$$

◀ Conditions for destructive interference in thin films

The foregoing conditions for constructive and destructive interference are valid when the medium above the top surface of the film is the same as the medium below the bottom surface or, if there are different media above and below the film, the index of refraction of both is less than n. If the film is placed between two different media, one with $n < n_{\text{film}}$ and the other with $n > n_{\text{film}}$, the conditions for constructive and destructive interference are reversed. In that case, either there is a phase change of 180° for both ray 1 reflecting from surface A and ray 2 reflecting from surface B or there is no phase change for either ray; hence, the net change in relative phase due to the reflections is zero.

Rays 3 and 4 in Figure 37.11 lead to interference effects in the light transmitted through the thin film. The analysis of these effects is similar to that of the reflected light. You are asked to explore the transmitted light in Problems 23, 29, and 30.

PITFALL PREVENTION 37.1

Be Careful with Thin Films

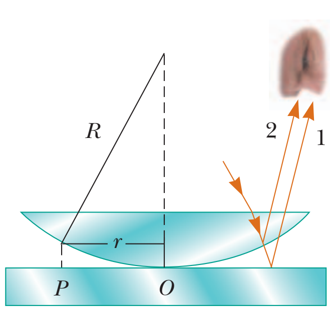
Be sure to include *both* effects—path length and phase change—when analyzing an interference pattern resulting from a thin film. The possible phase change is a new feature we did not need to consider for double-slit interference. Also think carefully about the material on either side of the film. You may have a situation in which there is a 180° phase change at *both* surfaces or at *neither* surface, if there are different materials on either side of the film.

Quick Quiz 37.3 One microscope slide is placed on top of another with their left edges in contact and a human hair under the right edge of the upper slide. As a result, a wedge of air exists between the slides. An interference pattern results when monochromatic light is incident on the wedge. What is at the left edges of the slides? (a) a dark fringe (b) a bright fringe (c) impossible to determine

Newton's Rings

Another method for observing interference in light waves is to place a plano-convex lens on top of a flat glass surface as shown in Figure 37.12a. With this arrangement, the air film between the glass surfaces varies in thickness from zero at the point of contact to some value t at point P. If the radius of curvature R of the lens is much greater than the distance r and the system is viewed from above, a pattern of light and dark rings is observed as shown in Figure 37.12b. These circular fringes, discovered by Newton, are called **Newton's rings.**

The interference effect is due to the combination of ray 1, reflected from the flat plate, with ray 2, reflected from the curved surface of the lens. Ray 1 undergoes a phase change of 180° upon reflection (because it is reflected from a medium of higher index of refraction), whereas ray 2 undergoes no phase change (because it is reflected from a medium of lower index of refraction). Hence, the conditions for constructive and destructive interference are given by Equations 37.16 and 37.17, respectively, with $n = 1$ because the film is air. Because there is

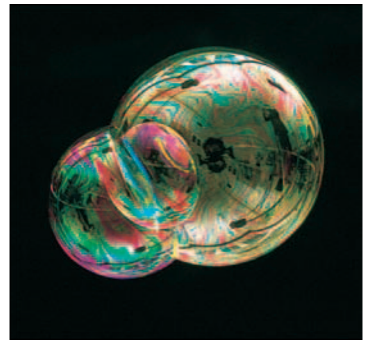


(a)

Image not available due to copyright restrictions

Figure 37.12 (a) The combination of rays reflected from the flat plate and the curved lens surface gives rise to an interference pattern known as Newton's rings.

(a)



(b)

(a) A thin film of oil floating on water displays interference, shown by the pattern of colors when white light is incident on the film. Variations in film thickness produce the interesting color pattern. The razor blade gives you an idea of the size of the colored bands. (b) Interference in soap bubbles. The colors are due to interference between light rays reflected from the front and back surfaces of the thin film of soap making up the bubble. The color depends on the thickness of the film, ranging from black, where the film is thinnest, to magenta, where it is thickest.

Peter Aprahamian/Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers, Inc.

Dr. Jeremy Burgess/Science Photo Library

no path difference and the total phase change is due only to the 180° phase change upon reflection, the contact point at O is dark as seen in Figure 37.12b.

Using the geometry shown in Figure 37.12a, we can obtain expressions for the radii of the bright and dark bands in terms of the radius of curvature R and wavelength λ. For example, the dark rings have radii given by the expression $r \approx \sqrt{m\lambda R/n}$. The details are left as a problem (see Problem 60). We can obtain the wavelength of the light causing the interference pattern by measuring the radii of the rings, provided R is known. Conversely, we can use a known wavelength to obtain R.

One important use of Newton's rings is in the testing of optical lenses. A circular pattern like that pictured in Figure 37.12b is obtained only when the lens is ground to a perfectly symmetric curvature. Variations from such symmetry produce a pattern with fringes that vary from a smooth, circular shape. These variations indicate how the lens must be reground and repolished to remove imperfections.

PROBLEM-SOLVING STRATEGY **Thin-Film Interference**

The following features should be kept in mind when working thin-film interference problems.

1. *Conceptualize.* Think about what is going on physically in the problem. Identify the light source and the location of the observer.
2. *Categorize.* Confirm that you should use the techniques for thin-film interference by identifying the thin film causing the interference.
3. *Analyze.* The type of interference that occurs is determined by the phase relationship between the portion of the wave reflected at the upper surface of the film and the portion reflected at the lower surface. Phase differences between the two portions of the wave have two causes: differences in the distances traveled by the two portions and phase changes occurring on reflection. *Both* causes must be considered when determining which type of interference occurs. If the media above and below the film both have index of refraction larger than that of the film or if both indices are smaller, use Equation 37.16 for constructive interference and Equation 37.17 for destructive interference. If the film is located between two different media, one with $n < n_{\text{film}}$ and the other with $n > n_{\text{film}}$, reverse these two equations for constructive and destructive interference.
4. *Finalize.* Inspect your final results to see if they make sense physically and are of an appropriate size.

EXAMPLE 37.3 Interference in a Soap Film

Calculate the minimum thickness of a soap-bubble film that results in constructive interference in the reflected light if the film is illuminated with light whose wavelength in free space is $\lambda = 600$ nm. The index of refraction of the soap film is 1.33.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine that the film in Figure 37.11 is soap, with air on both sides.

Categorize We evaluate the result using an equation from this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

The minimum film thickness for constructive interference in the reflected light corresponds to $m = 0$ in Equation 37.16. Solve this equation for t and substitute numerical values:

$$t = \frac{(0 + \frac{1}{2})\lambda}{2n} = \frac{\lambda}{4n} = \frac{(600 \text{ nm})}{4(1.33)} = \boxed{113 \text{ nm}}$$

What If? What if the film is twice as thick? Does this situation produce constructive interference?

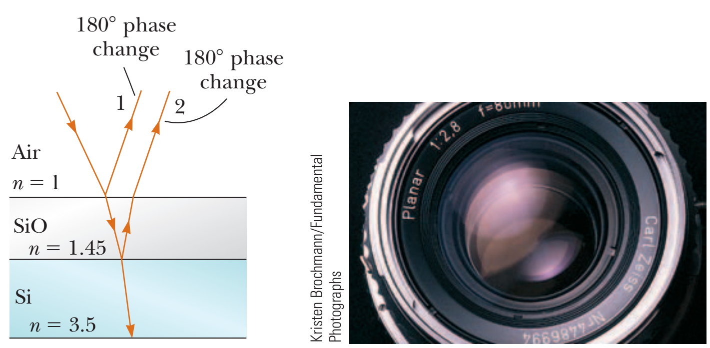
Answer Using Equation 37.16, we can solve for the thicknesses at which constructive interference occurs:

$$t = (m + \tfrac{1}{2})\frac{\lambda}{2n} = (2m + 1)\frac{\lambda}{4n} \qquad (m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots)$$

The allowed values of m show that constructive interference occurs for *odd* multiples of the thickness corresponding to $m = 0$, $t = 113$ nm. Therefore, constructive interference does *not* occur for a film that is twice as thick.

EXAMPLE 37.4 Nonreflective Coatings for Solar Cells

Solar cells—devices that generate electricity when exposed to sunlight—are often coated with a transparent, thin film of silicon monoxide (SiO, $n = 1.45$) to minimize reflective losses from the surface. Suppose a silicon solar cell ($n = 3.5$) is coated with a thin film of silicon monoxide for this purpose (Fig. 37.13a). Determine the minimum film thickness that produces the least reflection at a wavelength of 550 nm, near the center of the visible spectrum.



(a) (b)

Figure 37.13 (Example 37.4) (a) Reflective losses from a silicon solar cell are minimized by coating the surface of the cell with a thin film of silicon monoxide. (b) The reflected light from a coated camera lens often has a reddish-violet appearance.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Figure 37.13a helps us visualize the path of the rays in the SiO film that result in interference in the reflected light.

Categorize Based on the geometry of the SiO layer, we categorize this example as a thin-film interference problem.

Analyze The reflected light is a minimum when rays 1 and 2 in Figure 37.13a meet the condition of destructive interference. In this situation, *both* rays undergo a 180° phase change upon reflection: ray 1 from the upper SiO surface, and ray 2 from the lower SiO surface. The net change in phase due to reflection is therefore zero, and the condition for a reflection minimum requires a path difference of $\lambda_n/2$, where λ_n is the wavelength of the light in SiO. Hence, $2nt = \lambda/2$, where λ is the wavelength in air and n is the index of refraction of SiO.

Solve the equation $2nt = \lambda/2$ for t and substitute numerical values:

$$t = \frac{\lambda}{4n} = \frac{550 \text{ nm}}{4(1.45)} = \boxed{94.8 \text{ nm}}$$

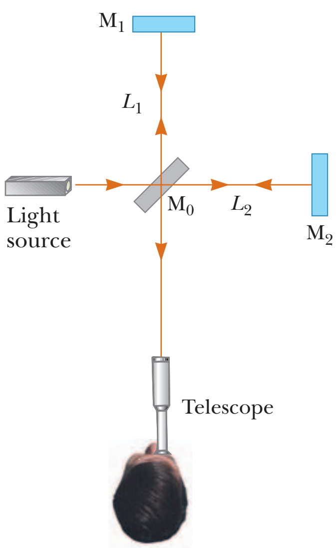
Finalize A typical uncoated solar cell has reflective losses as high as 30%, but a coating of SiO can reduce this value to about 10%. This significant decrease in reflective losses increases the cell's efficiency because less reflection means that more sunlight enters the silicon to create charge carriers in the cell. No coating can ever be made perfectly nonreflecting because the required thickness is wavelength-dependent and the incident light covers a wide range of wavelengths.

Glass lenses used in cameras and other optical instruments are usually coated with a transparent thin film to reduce or eliminate unwanted reflection and to enhance the transmission of light through the lenses. The camera lens in Figure 37.13b has several coatings (of different thicknesses) to minimize reflection of light waves having wavelengths near the center of the visible spectrum. As a result, the small amount of light that is reflected by the lens has a greater proportion of the far ends of the spectrum and often appears reddish violet.

37.7 The Michelson Interferometer

The **interferometer,** invented by American physicist A. A. Michelson (1852–1931), splits a light beam into two parts and then recombines the parts to form an interference pattern. The device can be used to measure wavelengths or other lengths with great precision because a large and precisely measurable displacement of one of the mirrors is related to an exactly countable number of wavelengths of light.

A schematic diagram of the interferometer is shown in Active Figure 37.14. A ray of light from a monochromatic source is split into two rays by mirror M_0, which is inclined at 45° to the incident light beam. Mirror M_0, called a *beam splitter,* transmits half the light incident on it and reflects the rest. One ray is reflected from M_0 vertically upward toward mirror M_1, and the second ray is transmitted horizontally through M_0 toward mirror M_2. Hence, the two rays travel separate paths L_1 and L_2. After reflecting from M_1 and M_2, the two rays eventually recombine at M_0 to produce an interference pattern, which can be viewed through a telescope.



ACTIVE FIGURE 37.14

Diagram of the Michelson interferometer. A single ray of light is split into two rays by mirror M_0, which is called a beam splitter. The path difference between the two rays is varied with the adjustable mirror M_1. As M_1 is moved, an interference pattern changes in the field of view.

Sign in at www.thomsonedu.com and go to ThomsonNOW to move the mirror and see the effect on the interference pattern and use the interferometer to measure the wavelength of light.

The interference condition for the two rays is determined by the difference in their path length. When the two mirrors are exactly perpendicular to each other, the interference pattern is a target pattern of bright and dark circular fringes, similar to Newton's rings. As M_1 is moved, the fringe pattern collapses or expands, depending on the direction in which M_1 is moved. For example, if a dark circle appears at the center of the target pattern (corresponding to destructive interference) and M_1 is then moved a distance $\lambda/4$ toward M_0, the path difference changes by $\lambda/2$. What was a dark circle at the center now becomes a bright circle. As M_1 is moved an additional distance $\lambda/4$ toward M_0, the bright circle becomes a dark circle again. Therefore, the fringe pattern shifts by one-half fringe each time M_1 is moved a distance $\lambda/4$. The wavelength of light is then measured by counting the number of fringe shifts for a given displacement of M_1. If the wavelength is accurately known, mirror displacements can be measured to within a fraction of the wavelength.

We will see an important historical use of the Michelson interferometer in our discussion of relativity in Chapter 39. Modern uses include the following two applications, Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy and the laser interferometer gravitational-wave observatory.

Fourier Transform Infrared Spectroscopy

Spectroscopy is the study of the wavelength distribution of radiation from a sample that can be used to identify the characteristics of atoms or molecules in the sample. Infrared spectroscopy is particularly important to organic chemists when analyzing organic molecules. Traditional spectroscopy involves the use of an optical element, such as a prism (Section 35.5) or a diffraction grating (Section 38.4), which spreads out various wavelengths in a complex optical signal from the sample into different angles. In this way, the various wavelengths of radiation and their intensities in the signal can be determined. These types of devices are limited in their resolution and effectiveness because they must be scanned through the various angular deviations of the radiation.

The technique of *Fourier transform infrared* (FTIR) *spectroscopy* is used to create a higher-resolution spectrum in a time interval of 1 second that may have required 30 minutes with a standard spectrometer. In this technique, the radiation from a sample enters a Michelson interferometer. The movable mirror is swept through the zero-path-difference condition, and the intensity of radiation at the viewing position is recorded. The result is a complex set of data relating light intensity as a function of mirror position, called an *interferogram*. Because there is a relationship between mirror position and light intensity for a given wavelength, the interferogram contains information about all wavelengths in the signal.

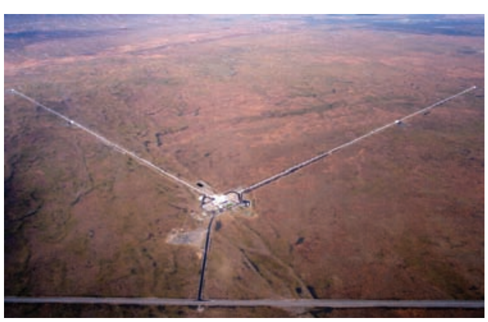
In Section 18.8, we discussed Fourier analysis of a waveform. The waveform is a function that contains information about all the individual frequency components that make up the waveform.[3] Equation 18.13 shows how the waveform is generated from the individual frequency components. Similarly, the interferogram can be analyzed by computer, in a process called a *Fourier transform*, to provide all of the wavelength components. This information is the same as that generated by traditional spectroscopy, but the resolution of FTIR spectroscopy is much higher.

Laser Interferometer Gravitational-Wave Observatory

Einstein's general theory of relativity (Section 39.10) predicts the existence of *gravitational waves*. These waves propagate from the site of any gravitational disturbance, which could be periodic and predictable, such as the rotation of a double star around a center of mass, or unpredictable, such as the supernova explosion of a massive star.

In Einstein's theory, gravitation is equivalent to a distortion of space. Therefore, a gravitational disturbance causes an additional distortion that propagates through space in a manner similar to mechanical or electromagnetic waves. When gravitational waves from a disturbance pass by the Earth, they create a distortion of the local space. The laser interferometer gravitational-wave observatory (LIGO) apparatus is designed to detect this distortion. The apparatus employs a Michelson interferometer that uses laser beams with an effective path length of several kilometers. At the end of an arm of the interferometer, a mirror is mounted on a massive pendulum. When a gravitational wave passes by, the pendulum and the attached mirror move and the interference pattern due to the laser beams from the two arms changes.

Two sites for interferometers have been developed in the United States—in Richland, Washington, and in Livingston, Louisiana—to allow coincidence studies of gravitational waves. Figure 37.15 shows the Washington site. The two arms of



LIGO Hanford Observatory

Figure 37.15 The Laser Interferometer Gravitational-Wave Observatory (LIGO) near Richland, Washington. Notice the two perpendicular arms of the Michelson interferometer.

[3] In acoustics, it is common to talk about the components of a complex signal in terms of frequency. In optics, it is more common to identify the components by wavelength.

the Michelson interferometer are evident in the photograph. Five data runs have been performed as of 2007. These runs have been coordinated with other gravitational wave detectors, such as GEO in Hannover, Germany, TAMA in Mitaka, Japan, and VIRGO in Cascina, Italy. So far, gravitational waves have not yet been detected, but the data runs have provided critical information for modifications and design features for the next generation of detectors.

Summary

ThomsonNOW™ Sign in at **www.thomsonedu.com** and go to ThomsonNOW to take a practice test for this chapter.

CONCEPTS AND PRINCIPLES

Interference in light waves occurs whenever two or more waves overlap at a given point. An interference pattern is observed if (1) the sources are coherent and (2) the sources have identical wavelengths.

The **intensity** at a point in a double-slit interference pattern is

$$I = I_{\max} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi d \sin\theta}{\lambda}\right) \qquad \textbf{(37.13)}$$

where $I_{\max}$ is the maximum intensity on the screen and the expression represents the time average.

A wave traveling from a medium of index of refraction n_1 toward a medium of index of refraction n_2 undergoes a 180° phase change upon reflection when $n_2 > n_1$ and undergoes no phase change when $n_2 < n_1$.

The condition for constructive interference in a film of thickness t and index of refraction n surrounded by air is

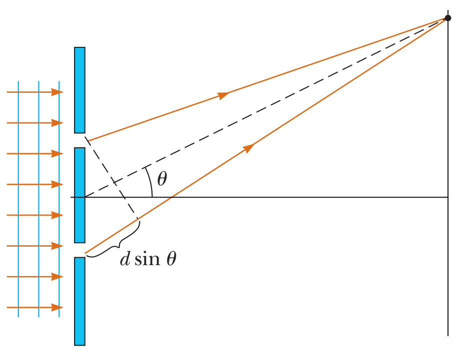
$$2nt = (m + \tfrac{1}{2})\lambda \quad (m = 0, 1, 2, \dots) \qquad \textbf{(37.16)}$$

where λ is the wavelength of the light in free space.

Similarly, the condition for destructive interference in a thin film surrounded by air is

$$2nt = m\lambda \quad (m = 0, 1, 2, \dots) \qquad \textbf{(37.17)}$$

ANALYSIS MODEL FOR PROBLEM SOLVING



Waves in Interference. Young's double-slit experiment serves as a prototype for interference phenomena involving electromagnetic radiation. In this experiment, two slits separated by a distance d are illuminated by a single-wavelength light source. The condition for bright fringes **(constructive interference)** is

$$d \sin\theta_{\text{bright}} = m\lambda \quad (m = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots) \qquad \textbf{(37.2)}$$

The condition for dark fringes **(destructive interference)** is

$$d \sin\theta_{\text{dark}} = (m + \tfrac{1}{2})\lambda \quad (m = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots) \qquad \textbf{(37.3)}$$

The number m is called the **order number** of the fringe.

Questions

☐ denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide;* **O** denotes objective question

Question 4 in Chapter 18 may be assigned with this chapter.

1. What is the necessary condition on the path length difference between two waves that interfere (a) constructively and (b) destructively?

2. Explain why two flashlights held close together do not produce an interference pattern on a distant screen.

3. **O** Four trials of Young's double-slit experiment are conducted. (a) In the first trial, blue light passes through two fine slits 400 μm apart and forms an interference pattern on a screen 4 m away. (b) In a second trial, red light passes through the same slits and falls on the same screen. (c) A third trial is performed with red light and the same screen, but with slits 800 μm apart. (d) A final trial is performed with red light, slits 800 μm apart, and a screen 8 m away. **(i)** Rank the trials (a) through (d) from largest to smallest value of the angle between the central maximum and the first-order side maximum. In your ranking, note any cases of equality. **(ii)** Rank the same trials according to the distance between the central maximum and the first-order side maximum on the screen.

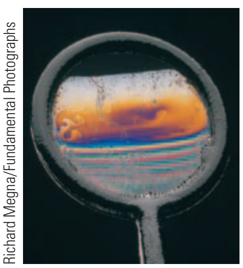
4. Suppose you blow smoke into the space between the barrier and the viewing screen in Young's double-slit experiment, shown in Active Figure 37.2a. Would the smoke show evidence of interference within this space? Explain your answer.

5. **O** Suppose Young's double-slit experiment is performed in air using red light and then the apparatus is immersed in water. What happens to the interference pattern on the screen? (a) It disappears. (b) The bright and dark fringes stay in the same locations, but the contrast is reduced. (c) The bright fringes are closer together. (d) The color shifts toward blue. (e) The bright fringes are farther apart. (f) The bright fringes are in continuous motion. (g) No change happens in the interference pattern.

6. In Young's double-slit experiment, why do we use monochromatic light? If white light is used, how would the pattern change?

7. **O** Suppose you perform Young's double-slit experiment with the slit separation slightly smaller than the wavelength of the light. As a screen, you use a large half-cylinder with its axis along the midline between the slits. What interference pattern will you see on the interior surface of the cylinder? (a) bright and dark fringes so closely spaced as to be indistinguishable (b) one central bright fringe and two dark fringes only (c) a completely bright screen with no dark fringes (d) one central dark fringe and two bright fringes only (e) a completely dark screen with no bright fringes

8. As a soap bubble evaporates, it appears black immediately before it breaks, as at the top of the circular film shown in Figure Q37.8. Explain this phenomenon in terms of the phase changes that occur on reflection from the two surfaces of the soap film.



Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs

Figure Q37.8 Question 8 and Problem 63.

9. **O** A film of oil on a puddle in a parking lot shows a variety of bright colors in swirled patches. What can you say about the thickness of the oil film? (a) It is much less than the wavelength of visible light. (b) It is of the same order of magnitude as the wavelength of visible light. (c) It is much greater than the wavelength of visible light. (d) It might have any relationship to the wavelength of visible light.

10. **O** Assume the index of refraction of flint glass is 1.66 and the index of refraction of crown glass is 1.52. **(i)** A film formed by one drop of sassafras oil, on a horizontal surface of a flint glass block, is viewed by reflected light. The film appears brightest at its outer margin, where it is thinnest. A film of the same oil on crown glass appears dark at its outer margin. What can you say about the index of refraction of the oil? (a) It must be less than 1.52. (b) It must be between 1.52 and 1.66. (c) It must be greater than 1.66. (d) None of statements (a) through (c) is necessarily true. **(ii)** Could a very thin film of some other liquid appear bright by reflected light on both of the glass blocks? **(iii)** Could it appear dark on both?

(iv) Could it appear dark on crown glass and bright on flint glass? Experiments described by Thomas Young suggested this question.

11. A lens with outer radius of curvature R and index of refraction n rests on a flat glass plate. The combination is illuminated with white light from above and observed from above. Is there a dark spot or a light spot at the center of the lens? What does it mean if the observed rings are noncircular?

12. Why is the lens on a good-quality camera coated with a thin film?

13. O Green light has a wavelength of 500 nm in air. **(i)** Assume green light is reflected from a mirror with angle of incidence 0°. The incident and reflected waves together constitute a standing wave with what distance from one node to the next antinode? (a) 1 000 nm (b) 500 nm (c) 250 nm (d) 125 nm (e) 62.5 nm **(ii)** The green light is sent into a Michelson interferometer that is adjusted to produce a central bright circle. How far must the interferometer's moving mirror be shifted to change the center of the pattern into a dark circle? Choose from the same possibilities. **(iii)** The light is reflected perpendicularly from a thin film of a plastic with index of refraction 2.00. The film appears bright in the reflected light. How much additional thickness would make the film appear dark?

14. O Using a Michelson interferometer, shown in Active Figure 37.14, you are viewing a dark circle at the center of the interference pattern. As you gradually move the light source toward the central mirror M_0, through a distance $\lambda/2$, what do you see? (a) There is no change in the pattern. (b) The dark circle changes into a bright circle. (c) The dark circle changes into a bright circle and then back into a dark circle. (d) The dark circle changes into a bright circle, then into a dark circle, and then into a bright circle.

Problems

WebAssign The Problems from this chapter may be assigned online in WebAssign.

ThomsonNOW™ Sign in at **www.thomsonedu.com** and go to ThomsonNOW to assess your understanding of this chapter's topics with additional quizzing and conceptual questions.

1, 2, 3 denotes straightforward, intermediate, challenging; ☐ denotes full solution available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide;* ▲ denotes coached solution with hints available at **www.thomsonedu.com;** ▭ denotes developing symbolic reasoning; ● denotes asking for qualitative reasoning; ▭ denotes computer useful in solving problem

Section 37.1 Conditions for Interference

Section 37.2 Young's Double-Slit Experiment

Section 37.3 Light Waves in Interference

Note: Problems 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 10 in Chapter 18 can be assigned with this section.

1. A laser beam (λ = 632.8 nm) is incident on two slits 0.200 mm apart. How far apart are the bright interference fringes on a screen 5.00 m away from the double slits?

2. A Young's interference experiment is performed with monochromatic light. The separation between the slits is 0.500 mm, and the interference pattern on a screen 3.30 m away shows the first side maximum 3.40 mm from the center of the pattern. What is the wavelength?

3. ▲ Two radio antennas separated by 300 m as shown in Figure P37.3 simultaneously broadcast identical signals at the same wavelength. A radio in a car traveling due north receives the signals. (a) If the car is at the position of the second maximum, what is the wavelength of the signals? (b) How much farther must the car travel to encounter the next minimum in reception? *Note:* Do not use the small-angle approximation in this problem.

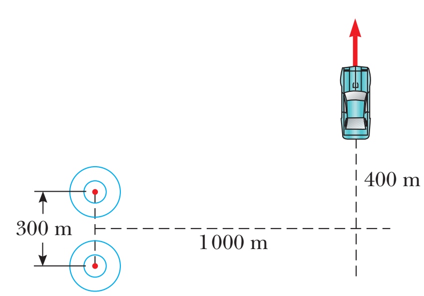


Figure P37.3

4. In a location where the speed of sound is 354 m/s, a 2 000-Hz sound wave impinges on two slits 30.0 cm apart. (a) At what angle is the first maximum located? (b) **What If?** If the sound wave is replaced by 3.00-cm microwaves, what slit separation gives the same angle for the first maximum? (c) **What If?** If the slit separation is 1.00 μm, what frequency of light gives the same first maximum angle?

5. ▲ Young's double-slit experiment is performed with 589-nm light and a distance of 2.00 m between the slits and the screen. The tenth interference minimum is observed 7.26 mm from the central maximum. Determine the spacing of the slits.

6. ● Write the statement of a problem, including data, for which the following equations appear in the solution.

$$\lambda = \frac{343\text{ m/s}}{1\,620\text{/s}} \qquad (35.0\text{ cm})\sin\theta_0 = 0\lambda$$

$$(35.0\text{ cm})\sin\theta_{1\text{ soft}} = 0.5\lambda \qquad (35.0\text{ cm})\sin\theta_{1\text{ loud}} = 1\lambda$$

$$(35.0\text{ cm})\sin\theta_{2\text{ soft}} = 1.5\lambda \qquad (35.0\text{ cm})\sin\theta_{2\text{ loud}} = 2\lambda$$

State the solution to the problem, including values for each quantity that appears as an unknown. State what you can conclude from the last of the set of six equations. Does this equation describe an angle $\theta_{2\text{ loud}}$ that is larger than 90°?

7. Two narrow, parallel slits separated by 0.250 mm are illuminated by green light (λ = 546.1 nm). The interference pattern is observed on a screen 1.20 m away from the plane of the slits. Calculate the distance (a) from the central maximum to the first bright region on either side of the central maximum and (b) between the first and second dark bands.

8. A riverside warehouse has two open doors as shown in Figure P37.8. Its walls are lined with sound-absorbing material. A boat on the river sounds its horn. To person A, the sound is loud and clear. To person B, the sound is barely audible. The principal wavelength of the sound waves is 3.00 m. Assuming person B is at the position of the first minimum, determine the distance between the doors, center to center.

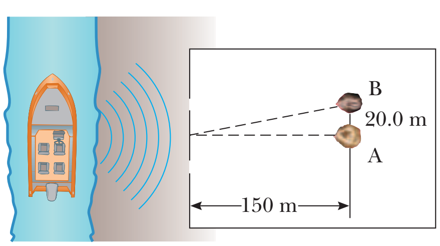


Figure P37.8

9. Light with wavelength 442 nm passes through a double-slit system that has a slit separation d = 0.400 mm. Determine how far away a screen must be placed so that dark fringes appear directly opposite both slits, with only one bright fringe between them.

10. Two slits are separated by 0.320 mm. A beam of 500-nm light strikes the slits, producing an interference pattern. Determine the number of maxima observed in the angular range $-30.0° < \theta < 30.0°$.

11. ● Young's double-slit experiment underlies the *instrument landing system* used to guide aircraft to safe landings when the visibility is poor. Although real systems are more complicated than the example described here, they operate on the same principles. A pilot is trying to align her plane with a runway as suggested in Figure P37.11a. Two radio antennas A_1 and A_2 are positioned adjacent to the runway, separated by 40.0 m. The antennas broadcast unmodulated coherent radio waves at 30.0 MHz. (a) Find the wavelength of the waves. The pilot "locks onto" the strong signal radiated along an interference maximum, and steers the plane to keep the received signal strong. If she has found the central maximum, the plane will have precisely the right heading to land when it reaches the runway. (b) **What If?** Suppose the plane is flying along the first side maximum instead (Fig. P37.11b). How far to the side of the runway centerline will the plane be when it is 2.00 km from the antennas? (c) It is possible to tell the pilot that she is on the wrong maximum by sending out two signals from each antenna and equipping the aircraft with a two-channel receiver. The ratio of the two frequencies must not be the ratio of small integers (such as $\frac{3}{4}$). Explain how this two-frequency system would work and

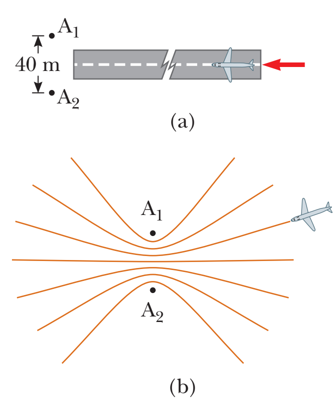


Figure P37.11

why it would not necessarily work if the frequencies were related by an integer ratio.

12. A student holds a laser that emits light of wavelength 633 nm. The beam passes though a pair of slits separated by 0.300 mm, in a glass plate attached to the front of the laser. The beam then falls perpendicularly on a screen, creating an interference pattern on it. The student begins to walk directly toward the screen at 3.00 m/s. The central maximum on the screen is stationary. Find the speed of the first-order maxima on the screen.

13. In Figure 37.5, let $L = 1.20$ m and $d = 0.120$ mm and assume the slit system is illuminated with monochromatic 500-nm light. Calculate the phase difference between the two wave fronts arriving at P when (a) $\theta = 0.500°$ and (b) $y = 5.00$ mm. (c) What is the value of θ for which the phase difference is 0.333 rad? (d) What is the value of θ for which the path difference is $\lambda/4$?

14. Coherent light rays of wavelength λ strike a pair of slits separated by distance d at an angle θ_1 as shown in Figure P37.14. Assume an interference maximum is formed at an angle θ_2 a great distance from the slits. Show that $d(\sin\theta_2 - \sin\theta_1) = m\lambda$, where m is an integer.

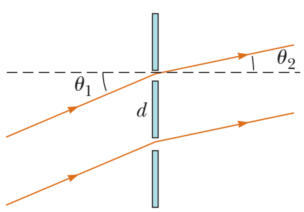


Figure P37.14

15. ● In a double-slit arrangement of Figure 37.5, $d = 0.150$ mm, $L = 140$ cm, $\lambda = 643$ nm, and $y = 1.80$ cm. (a) What is the path difference δ for the rays from the two slits arriving at P? (b) Express this path difference in terms of λ. (c) Does P correspond to a maximum, a minimum, or an intermediate condition? Give evidence for your answer.

Section 37.4 Intensity Distribution of the Double-Slit Interference Pattern

16. The intensity on the screen at a certain point in a double-slit interference pattern is 64.0% of the maximum value. (a) What minimum phase difference (in radians) between sources produces this result? (b) Express this phase difference as a path difference for 486.1-nm light.

17. ▲ In Figure 37.5, let $L = 120$ cm and $d = 0.250$ cm. The slits are illuminated with coherent 600-nm light. Calculate the distance y above the central maximum for which the average intensity on the screen is 75.0% of the maximum.

18. Two slits are separated by 0.180 mm. An interference pattern is formed on a screen 80.0 cm away by 656.3-nm light. Calculate the fraction of the maximum intensity 0.600 cm above the central maximum.

19. ▲ Show that the two waves with wave functions $E_1 = 6.00 \sin(100\pi t)$ and $E_2 = 8.00 \sin(100\pi t + \pi/2)$ add to give a wave with the wave function $E_R \sin(100\pi t + \phi)$. Find the required values for E_R and ϕ.

20. Make a graph of I/I_{max} as a function of θ for the interference pattern produced by the arrangement described in Problem 7. Let θ range over the interval from $-0.3°$ to $+0.3°$.

21. Two narrow, parallel slits separated by 0.850 mm are illuminated by 600-nm light, and the viewing screen is 2.80 m away from the slits. (a) What is the phase difference between the two interfering waves on a screen at a point 2.50 mm from the central bright fringe? (b) What is the ratio of the intensity at this point to the intensity at the center of a bright fringe?

22. ● Monochromatic coherent light of amplitude E_0 and angular frequency ω passes through three parallel slits each separated by a distance d from its neighbor. (a) Show that the time-averaged intensity as a function of the angle θ is

$$I(\theta) = I_{max}\left[1 + 2\cos\left(\frac{2\pi d \sin\theta}{\lambda}\right)\right]^2$$

(b) Explain how this expression describes both the primary and the secondary maxima. Determine the ratio of the intensities of the primary and secondary maxima.

Section 37.5 Change of Phase Due to Reflection

Section 37.6 Interference in Thin Films

23. ● An oil film ($n = 1.45$) floating on water is illuminated by white light at normal incidence. The film is 280 nm thick. Find (a) the color of the light in the visible spectrum most strongly reflected and (b) the color of the light in the spectrum most strongly transmitted. Explain your reasoning.

24. A soap bubble (n = 1.33) is floating in air. If the thickness of the bubble wall is 115 nm, what is the wavelength of the light that is most strongly reflected?

25. A thin film of oil (n = 1.25) is located on smooth, wet pavement. When viewed perpendicular to the pavement, the film reflects most strongly red light at 640 nm and reflects no green light at 512 nm. How thick is the oil film?

26. A possible means for making an airplane invisible to radar is to coat the plane with an antireflective polymer. If radar waves have a wavelength of 3.00 cm and the index of refraction of the polymer is n = 1.50, how thick would you make the coating?

27. A material having an index of refraction of 1.30 is used as an antireflective coating on a piece of glass (n = 1.50). What should the minimum thickness of this film be to minimize reflection of 500-nm light?

28. A film of MgF_2 (n = 1.38) having thickness 1.00×10^{-5} cm is used to coat a camera lens. Are any wavelengths in the visible spectrum intensified in the reflected light?

29. ● Astronomers observe the chromosphere of the Sun with a filter that passes the red hydrogen spectral line of wavelength 656.3 nm, called the H_α line. The filter consists of a transparent dielectric of thickness d held between two partially aluminized glass plates. The filter is held at a constant temperature. (a) Find the minimum value of d that produces maximum transmission of perpendicular H_α light if the dielectric has an index of refraction of 1.378. (b) **What If?** If the temperature of the filter increases above the normal value, what happens to the transmitted wavelength? (The index of refraction of the filter does not change significantly.) (c) The dielectric will also pass what near-visible wavelength? One of the glass plates is colored red to absorb this light.

30. A beam of 580-nm light passes through two closely spaced glass plates as shown in Figure P37.30. For what minimum nonzero value of the plate separation d is the transmitted light bright?

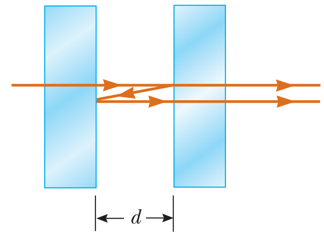


Figure P37.30

31. ▲ An air wedge is formed between two glass plates separated at one edge by a very fine wire as shown in Figure P37.31. When the wedge is illuminated from above by 600-nm light and viewed from above, 30 dark fringes are observed. Calculate the radius of the wire.

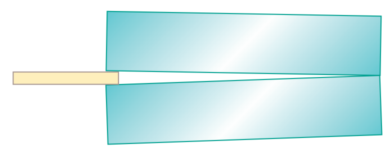


Figure P37.31 Problems 31 and 33.

32. When a liquid is introduced into the air space between the lens and the plate in a Newton's-rings apparatus, the diameter of the tenth ring changes from 1.50 to 1.31 cm. Find the index of refraction of the liquid.

33. Two glass plates 10.0 cm long are in contact at one end and separated at the other end by a thread 0.050 0 mm in diameter (Fig. P37.31). Light containing the two wavelengths 400 nm and 600 nm is incident perpendicularly and viewed by reflection. At what distance from the contact point is the next dark fringe?

Section 37.7 The Michelson Interferometer

34. Monochromatic light is beamed into a Michelson interferometer. The movable mirror is displaced 0.382 mm, causing the interferometer pattern to reproduce itself 1 700 times. Determine the wavelength of the light. What color is it?

35. Mirror M_1 in Active Figure 37.14 is moved through a displacement ΔL. During this displacement, 250 fringe reversals (formation of successive dark or bright bands) are counted. The light being used has a wavelength of 632.8 nm. Calculate the displacement ΔL.

36. One leg of a Michelson interferometer contains an evacuated cylinder of length L, having glass plates on each end. A gas is slowly leaked into the cylinder until a pressure of 1 atm is reached. If N bright fringes pass on the screen during this process when light of wavelength λ is used, what is the index of refraction of the gas?

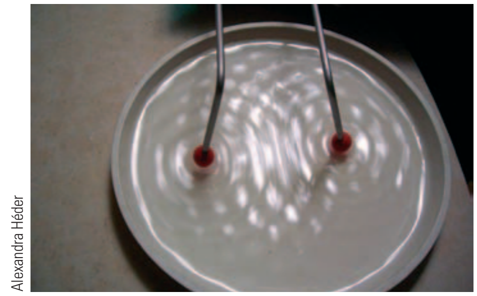


Figure P37.40

Additional Problems

37. In an experiment similar to that of Example 37.1, green light with wavelength 560 nm, sent through a pair of slits 30.0 μm apart, produces bright fringes 2.24 cm apart on a screen 1.20 m away. Calculate the fringe separation for this same arrangement assuming that the apparatus is submerged in a tank containing a sugar solution with index of refraction 1.38.

38. In the **What If?** section of Example 37.2, it was claimed that overlapping fringes in a two-slit interference pattern for two different wavelengths obey the following relationship even for large values of the angle θ:

$$\frac{m'}{m} = \frac{\lambda}{\lambda'}$$

(a) Prove this assertion. (b) Using the data in Example 37.2, find the nonzero value of y on the screen at which the fringes from the two wavelengths first coincide.

39. One radio transmitter A operating at 60.0 MHz is 10.0 m from another similar transmitter B that is 180° out of phase with A. How far must an observer move from A toward B along the line connecting the two transmitters to reach the nearest point where the two beams are in phase?

40. **Review problem.** This problem extends the result of Problem 10 in Chapter 18. Figure P37.40 shows two adjacent vibrating balls dipping into a pan of water. At distant points, they produce an interference pattern of water waves as shown in Figure 37.3. Let λ represent the wavelength of the ripples. Show that the two sources produce a standing wave along the line segment, of length d, between them. In terms of λ and d, find the number of nodes and the number of antinodes in the standing wave. Find the number of zones of constructive and of destructive interference in the interference pattern far away from the sources. Each line of destructive interference springs from a node in the standing wave, and each line of constructive interference springs from an antinode.

41. Raise your hand and hold it flat. Think of the space between your index finger and your middle finger as one slit and think of the space between middle finger and ring finger as a second slit. (a) Consider the interference resulting from sending coherent visible light perpendicularly through this pair of openings. Compute an order-of-magnitude estimate for the angle between adjacent zones of constructive interference. (b) To make the angles in the interference pattern easy to measure with a plastic protractor, you should use an electromagnetic wave with frequency of what order of magnitude? How is this wave classified on the electromagnetic spectrum?

42. Two coherent waves, coming from sources at different locations, move along the x axis. Their wave functions are

$$E_1 = (860 \text{ V/m}) \sin\left[\frac{2\pi x_1}{650 \text{ nm}} - 2\pi(462 \text{ THz})t + \frac{\pi}{6}\right]$$

and

$$E_2 = (860 \text{ V/m}) \sin\left[\frac{2\pi x_2}{650 \text{ nm}} - 2\pi(462 \text{ THz})t + \frac{\pi}{8}\right]$$

Determine the relationship between x_1 and x_2 that produces constructive interference when the two waves are superposed.

43. In a Young's interference experiment, the two slits are separated by 0.150 mm and the incident light includes two wavelengths: $\lambda_1 = 540$ nm (green) and $\lambda_2 = 450$ nm (blue). The overlapping interference patterns are observed on a screen 1.40 m from the slits. Calculate the minimum distance from the center of the screen to a point where a bright fringe of the green light coincides with a bright fringe of the blue light.

44. In a Young's double-slit experiment using light of wavelength λ, a thin piece of Plexiglas having index of refraction n covers one of the slits. If the center point on the screen is a dark spot instead of a bright spot, what is the minimum thickness of the Plexiglas?

45. **Review problem.** A flat piece of glass is held stationary and horizontal above the flat top end of a 10.0-cm-long vertical metal rod that has its lower end rigidly fixed. The thin film of air between the rod and glass is observed to be bright by reflected light when it is illuminated by light of wavelength 500 nm. As the temperature is slowly increased by 25.0°C, the film changes from bright to dark and back to bright 200 times. What is the coefficient of linear expansion of the metal?

46. A certain crude oil has an index of refraction of 1.25. A ship dumps 1.00 m^3 of this oil into the ocean, and the oil spreads into a thin uniform slick. If the film produces a first-order maximum of light of wavelength 500 nm normally incident on it, how much surface area of the ocean does the oil slick cover? Assume the index of refraction of the ocean water is 1.34.

47. Astronomers observe a 60.0-MHz radio source both directly and by reflection from the sea. If the receiving dish is 20.0 m above sea level, what is the angle of the radio source above the horizon at first maximum?

48. Interference effects are produced at point P on a screen as a result of direct rays from a 500-nm source and reflected rays from the mirror as shown in Figure P37.48. Assume the source is 100 m to the left of the screen and 1.00 cm above the mirror. Find the distance y to the first dark band above the mirror.

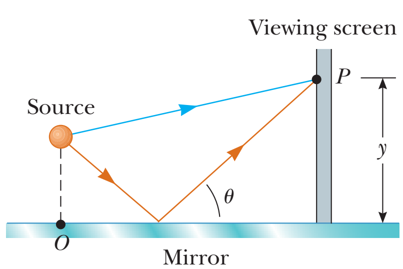


Figure P37.48

49. The waves from a radio station can reach a home receiver by two paths. One is a straight-line path from transmitter to home, a distance of 30.0 km. The second path is by reflection from the ionosphere (a layer of ionized air molecules high in the atmosphere). Assume this reflection takes place at a point midway between receiver and transmitter and the wavelength broadcast by the radio station is 350 m. Find the minimum height of the ionospheric layer that could produce destructive interference between the direct and reflected beams. Assume no phase change occurs on reflection.

50. Many cells are transparent and colorless. Structures of great interest in biology and medicine can be practically invisible to ordinary microscopy. To indicate the size and shape of cell structures, an *interference microscope* reveals a difference in index of refraction as a shift in interference fringes. The idea is exemplified in the following problem. An air wedge is formed between two glass plates in contact along one edge and slightly separated at the opposite edge. When the plates are illuminated with monochromatic light from above, the reflected light has 85 dark fringes. Calculate the number of dark fringes that appear if water ($n = 1.33$) replaces the air between the plates.

51. Measurements are made of the intensity distribution within the central bright fringe in a Young's interference pattern (see Fig. 37.7). At a particular value of y, it is found that $I/I_{max} = 0.810$ when 600-nm light is used. What wavelength of light should be used to reduce the relative intensity at the same location to 64.0% of the maximum intensity?

52. Our discussion of the techniques for determining constructive and destructive interference by reflection from a thin film in air has been confined to rays striking the film at nearly normal incidence. **What If?** Assume a ray is incident at an angle of 30.0° (relative to the normal) on a film with index of refraction 1.38. Calculate the minimum thickness for constructive interference of sodium light with a wavelength of 590 nm.

53. The condition for constructive interference by reflection from a thin film in air as developed in Section 37.6 assumes nearly normal incidence. **What If?** Show that if the light is incident on the film at a nonzero angle ϕ_1 (relative to the normal), the condition for constructive interference is $2nt \cos \theta_2 = (m + \frac{1}{2})\lambda$, where θ_2 is the angle of refraction.

54. ● The quantity δ in Equation 37.1 is called the path difference. Its size in comparison to the wavelength controls the character of the interference between two beams in vacuum by controlling the phase difference between the beams. The analogous quantity nt in Equations 37.16 and 37.17 is called the *optical path length* corresponding to the geometrical distance t. The optical path length is proportional to n because a larger index of refraction shortens the wavelength, so more cycles of a wave fit into a particular geometrical distance. (a) Assume a mixture of corn syrup and water is prepared in a tank, with its index of refraction n increasing uniformly from 1.33 at $y = 20.0$ cm at the top to 1.90 at $y = 0$. Write the index of refraction $n(y)$ as a function of y. (b) Compute the optical path length corresponding to the 20-cm height of the tank by calculating

$$\int_0^{20\text{ cm}} n(y)\,dy$$

(c) Suppose a narrow beam of light is directed into the mixture with its original direction between horizontal and vertically upward. Qualitatively describe its path.

55. (a) Both sides of a uniform film that has index of refraction n and thickness d are in contact with air. For normal incidence of light, an intensity minimum is observed in the reflected light at λ_2 and an intensity maximum is observed at λ_1, where $\lambda_1 > \lambda_2$. Assuming that no intensity minima are observed between λ_1 and λ_2, show that the integer m in Equations 37.16 and 37.17 is given by $m = \lambda_1/2(\lambda_1 - \lambda_2)$. (b) Determine the thickness of the film, assuming $n = 1.40$, $\lambda_1 = 500$ nm, and $\lambda_2 = 370$ nm.

56. Figure P37.56 shows a radio-wave transmitter and a receiver separated by a distance d and both a distance h above the ground. The receiver can receive signals both directly from the transmitter and indirectly from signals that reflect from the ground. Assume the ground is level between the transmitter and receiver and a 180° phase shift occurs upon reflection. Determine the longest wavelengths that interfere (a) constructively and (b) destructively.

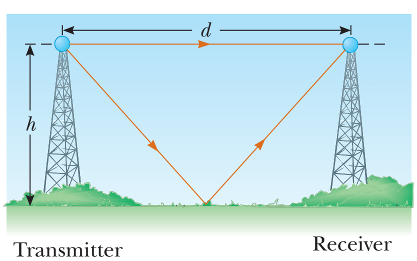


Figure P37.56

57. Consider the double-slit arrangement shown in Figure P37.57, where the slit separation is d and the distance from the slit to the screen is L. A sheet of transparent plastic having an index of refraction n and thickness t is placed over the upper slit. As a result, the central maximum of the interference pattern moves upward a distance y'. Find y'.

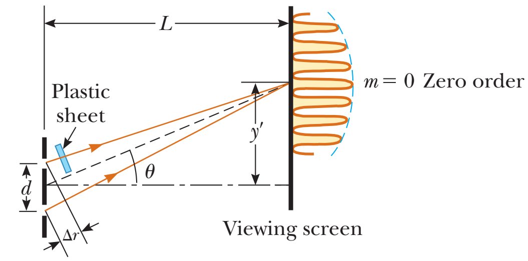


Figure P37.57

58. A piece of transparent material having an index of refraction n is cut into the shape of a wedge as shown in Figure P37.58. The angle of the wedge is small. Monochromatic light of wavelength λ is normally incident from above and is viewed from above. Let h represent the height of the wedge and ℓ its width. Show that bright fringes occur at the positions $x = \lambda\ell(m + \frac{1}{2})/2hn$ and dark fringes occur at the positions $x = \lambda\ell m/2hn$, where $m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ and x is measured as shown.

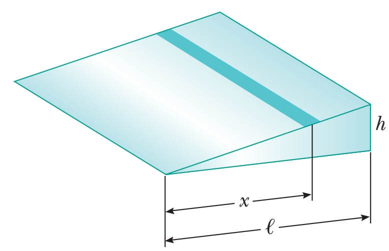


Figure P37.58

59. In a Newton's-rings experiment, a plano-convex glass ($n = 1.52$) lens having diameter 10.0 cm is placed on a flat plate as shown in Figure 37.12a. When 650-nm light is incident normally, 55 bright rings are observed, with the last one precisely on the edge of the lens. (a) What is the radius of curvature of the convex surface of the lens? (b) What is the focal length of the lens?

60. A plano-convex lens has index of refraction n. The curved side of the lens has radius of curvature R and rests on a flat glass surface of the same index of refraction, with a film of index n_{film} between them, as shown in Fig. 37.12a. The lens is illuminated from above by light of wavelength λ. Show that the dark Newton's rings have radii given approximately by

$$r \approx \sqrt{\frac{m\lambda R}{n_{\text{film}}}}$$

where m is an integer and r is much less than R.

61. A plano-concave lens having index of refraction 1.50 is placed on a flat glass plate as shown in Figure P37.61. Its curved surface, with radius of curvature 8.00 m, is on the bottom. The lens is illuminated from above with yellow sodium light of wavelength 589 nm, and a series of concentric bright and dark rings is observed by reflection. The interference pattern has a dark spot at the center, surrounded by 50 dark rings, the largest of which is at the outer edge of the lens. (a) What is the thickness of the air layer at the center of the interference pattern? (b) Calculate the radius of the outermost dark ring. (c) Find the focal length of the lens.

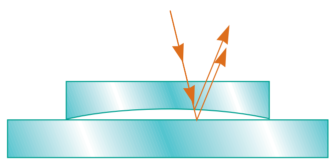


Figure P37.61

62. A plano-convex lens having a radius of curvature of $r =$ 4.00 m is placed on a concave glass surface whose radius of curvature is $R =$ 12.0 m as shown in Figure P37.62. Determine the radius of the 100th bright ring, assuming 500-nm light is incident normal to the flat surface of the lens.

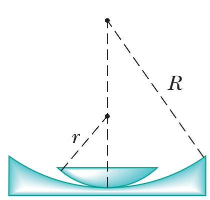


Figure P37.62

63. Figure Q37.8 shows an unbroken soap film in a circular frame. The film thickness increases from top to bottom, slowly at first and then rapidly. As a simpler model, consider a soap film ($n =$ 1.33) contained within a rectangular wire frame. The frame is held vertically so that the film drains downward and forms a wedge with flat faces. The thickness of the film at the top is essentially zero. The film is viewed in reflected white light with near-normal incidence, and the first violet ($\lambda =$ 420 nm) interference band is observed 3.00 cm from the top edge of the film. (a) Locate the first red ($\lambda =$ 680 nm) interference band. (b) Determine the film thickness at the positions of the violet and red bands. (c) What is the wedge angle of the film?

64. Compact disc (CD) and digital videodisc (DVD) players use interference to generate strong signals from tiny bumps, shown in Figure P35.40. A pit's depth is chosen to be one-quarter of the wavelength of the laser light used to read the disc. Then light reflected from the pit and light reflected from the adjoining flat surface differ in path length traveled by one-half wavelength, interfering destructively at the detector. As the disc rotates, the light intensity drops significantly every time light is reflected from near a pit edge. The space between the leading and trailing edges of a pit determines the time interval between the fluctuations. The series of time intervals is decoded into a series of zeros and ones that carries the stored information. Assume infrared light with a wavelength of 780 nm in vacuum is used in a CD player. The disc is coated with plastic having an index of refraction of 1.50. What should the depth of each pit be? A DVD player uses light of a shorter wavelength, and the pit dimensions are correspondingly smaller. This reduction is one factor resulting in a DVD's greater storage capacity compared with that of a CD.

65. Interference fringes are produced using Lloyd's mirror and a 606-nm source as shown in Figure 37.9. Fringes 1.20 mm apart are formed on a screen 2.00 m from the real source S. Find the vertical distance h of the source above the reflecting surface.

66. Slit 1 of a double slit is wider than slit 2 so that the light from slit 1 has an amplitude 3.00 times that of the light from slit 2. Show that Equation 37.12 is replaced by the equation $I = (4I_{max}/9)(1 + 3\cos^2 \phi/2)$ for this situation.

67. Monochromatic light of wavelength 620 nm passes through a very narrow slit S and then strikes a screen in which are two parallel slits, S_1 and S_2, as shown in Figure P37.67. Slit S_1 is directly in line with S and at a distance of L = 1.20 m away from S, whereas S_2 is displaced a distance d to one side. The light is detected at point P on a second screen, equidistant from S_1 and S_2. When either slit S_1 or S_2 is open, equal light intensities are measured at point P. When both slits are open, the intensity is three times larger. Find the minimum possible value for the slit separation d.

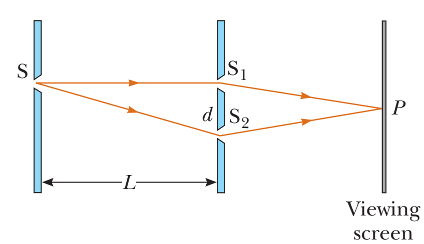
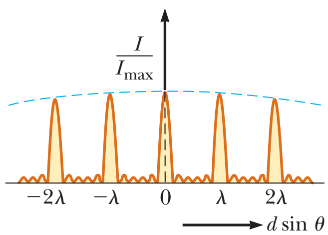


Figure P37.67

Answers to Quick Quizzes

37.1 (c). Equation 37.7 shows that decreasing λ or L will bring the fringes closer together. Immersing the apparatus in water decreases the wavelength so that the fringes move closer together.

37.2 The graph is shown below. The width of the primary maxima is slightly narrower than the $N = 5$ primary width but wider than the $N = 10$ primary width. Because $N = 6$, the secondary maxima are $\frac{1}{36}$ as intense as the primary maxima.



37.3 (a). At the left edge, the air wedge has zero thickness and the only contribution to the interference is the 180° phase shift as the light reflects from the upper surface of the glass slide.